

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِیْمِ

**In the name of God, Most Gracious,  
Most Merciful**

## SCIENTIFIC TAFSIR OF THE QURAN

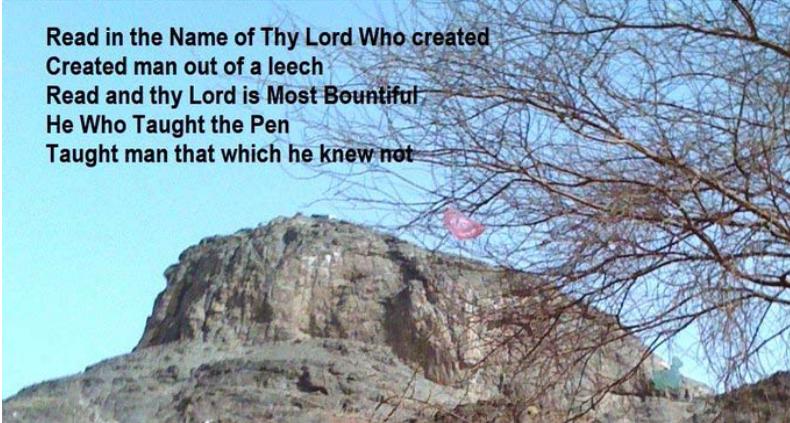
Part 1 of 3 [Chapter 1 to 9]

The Opening

The Guidance for the Guards (Hudan lil Muttaqin)

The War Book (Al Furqan)

**Read in the Name of Thy Lord Who created  
Created man out of a leech  
Read and thy Lord is Most Bountiful  
He Who Taught the Pen  
Taught man that which he knew not**



### **Notice**

Any that will not claim any right can do the followings:

1. Can print, publish, distribute and sale the book.
2. Can translate in any language and can print, publish, distribute and sale this book.
3. Can correct spelling and grammatical mistakes before publishing, except in cases of Arabic words written with English alphabets.
4. Can use parts of this book in own writings with or without referring the book.

No permission will ever be required to do the above.

[A Publisher may or may not remove the Notice while publishing the book]



Zakaria Kamal (Author)

Present Address: East Merul, Badda,

Dhaka-1212, Bangladesh.

Permanent Address: Village- Hoglekandi, PO- Jhitka,

PS- Horirumpur, District- Manikganj, Bangladesh

Ph: 8801913960069

[zakaria.kamal@gmail.com](mailto:zakaria.kamal@gmail.com)

## CONTENT

CHAPTER	NAME	PAGE
<b>Chapter-1</b>	Al Fatihah / The Opening	5
	Introduction of the Grand Quran	93
<b>PART 1 OF 3</b>		
<b>GUIDANCE FOR THE GUARDS [CHAPTER 2 TO 9]</b>		
	Introduction of Part 1 of 3	119
<b>Chapter-2</b>	Al Baqarah / The Heifer	124
<b>THE WAR BOOK [CHAPTER 3 TO 9]</b>		
	Introduction of the War Book	309
<b>Chapter-3</b>	Al-i Imran / Family of Imran	324
<b>Chapter-4</b>	Al Nisa / The Women	442
<b>Chapter-5</b>	Al Ma'idah / The Repast	511
<b>Chapter-6</b>	Al An'am / The Cattle	562
<b>Chapter-7</b>	Al A'raf / The Heights	742
<b>Chapter-8</b>	Al Anfal / The Spoils of War	854
<b>Chapter-9</b>	Al Tawbah / The Repentance	881

**Note:** In this part, a Chapter (Surah) stands as the background of the next Chapter(s). So, initial reading should be sequential.

## Fore Index

### [Points of Main Discussion]

Subject	Section	Chapter	Page
<b>Part 1 of 3</b>			
The God of the Quran	1	1	7
Basic Idea about Soul	1	1	29
Large-Scale Structure of the Universe (Seven-Sky- Universe)	7	2	151
Jihad	32	2	257
Islamic Leadership	44	2	276
Jannaat	23	3	366
Hell	27	3	398
Fate	9	6	588
Human Soul	10	6	643
Home of Ummah	13	6	691
Jinn	3	7	746
<b>Part 2 of 3</b>			
Salat: Section-13 of Chapter-11			
Sufism: Section-6 of Chapter-18			
Gog Magog: Section-7 of Chapter-18			
Creation of the Universe: Section-4 of Chapter-21			
Future of the Universe: Section-10 of Chapter-21			
Biological Evolution: Section-12 of Chapter-24			
End Time Events: Section-7 of Chapter-27			
Dooms Day: Section-7 of Chapter-30			
<b>Part 3 of 3</b>			
Hadith and Sunnah: Section-2 of Chapter-31			
DNA Double Helix: Section-3 of Chapter-31			
Judgment Day: Section-6 of Chapter-39			
Six-Day Model: Section-3 of Chapter-41			



## **Chapter 1** [Al Fatihah THE OPENING]

**[1] In the name of God, Most Gracious, Most Merciful.**

[2] Praise be to the God, the Sustainer and Evolver  
(*Rabb*) of the universes (*alamin*).

[3] Most Gracious, Most Merciful;

[4] Master of the Day of Law (*Deen*).

[5] Thee do we worship, and Thine aid we seek.

[6] Show us the Straight Way,

[7] The Way of those on whom Thou hast bestowed  
Thy Grace, those whose is not wrath, and who go not astray.

### **Color Code**

**Blue:** Verses of the Quran

**Black:** All other writings

# Tafsir of the Surah

## Introduction

The *Surah* (Chapter) stands at the outside of the Quran—as the following Verse says:

“And We have bestowed upon thee the Seven  
Oft-repeated (this Surah) and the Grand  
Quran.” [Al Quran 15:87]

So, the Surah and the Grand Quran are two different articles, revealed by the same God. The Surah is the Preface of the Quran.

The Surah acquaints the readers with the God of the Quran. It motivates them to worship the God only and rely on Him only. It stirs up the unity of Muslims by using we/us in the prayer: “*Thee do we worship, and Thine aid we seek*”.

The Surah urges for the guidance: “*Show us the Straight Way...*”. The Way that was admired by the Prophets of the old:

“A voice of one calling in the desert: ‘Prepare the way for the Lord; make Straight Paths for him...’ [Gospel of Mark 1: 3-4, Holy Bible]

The Surah altogether is a teaching, a motivation and a prayer. It sets its reader in the desired state of mind to go through the Quran.

## Flowchart

Section 1 [Verse 2-4]: The God of the Quran

Section 2 [Verse 5-7]: Submission and Prayer

### Section-1 of Chapter-1 [Verse 2-4]: The God of the Quran

Praise be to the God, the 'Sustainer and Evolver' (*Rabb*) of the universes (*alamin*).

#### Remarks:

The above Verse acquaints one with the God of the Quran. According to the Verse, the God of the Quran is the 'Sustainer and Evolver' of the universes. If we can understand how a sustainer and evolver of the universes should be, we will have a better idea about the God? It is discussed under the following headings:

1. The Universes (*Alamin*)
2. The God in Form
3. The God existing Everywhere
4. Basic Knowledge about the Soul
5. How the God sustains and evolves the universes by infusing several of His elementary souls into the Space
6. Summary
7. Conclusion

The discussion will acquaint a reader with the real God of the universes, scientifically.

## **Note:**

"Rabb" is translated by Pickthall as "Lord" and by Abdullah Yusuf Ali as "Cherisher and Sustainer". The literal meaning of the word is "sustainer, cherisher, master and nourisher". In context of the inert universes, it is translated here as "Sustainer and Evolver". Otherwise, one of the 99 names of Allah is Sustainer (Al Mukeet) and another of His names is Evolver (Al Baari) in the Quran.

### **1. The Universes (*Alamin*)**

If we want to understand the God as the Sustainer and Evolver of the universes (*alamin*), we are to know the universes at first. People have different ideas about the universes. Two of such ideas are narrated below in short:

#### **1a. The Idea of Multiverse**

*"The multiverse is a group of multiple universes. Together, these universes comprise everything that exists..."* – WIKIPEDIA, The Free Encyclopedia.

The different universes within a multiverse are called "parallel universes", "other universes", or "alternate universes".

The Quran does not support the 'Idea of Multiverse' as proposed by the scientists. The universe, in which we are living, is fine-tuned—the natural laws are perfect, and the objects are

proportionally distributed throughout the space. There is no disparity (*fatawutin*) in the creation of Most Gracious:

"He Who created the seven skies one above another; Not you see in the creation of Most Gracious any disparity (*fatawutin*).

So, turn thy vision again: seest thou any act of Originator (*futurin*)?"

[Al Quran 67:03]

Allah is called Originator (*Fatir*). He set the laws and configuration of the initial universe—it is the act of originator (*futurin*). So, the Universe has evolved to the state of today.

**Note:**

In above Verse, "*futurin*" is normally translated as "flaw" but, for "*fatiri*" means "originator", "*futurin*" should mean the "act of originator".

Such a fine-tuned universe could not evolve at its own. It is a creation of the God. An Atheist confronts the aspect of fine-tuning by the Idea of Multiverse. He argues that there could be many Big Bangs / many universes, and, as a matter of chance, one has become suitable for a creature like us:

*"If there were a large (possibly infinite) number of universes, each with possibly different*

*physical laws, then some of these universes (even if very few) would have the combination of laws and fundamental parameters that are suitable for the development of matter, astronomical structures, elemental diversity, stars, and planets that can exist long enough for life to emerge and evolve.”*

– Wikipedia / from Anthropic Principle

The space may be possessing Vacuum Energy (underlying background energy that exists in the space), and it might be exploding with the Big Bangs, but it could never produce such a universe, fine-tuned for a complex creature like us. The probability of accidental creation is 'zero in reality'.

Moreover, the universes would collide with each other due to their gravitational forces to produce the explosions and explosions only—if there were no barrier space separating them.

By “Alamin”, the Quran does not mean such aimlessly popping out universes. However, in subsequent discussions, one will find that Allah has created several universes. There is a parallel universe (anti-universe) within our universe, and there are other universes at the outside of our universe.

The parallel universe that is within our universe is created from the anti-matter / dark matter (anti-matter is a kind of dark matter). The anti-creatures, such as the jinns, are living in the parallel universe. The jinns are intelligent and top anti-creatures.

So, our universe is a two-in-one universe. Allah has made some arrangements to save the matter

and the anti-matter from random collision and annihilation.

In addition, there are other universes, such as the Jannaat, at the outside of our universe. Other universes are separated by a huge barrier called “*Barzakh*”.

### **1b. Sufi-idea about the Alamin (Universes)**

The Sufis (Muslim Saints) too sometimes talk about the *alamin* (universes) to articulate the spectrum of spiritual rise in general. It is given below in short:

- i. Hahoot: It is the world (*alam*) where only Allah exists.
- ii. Yahoot: It is the world where the existence of Noor-Muhammadi is considered.
- iii. Rahoot: It is the world where the ruh exists.
- iv. Jabrut: It connects. The level includes the angels.
- v. Malakut: The creation we see around us is Malakut.
- vi. Nasoot: A human body is considered as an alam\_(world) and is called Nasoot.

There are two more alamin: Alam-e-Arwah (Alam-e-Mesal) and Alam-e-Barzakh.

Our souls (nafs) come from Alam-e-Arwah and go to Alam-e-Barzakh after death.

*“Allah SWT has told us in the Quran that prior to being born in this world, all human beings were formerly born in a different world. The state of human beings at the time of that initial birth is*

*referred to as Aalam-e-Arwah. The actual definition of Aalam-e-Arwah is the time spent by humans in another world before coming down to this earth.*

*When we come down to this earth, we are born with a body and our nafs which is called soul. When we die and leave this world, our physical body stays here in the soil and our soul is taken out. This is also a kind of Aalam-e-Arwah but Quran generally uses a different term for that stay of soul and calls it “Barzakh” meaning it is a time when there is no “body” but just the “soul”.*”

– Abu Yahya, Inzaar.org

Most likely, Alam-e-Arwah is a virtual universe that the God created to plan the creation. It is the Master Design of God.

We were created in the Master Design from our genome codes and souls (nafses) and lived a virtual life in a Holographic Earth.

Our fates are extracted from our virtual lives. One’s real life of the present is a repetition of the virtual life except in the aspect of Faith, where the God adjusts proactively [the Master Design and Fate are deliberately discussed in Section-9 of Chapter-6].

There are two worlds in the Barzakh: Illiyin and Sijjin. These two are holographic worlds of the dead to live till the Day of Resurrection [the worlds are deliberately discussed in Chapter-83].

Our science has not developed in the direction of spiritual-awareness. So, the information derived from the sufi-thoughts cannot be used in our scientific

discussion. We may end the discussion of sufi-worlds here.

### 1c. The Universes (Alamin) in the Quran

The universes (alamin) that are mentioned in the Quran are discussed below under the following headings:

- i. Samawaat
- ii. Jannaat
- iii. Different Universes
- iv. Super Space and *Barzakh*
- v. Araf, Channels and Sidratul-Muntaha
- vi. Illiyin and Sijjin
- vii. Arsh

#### 1c-i. Samawaat

This Universe, where we are living now, is called "Samawaat" in the Quran. Samawaat means Skies.

The study of the Quran reveals that the space of the overall universe is shaped into seven spherical waves, one inside another—like the peels of onion. These waves of space are skies. Each sky contains innumerable galaxies. We are in the First (Innermost) Sky. The space though waved is continuous.

One does not have to believe the existence of skies blindly. Several recent observations indicate that the skies should exist—though, the theories have not been developed to harness the idea in the books of science.

[The skies are deliberately discussed in Section-7 of Chapter-2]

The skies are expanding. Therefore, the Universe as a whole is expanding:

“And the Sky, We constructed it with support, and indeed We surely are Expanders” [Al Quran 51:47]

The expansion of the Universe was discovered in 1920's when an American scientist, Edwin Hubble, demonstrated that the distant galaxies, at all directions and depths, were receding.

The expansion shows that this Universe originated from a state of unity, popularly known as the Big Bang / Big Bounce:

“Do not the unbelievers see that the Skies and the Lands were joined together before We clove them asunder” [Al Quran 21:30]

The above Verse says that there were lands (dusts and asteroids) in the initial universe. So, the Verse suggests that this Universe started from a Big Bounce.

Thereby, the Verse suggests that the universe is cyclic. The Quran talks about three cycles:

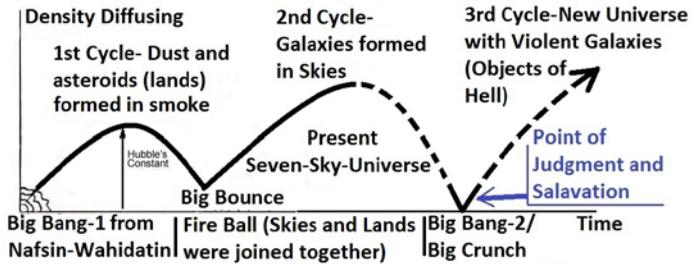


FIGURE 1.1: Cyclic Universe (Samawaat)

**1st Cycle:** The universe started from the Big Bang-1.

It produced hydrogen and helium mainly (smoke). The space was uniform (single-sky-universe) and the smoke spread uniformly throughout the space. Allah did *istawa* into the universe / smoke. He infused gravitational force through the *istawa* (*istawa* is deliberately discussed subsequently). The gravitational force contracted the universe and produced heavier elements at least up to silicon. The heavier elements produced dusts and asteroids (lands).

**2nd Cycle:** Ultimately, the contracting Universe restarted from a Big Bounce as a seven-sky-universe (Present Cycle): *“Do not the unbelievers see that the Skies and the Lands (dust and asteroids) were joined together before We clove them asunder” [Al Quran 21:30]*

In the expanding seven-sky-universe, the galaxies could rapidly form. The long lasting stars and the planets formed in the galaxies directly from the matters up to silicon.

**3rd Cycle:** This Universe will collapse again into a Big Crunch and will restart (Big Bang-2) after the Judgment and Salvation: “*On the day when We will roll up the Skies (this universe) like the rolling up of the scroll for writings; as We originated the first creation, We shall reproduce it—a promise on Us; surely We will bring it about.*” [Al Quran 81:104]

[The cycles are deliberately discussed later under appropriate Verses]

An atheist will tell that a cyclic universe does not need a Creator. But, the following Verse suggests that the God of the Quran created the universe at the beginning of the preceding cycle:

“Moreover, He did *istawa* into the sky (preceding single-sky-universe with uniform space) while it had been smoke.

He said to it (smoke) and to the lands (dust and asteroids formed after His *istawa* into the sky), “Come ye together willingly or unwillingly.”

They said, “We do come in willing obedience”. So, He completed them as Seven Skies in two Days...”

[Al Quran 41:11-12]

The universe of the preceding cycle was full of smoke (hydrogen and helium mainly). The smoke

was uniformly distributed in the uniform space of the single-sky-universe.

Allah did *istawa* into the single-sky-universe / smoke. So, the gravitational force was invested. The gravitational force created the heavier elements at least up to silicon, which could produce the lands (dust and asteroids).

The single-sky-universe was contracting after His *istawa*, and it reinitiated from a Big Bounce as the seven-sky-universe. The galaxies could easily form in the expanding skies. The long lasting stars and the planets formed in the galaxies with the elements up to silicon.

[How elements heavier than silicon came into the Earth is discussed in Section-7 of Chapter-2.]

The above Verses also indicate that the skies were created by distributing the matter in the space. Each sky contains a huge amount of matter / many galaxies. Thus, the Universe is called "Skies and Lands" (Samawaat-wal-Ard) as well.

### 1c-ii. **Jannaat**

The Jannaat is a different universe altogether. The hint of its location is given in the following Verses:

“Be quick in the race for forgiveness from your Lord and for a Jannaat whose width is that of the ‘Skies and Lands’ (this universe), prepared for the righteous...” [Al Quran 3:133]

“Race to forgiveness from your Lord and the Jannaat, the width of which is as the width of the ‘Sky and Land’ (this universe)” [Al Quran 57:2]

According to the above Verses, the width of the Jannaat is equal to the width of this Universe (Samawaat). If two entities are equal in width, one cannot remain inside another. So, the Jannaat and the Samawaat are two separate universes altogether.

Holy Bible gives similar indication:

"Because only a few will be saved,  
God created two universes, instead of  
only one"

– 2 ESDRAS 7:50, Holy Bible (GNB)

Some say that the Time began at the Big Bang, and that there is nothing beyond the Big Bang, and so on, because they do not know. Allah is ever living, and He has other creations at the outside of this universe.

### 1c-iii. **Different Universes**

The following factors confirm that the Jannaat and the Samawaat are two different universes:

## Factor 1: **Different by the Origin**

From the Big Bang (ultimately from a Big Bounce), this Universe (Samawaat) has been created—not the Jannaat.

“Do not the unbelievers see that the Skies and the Lands (this universe) were joined together before We clove them asunder” [Al Quran 21:30]

So, the Samawaat and the Jannaat are separate creations by origin.

## Factor 2: **Different Destiny**

This Universe (Samawaat) will collapse according to the following Verses and its objects will perish:

“On the day when We will roll up the Skies (Samawaat / this universe) like the rolling up of the scroll for writings...” [Al Quran 81:104]

“All that on it will perish. But will abide the Face of thy Lord, full of Majesty and Honor.”

[Al Quran 55: 26–27]

But, the Jannaat is everlasting according to the Quran and Hadith. So, the Jannaat cannot exist inside a universe (Samawaat) that will collapse. And it

cannot be a one-inside-another anti-universe as well. The Jannaat is a separate universe beyond the Barzakh (Barrier).

### Factor 3: **Different Nature**

We live in a protected planet. So, we do not understand how violent the Universe (Samawaat) is! The fluctuating high-pitch sounds we hear while tuning a radio-set originate in gigantic explosions occurring in distant galaxies and quasars. The entire space is showered with harmful radiations. Nothing can remain unchanged. It is a dangerous place indeed. It cannot be a home of peace and eternal salvation.

The Universe (Samawaat) is timed. Here aging and ultimate death / decay are inevitable. But, according to the Quran and Hadith, the Jannaat is evergreen by nature. So, these have to be separate universes.

### Factor 4: **Homes of Jinns and Humans**

This Universe (Samawaat) contains roughly six times more dark matter than matter. Bulk of the Universe is not sensible to us, and only a tiny Earth is useful. It is not our universe; it belongs to the anti-creatures, like the jinns, created from anti-matter.

The jinns are intelligent anti-creatures. They are living in this universe from their inception. They are created suitable for this universe. They are sometimes called Sons of the Skies (Samawaat / this

Universe). This universe (Samawaat) is their home universe.

Primarily, Allah settled Adam and Eve in the Jannaat. So, it is obvious that He created them suitable for the Jannaat. The Jannaat is our home universe. There are billions of peaceful planets, full of water. The good ones will be taken back to the Jannaat after the Judgment. The bad ones will be enhanced and evolved to live in this universe (Samawaat).

Before the creation of this universe (Samawaat), Allah created a huge quantity of water to produce the planets of the Jannaat mainly.

[The Jannaat is deliberately discussed in Section 23 of Chapter 3]

#### 1c-iv. **Super Space and *Barzakh***

All creations, except the Arsh, are located in a super space. The super space is divided by a super barrier (Barzakh) into two parts: the Eastern Super Space and the Western Super Space:

“Lord of the Two Easts and the Two Wests. Then which of the favors of your Lord will ye deny?”

[Al Quran 55:17-18]

In above Verse, Two Easts are Samawaat (this universe) and Eastern Araf; Two Wests are Jannaat and Western Araf. See figure 1.2.

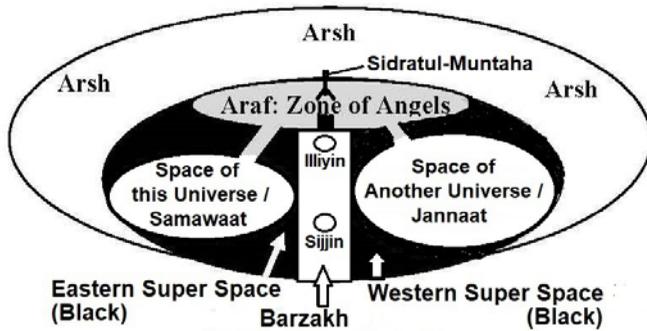


FIGURE 1.2: Likely disposition of the Universes

Most likely, the Barzakh is a space with different nature where matter cannot survive. However, the light can pass through the Barzakh, as Prophet (pbuh) saw some planets of the Jannaat from an object of the Seventh Sky.

Due to the Barzakh, one cannot go from one universe to the other, except through special channels:

“O ye assembly of jinns and men, if it be ye can pass beyond the boundary of the 'Skies and Lands' (this universe), pass ye! Not without authority shall ye be able to pass!” [Al Quran 55:33]

### 1c-v. Araf, Channels and Sidratul-Muntaha

There is a huge land called Araf at the uppermost part of the Barzakh. “Araf” means “Elevated Land”. The Araf too is divided by a Veil into two parts: the Eastern Araf and the Western Araf.

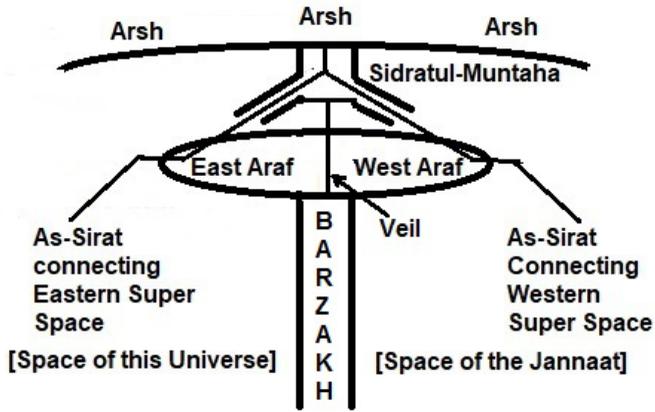


FIGURE 1.3: Araf, Channel, Sidratul-Muntaha

The Araf may be considered as the third universe. It is the preliminary sanctuary of the universal angels.

The Eastern Araf is extended into the Eastern Super Space, and the Western Araf is extended into the Western Super Space. See figure 1.3.

[The Araf is deliberately discussed in Section-9 of Chapter-6]

The Eastern Araf connects the Samawaat (this Universe) by a pair of channels, and the Western Araf connects the Jannaat by another pair of channels.

In the Night Journey (Miraz), Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) saw two of these channels from an object of the Seventh Sky. The accompanying angel called the channels as the “Channel of Light” and the “Channel of Darkness”. Prophet Muhammad

(pbuh) moved into the Eastern Araf trough one of these channels.

[The channels are deliberately discussed in Section-9 of Chapter-6]

The Sidratul-Muntaha is hanging from the Arsh over the Araf. It looks like an up-side-down plant with two main branches. One branch connects the Eastern Araf, and another branch connects the Western Araf. Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) moved into the Arsh and later into the Jannaat through the Sidratul-Muntaha.

Thus, the Sidratul-Muntaha works as the communication hub of the universes. It controls the transfer of creatures, matter and information.

The Sidratul-Muntaha does another important job. It programs the angels according to the instructions coming down from the Arsh. It infuses information into the angels (an angel cannot learn at its own) and redesigns them to perform their tasks. The Sidratul-Muntaha is based on divine Servers and has related Systems.

[The Sidratul-Muntaha is discussed with references in Section-9 of Chapter-6]

### **1c-vi. Illiyin and Sijjin**

The Illiyin and the Sijjin are inside the Barzakh. See figure 1.2. These are holographic worlds of the dead creatures. The worlds are created by divine supercomputers and related systems.

A dead human is recreated virtually with his soul, genome code, and memories (which are collected and stored by the angels). The virtual human is then projected into a holographic world (Illiyin or Sijjin) where other dead humans are already living their virtual lives. They will remain in the Illiyin or Sijjin until the Day of Resurrection.

The Illiyin is for the people destined to the Jannaat. It is in the high Barzakh closely below the Araf. The Sijjin is in the deep Barzakh. It is for the people destined to the hell.

[The Illiyin and the Sijjin are deliberately discussed in Chapter-83]

#### 1c-vii. **Arsh**

The Arsh is over the Super Space. It is connected to the universes by Sidratul-Muntaha, Araf, and Channels. See figure 1.2.

The Arsh is the Headquarters of Allah. The Pen, Disc, and related systems are in the Arsh. There are many angels as well. They are commonly called Angels of Arsh.

Allah has an exclusive domain in the Arsh, and He has a Thorne (Kursi).

Abu Dharr Al Ghifari narrates that the Prophet (pbuh) said, 'By Him in whose hand is my soul, the seven skies and lands (this universe) in comparison to the Kursi is nothing but like a ring thrown in a desert, and certainly the

hugeness of the Arsh over the Kursi is like the desert over that ring.'

[Tafsir Ibn Katheer].

In light of the Quran and the Hadith, Allah stands / sits in the Kursi (Thorne).

[Arsh, Kursi, Pen and Disc are deliberately discussed with references in Section-9 of Chapter-6]

## **2. The God in Form**

Allah has a shape. We know from the Quran that Allah has eyes, ears, face, hands, legs, etc. Holy Bible talks about His shape:

“And Elohim created the man in His own image; in the image of Elohim He created him. He created them male and female.” [Genesis 1:27, Holy Bible]

So, 'Allah in form' looks like a human. Similar description is there in the Hadith as well:

"Allah, the Exalted and Glorious, created Adam in His own image with his length of sixty cubits..."

[Muslim 6809]

But, Allah's 'body in form' maybe from the elements that are not available in the creation. His body must be good for universe, anti-universe, and other universes that He may have created. He is

extremely intelligent, capable and eternal. He has no weakness. He is not dependent on anything, but everything is dependent on Him for its very existence.

It is likely that Allah was a eternal nafs (soul) long before He started the creation. He developed His body in form and became more organized and visible to the creations. The matter is further discussed subsequently.

'Allah in form' stays in a domain of the Arsh. He moves beyond His domain by extending His Kursi (Throne). The Kursi protects a normal creature from His extreme power and light.

“...Extends His Kursi into the 'Skies and Lands' (Samawaat-wal-Ard / this universe), and He feels no fatigue in guarding both of them (Samawaat and Jannaat); for He is the Most High, the Supreme.” [Al Quran 2:255]

But, the Kursi has limitations. Even its highest degree of protection cannot protect an object like the Earth. The hill of Moses was burned. He comes to some special objects of this Universe and takes reports from the angels.

However, Allah is so powerful that He can retract the exposing forces and energies into His 'body in form' and look like a normal human being. According to the Hadith, on the Day of Judgment, at first He will come to the resurrected humans as a normal human being. But humans will not recognize

and accept Him as God. Then He will return and come with a gorgeous look, ceremonially.

The 'exposure of His forces and energies' and 'His omnipresence' are discussed in the next where it is amply clarified why there is none like unto Him:

"Say: He is God, the One and Only;  
God, the Eternal, Absolute;  
He begetteth not, nor is He begotten;  
And there is none like unto Him."

[Al Quran 112:1-4]

### **3. The God existing Everywhere**

Allah has a form, and at the same time, He is present everywhere:

“See you not that God does know that is in the Skies and on Lands? There is not a secret consultation between three but He makes the fourth among them, nor between five but He makes the sixth, nor between fewer nor more, but He is with them where-so-ever they be. In the end will He tell them the truth of their conduct, on the Day of Judgment; for God has full knowledge of all things.” [Al Quran 58:7]

Allah knows what we are thinking. He is closer to us than our jugular veins:

“It was We Who created man and We know what dark suggestions his soul makes to him, for We are nearer to him than (his) jugular vein.

[Al Quran 50:16]

In light of the above Verses, Allah exists everywhere. If Allah exists everywhere, He should be formless. But, He is not formless. We need to know the 'soul' to understand how Allah, having a form, can exist everywhere.

#### **4. Basic Idea about the Soul**

Allah, having a form, can exist everywhere by extending His soul.

We view a soul as a spiritual stuff and remain hopeless to understand it. Actually, we know some of the souls and use those in many our instruments. But, we do not identify those as souls.

The following discussion will identify the soul and will develop an idea, as to how it relates to life:

- a. Soul in General
- b. Types of Souls
- c. Light and Subatomic Particles
- d. Atom and Universe
- e. Nafsin-Wahidatin (A Nafs Single)
- f. The Nafsin-Wahidatin and the GUT Force
- g. Unknown Force Fields

#### 4a. Soul in General

We feel that a soul determines one's shape and nature and sustains one's body as a living entity. A soul does these in case of a living creature. But, if one tries to understand the soul of a living creature directly, one may fail. The basic idea about the soul is given here.

At first we will talk about the soul of matter. According to the Hadith, matter too has soul:

Several kinds of force fields sustain the natural systems of the inert world. These force fields work like souls. One of such force fields is magnetic field.

We may discuss the magnetic field to assess the idea that a force field and a soul may be the same thing.

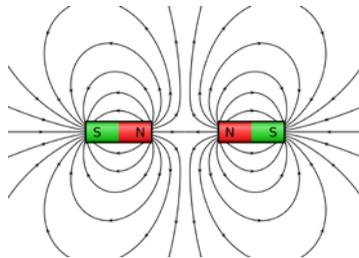


FIGURE 1.4: Magnetic Field

A soul (ruh) is expressed in the Quran as a Command of God:

“They ask thee concerning the ruh  
(soul). Say: “The ruh is **Command of**

**my Lord.”** Of knowledge, it is only a little that is communicated to you.”

[Al Quran 17: 85]

I have discussed two cases in the following where the magnetic fields work like the commands:

#### 4a-1. **Case 1**

The Earth has a huge magnetic field that resists the Solar Wind from entering the Earth (see figure 1.5). It seems that the magnetic field is commanding the Solar Wind: “Do not enter”.

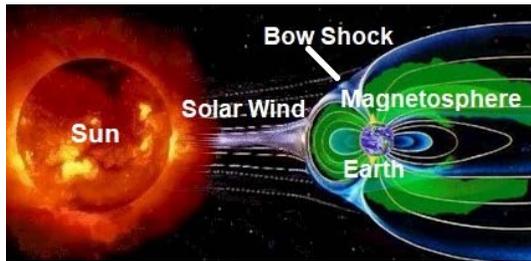


FIGURE 1.5: Earth's Magnetic Field

The land-living creatures could not survive without this magnificent magnetic field. What is the origin of this magnetic field? How the Earth can have such a huge magnetic field?

The scientists say that the rotating, convecting, and electrically conducting fluid (like melted iron core of the Earth) can develop magnetic field. And in case of a gaseous object (like the Sun) they say that

the ionized gas too can develop magnetic field. They are to say something—as they are scientists. Actually, these are force fields invested by the God as commands.

#### 4a-2. Case 2

The magnetism is caused by electromagnetic force which is one of the fundamental forces of the nature.

A moving electric charge generates a magnetic field as depicted in figure 1.6. It seems that the magnetic field is sustaining and directing the electrons as a commanding force.

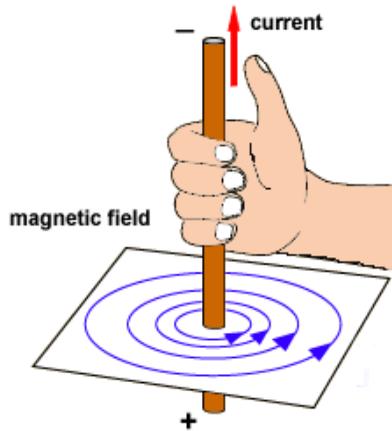


FIGURE 1.6: Magnetic Field sustaining and directing the Electrons

Therefore, the Force Field sustains and commands the subatomic particles.

When the electro-magnetic waves propagate through the space, the magnetic field and the electric field remain at 90 degrees to each other.

*“The Field is sole governing agency of the particle”* – Albert Einstein.

In other words, the Field is sole commander of the particle:

“They ask thee concerning the ruh (soul). Say: “The ruh is Command of my Lord.” Of knowledge, it is only a little that is communicated to you.”

[Al Quran 17: 85]

#### **4b-3. Soul in the Hadith**

The Hadith expresses a soul as an attractive or repulsive force:

“Prophet said: “The souls are like conscripted soldiers; those whom they recognize, they get along with; and those whom they do not recognize, they will not get along with.””

[Bukhari, Muslim]

The characteristics are seen in the force fields of an atom.

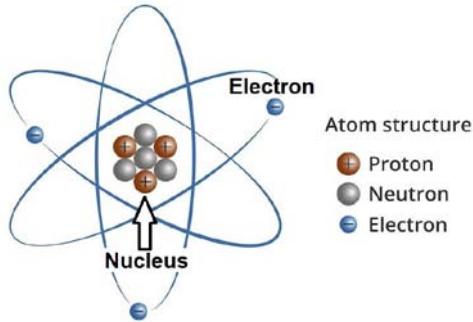


FIGURE 1.7: Atom

The protons are repulsive to each other. A Strong Nuclear Force Field holds the protons in the nucleus of the atom. Thus, in the language of the above Hadith, the Strong Nuclear Force Field recognizes the protons and holds those in the nucleus. It does not recognize the electrons, so it does not pull those inside.

Similarly, a Magnetic Field recognizes an electron, so it keeps the electron in the orbit. It does not recognize the proton, so it does not disturb those.

Therefore, a force field possesses the characteristics of a soul. Most likely, the thing that the scientists call "force field" is called "soul" (ruh) in the books of religion.

#### 4b. Types of Souls

At this stage, I will assume that a force field and a soul is the same thing. The assumption will be confirmed in subsequent discussion.

The Quran talks about two types of souls:

I. Ruhh (Elementary Soul)

II. Nafs (Composite Soul)

#### 4b-I. **Ruhh (Elementary Soul)**

An elementary soul is called *ruh*. Ruhh is an Arabic word. It is translated as "soul". I write it as "ruhhs" in plural form.

Allah can design a force field and can make it fixed. Once an object, like the Earth, or a particle, like an electron, falls into the designed force field, it acts as intended. A designed force field is a ruh. It is an elementary soul.

For example, Strong Nuclear Force Field and Magnetic Field are different kinds of elementary souls / ruhhs.

Therefore, we may define a "ruh" (an elementary soul) as a designed force field intended to act in fixed pattern, which holds particular entities and commands those to act in specific ways.

#### **Note:**

There are different kinds of ruhhs serving different purposes. For example, the Quran calls its Verses ruhhs because the words came as brain-data (low intensity electromagnetic forces), emitted by the Lawh-Mahfuz and carried by the angels. The data were injected into the brain of Prophet Muhammad (pbuh)

through Mohr-e-Nobuat and back bone. It produced memory in Prophet's brain and reflected in his mind: "*Has brought it down the ruhhs trustworthy upon your mind (qalb) that you may be of the Warners*" [Al Quran 193 – 194]

For another example, Allah breathed ruhhs into Adam when he became conscious. Each human is given such ruhhs just after his/her birth when he/she becomes conscious and cries for the first time. This ruhhs works as a part of human soul (nafs). It offers a flux, encompassing parts of brain, nerves and a muscle of the chest, which helps produce a mind / qalb (virtual-brain) in the chest [the mind / qalb is deliberately discussed in Section-10 of Chapter-6].

#### **4b-II. Nafs (Composite Soul)**

Another kind of soul is called *nafs*. Nafs is an Arabic word. I write it as "nafses" in plural form.

Nafs too is translated as "Soul", but there are differences between a ruhhs and a nafs. A nafs is a composite soul.

A combination of two or more force fields (elementary souls / ruhhs) makes a nafs. Many natural systems and all living creatures have nafses as their main souls.

For example, Magnetic Force Field (a ruhhs), Weak Nuclear Force Field (a ruhhs) and Strong Nuclear Force Field (a ruhhs) jointly make the nafs

(composite soul) of an atom. The nafs of the atom holds the particles, such as electrons, protons, neutrons, etc., and forms the atom.

Therefore, we may define a nafs as a combination of two or more force fields (elementary souls / ruhhs), which sustains a system and determines its form, nature and activities.

Scientists have so far discovered four kinds of forces, including gravitational force. So, there should be many force fields in the nature with different characteristics, which are not yet discovered. An animal's nafs is a combination of such undiscovered and unknown force fields.

There is no sign among the scientists (2021) that they are thinking of the force fields that may work in an animal—arranging for their detection is a far cry. They like to make absurd theories to explain bizarre natural systems.

[The human nafs is deliberately discussed in Section-10 of Chapter-6]

#### **4c. Light and Subatomic Particles**

The light is electro-magnetic force field. There are two kinds of force fields in the light such as electric field and magnetic field. So, the light is a kind of nafs.

Similarly, a subatomic particle is a nafs. It shows wave-particle duality—it flips back-and-forth as particle and wave. It is conscious as well. Its duality and consciousness can be detected by the following test:

*“A laser beam illuminates a plate pierced by two parallel slits, and the light passing through the slits is observed on a screen behind the plate. The wave nature of light causes the light waves passing through the two slits to interfere, producing bright and dark bands on the screen—a result that would not be expected if light consisted of classical particles.*

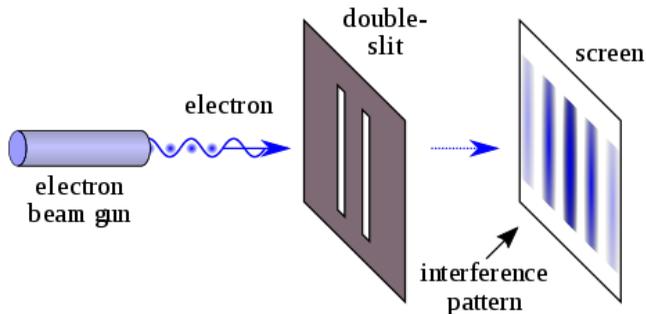


FIGURE 1.8: Double-slit Experiment

*However, the light is always found to be absorbed at the screen at discrete points, as individual particles (not waves), the interference pattern appearing via the varying density of these particle hits on the screen.*

*Furthermore, versions of the experiment that include detectors at the slits find that each detected photon passes through one slit (as would a classical particle), and not through both slits (as would a wave).*

*However, such experiments demonstrate that particles do not form the interference pattern if one detects which slit they pass through.*

*These results demonstrate the principle of wave-particle duality.”*

– Wikipedia, The Free Encyclopedia

The experiment shows that a free subatomic particle remains as a particle when it is observed, otherwise it becomes wave. So, it senses that it is being observed and remains as an observable particle.

Therefore, the nafses are conscious from the basic level (from the level of light).

#### **4d. Atom and Universe**

The atoms are the basic building blocks of the Universe. Once the atoms were created, the Universe was created.

An atom is created from different kinds of force fields / souls (ruhhs and nafses). So, the Universe is created from different kinds of souls.

#### **4e. Nafsin-Wahidatin (A Nafs Single)**

Allah has a soul. It is a composite soul (nafs). It permeates His body in form. He provided a part of His soul to create the universe (Samawaat) and several other entities. The provided part of His soul is called *Nafsin-Wahidatin* (a Nafs Single) in the following Verses:

“It is He Who has produced you from a Nafs Single (*Nafsin-Wahidatin*); here is a place of dwelling and storage—we

detail Our signs for people who understand.” [Al Quran 6:98]

“He created you from a Nafs Single (Nafsin-Wahidatin); then created favorable Pairs (DNA Double Helix), and He sent down for you of the cattle eight Pairs; He creates you in the wombs of your mothers. Creation after creation—three tortures (on Allah). That Allah is your Lord; for Him is the dominion. There is no god but He. Then how are you turned away?”

[Al Quran 39:6]

The Holy Bible too talks about the Nafsin-Wahidatin:

“In the beginning, when God created the Universe, the Earth was non-existent. The raging ocean that covered everything was engulfed in total darkness and the Soul of God was hovering over the water.”

– Genesis 1 (1–2), Holy Bible, GNB

The Soul of God, which was hovering over the water, was the Nafsin-Wahidatin. It is the Soul that God provided from His body to create the creations. It is called the Soul of God because it belonged to God—He breathed it out from His body. In a Catholic Bible, the Soul is translated as the "Breath of God":

“God, at the beginning of time created heaven (sky) and earth (land). Earth was still an empty waste and darkness hung over the deep, but already over its waters stirred the Breath of God”  
– Genesis 1 (1-2), Holy Bible (Knox)

God breathed out the soul. So, it was a provided soul (Nafsin-Wahidatin).

When God commanded, “Let there be light”, the light appeared from the Nafsin-Wahidatin:

“...Then God said: Let there be light.  
And the light began”  
– Genesis 1:3, Holy Bible (Knox)

It means that the Nafsin-Wahidatin, which was a composite soul (nafsin), disintegrated on the command of “Let there be Light”. The fragments were the Strong Nuclear Force Field, the Electromagnetic Force Field (Light), the Weak Nuclear Force Field, and the Unknown Force Fields.

Subsequently, the Universe was created from the light (nafsin) and force fields (ruhhs) at a speed looking like the Big Bang.

The light that produced from the Nafsin-Wahidatin had tendency to form sub-atomic particles, as the universe was expanding and lowering in temperature.

### **Note:**

The above Verses of Holy Bible talk about water. The water was created before our Universe (before the Big Bang). Allah created it from a different source—not from Nafsin-Wahidatin. The water was filling a large part of the Super Space. It was created for another universe named Jannaat. However, a little of that water is given to our universe (Samawaat). I have discussed the water deliberately in Section-3 of Chapter-41.

#### **4f. The Nafsin-Wahidatin and the GUT Force**

The scientists have so far discovered four kinds of force fields such as Electromagnetic Force Field, Weak Nuclear Force Field, Strong Nuclear Force Field and Gravitational Force. They think that the forces originated from a Super Force.

*“Physicists had believed that there were four fundamental forces of nature: the gravitational force, the strong and weak nuclear forces, and the electromagnetic force. Salam had worked on the unification of these forces from 1959 with Glashow and Weinberg. While at Imperial College London, Salam successfully showed that weak nuclear forces are not really different from electromagnetic forces, and two could inter-convert. Salam provided a theory that shows the unification of two fundamental forces of nature, weak nuclear forces and the electromagnetic forces, one into another.*

*Glashow had also formulated the same work, and the theory was combined in 1966. In 1967, Salam proved the electroweak unification theory mathematically, and finally published the papers. For this achievement, Salam, Glashow, and Weinberg were awarded the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1979. The Nobel Prize Foundation paid tribute to the scientists and issued a statement saying: "For their contributions to the theory of the unified weak and electromagnetic interaction between elementary particles, including, inter alia, the prediction of the weak neutral current".*

*In the 1970s Salam continued trying to unify forces by including the strong interaction in a grand unified theory..."*

*– Wikipedia, The Free Encyclopedia*

The scientists think that above  $10^{35}$  degree K the forces cannot remain separate; they unify into one force. As the Universe expanded and cooled, the forces separated from one another.

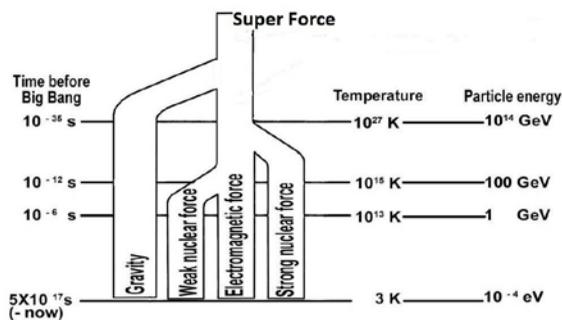


FIGURE 1.9: Super Force

The gravitational force separated when the temperature was above  $10^{35}$  degree K.

When the temperature dropped to  $10^{28}$  degree K, the Strong Nuclear Force Field separated.

The scientists find out that when the temperature dropped to  $10^{15}$  degree K, the Weak Nuclear Force Field separated from the Electromagnetic Force Field (light).

The scientists consider three of above force fields, except gravitational force, as the forces of the Grand Unified Theory (GUT), which produced the Big Bang / this universe.

In view of the Quran as well, the gravitational force is not from the Nafsin-Wahidatin that produced this universe. The gravitational force is a force of Allah (it is discussed subsequently).

Therefore, the Nafsin-Wahidatin can be called GUT Force.

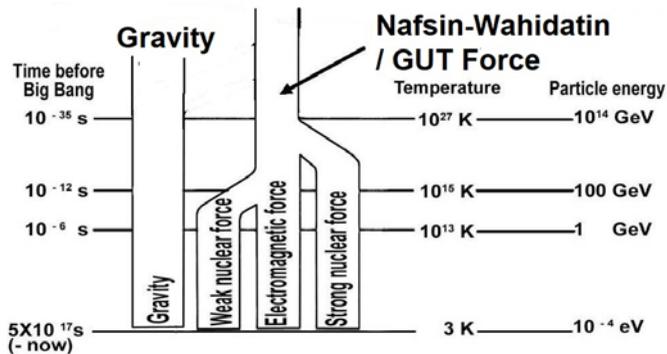


FIGURE 1.10: Gravity is not from Nafsin-Wahidatin / GUT Force

The forces that originated from the GUT Force / Nafsin-Wahidatin such as Strong Nuclear Force Field, Weak Nuclear Force Field and Electromagnetic Force Field were fragmented and recombined in different proportions to produce the atoms of the Universe.

The religion says that our Universe was created from the Nafsin-Wahidatin, and the science says that the Universe originated from the GUT Force. Then why should we not consider the soul and the force field as the same thing? It is different in name only.

#### **4g. Unknown Force Fields**

Scientists have so far (2021) discovered four kinds of force fields (Electromagnetic Force Field, Weak Nuclear Force Field, Strong Nuclear Force Field, and Gravitational Force). There may be other kinds of force fields in the nature. The force fields may be completely different in characteristics that the modern scientists, deeply involved in the materialistic science, cannot think of. How they can arrange detection! The nafs (composite soul) of a living creature should be a combination such undiscovered and unknown force fields.

The unknown force fields that were needed to create the nafses of living creatures originated from the same Nafsin-Wahidatin:

“He created you from a Nafs Single (Nafsin-Wahidatin); then created favorable Pairs (DNA Double Helix), and He sent down for you of the cattle eight Pairs; He creates you in the wombs of your mothers. Creation after creation—three tortures (on Allah). That Allah is your Lord; for Him is the dominion. There is no god but He. Then how are you turned away?”

[Al Quran 39:6]

Therefore, the Nafsin-Wahidatin should be called GUT Force+(plus), as it included the unknown force fields. And, the above figure should be re-drawn as under:

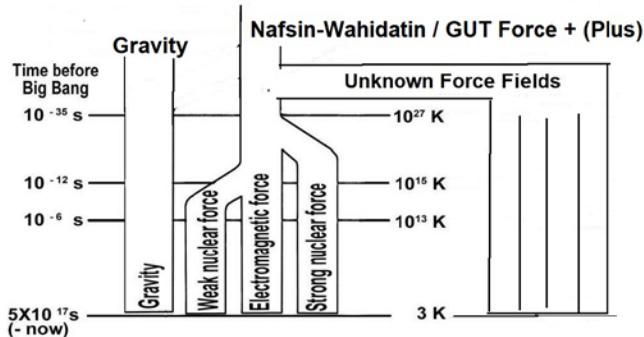


FIGURE 1.11: Nafsin-Wahidatin produced many unknown force fields too.

In light of the Hadith, Allah divided the Nafsin-Wahidatin in the following sequence:

- At first, Allah prepared a dynamic virtual universe (Master Design) in a huge computer. The force fields that were needed to produce the computer were extracted from the Nafsin-Wahidatin. [The Quran mentions important components of the computer, such as the Pen, the Disc Protected and the Mother Board. The computer is deliberately discussed in Section-9 of Chapter-6].
- The unknown force fields (ruhhs) that were needed to create the nafses of living creatures were extracted from the Nafsin-Wahidatin, and the nafses were created.
- The computer energized the nafses with the genome codes, brought out from the parents' genome codes sequentially. Thus we were created virtually.
- We were put into the Master Design as players. The Master Design was further adjusted, and the fates of living creatures were extracted and written.
- The force fields that were needed to produce the Kursi were extracted from the Nafsin-Wahidatin, and the Kursi was produced.
- The leftover part of the Nafsin-Wahidatin was used to produce the Big Bang. The real universe began with the laws and initial configuration found out from the Master Design.
- In the real universe the angels, automated by the same computer, control us according to the fate.

The creation story is duly supported by the Quran and Hadith. It will be clear when the matters will be discussed deliberately under appropriate Verses.

## **5. How the God sustains and evolves the universes by infusing several of His elementary souls into the Space**

We have got some idea about the soul. Now we can discuss how Allah, having a form, can be everywhere?

The nafs (soul) of a human being is a combination of unknown force fields (elementary souls / ruhhs). Similarly, the nafs (soul) of Allah is a combination of known and unknown force fields (elementary souls / ruhhs). His nafs permeates His body in form.

Allah in form is in the Arsh. But, He exists everywhere by extending several force fields (elementary souls / ruhhs) of His nafs into the universes:

“Moreover, He did *istawa* into the Sky (initial single-sky-universe) while it had been smoke...”

[Al Quran 41:11-12]

If His nafs comprises 99 force fields (elementary souls / ruhhs), He may have extended 10 to 12 into this universe. He designed the extended force fields at His will to act in fixed patterns and

infused (did *istawa*) those into the universe to sustain and evolve the creations. We view several effects of the infused force fields as the natural laws.

Allah has extended the force fields (elementary souls / ruhhs) like hands / wings extending from a body. He sustains this universe (Samawaat) by the right hands of His nafs:

“And not they honored Allah—true honor—while, on the Day of Resurrection, the Land (the Land of Judgment) is assembling **in His hand**, and the Skies (this Universe) rolled-up **in His right hand**. Glory be to Him! And high is He above what they associate!” [Al Quran 39: 67]

Both the hands, mentioned in above Verse, are right hands of His nafs in light of the Hadith.

So, He sustains the Arsh by the left hands of His nafs:

“Allah is He Who raised the Skies without deliberate designing (*bighayri amadin*) that ye can see. Then He did *istawa* into the Arsh. He has subjected the sun and the moon! Each one runs for a term appointed. He doth regulate all affairs...” [Al Quran 13:2]

Allah designed the universe as Seven Skies and left it on fixed natural laws to evolve. So, the above Verse says: *"Allah is He Who raised the Skies without deliberate designing (bighayri amadin)..."* We see the evolution of the universe by different scientific methods. This universe is not deliberately designed in comparison to the Arsh and the Jannaat.

The above Verse says that: *"Then He did istawa into the Arsh..."* It does not mean that He left the Samawaat. He did *istawa* into the Arsh by the left hand of His nafs. He controls the Jannaat through the Arsh. The Arsh and Jannaat are deliberately designed.

Finally, the above Verse says: *"He has subjected the sun and the moon! Each one runs for a term appointed. He doth regulate all affairs..."* This part of the Verse confirms that Allah has not withdraw His *istawa* from the Samawaat. Some of the natural laws are effects of His infused force fields (elementary souls / ruhhs). And, in end of this cycle, the Universe will remain rolled up in His right hand: *"...while, on the Day of Resurrection, the Land (the Land of Judgment) is assembling in His hand, and the Skies (this Universe) rolled-up in His right hand..."* [Al Quran 39: 67]

In addition, Allah has extended several force fields (elementary souls / ruhhs) from His face / chest. These elementary souls are not designed to act in fixed patterns. He uses these for special purposes. These are called Holy Souls. If a Holy Soul (Ruhul Quddus) is infused into Gabriel for a specific act, then Gabriel is over-powered, and he may be called Ruhul Quddus for that act. For example, one may say,

"Ruhul Quddus planted a clone baby with specialties into the womb of Mary". But, one should not say, "One night at Madinah, Ruhul Quddus was walking with Prophet Muhammad (pbuh)" Here, one should call him Gabriel. The same it is in case of Jesus Christ when he is called Ruhullah (Soul of God) and Qalamullah (Word of God). For example, one may say that Isa Ruhullah and Qalamullah said: *"I am the light of the world"* [John 14:10, Holy Bible], because in this Verse "I" means "Allah", as it is said in the Quran: *"Allah is the light of the Skies and Lands..."* [Al Quran 24:35].

A few extended elementary souls (force fields / ruhhs) of His hands are discussed below:

- a. Gravitational Force
- b. Dark Energy
- c. Vacuum Energy
- d. Quantum Force Fields
- e. Overall Activities

### **5a. Gravitational Force**

The activities that are done by gravitational force are mentioned in the Quran as the activities of Allah. Allah holds the flying birds. He rotates the Earth. He moves the stars:

"Do they not see the birds, controlled in the atmosphere of the Sky? None holds them except Allah. Most surely, there are signs in this for a people who believe" [Al Quran 16:79]

“Do they not observe the birds above them, spreading their wings and folding them in? None holds them except Most Gracious. Truly, it is He that watches over all things.”

[Al Quran 67:19]

A bird flies in the air by spreading and folding its wings. But, it would be weightless and off-balanced if it were not held by gravity through its center of gravity (CG). The holding of birds by gravity is expressed in above Verses as an act of Allah, and Allah only.

Allah not only holds the birds, He drives the astral objects too. The following Verse talks about the act:

“He covers the night with the day, seeking it rapidly, and the sun and the moon and the stars controlled by His deed.” [Al Quran 7:54]

Allah holds the birds. He covers the night with the day (rotates the Earth). He drives the astral objects, like the stars. So, the gravity is a force of Allah.

A force field in a living being (Allah) should be called soul. So, the Gravitational Force Field is an elementary soul (a ruh) of Allah, which is extending from His nafs (main / composite soul), permeating His body in form.

'Allah in form' normally stays in the Arsh, beyond the universes. He has extended the elementary souls to sustain the Universe (Samawaat).

The force exposes through the deposits of matter. So, we find that the Earth is holding the birds. Actually, it is Allah Who is holding the birds through the Earth. He is the Sustainer. He sustains the stars through the galaxies, the planets through the stars, and the birds through the Earth.

A soul should act on the will of its owner. But, Allah has designed the elementary soul (Gravitational Force) to act in fixed patterns. However, He is always in control.

The Gravitational Force looks like an inert universal force. But, the Universe is perfectly designed (fine-tuned), which proves that the force belongs to an intelligent entity (Allah). We may think on the Sun, the Earth and the Moon:

“And the Moon, We have ordained for it phases till she returns like the date-stalk the old.

It is not permitted to the Sun to catch up the Moon, nor can the Night outstrip the Day, but all are in 'a ship' (Milky Way galaxy) they are floating.

And a Sign for them is that We bore their race in the loaded Ark (of Noah); And We have created for them similar (vessels) on which they ride.

[Al Quran 36:39-42]

The Moon is working as a natural calendar for the common people. To be a good natural calendar, it had to be big enough to appear *like the date-stalk the old* (thin crescent) in the end.

And, the big-enough Moon with correct mass and distance produces measured tides that drive the oceanic currents.

But, the Sun, exposing powerful gravitational force, should catch up such a big Moon and make it a planet. So, *it is not permitted to the Sun to catch up the Moon*.

The problem of having a big Moon could be solved by increasing the distance from the Sun. But, in that case, the Night would *outstrip the Day*.

Moreover, the proximity of the Sun ensures correct heating of the atmosphere, which produces the winds.

The gravitational force, one of the extended elementary souls (force fields / ruhhs) of Allah, is designed at His will to act in fixed patterns. And, the masses and the distances of the Sun, the Earth, and the Moon are correctly balanced. They produce correct currents in the oceans and correct winds in the atmosphere. The correct currents and winds help our sailing ships to move safely. The boat of Noah too was helped.

Such is the tuning by God! The person that finds the gravity as an independent universal force has lost his soul.

**Note:**

In above Verse, the Arabic word "*falakin*" means "a ship". Its trilateral root "*falak*" means "space". So, "*falakin*" may be understood as "a space ship". A galaxy is like a space ship that carries the stars and the other objects. The sun and the moon are floating in "a space ship" / "*falakin*". So, "*falakin*" means the "Milky Way galaxy".

Allah did *istawa* (infused an elementary soul / Gravitational Force) into the early single-sky-universe. The universe was full of smoke (hydrogen and helium mainly) at that time:

“Moreover, He did *istawa* into the Sky while it had been smoke...”

[Al Quran 41:11-12]

The Gravitational Force concentrated the smoke to form the heavier elements.

[The universe may have been run through a process of 'Contraction and Big Bounce' to produce the heavier elements. Or, the heavier elements may have been produced in the early hot stars.]

The heavier elements formed the dusts and the asteroids, which are called lands (*ard*) in the next part of the Verses:

“...He said to it (smoke) and to the lands (formed after His *istawa* into the

early single-sky-universe), “Come ye together, willingly or unwillingly.”...”  
[Al Quran 41: 11-12]

He distributed the smoke and the heavier elements (lands) in such a way that the single-sky-universe took the form of seven-sky-universe:

“...They said, “We do come in willing obedience.” So, He completed them as Seven Skies in two days and inspired in each sky its affairs...”  
[Al Quran 41: 11-12]

The distribution of matter formed the skies. The skies are 'waves of space', one inside another—like the peels of onion. There are seven skies in the Universe. Each sky contains many galaxies [the skies are deliberately discussed in Section-7 of Chapter-2].

Therefore, the gravitational force is not from the Nafsin-Wahidatin (GUT Force +). It is an elementary soul (force field / ruh) of Allah, which He extended, designed, and infused into the space of this universe.

Allah does not need to remain concentrated on the Universe to sustain its objects. He designed the elementary soul (Gravitational Force) to act in fixed patterns, and the initial universe was configured to evolve as desired.

Allah set the laws and configuration the Universe on the 'Day of Law' (*Yawm-id-Deen*):

“Most Gracious, Most Merciful;  
Master of the Day of Law.”

[Al Quran 1:3-4]

Thereby, He is sustaining the universes from the Arsh existing beyond.

### **5b. Dark Energy**

In 1990's, the scientists of “1A Supernova Cosmological Project” and “High-Z Search Team” discovered that the expansion of the Universe was accelerating. On the basis of this observation, astronomers deduce that the Universe possesses “Dark Energy” that is causing the acceleration.

On the other hand, the Quran says that Allah created the Sky with Support, and He is the Expander:

“And the Sky, We constructed it with support, and indeed We surely are Expanders” [Al Quran 51:47]

The Dark Energy may be the support that is expanding the skies. A universe with skies should have extra energy to expand.

The Dark Matter is known by its likely gravitational effect on the matter, and its particles, with which it may be made of, have measurable evidence of its existence. By contrast, the Dark Energy remains in complete mystery. The name Dark Energy refers to the fact that some kind of stuff must fill the vast reaches of mostly empty space in the

Universe in order to be able to make space accelerate in its expansion. In this sense, the Dark Energy is like a magnetic field working as a repulsive force to accelerate the expansion of the Universe.

So, the force of expansion, which is known as the Dark Energy, may be one of the extended elementary souls (force fields / ruhhs) of Allah. He may have infused the extended part of the elementary soul with the energy of support. According to the above Verse, Allah is the Expander.

### 5c. Vacuum Energy

Scientists predict the presence of “Vacuum Energy” in the space: “*Vacuum Energy is an underlying background energy that exists in space throughout the entire Universe*” – *Wikipedia, The Free Encyclopedia*

The Vacuum Energy is highly intense ( $10^{113}$  joules per cubic meter), but it does not destroy us; it is zero in our dimension.

Many Atheists argue that the Universe could be created from nothing, because the empty space possesses energy. But it may be Allah’s light that is permeating the 'Skies and Lands' (Samawaat-wal-Ard / this Universe):

“Allah is the light of the 'Skies and Lands' (this Universe)...”

[Al Quran 24: 35]

His light does not burn everything because it is held in one or more of His extended elementary

souls (force fields / ruhhs). Or, the light itself may be an extended elementary soul of Allah.

His light does not spill out to form the subatomic particles. The subatomic particles are produced from the Nafsin-Wahidatin.

#### **5d. Quantum Force Fields**

The creations are sustained in the extended elementary souls (force fields / ruhhs) of Allah. Everything is dependent on Him for its very existence.

He is the sustainer and evolver from the level of subatomic particles and every inert thing is devotedly obedient to Him. He says, “Be” and it is!

“To Him is due the primal origin of the Skies and Lands; when He decrees a matter, He says to it, "Be", and it is.”

[Al Quran 2:117]

So, many of the force fields, predicted in the Quantum Mechanic, may be extended parts of His elementary souls (ruhhs).

But, one should not mix up creation with Allah. His extended elementary souls sustain and drive only. They do not produce subatomic particles.

The subatomic particles are produced by the force fields provided to the creation in the package of Nafsin-Wahidatin (GUT Force+).

Allah provided the Nafsin-Wahidatin from His own Nafs, and it (Nafsin-Wahidatin) became a

separate entity. Subsequently, the Nafsin-Wahidatin was fragmented, redesigned and recombined in different proportions to create the elements of the universes and the nafses of atoms and the living creatures.

The products of the Nafsin-Wahidatin are held in the extended elementary souls (force fields / ruhhs) of Allah from the level of subatomic particle. The products do not merge with His elementary souls. A product remains separate even in the form of wave.

### **5e. Overall Activities**

The experiment carried out by Alain Aspect and his Team in 1982 provides strong evidence that even at great distances entangled subatomic particles remain connected to one another. If two subatomic particles are emitted from the same source, one influences the other instantly, whatever is the distance. So, the modern Quantum Mechanics suggests that the Universe is not made of separate elements, but it is an unbroken singular entity.

The extended elementary souls (force fields / ruhhs) of Allah may cause the entanglement. The souls permeate the entire Universe. A creation, such as an electron, may remain connected to its sister components through these souls.

The extended elementary souls (force fields / ruhhs) of Allah are also designed as the sustainers to keep the subatomic particles entangled to each other.

Allah comes to know everything instantly. The Universe spans billions of light years across. He

has absolute control on every point of the Universe. He can do whatever He may want to do at any place at any time. He says, “Be”, and it is!

## 6. Summary

Allah has a form like a human-form. 'He in form' is in the Arsh, existing beyond the universes.

The nafs (main / composite soul) of Allah is a combination of many known and unknown force fields (elementary souls / ruhhs). His nafs permeates His 'body in form'.

Allah has extended several elementary souls (force fields / ruhhs) of His nafs beyond His 'body in form'—like hands / wings extended from a body. He has infused (did *istawa*) the extended parts of the elementary souls into the space of the universes to sustain and evolve the objects.

His extended elementary souls (force fields / ruhhs) are designed at His will to act in fixed patterns. We view several of their effects as the natural laws.

Allah sustains and evolves this universe by His right-hand extensions. He sustains and evolves the Arsh and the Jannaat (another universe) by His left-hand extensions. We may call these extensions as His hands.

Allah in form has two physical hands (hands in form) as well. If a person can go to Arsh and can visit Allah, he will see Him like a human. The person will not see the hands of His nafs exposing from His body in form, because the hands of forces (exposing parts of some elementary souls / ruhhs) are invisible.

However, he may feel / see immense power and light exposing from His body in form.

The creations, such as the forces and particles of an atom, are also designed to act in fixed patterns. They act being sustained in the extended elementary souls of Allah.

The creations should not be mixed up with Him. The light radiated from an electric bulb is destined to be absorbed by some other creation(s); the light cannot merge with His light, permeating intensely His body in form and the entire space of the Universe.

## **7. Conclusion**

Allah alone sustains and evolves the inert universes. None can help Him in this aspect—an atom is too small to help, and a universe is too big:

"It is Allah Who sustains the Skies and Lands (Samawaat-wal-Ard / this Universe) lest they cease, and if they should fail, there is none, not one, can sustain them thereafter. Verily, He is Most Forbearing, Oft-Forgiving."

[Al Quran 35: 41]

Allah alone can do it, because He is evolving the universes in a single time-scale, starting on the Day of Law:

“Praise be to the God, the Sustainer and Evolver of the universes; Most Gracious, Most Merciful; Master of the Day of Law (Yawm-id-Deen).”

[Al Quran 1: 2-4]

Allah determined the laws and set the initial configuration of the Universe on the Day of Law (Yawm-id-Deen). So, He is called Master of the Day of Law. He is the designer of space. He is Time:

“On the authority of Abu Hurayrah, who said that the Messenger of Allah said, Allah says: “Children of Adam inveigh against Time; I am Time; I change the day and night.”

[Hadith-e-Qudsi, Bukhari, Muslim]

The space is created and designed by the extended and infused elementary souls (force fields / ruhhs) of Allah. The effects of the elementary souls are viewed by us as the acts of Time [the space-time is discussed in Section-7 of Chapter-2].

However, the living creatures have diversified activities. So, He had predicted their fates and invested angels to monitor them. The Empire of Angels is automated by a huge cybernetic system [discussed in Section-9 of Chapter-6].

'Allah in form' comes down into the First (Innermost) Sky by extending His Kursi. He asks the angels about the humans they have worked for. The angels say, 'You already know what they have done'

(or words to that effect), because, though 'Allah in form' usually remains in the Arsh, He exists everywhere by His extended elementary souls (force fields / ruhhs), permeating the entire creations. Allah says, 'Even then you say what they have done' (or words to that effect). It means that Allah intensely checks the activities of the angels, as they record the deeds of humans, which will affect their resurrection and afterlife.

[How the fates were determined and monitored is discussed in Section-9 of Chapter-6]

People ask questions. Following discussions will answer several of those:

#### **7a. Dissimilar Physical Body**

The nafs (main / composite soul) of a human is a combination of unknown force fields (elementary souls / ruhhs). It may include the known force fields as well, in modified form. His physique is created from the atoms (matter). And, he is an expression of the genome code.

'Allah in form' may be similar, but He is eternal, extremely intelligent, and capable. His nafs may include many force fields (elementary souls / ruhhs) that He has not given to the creation. And, His 'body in form' may include many elements that He has not given to the creation. His 'body in form' is good for all the dimensions of the space. He in form is fit for all universes. He is not dependant on anything. He is unimaginably high.

## **7b. Dissimilar Soul (Nafs)**

The nafs (main / composite soul) of a human is a combination of unknown force fields (elementary souls / ruhhs). But, sitting in a room, a human cannot extend one or more of his elementary souls (force fields / ruhhs) into a side room and see what is happening there.

The nafs of Allah is similar. But, several elementary souls (force fields / ruhhs) of His nafs are extended into the creations. He is the sustainer and evolver from the level of sub-atomic particles. He sees and hears everything. He says, “Be,” and it is!

## **7c. His Control on His Nafs**

Allah has immense control on His nafs (main / composite soul). Otherwise, He could not extend several elementary souls (force fields / ruhhs) of His nafs beyond His body in form.

If Allah has so much control on His nafs, He should be able to change His material body (body in form) at will, and He should be able to retract His extended elementary souls into His body in form.

So, one should not be surprised if Allah appears on the Land of Judgment in a casual human shape. According to the Hadith, on the Day of Judgment, initially He will come as a normal human being. But, humans will not accept Him as Allah. Then, He will return and will come back ceremonially by extending His Kursi. He will come back after the marshalling of angels, jinns and humans.

At present, Allah lives in a special domain of the Arsh. He cannot be approached due to his extreme light and power, because His extended elementary souls are thrusting with extreme powers to sustain and evolve the universes. At present, He comes out of His domain by extending His Kursi that provides protection to the near creation to some extent.

But, on the Day of Judgment, the universes will be contracted and close to each other. So, His extended elementary souls (force fields / ruhhs) will largely retract into His body in form. So, He in form will be approachable and clearly visible.

#### **7d. He on His Path**

It is likely that Allah was a simple eternal nafs (composite soul) long before He started the creation. A nafs is conscious by nature. He developed Himself gradually to a state where He had a form like a human.

There was absolute darkness all-around. It was a painful experience for Him. Thus, to Him 'darkness' and 'torture' (*zulum*) are synonymous. He created the Arsh and a huge quantity of water (now given to the Jannaat mainly). But, the water could not remove the darkness.

So, He separated another part (Nafsin-Wahidatin) of His nafs and commanded, "Let there be Light". The Nafsin-Wahidatin disintegrated and the light (Electromagnetic Force Field) appeared. It released other forces also, i.e., the Strong Nuclear Force Field, the Weak Nuclear Force Field and the

unknown Force Fields. Thus, the creation of this universe (Samawaat) began.

He had created the Pen, the Kursi, and the nafs of living creatures from the same Nafsin-Wahidatin, before He began the creation of this universe.

Allah initiated the creation at a suitable stage of His personal development. Today, He is the creator, sustainer and evolver of the giant universes. He is a great performer. We are nothing in front of Him even in a comparative scale. He is a successful God indeed. He is one and only.

So, Praise be to Allah, the Sustainer and Evolver of the universes (Alamin); Most Gracious, Most Merciful; Master of the Day of Law.

### **7e. Absolute Creation and Annihilation**

Allah exists forever. He was never created. He separated parts of His nafs and transformed those into creations. So, He created by transformation. Absolute creation is not possible for Him [It is a positive quality of Allah].

Nothing can be annihilated as well. A thing can be transformed only. Absolute annihilation is not possible for Allah [It is a positive quality of Allah]. If Allah destroys an entity absolutely, the ultimate products (photons) will be with Him.

We are humans. We take birth. We view creation as the way of coming into reality. Though we are repeatedly told that Allah was never created or He did not take birth, a question remains in the deep of

our hearts: ‘Is it true?’ We cannot perceive the reality. Allah is Eternal. The creations have beginnings and ends relating to the transformation.

According to the Hadith, Allah cannot send a thing beyond His creation [It is a positive quality of Allah]. There is no space beyond His creation where He could push a thing out. If it were tried hard, the thing would return to its originality and would still be with Him.

#### 7f. **Believe the Quran only**

Finally, a human mind cannot perceive the greatness of Allah. So, believe what are clearly taught in the Quran.

Most Gracious, Most Merciful  
Master of the ‘Day of Law’ (Malik Yawm-id-Deen).

#### **Remarks:**

The Verse, “*Malik Yawm-id-Deen*”, is normally translated as “Master of the Day of Judgment”.

“*Malik*” means “Master”.

“*Yawm*” means “Day”.

But, “*Deen*” does not mean “Judgment”.

“Deen” is sometimes translated as “Religion” or “System”, but the “Day of Religion” or the “Day of System” does not mean anything.

What “Yawm-id-Deen” should actually mean here?

Commonly, the Arabic word “Deen” means “Law”. The word is found in Aramaic and Hebrew as well, where it clearly means “Law”.

So, proper and honest translation of “Yawm-id-Deen” should be “Day of Law”.

So, I have translated the Verse as “*Master of the Day of Law*”.

People translate “Yawm-id-Deen” as “Day of Judgment” because they cannot perceive how there can be a “Day of Law”.

This Universe has a Day of Law (Yawm-id-Deen) at the beginning. And, if the universe collapse and reinitiate, the reviving universe too will have a Day of Law at the beginning.

Understanding the “Day of Law” (Yawm-id-Deen) is important to know the God’s Model of the Universe (Samawaat). How it relates to our fates, and why should we pray, “Guide us to the Straight Path”? It is discussed under the following headings:

1. Day of Law
2. Creation of Universe and the Past Day of Law
3. Ensuing Day of Law
4. Events of the Ensuing Day of Law

## **1. Day of Law**

The universe evolves according to the natural laws. Allah set the laws at the beginning of the universe. The day, He set the laws, should be called the "Day of Law".

The laws determine how the universe should develop in time. Thus, everything links to the initial Universe. For example, an apple needs a specific kind of tree to grow, the tree needs specific Sun and Earth to grow, the Sun and the Earth needed a specific galaxy to originate, the galaxy needed a specific Big Bang to originate—everything grew up step-by-step; a minor deviation at any step would not produce the apples we eat today. The deviation was not possible as well, because the natural laws (*deen*) are fixed.

So, it was the laws and configuration of the initial universe which determined that the apples would grow on an Earth about 13 billion years later.

Our fates too got determined due to the laws and configuration of the initial universe. Today, an event stands on the past and impacts the future; a change from predetermined path cannot come to reality. If a person is a King, he was predetermined to be the King on the Day of Law.

*“The initial configuration of the universe may have been chosen by God, or it may itself have been determined by the laws of science. In either case, it would seem that everything in the universe would then be determined by evolution according to the laws of science, so it is difficult to see how we can be masters of our fate.”—Is Everything Determined by Stephen Hawking in “Black holes and Baby Universes and Other Essays” (BANTUM Book 0553406639).*

However, it may be other way round as well. The laws and configuration of the initial universe may have been determined to fulfill our fates:

Hadith: “The fate of everybody was written fifty thousand years before the creation” [Tirmizi]

In Section-9 of Chapter-6, I have discussed according to the Quran and the Hadith that Allah made a virtual universe in His computer as the Master Design. We were created in the Master Design by our genome codes and nafs where we passed our virtual lives in a holographic Earth. The virtual universe was adjusted to fulfill our needs.

From that virtual universe, Allah must have found out the best possible laws and configuration of the initial universe and initiated the creation accordingly in the Super Space.

The 'Day of Law' is better understood by the idea of Stephen Hawking:

*“...there should exist a set of laws that completely determines the evolution of the Universe from its initial state...Yet how can a certain number of equations account for the complexity and trivial detail that we see around us? Can one really believe that the grand unified theory has determined that Sinead O'Connor will be the top of the hit parade this week, or that Madonna will be on the cover of Cosmopolitan?”*

– *Is Everything Determined* by Stephen Hawking in “Black holes and Baby Universes and Other Essays” (BANTUM Book 0553406639).

To come to a solution, Hawking suggests:  
*“...in the very early universe, everything was very*

*close together, so there was quite a lot of uncertainty, and there were number of possible states for the universe. These different possible early states would have evolved into a whole family of different histories for the universe...There would be a history in which the Nazis won the Second World War, though the probability was low. But we just happen to live in a history in which the Allies won the war and Madonna was on the cover of Cosmopolitan.”*

– *Is Everything Determined* by Stephen Hawking in “Black holes and Baby Universes and Other Essays” (BANTUM Book 0553406639).

Hawking suggests that the trivial details of the universe arose from the uncertainty principle. The idea is ridiculous. Hawking himself was not satisfied with his explanation, as he wrote: “*I don’t claim any great originality or depth, but it is the best I can do at the moment*”. He added that: “*It doesn’t make much difference whether this determinism is due to an omnipotent God or to the laws of science. Indeed, one could always say that the laws of science are the expression of the will of God*”.

Allah designed the atomic forces and subatomic particles and fixed their laws. He configured the initial universe by His extended elementary souls (force fields / ruhhs), designed to act in fixed patterns that we view as some of the natural laws. The period, in which He configured the universe and fixed the laws, is the “Day of Law” (Yawm-id-Deen).

A tree is produced from a seed. Similarly, the tiny initial universe was configured to form the universe of today.

However, it would be absurd to think that everything was designed in the primordial soup where all the radiations up to Cambrian Evolution had been loaded. There were multiple infusions of new information along the way. Allah is the Evolver.

A living cell is unimaginably complex. There could not be enough information in the initiating universe to build the genome. Allah created the first living creature in the water.

Thus, the creation of universe and the creation of living creatures come up in the Quran as separate acts of Allah:

“Do not the unbelievers see that the  
Skies and the Lands were joined  
together before We clove them  
asunder? We made from water every  
living thing. Will they not then  
believe?” [Al Quran 21:30]

## **2. Creation of Universe and the Past Day of Law**

Scientists find evidences that the Universe started from a super-hot, super-dense Singularity (Big Bang).

The Singularity is a point of space-time where the natural laws break down; one cannot predict what will come out of a Singularity.

We can start the story from the time just after the beginning when the temperature of the primordial fireball was a million million degrees. Matter could not exist at that state; it was in the form of radiation. As the universe expanded, the temperature reduced, and the radiation turned into matter.

*“The primordial fireball contained the reactions which led to the present distribution of hydrogen and helium 75% and 25% respectively, a balance that explains the evolution of stars. Very small changes in the nature of the primordial fireball would have had an immense effect on the universe. If certain atomic forces had been only slightly greater, then all the hydrogen would have become an isotope of helium and no long-lived stars could exist as they do at present. They would have been explosive. Stars would have formed but they would have used up all their energy in a very short time. There would have been no star like the sun, which gives an output of energy for thousands of millions of years. It is only with the stability on this time scale the life can evolve. If things had been just a little bit different at the beginning, therefore, there could have been no life, and the universe would be unknowable”*

– *Dawn of a New Era* by Sir Bernard Lovell in  
The Encyclopedia of Space Travel and Astronomy  
edited by John Man

*“These things are to me immensely strange. Is it not extraordinary that the possibility of talking here this afternoon depends on events which were very*

*narrowly determined over 10,000 million years ago in the very earliest moments of the universe?”*

– *Dawn of a New Era* by Sir Bernard Lovell in *The Encyclopedia of Space Travel and Astronomy*.

Allah set the laws and configuration of the initial universe. He is the Sustainer and Evolver as well. He has evolved the universe to a state where a complex creature like us can live. There are more than 92 elements in the Earth. Each element follows desirable laws. We have perfect atmosphere and magnetic field. We live in a perfect solar system. We have everything we need.

### **3. Ensuing Day of Law**

The universe is expanding. Due to the gravitational force, the universe may collapse into a state of singularity. The Singularity at the end of the universe is called Big Crunch.

From the Big Crunch, the Universe may be born again.

*“But it is also possible that expansion (of the universe) will be reversed by the pull of gravity, that all matter will collapse once again into a super-dense ‘singularity’, and that another universe will be born in another Big Bang- a cycle that could be repeated forever”.*

– *To the Edge of Eternity* by John Gribbin in *The Encyclopedia of Space Travel and Astronomy* edited by John Man.

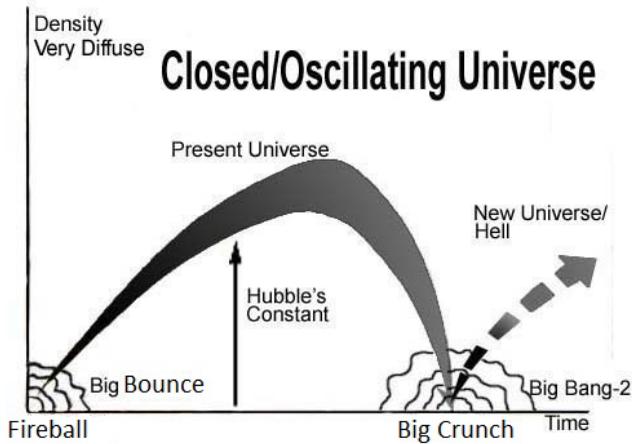


FIGURE 1.12: Cyclic Universe

According to the Quran too, the Universe will collapse and revive:

“On the day when We will roll up the Skies (Samawaat / this Universe) like the rolling up of the scroll for writings; as We originated the first creation, We shall reproduce it—a promise on Us; surely We will bring it about.”

[Al Quran 21:104]

The universe will collapse. Again on a mighty day, the collapsed universe will be re-initiated with its laws and configuration re-fixed.

According to the above Verse, the Universe will be reproduced as the first creation was originated. So, it will collapse into the state of Big Crunch and

will restart as the Big Bang-2. That is the ensuing Day of Law (ensuing Yawm-id-Deen).

In the ensuing Day of Law, mankind will be resurrected, ascended and assembled for Judgment on a specially created object (Land of Judgment) in the Super Space:

“And not they honored Allah—true honor—while, on the Day of Resurrection, the Land (the Land of Judgment) is assembling in His hand, and the Skies (Samawaat / this Universe) rolled-up in His right hand. Glory be to Him! And high is He above what they associate!”

[Al Quran 39: 67]

After the Judgment, resurrected humans will be moved to the new destinations, either in the re-created Samawaat (this universe containing the objects of hell) or in the Jannaat (another universe / paradise), to live forever as forgotten or rewarded vicegerents of God.

The Verse under discussion is talking about the ensuing Day of Law. The Final Judgment is an event of that Day. So, “Yawm-id-Deen” can be identified (identified only) as the “Day of Judgment”.

#### **4. Events of the Ensuing Day of Law**

Humans are created to be the vicegerents of God over the lands scattered in the universes (Samawaat and

Jannaat). But, now, on the Earth, we have no power as His vicegerents, because we are undergoing tests to confirm who deserves what?

The earthly life is needed for one's maturity as well.

Humans will be sent to their eternal destinations on the next Day of Law. The knowledge about the Day will keep one informed about the situations. Otherwise, a blind will remain blind on the Day of Judgment as well:

“But those who were blind in this world, will be blind in the hereafter, and most astray from the Path.”

[Al Quran 17:72]

So, the knowledge about the Day is crucial in light of the Quran and Hadith. Allah is Merciful:

“And indeed, the wicked surely in hellfire. They will burn it.

The Day of Law! And they are not absent from it.

And, what can make you know what the Day of Law is!

Then, what can make you know what the Day of Law is!

The Day, not will have power a soul for a soul, anything, and the command that Day with Allah”

[Al Quran 82: 14-19]

“The Messenger of Allah said, “When Allah wishes good for someone, He bestows upon him the understanding of Deen.” [Bukhari, Muslim]

In the following, I have discussed according to the Quran how the next Day of Law is approaching, and what are the important events of the Day:

1. Before 1920s, scientists had the idea that the universe was static. A static universe should collapse due to gravitational force. So, the scientists presumed that the universe was infinite, and the gravitational force was repulsive at a very large distance, which maintain the balance. Moreover, an infinite universe did not have a center to collapse.

An infinite universe should be eternal. So, the idea of a Creator was not needed in the concept.

That was the time of the so-called progressive people, following Marx, Darwin and Freud!

However, in 1826, a German Astronomer, Wilhelm Olbers, put forward a question, how there could be dark nights in a static and infinite universe?

In a static and infinite universe, there should be infinite number of stars, and all stars emit light. The energy has no destruction. The light of a star should come to the Earth at some point of time. Once the light of a star had arrived, it would continue to come forever. So, in a static and infinite universe, our every line of sight should end on the surface of a star, and the whole sky should appear as bright as the star.

Scientists calculate that if the universe were static, the sky would be 40,000 times brighter than the sun at noon.

Nobody could answer why the nights were dark? So, it became known as the “Olber’s Paradox”.

The Paradox was resolved in 1920s when Edwin Hubble demonstrated that the universe was expanding. The expansion dissipates the light and reduces its intensity throughout the universe. So, there are dark nights and sunlit days on the Earth.

Now the scientists exclaim why they did not understand the expansion of universe, much before Hubble’s discovery, only by the Olber’s Paradox, because the dark nights and the sunlit days can exist in an expanding universe only!

It was mentioned in the Quran as a sign of its divinity:

“What! Are you more difficult  
creation, or the sky?  
He constructed it; He raised its  
thickness and proportioned it—and He  
darkened its night and brought out a  
morning there of”

[Al Quran 79: 27-29]

The skies (spherical 'waves of space', one inside another), carrying heavy and light elements together, have expanded. So, the matter is proportionally distributed throughout the space. So, the darkness prevails, and the sunrise can bring out a morning.

Therefore, the Quran talks about the expansion of the universe with a definite sign that does not need Hubble's Discovery.

“So verily I swear by the receding ships (galaxies) disappear, and the night as it departs, and the dawn as it breathes.” [Al Quran 81: 15-18]

2. What is the future of the universe? The Quran is true about the past. So, it should be true about the future as well:

“On the day when We will roll up the Skies (Samawaat / this Universe) like the rolling up of the scroll for writings...” [Al Quran 21:104]

The universe will collapse by rolling up the skies. The collapsed universe will be squeezed to an extent that the matter will disappear. The Universe will be in the state of Big Crunch.

The Singularity at the beginning of the Universe is called Big Bang, and the Singularity at the end of the Universe is called Big Crunch. The Singularity can be compared with a super-massive black hole.

To understand the universe at the state of Big Crunch, we may discuss what would happen to an object if it falls into a black hole:

If a space ship is falling into a black hole, it is elongating like spaghetti due to the difference

between extreme gravitational force on its tip and its tail. The ship, elongated like spaghetti, will be wrapped around the spinning black hole. Its particles will gain energy from the gravitational field and join to the accretion disk, and its anti-particles (neutrons), having opposite momentum, will fall into the black hole.

Eventually, the light of the space ship will be frozen in the compact space winding around the event horizon. It can never fall into the black hole because the more it approaches the black hole, the slower the time is. The light will preserve the complete information (photons) of the ship.

Thereby, matter will be annihilated, but the ship will exist as information.

So, in the end, this universe will collapse into a point where the information of all objects will survive.

Now, Allah is sustaining the universe by the right hand of His nafs comprising several forces. At the time of Big Crunch, there will be no matter to sustain. So, the hands of His nafs will cease into His 'body in form'. The forces exposing from the face of His nafs will sustain the Big Crunch.

“All that on it will perish. But will abide the Face of thy Lord, full of Majesty and Honor.”

[Al Quran 55: 26–27]

“And call not besides God on another god. There is no god but He.

Everything will perish except His own  
Face. To Him belongs the command,  
and to Him will ye be brought back.”

[Al Quran 28:88]

The hand sustaining the Arsh will also cease.  
And all activates of Arsh and Jannaat will freeze.

Subsequently, the Day of Law will begin. The  
universe will be a bright point, held by the forces  
exposing from the face of His nafs.

The end state of the universe may be different  
as well:

The universe is structured into skies. If the  
universe collapses by rolling-up the skies, the galaxies  
may not join with each other to form a Big Crunch  
(Singularity). The galaxies may collapse into their  
central super-massive black holes as super-dense  
singularities, preserving all information. They may  
remain in their relative positions in the super-compact  
space, even when the skies would be rolled-up  
compactly.

According to the Quran and Holy Bible, the  
skies will be rolled-up like a scroll for writing. Here  
the space is represented by a piece of paper. So, the  
galaxies should be represented by the dots on the  
piece of paper. Mathematically, a singularity is a dot  
preserving all information.

Finally, the super-compact skies may be  
pasted on the face of His nafs, and the collapsed  
galaxies may look like bright spots on the face of His  
naf.

3. Allah will have vision of the next universe. He will fix the natural laws again and will configure the universe for revival. He is the Master of the Day of Law (*Malik Yawm-id-Deen*).

Our fates of the next cycle will be designed on that Day (Day of Law), and some will be destined to the hell.

4. From the face of God, the reprogrammed universe will revive. The reviving universe will be moving to the right hand of Allah when the Thaqaal (the heavy mass of the reviving universe) will form, and the resurrection of the dead will occur:

“And when the Land (Thaqaal) is enlarged and casts forth what is within it and becomes empty—and hearkens to its Lord, and it must need”

[Al Quran 84: 3-5]

The Thaqaal will throw out the resurrected creatures and the matter of the Solar System. The ejected matter will form the Land of Judgment (a Satellite Thaqaal) in the Super Space.

“On the Day, the Land (Main Thaqaal) breaks away from them, quickly; that will be a gathering together (in the Land of Judgment / Satellite Thaqaal) quite easy for Us.” [Al Quran 50:44]

“And not they honored Allah—true honor—while, on the Day of Resurrection, the Land (the Land of Judgment) is assembling in His hand, and the Skies (Samawaat / this Universe) rolled-up in His right hand. Glory be to Him! And high is He above what they associate!”

[Al Quran 39: 67]

Thus, at the time of Judgment, there will be two Thaquals in the Super Space: one is the reviving universe (Main Thaqual) held in the right hand of Allah, and the other is the Land of Judgment (Satellite Thaqual) held in the Super Space.

“Soon shall We attend to you, O both ye Heavy Masses (Thaqualani)! Then which of the favors of your Lord will ye deny?” [Al Quran 55:31–32]

The Thaquals (Main Thaqual and Satellite Thaqual) will be in the Eastern Super Sky (Eastern Super Space).

“The Day the land will be changed—other land and the Skies—and they will come forth before Allah, the One, the Irresistible” [Al Quran 14:48]

5. The evolution of the reviving universe will be halted temporarily to carry out the Judgment.

“And among His signs is this that the Sky (Super Sky) and Land (Main Thaqal) stand-still on His command. Then when He calls you by a single call from the Land—behold ye come forth.” [Al Quran 30:25]

6. There is another universe named Jannaat (Paradise):

“Be quick in the race for forgiveness from your Lord and for a Jannaat whose width is that of the Skies and Lands (this Universe), prepared for the righteous...” [Al Quran 3:133]

“Race to forgiveness from your Lord and the Jannaat, the width of which is as the width of the Sky and Land”  
[Al Quran 57:2]

“Because only a few will be saved, God has created two universes instead of only one”  
- 2 ESDRAS 7:50, Holy Bible, GNB

After the Judgment, a part of mankind will be shifted to the Jannaat where they will live forever in peace and satisfaction, as empowered vicegerents of God. Their verbal orders will be materialized instantly.

7. The sinners will be left on the Land of Judgment (Satellite Thaqa). Subsequently, the Land of Judgment will be thrown into the Main Thaqa.

The halted universe (Main Thaqa) will re-start unrolling and expanding. The compact galaxies will re-start reviving just by gaining the volumes of space. Each galaxy, reprogrammed on the Face of God, will capture one sinner allotted to its (galaxy's) lot.

A sinner will live in his galaxy forever in disasters and pains, as forgotten Vicegerent of God. He will not have any divine power.

“Allah created the ‘Skies and Lands’ (this Universe) for just ends and in order that each soul may find the recompense of what it has earned and none of them be wronged.”

[Al Quran 54:22]

“We created not the ‘Skies and Lands and all between them’ (this Universe) merely in sport. We created them not except for just ends. But most of them do not understand. Verily, the day of sorting out is the time appointed for all of them.” [Al Quran 44:38–40]

Eventually, the unrolling universe will take the form of today, but with ever living sinners scattered in the galaxies.



FIGURE 1.13: One Day We will ask Hell, "Art thou filled to the full?" –Al Quran 50:30

That will be the beginning of an endless life either in this universe (Samawaat) containing the objects of hell (galaxies), or in another universe (Jannaat) containing the objects of paradise, full of *hoorain* (maidens with lustrous eyes), gold, precious stones, fruits, meats and rivers of wine.

“Then, he whose balance will be heavy will be in a life of good pleasure and satisfaction. But he whose balance will be light—their mother will be endless-hole (black hole); and what will explain to thee what this is—a fire blazing fiercely.” [Al Quran 101:6-11]

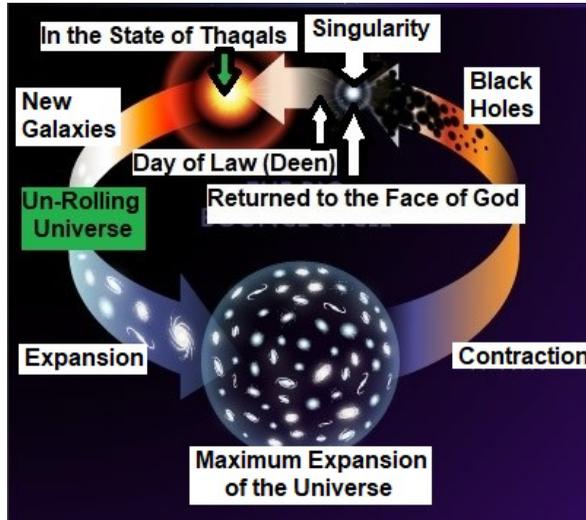


FIGURE 1.14: Moving into the Next Cyclic of Life

All creatures of matter and anti-matter will be resurrected and assembled on the Land of Judgment. One will see the dinosaurs walking on the land. After the resurrection, there is no death. According to Hadith, the animals will be merged with the land. It means that they will be scattered in the objects of the recreated Samawaat. If one wants to live with dinosaurs, demons, and jinns, one may follow a sinful life and live in the Samawaat forever. And the resurrected scorpions will be something to reckon with. And there will be extreme fire, heat, and boiling water, surging.

Thus, follow the Book of God to attain salvation to the Jannaat. Gold and silver are common

building materials over there. Precious stones are falling on the streets like rubbles, neglected.

8. It is the Master Plan of Allah: To create, develop, and delegate His vicegerents (human beings) in two of His great creations (Samawaat and Jannaat) with a view to infuse life in the universes, to deploy intelligence and freedom of thought in the creations, and to open a flexible and interesting way of ruling.

9. On the Earth, humans are undergoing test and development. Here, a human is not empowered as a vicegerent of God, and he has not got his 'Area of Responsibility'. Only a fool will lose in the test of this short earthly life.

“Behold! in the creation of the Skies and Lands and the alternation of night and day—there are indeed signs for men of understanding. Men who celebrate the praises of Allah standing, sitting and lying on their sides, and think on the creation in the Skies and Lands: “Our Lord, Not for naught hast Thou created this! Glory to Thee! Give us salvation from the penalty of the fire. Our Lord, any whom thou dost admit to the fire, truly Thou cover with shame, and never will wrong doers find any helpers”!”

[Al Quran 3:190–192]

The Quran in a well-planned chronology narrates the Creation, Evolution, Dooms Day, Resurrection, Judgment and Salvation. The matter will be amply clear in subsequent Chapters.

If one is here, one will be there too—there is no doubt what so ever—we are creatures of a Mighty Arrogant Creator. He does not fail.

## **Section-2 of Chapter-1 [Verse 5-7]: Submission and Prayer**

Thee do we worship, and Thine aid we seek.

Guide us to the Straight Path, the Path of those on whom Thou hast bestowed Thy grace, those whose is not wrath, and who go not astray.

### **Remarks:**

Who can help in these affairs at astronomical level!  
So, we pray to Allah for salvation.

The Quran narrates the Straight Path and talks about the people on whom Allah has bestowed His grace and the people who earned His anger. Thus, it guides one to His Mercy.

# THE GRAND QURAN



# Introduction

## of the Grand Quran

### **The Quran and the Design of the Tafsir**

#### **1. Who Wrote the Quran?**

The Quran was written by an automated Pen. It is said in the following Verse:

“He Who taught the Pen—Taught man that which he knew not.” [Al Quran 96:3-5]

Allah taught (programmed) the Pen—the Pen wrote the Quran to teach man that which he knew not.

The Pen wrote the Quran in a Saved Disc (Lawh-Mahfuz). It is said in the following Verse:

"Nay, it is a glorious Quran in a Saved Disc (Lawhin-Mahfuzin)" [Al Quran 85:21-22]

The Pen and the Disc are linked to a Motherboard. It is called 'Mother of the Book'. It is said in the following Verse:

“Ha, Mim. By the Book that makes things clear. We have made it a Recitation (Qur'an) in Arabic that ye may be able to understand. And verily, it is in the **Mother of the Book**, in Our Presence, high, full of wisdom.”

[Al Quran 43:1-4]

The Mother of the Book gave birth to the Book. So it is an esteemed system with circuits, devices and programs (Motherboard).

The Pen, the Saved Disc (Lawh-Mahfuz) and the Motherboard (Mother of the Book) jointly make a huge computer. It is the computer of Allah Who created the genome code, the living cell and the brain billions of years ago. It may be a huge rational computer with its disc revolving in the Arsh. The disc may be bigger than the Earth. I call the computer "Computer for the Creations" or "CC" in short.

The language of the computer (CC) is scientific and mathematical. So, the CC translated the Quran as an Arabic Recitation, as the above Verses say.

The CC is called Pen to make it understandable to the old-time-people. It was created at first:

Hadith: “The first thing that was created by Allah was the Pen (CC).” [Tirmizi]

But the Quran is not simply a computer (CC) generated Book. It is discussed below:

Allah made a Virtual Universe in the computer (CC). He created the Virtual Universe as the Master Design. He

created, adjusted and perfected the Master Design personally. He is a great Programmer indeed.

It was most likely a dynamic virtual universe from the beginning to the end in details, on a proportional time-scale. The virtual universe is called Alam-e-Arwah / Alam-e-Mesal by the Sufis.

The high angels of Arsh work around the CC and monitor the events, related to the living creatures, by subordinate angels. The CC may have the ability of holographic projection and to display information as needed.

Allah ran the virtual universe forward and backward, perfected, and began the creation of universe in reality.

We were created in the virtual universe (Master Design) from our genome codes and nafses (souls). It is indicated in the following Verse:

“When thy Lord drew forth from the Children of Adam, from their backs, their descendants (virtual descendants made from the genome codes and the nafses), and made them testify concerning themselves (saying): "Am I not your Lord?" They said: "Yea! We do testify!" Lest ye should say on the Day of Judgment: "Of this we were never mindful"”

[Al Quran 7:172]

Our complete lives were represented in the virtual universe where Allah did not guide us; we guided ourselves according to our free wills and moved ahead by interacting each other in the nature and situations evolving in the virtual / holographic Earth.

One's present life on the Earth is a repetition of the virtual life. It is a repetition, because the laws and the initial configuration of the real universe were deduced from the virtual universe. It is indicated in the following Verses.

“No misfortune can happen on earth or in your souls but is recorded in a Book; **We bring it into existence beforehand**—that is truly easy for God;” [Al Quran 57:22]

“And remember when ye met, He showed them to you as few in your eyes, and He made you appear as contemptible in their eyes: **that Allah might accomplish a matter already enacted.** For to God do all questions go back.”  
[Al Quran 8:44]

So, our earthly lives are repetitions of the virtual lives. However, one can change (by Allah's permission) in respect of Faith, because, the Faith points one to the ultimate destination: paradise / hell.

We moved in the virtual universe according to our free wills, but Allah guided us in some points to solve the clashes and clear the ways ahead. He may have incorporated some tests as well. On the real Earth, we are guided in the same points by angels.

According to the following Hadith, the Pen (computer) wrote our fate:

“The first thing that was created by Allah was the Pen. Allah then ordered the Pen to write. The Pen asked, what should it write? Allah

ordered to write the fate of everybody. The Pen wrote all those would happen from the beginning to the end." [Tirmizi]

Actually, the Pen extracted the fates from the file of virtual universe. It extracted the fates to monitor the living creatures by angels.

The CC works as the Head of a huge cybernetic system that controls the angels. The system is deliberately discussed in Section-9 of Chapter-6.

Therefore, Muhammad (pbuh) preached Islam in his virtual life too. So, the Quran is the words of virtual Muhammad. But, as he was doing a vital job, affecting a great number of people, Allah must have guided him intensely.

Later, the Pen extracted the appropriate words of virtual Muhammad (pbuh). It organized the words as a Book and later translated it as an Arabic recitation.

Moreover, the computer improved the Quran with many Verses:

“Alif, Lam, Ra. A Book, with Verses judged further explained in detail—from One Who is Wise and Well-acquainted.” [Al Quran 11.1]

“Thus do We explain the Verses that they may say, "You have studied" and that We may make it clear to a people who know.”

[Al Quran 6:105]

Finally, Allah edited the Quran:

“Allah does blot out (delete) or confirm (save) what He pleases; with Him is the ‘Mother of the Book’.” [Al Quran 13:39]

Allah wrote a few Verses directly by Himself. We find the Verses in the first person singular number.

Therefore, who wrote the Quran?

To answer, the Pen (the Computer) extracted the Quran from the virtual life of Virtual Muhammad (pbuh). So, the basic Quran is an output of his virtual brain. The computer improved the Quran and translated the Book as an Arabic recitation. Finally, Allah edited.

The finalized Quran was preserved in the Lawh-Mahfuz. Later, Gabriel brought it down.

Note:

1. The computer (CC) is deliberately discussed with related Verses in Section-9 of Chapter-6.
2. The genome code is deliberately discussed with related Verses in Section-3 of Chapter-31

## **2. Revelations through Stages**

Allah sent a big Book to Moses, and many of the Jews were scared seeing its volume. They felt it to be a burden. A few would read, analyze and follow:

“And remember, We took your covenant and We raised above you Mount: Hold firmly to

what We have given you and bring to remembrance what is therein; perchance you may fear Allah.

But you turned back thereafter. Had it not been for the Grace and Mercy of Allah to you, you had surely been among the lost.”

[Al Quran 2:63-64]

Probably so, the Quran was revealed in small parts, following the events of Prophet's (pbuh) life. By the time the revelation was complete in 22 / 23 years, there were many Sahabah (Companions of Prophet Muhammad, pbuh) who had all the Verses memorized, and Islamic societies and culture were set.

### **3. Revelations following Events**

The Verses of the Quran were not revealed in the sequence we find it now. They came in small packets following the events of Prophet's life.

However, the Verses got stored in Prophet's (pbuh) brain in the correct sequence, as we find those in the Quran of today. It happened through a system set by Gabriel:

Gabriel can carry out surgery. He made the zygote of Jesus by cloning a cell of Mary (according to the direction of Allah) and planted it in her womb. Gabriel operated Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) as well, at least thrice; once just before the Night Journey (Miraz).

It seems that when Gabriel embraced Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) in the cave of Hera, he made a channel through his backbone and inserted the data-base of the Quran into his brain. The entry-point of the channel appeared as a

swollen muscle below his neck (Mohr-e-Nobuat). The system took a few months to settle when no Verse came.

Subsequently, the minor angels of Gabriel brought the Verses time to time in the form of memory-data (ruhh) and put those into his brain directly through the Mohr-e-Nobuat. The Verses got stored in the data-base (dhikri) of his brain. So, Prophet (pbuh) got the Quran memorized in correct sequence.

“Move not thy tongue concerning the (Qur'an) to make haste therewith. It is for Us to collect it and to promulgate it. But when We have promulgated it, follow thou its recital. Nay more, it is for Us to explain it.” [Al Quran 75:16-19]

From the brain, the Verses reflected in his mind (qalb) when he had intended to recite [the mind (qalb) is discussed in Section-10 of Chapter-6].

Therefore, the sequence of the Verses and the Chapters is divine. Nobody can change it.

I have divided the Quran into Parts; and the Chapters into Segments, Sections and paragraphs. I have divided without moving a single Verse from its original position. I have done it for rapid and correct comprehension. I could do it because the structure is inborn in the Quran—one will understand it, once one will go through the Tafsir.

I have authority to structure the Quran. It is discussed below:

#### 4. My authority to structure the Quran

The Traditional Scholars may not like dividing the Quran. But the following Verse authorizes me to do it:

“And We have bestowed upon you the Seven Oft-repeated (Surah Al Fatihah) and the Grand Qur'an.

Not extend your eyes towards what we bestowed with the Pairs (Double Helix DNA) of them (Romans and Israelites) and do not grieve over them. And lower your wings to Believers and say, “Indeed, I am a Warner clear”, as We sent down on those who divided, those who have made the Quran in parts.

So, by your Lord, surely We will question them (genetically higher races like Romans and Israelites) all about what they used to do.”

[Al Quran 15: 87-93]

The above Verses are explained below:

The “Pairs” means Double Helix DNA Molecule with which every plant and animal is created.

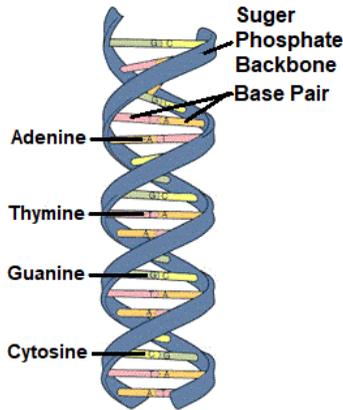


FIGURE 15.12: Azwazan / Pairs / DNA Double Helix

There are several Verses that talk about the “Pairs” (DNA Double Helix).

“Do they not look at the Earth, how many we produced in it—all from Noble Pair (*Min kullay zawgin kareemin*)?” [Al Quran 26:7]

“...And He scattered through it beasts of all kinds—We send down rain from the sky—all from Noble Pair (*Min kullay zawgin kareemin*)” [Al Quran 31:10]

“And the earth; We have spread it out, and set thereon mountains standing firm, and grown therein every kind from Attractive Pair (*Zawgin Baheej*) ...” [Al Quran 50: 7–9]

"That has created Pairs (DNA Double Helix)  
in all things, and has made for you ships  
(wooden ships) and cattle on which you ride"  
[Al Quran 43:12]

"Glory be the One Who created Pairs (DNA  
Double Helix) from what all that the earth  
produces, and of themselves, and of what they  
know not." [Al Quran 36:36]

Above Verses are normally translated in deviated forms where 'Pairs' are translated as 'male-female couples' to match the commonsense understanding. My translations are direct, word-to-word. The Verses point out the DNA Double Helix, with which every living creature is created. The Verses are deliberately discussed in Section-3 of Chapter-31.

Within a species, some are higher in quality and some are lower because of their genome codes.

Allah has made Jews and Romans (Europeans) higher in quality. He has made them white, tall, well-built and intelligent. They discovered the continents hundreds of years ago, they went to the Moon decades back (1969), they have put multifarious satellites throughout the sky, and they have networked the Earth with supercomputers. But, they do not understand the Quran.

The divided and structured Quran and its scientific explanation clearly prove its divinity. Thus, the genetically higher races (Jews and Europeans) that have knowledge to understand, but deny to believe and obey, will be questioned.

So, the Prophet is said not to grieve over them, but to lower his wings to Believers and say, "*Indeed, I am a*

*Warner clear,” as We sent down on those who divided, those who have made the Quran in parts.”*

They (Jews and Europeans) will understand the reality very well, when the common people will be shifted to the Jannaat (another universe / Paradise), and many of them will be left scattered in the galaxies of the recreated universe (Hell) to live forever in disasters and pains, as forgotten Vicegerents of God.

## **5. The Design of the Quran**

When we read the Quran, we find the talks disjointed in many cases. So, it becomes difficult to develop conclusive ideas on many subjects. How a Book from God can have such disjointed talks?

But, the Quran is extremely effective on ground? It is guiding its followers perfectly and efficiently for hundreds of years.

Therefore, there is no problem in the Quran. We need to know the design of the Quran to understand it properly:

The Quran is designed as a Book of Guidance. It guides by itself—it does not rely on Preachers, Explainers, or Men of Understanding to fulfill its aim.

It was designed to guide the Arab Bedouins who would not carry a book in their nomad lives. It is basically an oral Book. The Verses settle in the brain comfortably and guides by powerful words, lyrics and repetitions. Some of its specialties are described below:

### **5a. Continued hammering of the Faith Building**

**Words:** The Quran guides a person by implanting Faith in his heart. It continues hammering faith-

building words into his brain. It wipes out false ideas and inculcates true concepts of God, Afterlife and Religion.

**5b. Poetic Presentation and Repetitions:** The powerful words excite the heart and fascinate recurrent recitations. The lyric eases memorization and safeguards the Verses from the unconscious corruptions. The repetitions imprint important teachings in the brain deeply.

**5c. Diligence:** The Quran is designed to guide people who are not likely to contemplate and follow. So, it is diligent on basic matters. Often complex matters are narrated in short, and the matters of common interest are narrated deliberately and repeatedly.

The qualities help to achieve its aim that is to guide the common people through the Straight Path, but distract the readers who intend to have precise knowledge.

So, the God has embedded a hidden structure in the Quran. If the hidden structure is surfaced, it becomes a systematically written Book that can be understood easily and precisely. The hidden structure is surfaced in this Tafsir as under:

## **6. Parts of the Quran**

The Quran changes its focus thrice. Thus, the Quran is divided in three Parts:

- a. Hudan lil Muttaqin (Guidance for the Guards):  
Chapter 2 to 9

- b. Hudan lil Nas (Guidance for Mankind): Chapter 10 to 30
- c. Hudan lil Muhsinin (Guidance for the Doers of Good): Chapter 31 to 114  
The Parts are discussed below:

### **6a. Part-1: Hudan lil Muttaqin (Guidance for the Guards): Chapter 2 to 9**

At the outset, the Part (Part-1) highlights that the Book is for the Guards (Muttaqin):

“Alif, Laam, Meem. That is the Book—no doubt in it—is a Guidance for the Guards (*Muttaqin*)” [Al Quran 2:1–2]

The Part established a new ummah (community) in the religion of Abraham (the olds were Jews and Christians). The overall structure of the Part is given below:

- Chapter 2 is the Constitution of the Ummah. It nominated the Guards, constituted the Ummah by dedicating a new Qiblah, gave out the laws of the Ummah, and highlighted the need of Leadership.
- Chapter 3 to 9 directed the Guards (Muttaqin) to expand the Ummah through struggle and warfare and established their Home called *Darussalam* (Home of Peace / Morrocco to Pamirs). It is the Furqan (War Book).

So, the Part starts at Chapter-2 and ends at Chapter-9:

- Chapter 2: Constitution of the Ummah
- Chapter 3 to 9: War Book (Furqan)

An ummah needs a land to live. The Part identified their land as the land of people living around the 'Mother of Cities'.

“And this is a Book, which We have sent down, bringing blessings and confirming which came before it, that thou may warn the **Mother of Cities** and all around her...”

[Al Quran 6:92]

“Thus, have We sent by inspiration to thee an Arabic Qur'an that thou may warn the **Mother of Cities** and all around her. And warn of the Day of Assembly, of which there is no doubt—some will be in the Jannaat, and some in the Blazing Fire.

If Allah had so willed, He could have made them (Arabs and Persians) a single people, but He admits whom He wills to His Mercy; and the wrong-doers will have no protector, nor helper.”

[Al Quran 42:7-8]

By 'Mother of Cities', the Verses mean 'Babylon', from where Abraham was evicted once upon a time.

When the Quran was descending, the people around Babylon were Arabian and Persian People.

Thus, Home of Ummah is the lands of Arabian and Persian Peoples. It extends from Morocco to the Pamir Mountains [the Home is deliberately discussed in Section-13 of Chapter-6].

Moses too raised Israelites as an ummah, and they too were given a land. But they denied to fight for the land. Arabs and Persians swiftly became Muslims, and their land became the Primary Muslim Territory (*Darussalam* / Morocco to Pamirs).

The Part (Part-1) has formulated the Path of Jihad to establish and defend the Ummah and its land. The Part is for the *Jihadi Muttaqin* (Revolutionary Guards) who are organized under the Highest Islamic Leadership, i.e., Prophet / Caliph / the Highest Imam. The Muttaqin are promised with the highest rewards in the afterlife.

Actually, the Jihad is a responsibility of the Highest Islamic Leadership. One cannot fight an offensive Jihad without his permission. He is aided by the Guards (Muttaqin) who must be oath (bayah) bound to the Leadership to fight for the cause of Allah.

The Home of Ummah (*Darussalam* / Home of Peace / Morocco to Pamirs) is already established by the Sahabah and their immediate followers. Now the Guards (Al Muttaqin) are to protect mainly.

The preaching of Islam in the way of struggle and warfare is not applicable beyond the 'Home of Ummah' (*Darussalam* / Home of Peace / Morocco to Pamirs). In light of the Quran (Part-2 of 3), the Islam is supposed to be preached beyond the Home by Sufis (Saints) and *Daees* (people who call to Islam / preachers).

**6b. Part-2 [Chapter 10 to 30]: Hudan lil Nas (Guidance for Mankind):**

In Chapter-10, the Quran changes its focus by declaring Muhammad (pbuh) as the Prophet for the whole Mankind (Nas):

“Alif, Lam, Ra. These are the Verses of the Book of Wisdom. Is it a matter of wonderment to men that We have sent Our inspiration to a man from among themselves that he should warn Mankind and give the good news to the Believers that they have before their Lord the lofty rank of truth? Say the Unbelievers: "This is indeed an evident sorcerer!"

[Al Quran 10:1-2]

The Chapter opines that Mankind could be one nation:

“Mankind was but one nation but differed. Had it not been for a word that went forth before from thy Lord, their differences would have been settled between them.”

[Al Quran 10:19]

The Chapter calls Mankind to the Home of Peace (Darussalam / Morocco to Pamirs / Home of Ummah):

“But God does call to the 'Home of Peace' (Darussalam). He does guide whom He pleases to a way that is straight.”

[Al Quran 10:25]

Thus, from Chapter-10, the Quran no longer remains a Book for the Guards (Al-Muttaqin) only; it becomes a Book for Mankind. So, the Part-2 starts at Chapter-10.

The Quran remains consistent up to Chapter-30. So, the Part-2 ends at Chapter-30.

In this Part, there is hardly any talk of struggle and warfare. The Part focuses on preaching Islam by logic, historical examples, and scientific signs. The Part inclines towards Sufis and Daees (Preachers) for the preaching.

The Part points out the Path of Sufism by the example of Khidr. The Part set example for the Daees by the story of the Seven Sleepers. Islam was supposed to be preached beyond the Home (Darussalam / Home of Peace / Morocco to Pamirs) by Sufis and Daees mainly.

In reality, the Islam was preached among Turkic, Mongol, Indian and Indonesian people by the Sufis and the Daees. The matter is deliberately discussed in the Introduction of Part-2.

Several narrations are repeated in Part-2, but, as the focus of the Quran is changed, the intended lessons are different. These are repeated to fulfill the Part mainly.

### **6c. Part 3 [Chapter 31 to 114]: Hudan lil Muhsinin (Guidance for the Doers of Good):**

At the outset of Chapter-31, the Quran again changes its focus from Mankind (*Nas*) to the Doers of Good (*Muhsinin*).

“Alif, Lam, Mim. These are Verses of the Wise Book, a Guide and a Mercy to the ‘Doers of Good’ (*Muhsinin*), those who establish regular Prayer, and give regular Charity (*Zakat*), and have the assurance of the Hereafter; these are on guidance from their Lord, and these are the ones who will prosper.” [Al Quran 31:1-5]

So, the Part-3 of the Quran starts at Chapter-31. The Part ends at Chapter-114 where the Quran ends.

The *Muhsinin* (Doers of Good) are people who establish regular prayer, pay zakat, and believe in the Hereafter. They are common members of the Islamic Societies. They are involved in different good trades.

The *Muhsinin* remain tied to the 'Local Islamic Leadership', established in the village / community Mosques. The Local Leadership in turn remains tied to the Highest Islamic Leadership directly or through a 'channel of command' rooted through the mosques at different levels.

Thus, the *Muhsinin* do good (*ahsan*) to the Highest Islamic Leadership.

The Part does not talk much about struggle and warfare, but it ordains measures and laws to improve Islamic families and societies where the *Muttaqin* come into play.

An apparent difference between *Muttaqin* and *Muhsinin* is that a *Muttaqi* (Guard) is formally oath (*Bayah*) bound to the Highest Islamic Leadership to struggle and fight for the cause of Allah, but a *Muhsin* (Doer of Good) is not oath bound.

If one chooses the Path of the Muhsinin, the life is easy, but the Muhsinin too are promised with the highest rewards. They shine through extra prayer and extra charity; the Part-3 puts emphases on these aspects.

The narrations of Part-3 are appealing; it repeatedly reminds the Judgment Day, Paradise, and Hell.

6d. Thus, the Quran as a whole has a structure:

- Chapter 1 is the Prelude.
- Chapter 2 forms the Ummah.
- Chapter 3 to 9 is the ‘War Book’ (Furqan) that expanded the Ummah among Arabian and Iranian People and established the Home of Ummah (Darussalam / Home of Peace / Morocco to the Pamir Mountains).
- Chapter 10 to 30 is ‘Guidance for Mankind’. The Part preaches Islam beyond the Home (Darussalam).
- Chapter 31 to 114 is ‘Guidance for Muhsinin’ (Doers of Good). The Part guides ordinary Muslims. They are commanded by the Highest Islamic Leadership through the Mosques at different levels.

The structure will be clear as one will go through the Tafsir.

## **7. Structuring a Chapter (Surah):**

Most people think that a big Chapter (Surah) of the Quran talks on multifarious matters. And, the talks look disjointed. So, they pick up any Verse from any place and explain it as they feel correct.

But, in a correctly structured Chapter, one will find that each Chapter of the Quran develops logically and systematically. There is no disjointed talk.

Many Arabic words have different meanings. The context of a Verse should dictate the intended meaning of such a word. When a Chapter is correctly structured, the context become obvious, and it gets easy to understand the intended meaning.

### **7a. Problems in Structuring a Chapter (Surah)**

The Quran is often misunderstood due to Verse Numbers and Titles. I have solved the problems are under:

#### **7aI. Verse Number**

The numbers were not revealed with the Verses. These were incorporated long after Prophet (pbuh) had departed. A number gives an independent look to a Verse, but it should be understood in context of the Paragraph. So, I have removed the Verse Numbers and put the Verses into the Paragraphs.

#### **7aII. Wrong Titles**

The Chapters (Surahs) did not come to Prophet (pbuh) with Titles attached. Prophet (pbuh) as well, did not name the Chapters. The Titles have come up in the passage of time, as people started calling a Chapter by a name. One will find many Chapters with inappropriate Titles. Most of the Titles are benign, but some are disadvantageous.

A Title should indicate the aim or theme of a Chapter. It should help to understand the Verses in context. But people who incorporated the Titles did not consider the aspect.

For example, the title of Chapter-2 is "Cow", because there is a story of a cow in it. But, it is not the essay of a cow? The Chapter (Chapter-2) forms the Ummah of Prophet Muhammad (pbuh). Thus, the Title of the Chapter should have been "Ummah" or "Formation of a New Ummah". If this Title was selected, the readers would understand every Verse in context.

Now, what can be done? I cannot change the Titles after so many hundreds of years. So, I have written the 'Aims' below the Titles. If a Chapter is correctly structured, the aim of the Chapter becomes obvious. For example, the Aim of Chapter-2 is: "To form a New Ummah in the Religion of Abraham."

However, I have written the Aims in the Part-1 (Chapter-2 to 9) only. The Part includes the War Book (Furqan / Chapter-3 to 9) where understanding each Verse in context is essential.

In the other Parts of the Quran, the Chapters are smaller and precise understanding is not needed. So, I have not written the aims. Otherwise, a spelled out Aim narrows the scope of explanation.

## **7b. Structuring a Chapter (Surah)**

I have divided a Chapter (Surah) into Segments, a Segment into Sections, and a Section into Paragraphs as under:

7bI. **Paragraph:** A Paragraph normally expands on one point. In the Quran, the end of a Paragraph is often marked by a short praise of God or by clear concluding words.

7bII. **Section:** Several Paragraphs make a Section that deals with a factor or describes a fact. I have given the Section Heading to highlight the factor or the fact. A Section Heading is not exhaustive.

7bIII. **Segment:** Several Sections make a Segment that gives a complete idea on an aspect of a Chapter. Only a big Chapter needs segmentation. I have given the Segment Headings too. A Segment Heading is not exhaustive.

7bIV. **Chapter:** Several Segments make a Chapter (Surah). There are 114 Chapters in the Quran.

7bV. **Remarks:** There are deeper knowledge and scientific signs in the Quran, which need discussions. I have put my discussions under the “Remarks”.

The structure is inborn in the Quran; I had to find out the correct start points only.

I have removed the Verse Numbers, but I have put the range of Verses in the Section Headings so that one can relate.

Segment Headings, Section Headings and Remarks jointly guide a reader’s thought and help him understand in context.

## 8. Critical Subjects

8e-I. The critical subjects like Soul, Jinn, Fate, Paradise, Hell, Dooms Day, Judgment Day, etc., have **Points of Main Discussion** in this Book where the subjects are deliberately discussed. The page numbers of the Points are given in the **Fore Index**.

8c-II. The Verses are explained in this Tafsir with modern discoveries. The Theories and Hypotheses are also used, but those are not the bases of my explanations.

8c-III. Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) ordered to burn the Hadith. But, I have used the following Hadith in my explanations:

- Hadith-e-Qudsi
- Hadiths of Fitna
- Hadiths of the End Times
- Hadiths about the hidden creatures, such as Jinns and Angels
- Hadiths of Night Journey describing Higher Worlds
- Hadiths of Hell and Paradise
- Hadiths of Judgment Day

The knowledge about above matters was given to Prophet (pbuh) through angels, elhams, visions, and Night Journey (Miraz). It is obvious that he was given with the knowledge to inform his followers. Most likely, he did not order to burn these Hadiths [The Hadith and the Sunnah are deliberately discussed in Section-2 of Chapter-31].

## **9. Thanks to Abdullah Yusuf Ali**

I got the translation of Abdullah Yusuf Ali and incorporated a few minor linguistic changes, and started writing the Tafsir in 1985 and ended in 2022. May Allah pay him back.

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِیْمِ

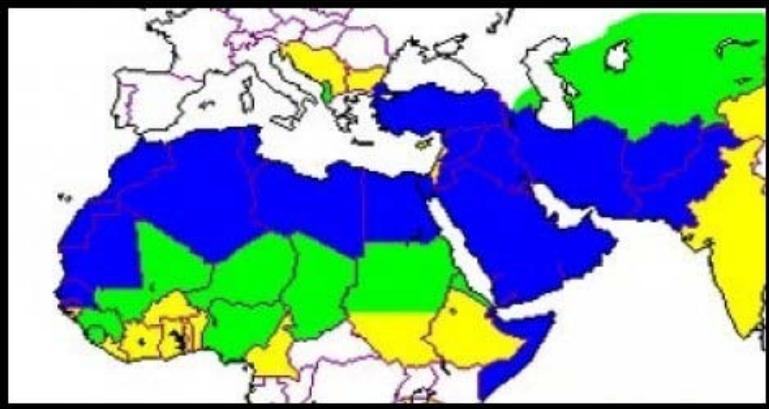
In the name of God, Most Gracious, Most Merciful

Scientific Tafsir of the Quran

## Part 1 of 3

[Chapter 2-9]

### GUIDANCE FOR THE GUARDS



# Introduction

## of the Part 1 of 3

### [Guidance for the Guards]

In this Part (Part 1 of 3), the Quran forms a New Ummah in the Religion of Abraham. The olds were Jews and Christians.

The Part starts at Chapter-2 and ends at Chapter-9.

Moses too raised the Children of Israel as an Ummah.

To raise an Ummah, followings are needed:

- **Land.** The Land of the Ummah of Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) was identified as from Morocco to the Pamirs. It is called the Home of Peace (Darussalam). The Home is deliberately discussed in Section-13 of Chapter-6.
- **People.** People that would form the Ummah were identified as Arabian and Persian Peoples. The *Taghuts* (Opposing Powers, such as disbelieving Tribal Chiefs, Kings and Emperors) were defeated, and the Peoples converted to Islam safely and willfully. The identification of the Peoples is deliberately discussed in Section-13 of Chapter-6.
- **Laws of Ummah.** Essential laws and rituals of the Ummah were given in Segment-5 of Chapter-2.
- **Government(s).** The Quran does not suggest a Form of Government. Thus, the scope of adopting any Government, headed by King, Amir, President or Prime Minister, is kept open provided the Government follows the guidance of the Quran according to the direction of the Highest Islamic

Leadership (the Highest Imam / Caliph). There may be many countries under him with different Types of Governments.

- **Judiciary.** The Quran does not give the Structure of the Judicial System. Thus, any System that judges and gives verdict according the Quran can be adopted. However, there may be different types of courts, such as Islamic Court, Torah Court, Government Court, etc.
- **Sovereignty and Security.** The Quran gives a War Book from Chapter-3 to Chapter-9. The War Book is deliberate because it forms and maintains the Ummah through struggle and warfare. The men dedicated to the War Book are called Muttaqin (Guards). They are oath bound to the Highest Islamic Leadership to fight for the cause of Islam. But they are not paid Army. The Countries / States / Governments under the Highest Islamic Leadership may have their own Paid Armies and other Security Forces.
- **Zakat.** The Highest Islamic Leadership acts from a Mosque, preferably from the Mosque of Madinah or from the Mosque of Kufa. He collects, spends, and distributes Zakat through the Mosques at different levels.

[The Islamic Leadership is deliberately discussed in Section-44 of Chapter-2]

Chapter 2 of this Part is the Constitution of the Ummah, and Chapter 3 to 9 is the War Book (Furqan).

The War Book guides the Guards (Muttaqin) in the Path of Struggle and Warfare. Here wrong comprehension may cause severe damage. If a Chapter is correctly structured, the Aim of the Chapter becomes apparent, and

one clearly realizes what the Verses want one to understand and do. I have brought out the Aims as under:

**Aim of Chapter-2:** To form a New *Ummah* in the Religion of Abraham.

**Aim of Chapter-3:** To form a clear view on the Christians who were ensuing adversaries of the *Muttaqin* (Guards), struggling to establish the Ummah.

**Aim of Chapter-4:** To form Islamic Families and Societies, and to keep the Societies effective for Jihad by neutralizing the Hypocrites.

**Aim of Chapter-5:** Living with the People of the Book and the Policies of Interaction.

**Aim of Chapter-6:** To outline the Furqan's Way of Preaching Islam.

**Aim of Chapter-7:** The final call before declaring all-out war against the Pagans (Idolaters).

**Aim of Chapter-8:** To provide the General Instructions of War

**Aim of Chapter-9:** To declare all out War against the Pagans and to direct subsequent Mobilizations.

Once the Aims of the Chapters are known, the overall Aim of the Part becomes obvious. Thus, the Aim of Part 1 is:

To establish a new Ummah in the Religion of Abraham by defeating the *Taghuts* (Powers) in the Home of Peace (Darussalam), extending from Morocco to the Pamirs.

Muhammad (pbuh) was the last Prophet—He could not fail or leave the job for a next. For thirteen years, he tried to his best to convince people, but the result was disheartening, and the oppression on his followers was mounting. Remember, the Mighty Moses with his Nine Signs and the Jesus Christ with his Extreme Signs failed to such kind of People. Finally, Muhammad too had to leave his homeland along with his followers.

Then a different Path was adopted to establish Islam—it was to remove the *Taghuts* (Opposing Powers, such as Tribal Chiefs, Kings, and Emperors) by physical fighting so that the general people could accept Islam in freedom and peace.

Muhammad (pbuh) in his old age moved hundreds of miles through the sun baked deserts of Arabia, fought many battles, and suffered severe wounds. His followers were like a band of saints fighting for the cause of Allah. Wherever they stepped, the population became Muslims. By the time Prophet (pbuh) died at the age of 63, Islam was established in Arabian Peninsula, and his followers were poised to defeat the Great Byzantine and Persian Empires simultaneously.

Prophet (pbuh) took utmost care to keep the battle casualties to the minimum. Makkah was captured without any casualty. Even at the death-bed, he was earnestly trying to set out the expedition against Byzantine Empire. The assembled Forces did not move due to his illness and death. Ultimately, several Tribes revolted, and they got involved in suppressing them. If Byzantines were defeated sooner rather than later, these Tribal Chiefs would not dare to revolt

against Madinah. Prophet (pbuh) was an extremely intelligent person.

Precise knowledge of this Part is necessary to understand how the Ummah, already established by Sahabah, Tabieen and Tabe-Tabieen, should look like; when and where to struggle and fight, and when and where it is not to fight.

**Color Code:**

**Blue:** The Quran

**Black:** All other Writings

## Chapter 2 [Al Baqarah THE HEIFER]

**Aim of the Chapter:** To form a New Ummah in the Religion of Abraham.

### Introduction

The Surah forms a new *Ummah* (Community) in the Religion of Abraham—the old ones were Jews and Christians. It justifies the formation of the Ummah by discussing the defiances of Jews. It identifies the Protectors of the Ummah as *Muttaqin* (Guards). It gives out the laws and rituals of the Ummah. The whole Surah revolves around the formation and protection of the Ummah.

### Structure of the Surah

The Surah can be divided in six Segments:

In the First Segment, the Surah (Chapter) distinguishes the Guards (*Muttaqin*) and points out their adversaries as Disbelievers and Hypocrites.

In the Second Segment, the Surah acquaints the Quran as a divine Book. Here Allah is acquainted as Creator, humans are acquainted as His Vicegerents, and the Satan is acquainted as enemy (to humans). The Segment authenticates and justifies the giving of the guidance.

The Third Segment talks about previous divine Books and the Children of Israel (Jews). The Segment discusses their disobediences thoroughly. Thus, the Surah justifies the formation of the new Ummah.

In the Forth Segment, by dedicating a different *Qiblah* (direction of prayer), the Believers are made a new Ummah in the Religion of Abraham.

In the Fifth Segment, the laws and rituals of the new Ummah are given. Here fighting for the cause of Islam is authorized, and the need to obey leadership is highlighted.

The Segments are divided in Sections. One may go through the Section Headings given below in the Flowchart. It will make one realize how the Chapter has developed.

## **Flowchart**

### **Segment 1: The Guards**

Section 1 [Verse 1]: Symbol of Lawh-Mahfuz

Section 2 [Verse 2-5]: The Book and the Guards (Al-Muttaqin)

Section 3 [Verse 6-20]: Adversaries of the Muttaqin

### **Segment 2: Divinity of the Quran**

Section 4 [Verse 21-24]: Proof of Divinity

Section 5 [Verse 25]: Paradise (Jannaat) is a Reality.

Section 6 [Verse 26-28]: Way of Narrating the Similitude.

Section 7 [Verse 29]: The Large-Scale Structure of the Universe (Seven-Sky-Universe)

Section 8 [Verse 30-33]: Creation of Adam and his quality to Learn

Section 9 [Verse 34-39]: Honor of Vicegerent and the Need of Guidance

### **Segment 3: Causes of forming a New Ummah**

- Section 10 [Verse 40–46]: Children of Israel (Jews) are called to follow Muhammad (pbuh)
- Section 11 [Verse 47–64]: They (Jews) Transgressed in the old times too, and went on Transgressing
- Section 12 [Verse 65–66]: A humiliating punishment they (Jews) suffered, though they were from the Chosen People
- Section 13 [Verse 67–71]: A People (Jews) unwilling to obey
- Section 14 [Verse 72–82]: People (Jews) like Rocks—not likely to change
- Section 15 [Verse 83–86]: Revolt, Conflict, and Separation—an unruly and chaos-making People (Jews)
- Section 16 [Verse 87–103]: Concluding with the Jews
- Section 17 [Verse 104-123]: Instructing Muslims in context of the People of the Book

### **Segment 4: A New Ummah Created**

- Section 18 [Verse 124-131]: Turning to Kabah
- Section 19 [Verse 132-134]: They shall reap the fruit of what they did, and you of what you do!
- Section 20 [Verse 135-141]: They shall reap the fruit of what they did, and you of what you do!
- Section 21 [Verse 142-150]: Formation of a New Ummah
- Section 22 [Verse 151-157]: Hard time Ahead

### **Segment 5: Laws and Rituals of the Ummah**

- Section 23 [Verse 158-163]: Rituals relating to Kabah

- Section 24 [Verse 164-167]: Cut off relation with them
- Section 25 [Verse 168-176]: Food Halal / Haram
- Section 26 [Verse 177]: Lifestyle of Righteousness
- Section 27 [Verse 178-179]: Murder
- Section 28 [Verse 180-182]: Bequest
- Section 29 [Verse 183-187]: Fasting
- Section 30 [Verse 188]: Guideline of Economic Policy and Bait
- Section 31 [Verse 189]: New Moon
- Section 32 [Verse 190-195]: Fighting
- Section 33 [Verse 196-203]: Hajj
- Section 34 [Verse 204-212]: Men in the Life of this World and Hereafter
- Section 35 [Verse 213-214]: Straight Path in the World of Adversities and Sufferings
- Section 36 [Verse 215]: Spending in Charity
- Section 37 [Verse 216-218]: Fighting in the Path of Allah
- Section 38 [Verse 219-220]: Wine, Gambling, Charity and Orphans
- Section 39 [Verse 221]: Marrying Unbelieving Woman
- Section 40 [Verse 222-223]: Approaching Woman
- Section 41 [Verse 224-225]: Oath Taking
- Section 42 [Verse 226–237]: Divorce and Marriage of Widow and Divorced Woman
- Section 43 [Verse 238-245]: As-Salat, Maintenance of Women, and Fighting Battles
- Section 44 [Verse 246–260]: Islamic Leadership (Main Discussion)
- Section 45 [Verse 261-274]: Spend in the Way of Allah
- Section 46 [Verse 275-281]: *Usury*
- Section 47 [Verse 282-284]: Transaction

Section 48 [Verse 285-286]: Concluding Prayers and Honor  
of Sahabah

## Color Code

Blue: The Verses of the Quran

Black: Other Writings

## Tafsir of the Surah

### Segment 1 The Guards

The Segment identifies the people for whom the Book (Part-1) is aimed. It terms them as Guards (*Muttaqin*) and points out their adversaries.

#### Section-1 of Chapter-2 [Verse 1]: Symbol of Lawh-Mahfuz

Alif, Lam, Mim.

#### Section-2 of Chapter-2 [Verse 2-5]: The Book and the Guards (*Al Muttaqin*)

That is the Book—no doubt in it—is a guidance for the Guards (*Muttaqin*). Those who believe in the Unseen, and perform *As-Salat*, and spend out of what We have provided for them (pay *Zakat*); and who believe in the Revelation sent to you and sent before your time, and they believe with certainty the Hereafter. They are on guidance from their Lord, and it is these who will prosper.

## Remarks

*"That is the Book—no doubt in it—is a guidance for the Guards (Muttaqin)."*

Here, by the word "Book, the Verse means "Part-1 of the Quran". The Part is the "*guidance for the Guards (Muttaqin)*".

If one will go through the Quran, one will find that the Muttaqin (Guards) are guided upto Chapter-9 to expand the Ummah through struggle and warfare and to establish their Home (Darussalam / Home of Peace / Morocco to Pamirs).

So, the Part starts at Chapter-2 and ends at Chapter-9.

Ultimately, the Grand Quran is divided in three Parts (Book):

- Guidance for the Guards (Hudan lil Muttaqin) from Chapter 2 to 9, including the War Book (Furqan) from Chapter 3 to 9.
- Guidance for Mankind (Hudan lil Nas) from Chapter 10 to 30.
- Guidance for the Doers of Good (Hudan lil Muhsinin) from Chapter 31 to 114.

The next Part of the Verses, "*Those who believe in the Unseen ... it is these who will prosper*", look defining the Muttaqin, but it is not. Believing, praying, paying Zakat, etc., are not the qualities of a Guard. The Verses mean that they are not paid regular Army; they Guard because they are pious Muslims. In other words, the Verses are calling the pious Muslims to guard the Ummah.

If one wants to know the Quran, one has to accept the above statement now. One will be convinced, once one will go through the Tafsir.

## 2. Who are Muttaqin?

The word “Muttaqin” is plural of “Muttaqi”. The root word of “Muttaqi” is “Waq” which means “Guarding”.

The word “Taqi” means “You Guard”.

So, “Muttaqi” is a person who guards.

We often talk about *Takwa*. “Takwa” literally means “to Protect”. “Muttaqi” is a man that provides *Takwa* / Protection. So, he is a guard.

Subsequently, we find that the Muttaqin (Guards) are repeatedly called to join in the war expeditions and fulfill the covenant (Bayah) that they had made to the Prophet (pbuh). Their actions in the battles are discussed and improvements are suggested. So, the Muttaqin are people who protect the Ummah—they are the Defenders.

Therefore, in the Quran, “Muttaqin” is used as a term to mean the “**Guards**”. They are the Guard of the Ummah.

Some translate “Muttaqin” as “God Fearing People” or “Righteous People”. It is a deviated translation. The deviated translation of this key word puts the whole Quran in confusion.

The Quran guides the Guards (Al Muttaqin) up to Chapter-9. In Chapter-10, the Quran puts its focus on Mankind and declares Muhammad (pbuh) as the Prophet for the whole Mankind. Thereafter, the

Quran becomes "Guidance for Mankind" (Hudan lil Nas / Chapter 10 to 30 / Part-2) and hardly talks about struggle and warfare. Preaching among mankind is the responsibility of the Sufis and Daees (like Khidr and Seven Sleepers) where Muttaqin have no role to play.

### **Section-3 of Chapter-2 [Verse 6–20]: Adversaries of Al-Muttaqin**

In this Section, the Quran identifies the adversaries of Al-Muttaqin. They are the "People that Disbelieve" (Kafirun) and the "Hypocrites" (Munafiqun).

People of the Book are not highlighted as adversaries. The Quran narrates its views about them gradually and proclaims policies.

#### **3A. People that Disbelieve (Kafir)**

Indeed those who disbelieve (Kafir); it is the same to them whether you warn them or do not warn them; they will not believe. Allah has set a seal on their minds and on their hearings and on their eyes is a veil. Theirs will be a great torment.

#### **Remarks:**

In above Verses, the Muttaqin were called to prepare for war because, the disbelievers were not to believe due to the warnings (of the afterlife) only—Taghuts were to be removed. The Taghuts were Opposing

Powers, such as disbelieving Tribal Chiefs, Kings and Emperors.

Once the Taghuts were removed, Arabs and Persians rapidly believed in freedom and safety.

It is not possible to convert a disbeliever by motivations and warnings. Nine great miracles of Moses could not change Pharaoh and his Chiefs. It looks ridiculous as to why a disbeliever does not believe even after the Truth is clear to him? But, it is the reality.

The peaceful motivations and warnings of 13 years were not enough for the people of Makkah. Thus, the Verses said, *"...it is the same to them whether you warn them or do not warn them; they will not believe."*

So, the Verses motivated the Muttaqin (Guards) to prepare for Jihad (struggle and warfare).

Subsequently, the Taghuts were removed by physical fighting. So, the idolaters found security in Islam and became Muslims willfully.

The disbelievers are easy to identify. So, the Chapter finishes with them in short.

**Note:**

1. If one translates "Muttaqin" as "Righteous / God Fearing People", the above Verses become independent information. Then, the Quran becomes wrong, because all Arabs became Believers in the end.
2. "Muttaqin" has to be understood as the "Guards" working under the Highest

Islamic Leadership (Prophet / Caliph / Highest Imam). The Verses are saying to the Guards (Muttaqin) that motivations and warnings have failed, so be ready to fight.

3. It is a serious crime to change the word of the Quran during translation as well. Direct dictionary meaning of "Muttaqin" is "Guards". So, Guards is to be written in the translations.

The Verses under discussion say, “...*Allah has set a seal on their minds and on their hearings and on their eyes is a veil.*” Actually, the sealing and veiling are done by satan jinns. The Verses say that it is done by Allah, because nothing can happen without His facilities and permission.

For example, assume that the necklace of a Princess has got stolen. Now, it can be said that Allah has taken away her necklace, because Allah has created the thief; He has given him the will, energy and opportunity to steal. Similarly, the Verses say, “...*Allah has set a seal on their minds and on their hearings and on their eyes is a veil.*” Actually, the sealing and veiling are done by satan jinns.

The jinns are created out of anti-matter. A satan jinni is allowed to mount on an idolater (a Muslim is guarded by angels). Thus, the idolater gets possessed.

The jinni shares the idolater’s wealth and children. But the idolater cannot feel it. He acts and

behaves normally, except in the case of hearing the call of Truth.

When one calls the idolater to the Truth, the jinni distracts the idolater's mind utterly to protect his (jinni's) gain. So, the idolater feel agitated—hearing he hears not, seeing he sees not; he feels bad and leaves the place.

The indwelling jinni distract his mind (qalb in the chest) by producing anger, or by reminding him an important job he needs to do, or in some other ways.

Normal warnings and motivations are not effective on such people (idolaters). They need 'motivation by force' so that the satan jinns run away from them, and they can concentrate on the Truth. They need Preachers like Khalid bin Walid.

[The above matter will be amply clarified after the discussion of Soul and Mind in Section-10 of Chapter-6, and the Jinn in Section-3 of Chapter-7]

### **3B. The Hypocrites and their Signs**

Of the people, there are some who say, "We believe in Allah and the Last Day" while in fact they believe not. Fain would they deceive Allah and those who believe, but they only deceive themselves and realize not! In their hearts is a disease, and Allah has increased their disease. A painful torment is theirs, because they are false.

**Remarks:**

The Hypocrites do not believe. They are not Believers.

When it is said to them, "Make not mischief on the earth", they say, "Why, we only want to make peace".

Of a surety, they are the ones who make mischief, but they realize not.

**Remarks:**

It is the first sign of the Hypocrites: They do not establish peace in the Way of Islam. They establish peace through some other ways, such as through the way of freedom, supported by the Articles of Human Rights. But, in reality, they spread mischief on the land, which they realize not.

A free society is a center of vices. One should not spoil the endless afterlife for this short earthly life. People should opt to live in the religious societies for the betterment of themselves and their children.

When it is said to them, "Believe, as the others believe", they say, "Shall we believe as the fools believe?" Nay, of a surety they are the fools, but they do not know.

**Remarks:**

It is the second sign of the Hypocrites: A Muttaqi looks fool to them because of his simple life.

A Muttaqi is devoted to Allah; he follows the Leadership of Al Muttaqin to materialize the orders of the Quran.

When they meet those who believe, they say, "We believe", but when they are alone with their evil ones, they say, "We are really with you; we only jesting."

**Remarks:**

It is the third sign of the Hypocrite: They (hypocrites) are secretly allied to the evil ones.

Allah mocks at them and gives them increase in their wrongdoing to wander blindly. These are they who have bartered guidance for error. But their traffic is profitless, and they have lost true direction.

**Remarks:**

A hypocrite is known as a Muslim, but he is not supportive to the Highest Islamic Leadership.

In the Chapter-4 (Surah Nisa), the Hypocrites are again discussed in the process of declaring war against them. The Chapter narrates which Hypocrites are to be neutralised and how they are to be identified. The Chapter includes other instructions of war as well.

Their similitude is that of a man who kindled a fire; when it lighted all around him, Allah took away their light

and left them in utter darkness. So, they could not see. Deaf, dumb, and blind; they will not return.

Or, is that of a rain-laden cloud from the sky. In it are zones of darkness and thunder and lightning. They press their fingers in their ears to keep out the stunning thunderclap while they are in terror of death. But Allah is ever round the Rejecters of Faith (Kafirs)!

The lightning all but snatches away their sight; every time it lights them, they walk therein, and when the darkness grows on them, they stand still. And if Allah willed, He could take away their faculty of hearing and seeing; for Allah has power over all things.

### **Remarks:**

When Islamic Revolution flared up in Madinah, the Hypocrites were behaving like cowered people in thunderstorm. Ibn Salul the Hypocrite, a Chief of Banu Khazraj, once said, 'I foresee the coming of Roman Soldiers who were arresting my companions one by one...'

Allah did not encourage them because they did not accept the Faith as it had be accepted.

The rod cells take a couple of minutes to adapt the eyes in the darkness. The eyes should be protected from the light to maintain the night vision. But the condition of Hypocrites was utterly precarious; they were like the people moving at night through thunderstorms and recurrent lightnings. So, they remained blind throughout the way.

According to the above Verses, the Hypocrites too are Kafirs (Rejecters of Faith). But they have a

difference. They are not idolaters, so satan jinns have not mounted on them, as the above Verses say: *“And if Allah willed, He could take away their faculty of hearing and seeing; for Allah has power over all things.”*

Therefore, the angels are still protecting them. So, their minds are not sealed, and their eyes and ears are not veiled. They can be brought back to the Straight Path by Warnings and Motivations.

### **Removing Confusion**

Above Verses do not mean that a Muslim must be a Muttaqi to avoid becoming a Munafiq.

1. A Muslim may be a Muhsin (Doer of Good) who is a common man having positive attitude toward the Highest Islamic Leadership. He performs salat, pays zakat and remains tied to the local Mosque. He pays extra for Islamic Leadership and prays extra (Tahazzud) at night [Part-3 of the Quran is for the Muhsinin].
2. A Muslim may be a Sufi in extreme prayer and self restraint, and preaching Islam.
3. A Muslim may be a Muttaqi, tied to the Highest Islamic Leadership through Bayah.

However, becoming a Muttaqi was compulsory during early Islam, because that was a time of struggle, and the Highest Islamic Leadership called them to join. If the Highest Islamic Leadership calls for a general mobilization, everybody must join.

### **Note:**

- If a person believes that there is no god but God (*La ilaha illallah*) and believe on the Last Day, he becomes a Mumin (Believer).
- When he declares that Muhammad is the Messenger of God (*Muhammadur Rasulullah*), he becomes a Muslim (one who submits).
- When he start doing good deeds, such as if he starts a good business, or take up a good job, or expend in charity, or pray extra at nights, he becomes a Muhsin (Doer of Good).
- When he takes Bayah (Oath) to the Highest Islamic Leadership to fight for the cause of Islam, he becomes a Muttaqi (Guard).

## **Segment 2 Divinity of the Quran**

The Quran is calling people to a great revolutionary path. But what is its authority? So, in this Segment, the Quran proves its divinity and highlights the need of Guidance.

The Segment introduces Allah as the Creator and humans as His Vicegerents. It acquaints humans as a learning creature.

Satan is introduced as enemy (to humans).

Thereby, the Segment highlights the need of guidance.

## **Section-4 of Chapter-2 [Verse 21–24]: Proof of Divinity**

O you people! Adore your Guardian-Lord who created you and those who came before you that you may become Muttaqin—who has made the land your couch, and the skies your canopy, and sent down rain from the skies, and brought forth therewith fruits for your sustenance; then set not up rivals unto Allah, when you know.

### **Remarks:**

In above Verses, the Quran calls upon 'People that Know' to comprehend the existence of a Guardian-Lord by seeing the land as couch and skies as canopy.

### **Note:**

In these Verses, the 'skies' means atmospheric layers and magnetosphere. These are not 'Skies of the Universe'. The 'Skies of the Universe' is discussed in Section-7 of this Chapter.

The intelligent design proves the existence of a Guardian Lord.

### **1. The sky has been made a canopy**

Magnetosphere and Atmospheric Layers work as canopies to protect us from harmful radiations coming from the astral objects.

The atmosphere maintains temperature and produces the rains as well.

### **1a. Earth's Magnetic Field**

The Earth has a huge Magnetic Field. The Magnetic Field protects us from the Solar Wind.

The stream of energetic-charged-particles emanating from the Sun is known as Solar Wind. Earth's Magnetic Field deflects most of the charged particles.

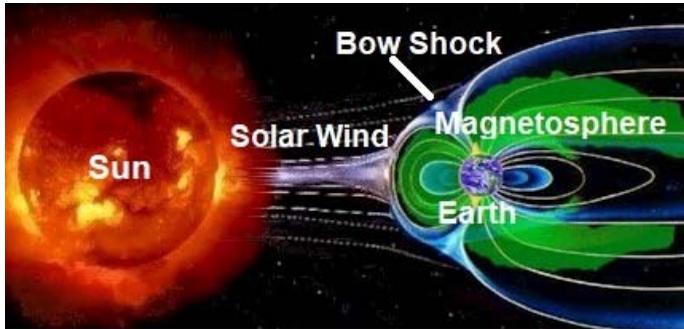


FIGURE 2.1: Earth's Magnetic Field

So, the sky of the Earth has been made a canopy.

### **1b. Atmospheric Layers**

The atmosphere protects us from harmful radiations.

Only Visible Light and Infrared Light can come to the ground. Harmful radiations like x-rays and ultraviolet rays are absorbed or reflected.

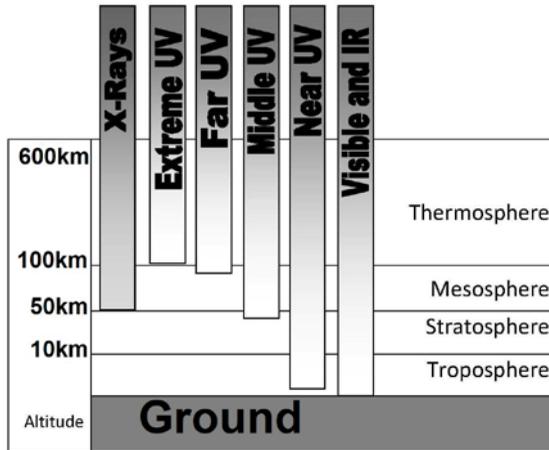


FIGURE 2.2: Atmospheric Layers protecting from the harmful Radiations

So, the sky of the Earth has been made a canopy.

### 1c. Green House Effect

The atmosphere maintains temperature by Green House Effect.

The carbon dioxide of the upper layer of the atmosphere traps heat and keeps the Earth warm. If the quantity of carbon dioxide were more, the Earth would be over heated; if it were less, the Earth would freeze. The Earth has system (the Carbon Cycle) to maintain correct quantity of carbon-dioxide in the atmosphere.

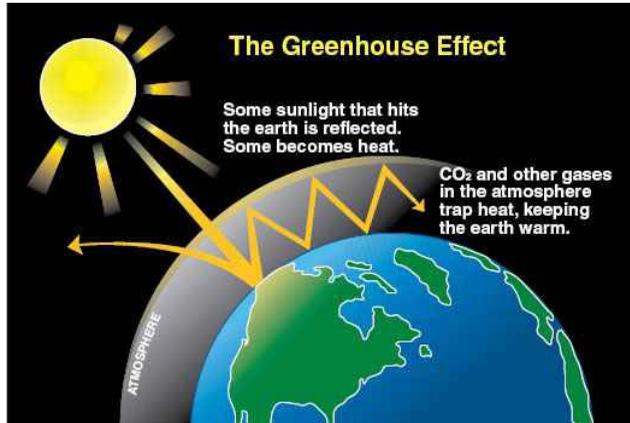


FIGURE 2.3: Greenhouse Effect

So, the sky of the Earth has been made a canopy.

#### **1d. Protection from Meteorites**

The atmosphere protects us from the meteorite as well. They are burned down to the smaller sizes when they pass through the atmosphere.



FIGURE 2.4: Falling Asteroid

So, the sky of the Earth has been made a canopy.

## 2. Sending down Rain from the Sky

The top layers of atmosphere works as canopy, but the bottom layers causes rain, as the Verses simultaneously say: “...who has made the land your couch and the skies your canopy, and sent down rain from the skies...”

Air can absorb great amount of water vapor. The clouds form and float in the Troposphere mainly. In this layer, the temperature rapidly decreases and forms the clouds.

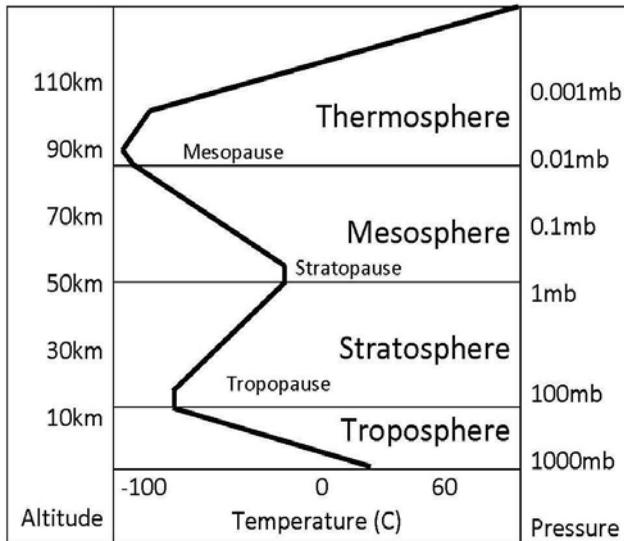


FIGURE 2.5: Temperature Curve

The floating clouds turn back from the height of 12 km. Layers beyond that height are meant to protect us from harmful radiations; much of water vapor is not allowed to rise there.

There is no scientific explanation why the rise and fall of temperature is so peculiar in the layers of atmosphere? It is just nature, designed and sustained by Allah.

So, the 'Skies of the Earth' has been made a canopy.

### **3. The Land has been made a Couch**

The Earth is producing the living creatures for billions of years. The long deposit of organic decay has made the crust suitable for us.

The drifting continents formed the high mountain ranges that produced rivers, a major source of sweat water.

The raining sky revives the lands again and again. It raises the ground water to make the Earth fertile.

So, the land has been made a couch by producing its soft soil crust.

### **4. To Conclude:**

In old times, people did not know. Now we know. Thus, the Verses say us at the end of the Paragraph: *"...then set not up rivals unto Allah, when you know."*

And if you are in doubt as to what We have revealed from time to time to Our servant, then produce a Surah like thereunto, and call your witnesses or helpers besides Allah if your (doubts) are true. But if you cannot, and of a surety you cannot, then fear the Fire whose fuel is Men and Stones, which is prepared for those who reject Faith.

### **Remarks:**

The Quran proves its divinity by focusing on the science of creation. But, one may not have the knowledge of science. So, it has suggested another way to test its divinity—a challenge is put forward: “...produce a Surah like thereunto...”

Hafez could not write like Saadi, and Saadi could not write like Hafez. The rhythm and lyric of each poet is different. Allah knows it: He knows that everyone’s finger print is unique; He knows that every date is different: “...clusters of dates hanging low and near, and gardens of grapes, and olives, and pomegranates, each similar, yet different” [Al Quran 6:99]

The Quran is not saying about the style of writing.

The Quran is saying that it is Guidance.

The Quran is saying that it is full of Truth.

The Quran is saying that it has no contradiction.

A human cannot produce such Book.

The Quran is guiding its followers through the hard path and surviving undaunted over the time and

time ahead. More than 1400 years have passed; the Quran has proved itself. It is deeply rooted in human civilization as the real Book of Guidance, complete and perfect in all aspects.

The Quran is full Truth; there is nothing but the Truth.

And most surprisingly, there is not a single self-contradiction in this vast Book.

The same ancient Quran was fit to teach the Arab Bedouins, and it is fit to teach the 'giants of knowledge' living today.

A man or a team cannot produce such a Book. It is from the Creator of the Universes.

### **Section-5 of Chapter-2 [Verse 25]: Paradise (Jannaat) is a Reality**

But give glad tidings to those who believe and work righteousness that their portion is Jannaat, beneath which flow rivers. Every time they are fed with fruits there-from, they say: "Why, this is what we were fed with before"; for they are given things in similitude. And they have therein companions pure, and they abide therein.

#### **Remarks:**

In view of the Quran, the paradise is not a spiritual thing. It is a reality like the Earth with beautiful lands, plants, fruits, animals and companions pure. So, it is worthy of striving hard.

One day the people that believe and work righteousness will escape from this Universe to live in

the peaceful planets of Jannaat (another universe) forever, because...*their portion is Jannaat.*

### **Section-6 of Chapter-2 [Verse 26–28]: Way of Narrating the Similitude**

Indeed, Allah disdains not to use the similitude of things, even of a mosquito or what is on top of it.

And those who have believed know that it is the truth from their Lord, but as for those who disbelieve, they say: "What did Allah intend by this as an example?"

He misleads many thereby and guides many thereby.

And He misleads not except the defiantly disobedient, those who break Allah's covenant (taken as Bayah to Islamic Leadership) after it is ratified, and who sunder what Allah has ordered to be joined (breaks unity) and do mischief on land. It is those who are the losers.

How can you reject the faith in Allah seeing that you were without life and He gave you life? Then He will cause you to die, and will again bring you to life, and again to Him will you return.

#### **Remarks:**

In the Quran, there are many Scientific Verses embedded as the signs of its divinity. But, everybody does not have the knowledge of science. So, the Verses are often narrated with examples of similar things so that the Verses make some sense to all.

For example, "*mosquito or what is on top of it*" are similitude of small things to a reader without the knowledge of science. But it is a sign of divinity

to a person having the knowledge of science. Now it is discovered that there are flying parasites that suck blood from mosquitoes. The above Verses mention the parasite as “*what is on top of it*”.

Allah has put a human on the Earth to test and decide his eternal destination. So, the scopes to disbelieve are kept open in the Quran.

For example, the Quran says that Allah has made the land our couch and the skies our canopy. In the old times, when the science was not developed, the “canopy” and the “couch” used to be understood by the believers as similitude of God’s favors. But, a disbeliever could laugh at the Verse saying that Muhammad’s canopy does not protect from the sun and the rain, and his bed is full of sand; he has become mad by living in the cave!

Allah could describe magnetosphere and atmospheric layers to explain how these work as canopy. He could describe how the land has been made couch by producing the soft soil crust. But Allah has not done it, because it would spoil the earthly test environment.

Now too, when the science has developed, a believer relates the canopy with magnetosphere and atmospheric layers, and a disbeliever thinks the believer’s thought as wishful thinking.

Thus, the scientific signs are described as such that a disbeliever can disbelieve, even when the science is developed.

Therefore, the Verses strengthen believer’s faith, and a disbeliever remains disbeliever, as the

Verses under discussion say: “*He misleads many thereby and guides many thereby.*”

The same thing is done everywhere. We understand that this fine-tuned universe resulted from the acts of Allah, but disbelievers fail to relate and think it as a result of accidents and unguided evolutions. They too have scientific logics in their favor, as we have in our favor. However, many of our proofs are based on definite discoveries, and they completely rely on theories and hypotheses.

In the probability of accidental creation, one out of trillion planets would be suitable for a creature like us. The disbelievers are ready to believe the existence of trillion planets, instead of believing one God, though only a few stars show remote signs of having any planet.

It is mathematically proved that the simplest DNA molecule, which could replicate and produce another similar creature, could not come up through accidents. It needed designing by an extraordinarily intelligent being, no less than the God of the Quran, but the disbelievers do not believe.

Allah developed the ‘program of life’ as the Genome Code, which can form a human body with highly developed brain, nervous system, eyes, ears, skin, etc. Thus, the Verses under discussion say: “...*you (you as soul in spiritual world) were without life (without physical life), and He gave you life (physical life from the genome code).*...”

Life on the Earth is short, but it will be repeated: “...*then He will cause you to die, and will*

*again bring you to life, and again to Him will you return”*

But it does not touch the heart of an idolater. Actually, people destined to the hell will not believe. They are ever distracted by the satan jinns, mounted on them.

Allah protects the Faiths of Believers, except of the defiantly disobedient, *those who break Allah's covenant (breaks bayah made to Islamic Leadership) after it is ratified, and who sunder what Allah has ordered to be joined (unity) and do mischief on land.*

Actually, Allah knows everybody, precisely. The test is arranged to quench the losers mainly.

### **Section-7 of Chapter-2 [Verse 29]: The Large-Scale Structure of the Universe / Seven-Sky-Universe (Main Discussion)**

He the One Who created for you what was in the assembly of land (*ma fi ardi jamian*), moreover He did *istawa* into the Sky, and fashioned them into Seven Skies, and He of everything is All-Knowing.

#### **Remarks:**

The above Verses indicate that we are living in the 2nd Cycle of the Universe.

In the 1st Cycle, the "assembly of land" (*ma fi ardi jamian*) was created. The "assembly of land" means the "entire matter of the Universe including the dusts and asteroids". These could be produced from the elements up to silicon”.

So, in the 1st Cycle, the universe produced the elements up to silicon.

The universe could produce the heavier elements if it contracted.

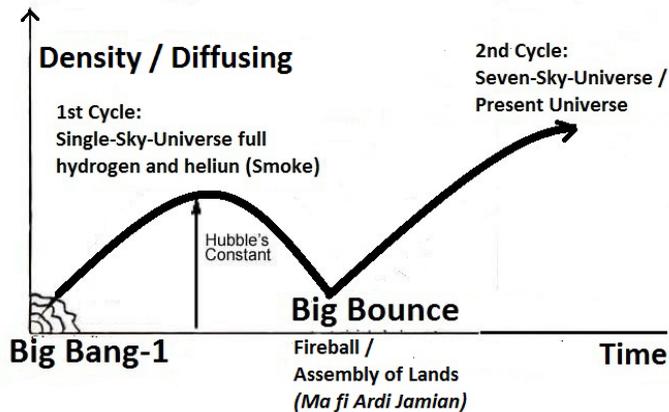


FIGURE 2.6: Big Bounce

In the 2nd Cycle, the contracted universe with the "assembly of land" restarted from a Big Bounce as a seven-sky-universe (Present Universe).

So, the matter was together at the beginning of the 2nd Cycle:

“Do not the unbelievers see that the Skies and the Lands were joined together before We clove them asunder” [Al Quran 21:30]

The Universe has taken the form of today through expansion and evolution. However, the

“Large Scale Structure of the Universe” is yet to be discovered.

The Quran says that the Universe is structured as Seven Skies: “...*then He did istawa into the Sky (previous single-sky-universe) and fashioned them into Seven Skies (present seven-sky-universe)...*”

Here, I will discuss the Quran’s view about the Skies (Samawaat). The subject is dealt in two Parts, as under:

- Part 1: General Appearance of the Universe
- Part 2: Large Scale Structure of the Universe - Science
- Part 3: Large Scale Structure of the Universe - the Quran

## **Part 1: General Appearance of the Universe**

One must know the “General Appearance of Universe” to understand the Skies. The subject is discussed under the following headings:

1. The Solar System
2. Milky Way Galaxy
3. Orientation
4. The changing appearance of the Night Sky
5. Other Galaxies
6. Orientation
7. Group, Cluster, Super-Cluster
8. Summary of Part 1

Readers who already know these basics may skip this Part. The Part is inspired by “*General Appearance of the Universe*” written by Bertrand Russell in his book *ABC of Relativity*.

## 1. The Solar System

Our Earth is one of the planets of the Solar System. The shape of the Earth is like an orange. The Earth spins on its axis once in a day and revolves around the Sun once in a year.

The Solar System includes eight planets and their moons, three dwarf planets (Ceres, Pluto, and Eris) and their moons, billions of small bodies (asteroids) and interplanetary dust and gas. The system is bound by gravity.

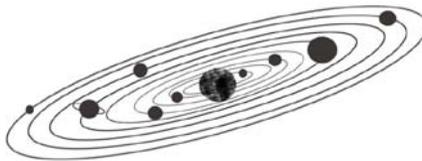


FIGURE 2.7: The Solar System

## 2. Milky Way Galaxy

The stars are not haphazardly scattered throughout the Universe. They are grouped into systems called galaxies.

The galaxy in which our Solar System is located is called “Milky Way Galaxy”. There are about two hundred billion stars in the galaxy. Our Sun is a medium size yellow star among those. Other than the stars, there are huge quantities of free dust and gas scattered in the interstellar space of the galaxy. These free dust and gas would be enough to produce another

twenty billion stars. The stars, free dust and gas form a central hub (nucleus) and several spiral arms. The whole galaxy is rotating slowly in the space like a giant Catherine wheel.

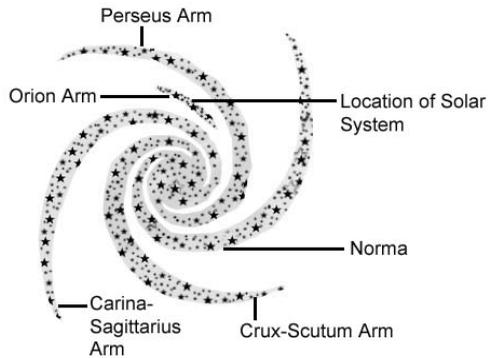


FIGURE 2.8: Milky Way Galaxy (Likely Overhead View)

The average distance between the stars is four light years [One light year is ten million-million kilometers, approximately]. The galaxy measures one hundred thousand light years from edge to edge. The central hub of the galaxy is twenty thousand light years in diameter.

Our Solar System is located in the Orion Arm (it is called Orion Spur as well). It is a small arm between Perseus and Carina-Sagittarius Arms. The distance of Solar System is about twenty-six thousand light years from the galactic center.



FIGURE 2.9: Milky Way Galaxy (Likely Side View)

The width of the galaxy is ten thousand light years at the center, and two thousand light years at the edge.

Scientists predict that each galaxy, including our Milky Way, holds a super-massive black hole in its central hub.

As the whole galaxy is rotating, the Solar System is speeding at a rate of 220 km per second. Despite the enormous speed, the galaxy is so huge that one complete orbit takes two hundred million years approximately.

### 3. Orientation

We see many stars in some of the nights. It seems innumerable. But maximum three thousand stars become visible to the naked eye in a clear dark night. From two hemispheres of the Earth, maximum six thousand stars can be seen without a telescope.

We see a very small part of the galaxy. And, as we are located inside the galaxy, we see the visible stars scattered all-around the space. Mainly, this is our ‘Naked-eye-Universe’.

We see a long glowing band of light too in the night sky. It is a part of the Perseus Arm. It glows due to the lights of innumerable stars extending in that

direction. The Arm is seven thousand light years away from the Earth.

[One can observe a part of Carina-Sagittarius arm from the southern hemisphere of the Earth. The arm is seven thousand light years away in the direction of the galactic center. But, it is not visible to the naked eye]

#### **4. The changing appearance of the Night Sky**

Due to the daily rotation of the Earth, the stars seem to sweep across the sky each night.

And, due to the yearly rotation of the Earth around the Sun, a part of the night sky enters the day sky, and a part of the day sky enters the night sky every day. So, the appearance of the sky changes from night to night (4 minutes per night).

If one will not consider these apparent movements, one will find the stars static.

But, actually they are not static; if one could go out of the Milky Way Galaxy quite a big distance, one could see the entire galaxy slowly rotating in the space.

#### **5. Other Galaxies**

There are many galaxies in the Universe. The galaxies are called “Mawaqin-Nujumi” in the Quran. “Mawaqi” means “Houses / Sites” and “Nujumi” means “Stars”. So, “Mawaqin-Nujumi” means “Houses of Stars”.

Only a galaxy can be called a House of Stars.  
So, “Mawaqin-Nujumi” means “Galaxies”.

“But nay, I swear by the Houses of  
Stars (Mawaqin-Nujumi / Galaxies).  
And, indeed it surely a swear if you  
know great” [Al Quran 56: 75–76]



FIGURE 2.10: Mawaqin-Nujumi / Galaxy M81

In the Quran, a galaxy is called “Space Ship”  
(*Falakin*) as well:

“It is not permitted to the Sun to  
outstrip the Moon, nor can the Night  
outstrip the Day, but all in a Space  
Ship (*Falakin*) they are floating.”

[Al Quran 36: 40]

“It is He Who created the Night and  
the Day, and the Sun and the Moon;  
each in a Space Ship (*Falakin*) they are  
floating.” [Al Quran 21:33]

"Fulki" means the "ship". Its trilateral root "falak" means "space". So "Falakin" is translated as "Space Ship".

And, as the Verses are talking about the Sun and the Moon, it is Milky Way Galaxy. The galaxy is like a super-giant space-ship floating in the space.

The galaxies were discovered in 1920s when an American Astronomer, Edwin Hubble, demonstrated that the Milky Way was not the only galaxy in the Universe. There are many others. Depending on the shape, Hubble classified the galaxies into four types:

- Elliptical Galaxy
- Spiral Galaxy
- Barred Spiral Galaxy
- Irregular Galaxy

A large galaxy may contain hundred trillion stars when a dwarf galaxy contains as few as ten million.

### 5a. Elliptical Galaxy

An Elliptical Galaxy is an oval shaped galaxy.

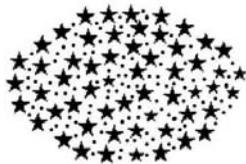


Diagram of an Elliptical Galaxy



Image of an Elliptical Galaxy

FIGURE 2.11: Elliptical Galaxy

## 5b. Spiral Galaxy

A Spiral Galaxy swings out arms from its central hub.



Diagram of a Spiral Galaxy



Image of a Spiral Galaxy

FIGURE 2.12: Spiral Galaxy

## 5c. Barred Spiral Galaxy

A Barred Spiral Galaxy looks like a Spiral galaxy, but it has a bar across its center. The spiral arms begin from the ends of the bar.



Diagram, Barred Spiral Galaxy



Image, Barred Spiral Galaxy

FIGURE 2.13: Barred Spiral Galaxy

Our Milky Way Galaxy has a small bar in its center. So, it is a Barred Spiral Galaxy.

### 5d. Irregular Galaxy

The Irregular galaxies have no particular shape. These are normally smaller bodies.



Diagram of an Irregular Galaxy



Image of an Irregular Galaxy

FIGURE 2.14: Irregular Galaxy

### 6. Orientation

Only four neighboring galaxies are visible to the naked eye. They look like faded dots in a clear dark night. So, one has to be an Astronomer to identify those.

From Northern Hemisphere of the Earth, M31 (Andromeda) is visible like a faint fuzzy patch. It is a Spiral Galaxy, 2.5 million light years away. Another, M 33, is smaller than Andromeda and harder to see. M 33 is a Spiral Galaxy located at about 2.3 million light years away.

From Southern Hemisphere of the Earth, two Irregular Galaxies, namely Large Magellanic Cloud and Small Magellanic Cloud, are faintly visible to the naked eye.

But, there are billions of galaxies in the universe. The galaxies are 3,000 to 300,000 light years in diameter. Generally, they are 2 to 3 million light years (mly) away from each other, in a Group.

## 7. Group, Cluster, Super-Cluster

### 7a. Group

The galaxies show distinct tendency to be collected into groups. The smallest concentration is called “Group”. A Group generally contains fifty galaxies. Several of these are major galaxies.

The Milky Way galaxy belongs to a group called “Local Group”. The diameter of the Local Group is 10 million light years (mly) roughly.

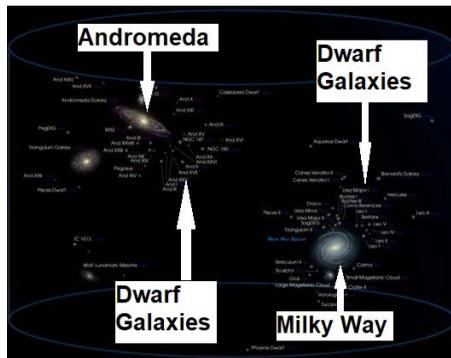


FIGURE 2.15: Local Group

The Local Group consists of two lobes in a "dumbbell" shape. The Milky Way and its satellite dwarf galaxies form one lobe, and Andromeda and its satellites galaxies form another lobe. Two lobes move towards one another with a velocity of 123 km/s.

### 7b. Cluster

The Clusters are bigger formations. A Cluster contains hundred to thousand galaxies. The intra-cluster medium consists of heated gas between the galaxies and has a peak temperature between 2 to 15 keV depending on the total mass of the cluster. A few examples of the clusters are: Virgo Cluster, Fornax Cluster, Hercules Cluster, Coma Cluster, etc.



FIGURE 2.16: Cluster Virgo

The Virgo spans about one hundred and ten million light years and contains about 1300 to 2000 galaxies.

### **7c. Supercluster**

The Groups, Clusters, and additional isolated galaxies together form a Supercluster. There are about ten million Superclusters in the observable universe. The Local Group belongs to Coma-Virgo Supercluster. A few Superclusters are: Hydra-Centaurus Supercluster, Coma-Virgo Supercluster, etc.

### **7d. Wall and Filament**

There are further types of concentration such as “Walls” and “Filaments” discussed in this Section later.

## **8. Summary of Part 1**

The universe is full of galaxies with vast tracts of empty space between them.

There are many stars, free dust and gas inside a galaxy. Our solar system lies in a galaxy called Milky Way Galaxy.

The galaxies show a distinct tendency to be collected into Group, Cluster, Supercluster, etc.

The Universe is unimaginably huge.

## **Part 2: Large Scale Structure of the Universe - Science**

The advent of great telescopes has extended our horizon far beyond our imagination. But, so far a boundary could not be distinguished beyond which there be no galaxy. The farther cosmologists are able to observe, the more galaxies are discovered. The end of the universe, in any direction, is yet to be discovered.

Moreover, no reliable way could be found out so far to measure the distance of a galaxy.

Therefore, it is not possible to draw the exact structure of the Universe. The scientists assume that the matter is uniformly (homogeneously) distributed throughout the space when averaged over a very large distance. It means that two equally large parts of the universe contain the same number of galaxies. They also assume that the universe is isotropic, where no direction of observation should seem different from any other direction. The hypothesis that the universe is uniform and isotropic is known as the Cosmological Principle.

However, it is an old assumption introduced by some scientists, including Einstein, to apply gravitational dynamics to the universe as a whole. In reality, the universe may not look the same from all points.

According to Einstein's Theory of Relativity, the presence of matter curves space-time. The gravity is not a force like other forces; it is felt due to the tendency of matter to move along the curved space-

time. The argument is proved by observation. Light passing through the side of a massive object bends.

A star makes a curvature in the space-time. All the stars in a galaxy as a whole make a curvature for the galaxy. All the galaxies in a cluster as a whole make a curvature for the cluster. In this way, the curvature of the overall Universe may have been determined by the distribution of matter in it.

But the distribution of matter cannot be known. The end of the universe could not be discovered in any direction, and there is no reliable way to find out the distance of a galaxy. The galaxies at very large distances are not visible even. If the distribution of matter in the universe is uniform and isotropic, the overall space may be Positively Curved, Negatively Curved, or Flat.

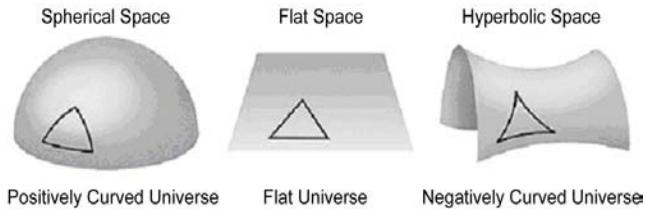


FIGURE 21.14: Curvature of Overall Universe

The space of a Positively Curved Universe is bent round onto itself. The light travelling in an apparently straight line will return to the point of origin—the space is like the surface of the Earth where one moving through a straight line returns to the start point. A Positively Curved Universe is closed; the Universe will eventually collapse.

*“Will the universe expand forever, or it will collapse again? The answer to this question depends critically on the amount of matter in this universe. If the density at present is more than  $10^{-29}$  grams per CC, then scientists calculate that there is enough matter in the universe to overcome by gravitational attraction the present expansion, and the universe will eventually collapse again to another state of Singularity. If the density is less than that value, the universe will continue to expand forever. We do not know the answer yet.”*

*– Dawn of a New Era by Sir Bernard Lovell in  
The Encyclopedia of Space Travel and Astronomy  
edited by John Man.*

If the space is Negatively Curved, it is like the saddle of a horse. Light follows a parabolic path. The Negatively Curved Universe is open; it will expand forever.

The space may be flat, where light follows a straight path. The Flat Universe is the dividing line between the Open Universe and the Closed Universe: there is either just enough matter to ‘close’ the universe and make it eventually collapse, or there is not quite enough so that it will expand forever.

### **Confirmation of Flat Universe**

In 1964 Arno Penzias and Robert Wilson, two Radio Astronomers, detected a faint radio noise coming equally from all directions of space. The thermal radiation measured 2.7 degree Kelvin (K).

The calculation of P.J.E. Peebles linked the radio-noise with the Big Bang. This remnant radiation of the Big Bang is now called Cosmic Microwave Background Radiation (CMBR). Arno Penzias and Robert Wilson were awarded the Nobel Prize for their work.

*“This immediately explained the observations and caused enormous excitement as the news spread throughout the world’s astronomical community, not least because the detection of the ‘Echo of the Big Bang’ firmly nailed the lid on the coffin of the steady state theory”*

– *To the Edge of Eternity* by John Gribbin in  
The Encyclopedia of Space Travel and Astronomy  
edited by John Man

NASA sent a probe in June 2001 (the Wilkinson Microwave Anisotropy Probe / WMAP) to collect the CMB data. The Probe was equipped with advanced instruments to detect minor fluctuations in the radiation.

The data has produced a map of the universe. It shows that the universe contains 4.6% matter, 24% dark matter, and 71.4% dark energy.

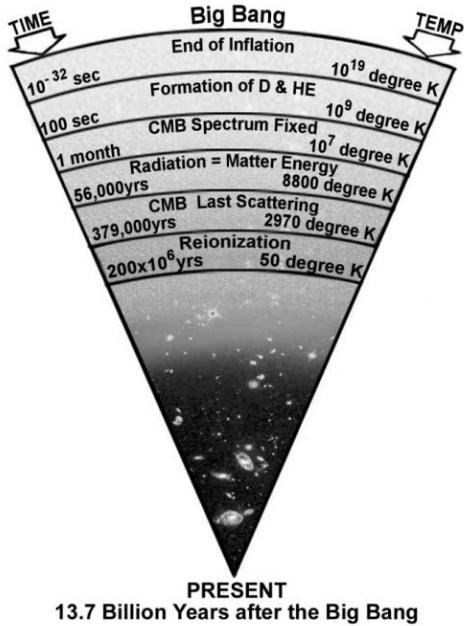


FIGURE 21.15: CMB Last Scattering

The pattern of CMB shows the physical conditions of the universe in the epoch of Last Scattering when the age of the Universe was 379,000 years.

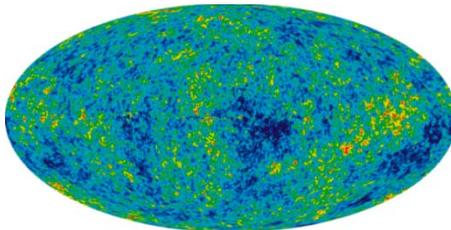


FIGURE 21.16: CMB Map of the Universe

The map shows temperature fluctuations. The fluctuations contain information about the total energy density and curvature of the universe. Tiny variations in the temperature correspond to the distribution of matter. These irregularities have become galaxies and clusters of galaxies.

By comparing the lateral dispersion of matter in ‘distant microwave sky’ and in the ‘distant real sky’ the geometry of the space is found out to be flat.

Moreover, in 1990s “1A Supernova Cosmological Project” and “High-Z Search Team” discovered that the expansion rate of the universe was accelerating for last five billion years. A Universe with fluctuating rate of expansion should be flat.

### **Part 3: Large Scale Structure of the Universe - the Quran**

A larva does not look like a creature that would be butterfly one day. The Cosmic Microwave Background Radiation (CMBR) shows the condition of the Universe at the age of 379,000 years. The scientists are trying to understand a tree by seeing its seed.

The Quran informs the present structure of the Universe. In light of the Quran, the space of the universe is waved into Skies, one inside another—like the peels of onion. These ‘seven super-giant waves of space’ are ‘Seven Skies’. Each Sky contains innumerable galaxies. The space, though waved, is continuous.

The design is fit for the universe that is to roll down into the Point of Doom and revive with resurrected humans. I have discussed the design in the following sequence:

9. What “Samah” (Sky) means
10. Nature of Sky
11. What is Space
12. What the Quran means by “Skies”
13. Construction of the Skies
14. Structures revealing the Skies
15. Observational Evidence
16. Other Indications of the Skies
17. Signs of the Second Beginning
18. Axis of the Universe
19. Summary

## **9. What “Samah” (Sky) means**

According to following Verse, the birds are held in the atmosphere of the Sky (Samah).

“Do they not see the birds, held in the atmosphere of the Sky (Samah)? None holds them up except Allah. Most surely, there are signs in this for a people who believe” [Al Quran 16:79]

The atmosphere begins just from the surface of the Earth, and the birds fly from the lowest height. Therefore, according to the Quran, the sky begins from the surface of the Earth.



FIGURE 2.17: The Earth in the Sky

According to the above Verse, one's feet are on the ground (*Ard*) and the rest of the body is in the sky (*Samah*). It goes against commonsense idea. Therefore, in above Verse, the Arabic word "*Jawwi*" is normally translated as "the midst" (*the birds, held in the midst of the Sky*). But actual meaning of "*Jawwi*" is "atmosphere/air".

Birds fly in India, birds fly in America, birds fly in Siberia, birds fly in Antarctica—birds fly all around the spherical Earth. Therefore, the Earth itself is an object in the Sky (*Samah*).

Therefore, in the Quran, the word "*Samah*" (sky) means "Space" in general.

There are three contexts where the singular word of the sky (*Samau / Sama-eh / Sama-ah*) has been used in the Quran:

- The Universe in the previous cycle was a single-sky-universe. Therefore, the Quran has used the word of singular sky where it has talked about an event of the previous cycle.

- The Universe will be rolled up and squeezed. Subsequently, the Final Judgment will be carried out in a different sky (Super Sky / Super Space). When the context of a Verse is the Day of Judgment, the Quran has sometimes used the word of singular sky to mean the Super Sky.
- The word of singular sky is used to mean the near space of the Earth.

Therefore, while reading the Quran, if we find the use of singular sky, we should understand that the Verse is taking about an event of the “Previous Cycle” or of the “Super Space” or of the “Near Space of the Earth”.

However, "singular sky (samah)" primarily means "space" in the Quran. It becomes clear when we discuss the Nature of the Sky.

## 10. Nature of the Sky

The Sky has many qualities. The Quran says that the sky can be curved and rolled:

“On the day when We will roll up the Skies (Samawaat / Universe) like the rolling up of the scroll for writings; as We originated the first creation, We shall reproduce it—a promise on Us; surely We will bring it about.”

[Al Quran 21:104]

The sky can be curved and rolled. When a metal ball depresses a soft rubber sheet, the smaller objects at close proximity tend to roll down toward the ball. Similarly, the presence of matter curves the space.

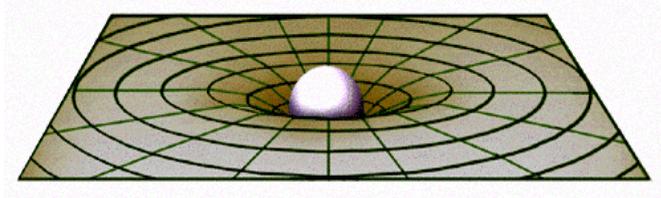


FIGURE 2.18: Curvature of space in two dimensional view

If the space were two-dimensional, the curvature would look like the curvature of the picture. It is difficult to draw a three-dimensional sketch of the same curvature. However, it can be visualized with difficulties.

But the space is not tree-dimensional. Einstein proposed time as the fourth dimension. The proposition has been substantially proved.

If the space were three-dimensional, the Moon would fall into the Earth directly, but it does not fall because of Time. In four-dimensional space-time the Moon is coming straight to the Earth; but in three-dimensional view, we see it rotating around the Earth (In the process of rotation, the Moon is closing to the Earth, but the rate is insignificant).

The curvature of space-time has been proved by experiments that the light passing through the side of a massive object (like the sun) bends.

*“The General theory extends relativity to gravitational fields. Einstein concluded that the presence of matter distorts space and time, space-time must be regarded together as curved.”*

– *To the Edge of Eternity* by John Gribbin in  
The Encyclopedia of Space Travel and Astronomy  
edited by John Man.

Thus, Einstein explained gravity as the tendency of matter to move along the curved space-time. In his view, gravity is not a force like other forces; it is felt due to the curvature of space-time.

The space-time is a dynamic entity. If a shell is fired from a tank in the direction the tank is moving, the speed of the tank gets added to the velocity of the shell. But, if a person is driving a car putting the headlights on, the speed of the car does not get added to the speed of light, because the speed of light is the ultimate speed.

If the speed of light cannot increase, then to the driver of the car, the speed of light should be less by the amount of the speed of the car. But, it too does not happen; the speed of light remains constant to the driver of the car as well. How it happens?

It happens because, motion slows down the time: As the driver of the car is moving, his watch is running slowly. Thereby, the speed of light remains constant to the driver as well.

Motion not only makes the watches move slowly, all actions and reactions become slow. If a chemical reaction takes one minute at rest, it will take longer time in a moving space ship—but in the watches of the space ship it will be one minute because, the watches in the space ship are running slowly. A man in motion will age slower than a man in rest. However, in our day-to-day speeds the effects are insignificant.

The phenomenon is practically proved:

The atomic watches of GPS satellites, orbiting Earth, need corrections for accurate navigational fix. Special Relativity predicts that the on-board atomic clocks on the satellites should fall behind the clocks on the ground by about 7 microseconds per day because of the slower ticking rate due to the time dilation effect of their relative motion.

Actually, motion compact the space. In compact space everything moves slowly.

The presence of matter too makes the space compact. On the surface of the Earth, time moves slower than on the top of a mountain because, the space is more compact on the surface of the Earth (amount of slowing down is so less that it is not detectable by the normal clock). The space around a black hole is extremely compact, so time is extremely slow over there.

The GPS satellites are in the orbits high above the Earth where the curvature of space-time due to the Earth's mass is less than it is at the Earth's surface. A calculation using General Relativity predicts that the clocks in each GPS satellite should

get ahead of ground-based clocks by 45 microseconds per day.

The combination of these two effects means that the on-board clocks of GPS Satellites should tick faster than identical clocks on the ground by about 38 microseconds per day ( $45-7=38$ ). This sounds small, but the high precision required of the GPS system requires nanosecond accuracy, and 38 microseconds is 38,000 nanoseconds. If these effects were not properly taken into account, a navigational fix based on the GPS constellation would be false after only 2 minutes, and errors in global positions would continue to accumulate at a rate of about 10 kilometers each day! The whole system would be utterly worthless for navigation in a very short time.

So, the presence of matter curves space-time. Free moving objects follow the curvature (a free-falling meteorite cannot hit the Earth vertically; it has to follow a curved path to hit the Earth). The tendency of matter to move along the curved space-time is felt by us as gravity.

In Einstein's view, the distribution of matter has curved the space, so the Sun, the Moon, and the Earth perform their complex movements precisely, instead of falling on each other directly. But, could an accidental distribution of matter evolve this fine-tuned universe? Hawking's perfect initial configuration of the universe resulting from the uncertainly principle is a weak story. Actually, some acts of Allah are explained by the scientists as the acts of time:

“Praise be to Allah the Cherisher and Sustainer of the Universes.”

[Al Quran 1: 1]

Allah extended and infused several of His elementary Souls (Force Fields / Ruhhs) into the space to sustain and evolve the creations. He is the Creator, Designer, Sustainer and Evolver. We view His all-embracing acts of evolving the Universe as the acts of time:

“On the authority of Abu Hurayrah, who said that the Messenger of Allah said, Allah says: “Children of Adam inveigh against Time; I am Time; I change the day and night”

[Hadith-e-Qudsi, Bukhari, Muslim]

The Deeds of Allah is continuously changing the Universe, so we feel the flow of Time:

“He covers the night with the day, seeking it rapidly, and the sun and the moon and the stars controlled by His deed.” [Al Quran 7:54]

This fine-tuned Universe proves the existence of God:

“Do they not look at the sky above them? How We have made it, and

adorned it, and there is no disparity in it?" [Al Quran 50:6]

"He Who created the seven skies one above another; Not you see in the creation of Most Gracious any disparity (*fatawutin*).

So, turn thy vision again: seest thou any act of Originator (*futurin*)?

Again, turn thy vision a second time—vision will come back to thee dull and discomfited, in a state worn out"

[Al Quran 67:03-4]

The Universe is perfectly designed (curved) by Allah. So, the “distribution of matter” and the “curvature of space” appear to be the effects of each other. Allah has set the evolution of each object; He is the Evolver.

However, even if the Universe is designed as a system, running all the objects together is a huge job. At least keeping watch on each object and controlling it if needed are required. Allah says, He alone can do it—He is a One-Man-Army:

“Do they not observe the birds above them spreading their wings and folding them in? None holds them except (God) Most Gracious. Truly it is He that watches over all things. Or who is it that could be an Army for you to aid

you other than the Most Merciful? The disbelievers are not but in delusion”

[Al Quran 67: 19-20]

Allah knows everything instantly. Experiment carried out by Alain Aspect and his Team in 1982 provides strong evidence that even at great distances atomic particles remain connected to one another—if they are entangled. If two sub-atomic particles are emitted from the same source, one influence other instantly whatever is the distance. So, the modern Quantum Mechanics suggests that the Universe is not made of separate elements but is an unbroken singular entity.

The extended elementary Souls (Force Fields / Ruhhs) of Allah, which sustain the creations, are unbroken singular entities. So, He comes to know everything instantly.

But do not mix-up the creations with Allah. The elementary Souls (Force Fields / Ruhhs) of Allah sustain the creations produced from the Nafsin-Wahidatin (discussed in Chapter-1). The productions remain entangled to each other; they do not mix-up with His elementary Souls (Force Fields / Ruhhs).

## **11. What is Space**

The space is void filled with the extended elementary Souls of Allah [the Souls are discussed in Chapter-1].

He has created the Arsh, Super Space, and Barzakh where the natural laws may be different due to the varied presence of His extended elementary Souls (Force Fields / Ruhhs). This Universe (Samawaat) is an entity in the Eastern Super Space.

## 12. What the Quran means by “Skies”

In the Quran, “Samawaat” (Skies) or “Samawaat-wal-Ard” (Skies and Lands) means the “Universe”. In later expression, “Ard” is added with “Samawaat” to remove confusion. Otherwise, some of the old people would claim God as the owner of the ‘Blue Sphere’ only:

“Pharaoh said: "O Chiefs! No god do I know for you but myself. Therefore, O Haman! Light me a (kiln to bake bricks) out of clay and build me a lofty palace that I may mount up to the god of Moses. But as far as I am concerned, I think (Moses) is a liar!"

[Al Quran 28:38]

Actually, “Samawaat” includes the Lands (the Earth and other astral objects).

However, in some of the Verses, “Samawaat” (Skies) mean complete Universe except Planet Earth, as it is in the following Verse:

“Say: Have ye seen ‘Partners’ of yours whom ye call upon besides Allah?

Show me what it is they have created  
in the land (Earth). Or have they a  
share in the Skies (Samawaat)?”

[Al Quran 35:40]

The following Verse clarifies the Quran’s  
view about the Skies:

“And built over you Seven Skies”

[Al Quran 79:12]

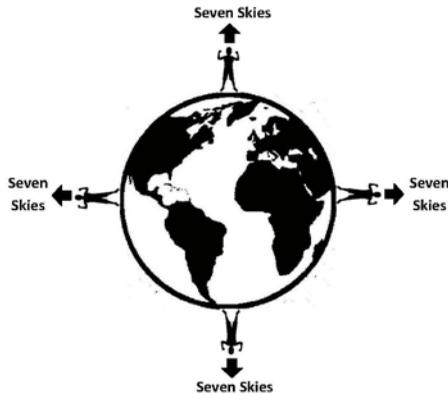


FIGURE 2.19: And built over you Seven Skies

So, a man standing in India has Seven Skies over his head, and a man standing in America has Seven Skies over his head. Everybody on the spherical planet Earth has Seven Skies over his head.

Therefore, the Skies should be spherical in shape, one inside another—like the peels of onion. And our Earth should be in the First / Innermost Sky.

### 13. Construction of the Skies

Space is void filled with the extended elementary Souls (Force Fields / Ruhhs) of Allah. The elementary Souls are designed to sustain the matter and energies. So, the accumulation of matter in a point should increase the intensity of His extended elementary Souls. For example, the gravitational force (an extended elementary Soul of Allah) is higher in an object where the amount of matter is higher.

So, the wavy distribution of matter in the universe has curved the space into Skies. The Following Verses describe the 'formation of Skies' and the 'distribution of matter' as related affairs:

“Moreover, He did *istawa* (infused several force fields of His nafs) into the Sky while it had been smoke. He said to it (smoke) and to the lands (formed after His *istawa* into the smoke), “Come both of you willingly or unwillingly.” They both said, “We do come in willing obedience.” So, He completed them as Seven Skies in two days and inspired in each Sky its affairs. And We adorned the Sky of the Earth (Samah-ud-Dunia) with lights and with guard. Such is the Decree of the Exalted in Might, Full of Knowledge.” [Al Quran 41: 11-12]

I have discussed the Verses in 4 parts, as under:

## Part 1 of the Verses:

“Moreover, He did *istawa* (infused several force fields of His nafs) into the Sky while it had been smoke...”

[Al Quran 41: 11-12]

Here, the 'Sky' means the 'single-sky-universe' in the 1st cycle of the universe.

At the beginning of the 1st cycle, the radiation turned into matter. It produced hydrogen. Later, 25% of hydrogen turned into helium. When Allah did *istawa* into the Sky, there was mixture of these two gases (smoke) mainly.

How lands formed in the smoke?

To answer, Allah did *istawa* into the Sky (single-sky-universe) by infusing one of His elementary Souls (Gravitational Force), and the universe began to contract. The contracting universe produced heavier elements up to silicon in the hot central region.

Subsequently, the contracting universe re-initiated from a Big Bounce where there were smoke and lands (dust and asteroids produced from the elements up to silicon). There are Verses in the Quran and Holy Bible which support the Big Bounce re-initiation:

“Do not the unbelievers see that the Skies and Lands were joined together before We clove them asunder”

[Al Quran 21:30]

“...I alone stretched out the Skies,  
 when I made the Earth (initial planets  
 and Earth / asteroids); no one helped  
 Me” - Isaiah 44:24, Holy Bible (GNB)

In the second beginning (Big Bounce), the universe appeared as a seven-sky-universe. And, in the expanding skies, the matter could easily concentrate into conglomerates to form the galaxies.

The following diagram shows the important stages discussed above.

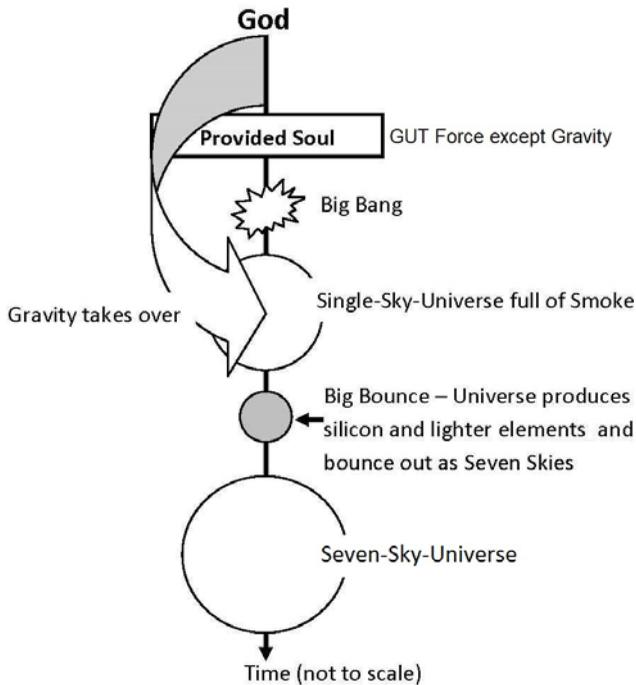


FIGURE 2.23: Big Bounce and formation of Skies

We may put the events in a sequence as under:

- Big Bang produced uniform single-sky-universe full of smoke (hydrogen and helium mainly).
- The gravitational force was infused, and it initiated the contraction. The contracting single-sky-universe produced heavier elements up to silicon. The elements produced the dust and the asteroids (lands).
- Eventually, the contracting universe had a Big Bounce, and it appeared as an expanding seven-sky-universe.

In this model, the first-generation stars that deemed produced the heavier elements were not required, and the universe may be younger.

The universe that re-started as a seven-sky-universe could not expand much. But it needed to expand greatly and rapidly to produce the dark nights for Adam and his cattle. So, Allah extended another elementary Soul (Force Field / Ruhh) of His Nafs. The Soul supports the expansion of the Universe:

“And the Sky, We constructed it with Support (Dark Energy), and indeed We surely are Expanders”

[Al Quran 51:47]

Allah designed the extended elementary Soul at His will to act in fixed patterns. So, we find it as

natural law, and call it Dark Energy. The Dark Energy works as a repulsive force to expand the Universe.

**Note:**

The extended elementary Soul (Force Field / Ruhh) may be a repulsive force, which is expanding the universe by itself. Or, the energy of expansion may be held in the elementary Soul. Allah is the Expander.

**Part 2 of the Verses:**

“...He said to it (smoke) and to the lands (dusts and asteroids formed after His istawa into the smoke), “Come both of you willingly or unwillingly.” They both said, “We do come in willing obedience.” So, He completed them as Seven Skies in two days...”

[Al Quran 41: 11-12]

In the expanding universe, light and heavy elements could not move together, as heavy gets greater momentum. But, Allah ordered them to come together, willingly or unwillingly. It produced the Law of Inertia. Thus, the matter said, “*We do come in willing obedience.*”

One may test it in the laboratory. Take a lump of cotton and a piece of iron. Put those into a glass tube. Remove the air from the glass tube and make the cotton and iron fall downward by turning the tube

upside down rapidly. Iron and cotton will fall in the same speed. So, they come together in willing obedience.

Allah orders at the same time helps the creations to follow the order. Therefore, He curved the space into seven spherical waves, one inside another—like the peels of onion. So, a balanced seven-sky-universe with proportional distribution of matter formed. And, the waves of space (Skies) could carry smoke and heavier elements together in its super high-speed expansion.

These 'seven super-giant waves of space' are 'Seven Skies'. We are in the Innermost (First) Sky.

The following Verses say that the space was expanded to create the darkness. The darkness was needed to create the day and night for the survival of our cattle and us.

“What! Are you more difficult to create, or the sky? He has constructed it. He has raised its thickness and proportioned it. Its night does He endow with darkness, and its splendor does He bring out. And the land moreover has He extended (continental drift). He draws out there from its moisture and its pasture. And the mountains He firmly fixed. For use and convenience to you and your cattle.” [Al Quran 79: 27–33]

### **Part 3 of the Verses:**

“So, He completed them as Seven  
Skies in two days and inspired in each  
Sky its affairs...”

[Al Quran 41: 11-12]

The affairs of each Sky were inspired. The inspiration to the inert universe was provided through its initial configuration. It means that the initial configuration of single-sky-universe and the initial configuration of seven-sky-universe were different.

So, the Seven-Sky-Universe began from a Big Bounce.

### **Part 4 of the Verses:**

“...And We adorned the Sky of the  
Earth (Samah-ud-Dunia) with lights  
and protection. Such is the Decree of  
the Exalted in Might, Full of  
Knowledge.” [Al Quran 41: 11-12]

The Sky of the Earth has been adorned with the lights of the sun, the moon and the local stars later, after the Universe expanded sufficiently.

The Earth has magnetic field and layered atmosphere to protect us from the harmful radiations.

There are protections in the Solar System as well. The asteroids are put into the belts, and the giant Jupiter is working as a space cleaner. It keeps the orbit of the Earth clean.

## 14. Structures revealing the Skies

The disposition of Wall, Filament, Void and Great Attractor indicates the existence of Skies. The basic ideas about these are given in the following:

### 14a. Wall

Prior to 1989, the Superclusters were known as the largest structures in the Universe. The discovery of “Great Wall” by Margaret Geller and John Huchra has changed the idea. The Great Wall is a sheet of galaxies 750 million light years (MLY) long, 200 million light years wide and 16 million light years thick.

A Wall can span billions of light years. Superclusters are now understood to be subordinates to enormous Walls or Sheets.

The Hercules Corona Borealis Great Wall (Her–CrB GW) is the largest wall discovered so far (2013). The wall measures more than 10 billion light years in length. It is 7.2 billion light-years wide and only 900 million light-years thick. It is located in the direction of constellations Hercules and Corona Borealis at a distance of 10 billion light-years, approximately.

Another great concentration, CCLQG, is about 9.5 billion light years away in the direction of Leo. The wall is 2 billion light-years in length and about 1 billion light years in width. The CCLQG may be a part of the Huge-LQG. They are 1.8 billion light years

away from each other. The Huge-LQG is 4 billion light years across.

Coma Wall, Sloan Wall, Sculptor Wall, Grus Wall, Fornax Wall, etc., are some of the enormous walls.

#### 14b. **Filaments**

The Filaments are largest known structures in the Universe. These are thread like structures with typical lengths of 50 to 80  $h^{-1}$  mega parsecs, formed out of gravitationally bound galaxies. Parts of a Filament where large numbers of galaxies are very close to each other are known as Superclusters. The Filaments are seen around the boundaries of voids. Followings are examples of the Filaments:

The Perseus-Pegasus Filament: It connects the Pisces-Centus Supercluster with the Perseus-Pisces Supercluster.

The Coma Filament: The Coma Supercluster lies within the Coma Filament. It forms part of CfA2 Great wall.

#### 14c. **Voids**

In more recent studies, the Universe appears as a collection of giant bubble-like voids separated by walls and filaments. This network is clearly visible in the 2dF Galaxy Red Shift Survey. The Voids occur on the scale of 100 MPC.

In 2007, a super void was discovered in the constellation Eridanus. It coincides with WMAP cold

spot. To cause a cold spot in the microwave sky, a void would have to be improbably huge, possibly a billion light years across, which does not favor current cosmological model.

Some of the voids of the near Universe are: Capricornus Void, Sculptor Void, Bootes Void, Culumba Void, Canes Major Void, Corona Borealis Void, Microscopium Void, etc.

#### 14d. **The Great Attractor**

The Great Attractor is an immensely powerful gravitational anomaly that appears in the direction of Centaurus at about 200 million light years from the Earth. All galaxies within a radius of 250 million light years are flowing toward the Great Attractor on the order of 600 km/Sec.

The large-scale streaming motion is superimposed on Hubble's flow. The streaming motion includes the Virgo cluster (including our galaxy), the Hydra-Centaurus Super Cluster, and other clusters.

A mass of  $10^{16}$  suns would account for such a powerful attraction. Detail search by astronomers of that region of the sky finds ten times too little visible matter. But, the Great Attractor is certainly there, as its gravitational influence is clearly visible.

The Core of the Great Attractor is in the Norma Supercluster.

[The cause of the streaming motion may be Shapley Concentration as well. It is in the same direction, but at a greater distance]

## 15. Observational Evidences

Cosmologists see near galaxies only. Those at great distances are too faint to be visible even with the most powerful telescopes. And it is difficult to perceive the distance.

With painstaking efforts, cosmologists have collected enough data of the near universe, which show us up to 2nd / 3rd Sky.

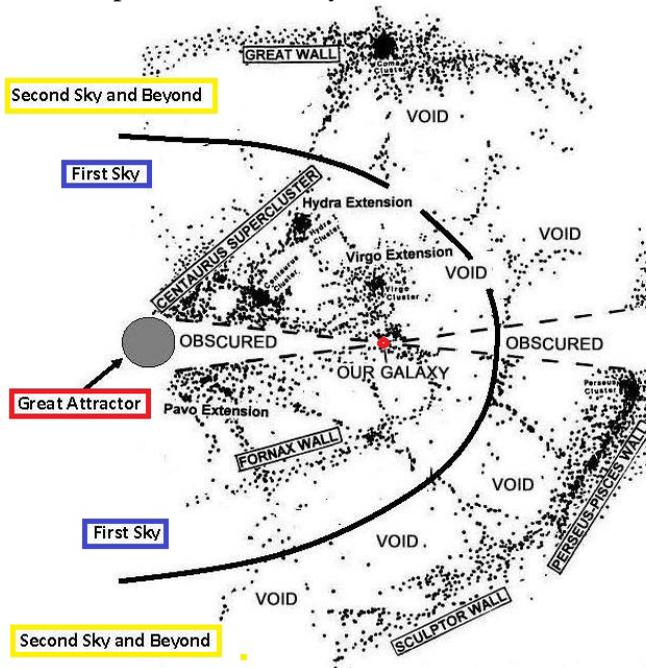


FIGURE 2.20: Likely First and Second Sky

Figure 2.20 is drawn with the data collected by NASA. I have drawn a probable boundary between

the First Sky and the Second Sky. The Great Attractor is put in the Center of the First (Innermost) Sky.

The distribution of matter reveals the Skies as spherical waves of space, one inside another—like the peels of onion.

[I have considered the Great Attractor as the center. If it shifts to Shapley Concentration, the Skies may be re-defined accordingly]

### 15a: **The First (Innermost) Sky**

We are in the First / Innermost sky in light of the Quran:

“And built over you the Seven Skies”

[Al Quran 79:12]

The Quasars are oldest objects. Some of them are seen at around 28 billion light years away. They are visible due to their immense brightness. The Quasars of such distances are equally distributed in all directions of space and receding straight backward. It points out that we are in the innermost region of the space. The innermost region is the First Sky.

The First Sky contains the Centaurus Supercluster with its extensions like Hydra extension, Virgo Extension, Pavo Extension, Norma Supercluster, and Fornax Wall. The Great Attractor is the center of the First Sky (see fig. 2.20).

The gravity of the Great Attractor is so powerful that all objects of the First Sky are closing towards it. The gravity can be explained as the

tendency of matter to move along the curved space-time. Thus, from the fringe of the First Sky, the space is slopping down into the center of the First Sky where the Great Attractor is located. In other words, the fabric of space is denser at the center of the First Sky, and as it approaches toward the edge, the fabric of space becomes thinner.

The Great Attractor should not need a mass of  $10^{16}$  suns to produce a gravitational force strong enough to pull the objects even at 250 million light years away. The galaxies move toward its direction due to the very design of the space formed by the overall distribution of matter in the First (Innermost) Sky.

The First Sky is the core sky of the universe. Here the galaxies should concentrate in the form of Supercluster. In the outer skies, they would form walls / sheets.

However, the Centaurus Supercluster with its extensions looks like a Wall (Centaurus Wall). But, it is a circular concentration with Norma Supercluster in the center. The Great Attractor is located in the Norma Supercluster.

As Norma Supercluster is falling rapidly into the Great Attractor, it is associated with a small “Finger of God Effect” in the plots of galactic red-shift velocities when viewed from the perspective of the Solar System.

The “Finger of God” is an effect where distribution of galaxies is elongated in red-shift space with the axis of elongation pointed toward the Solar

System. It is caused by a Doppler shift associated with the random peculiar velocities of galaxies.

In case of Norma Finger of God, the galaxies in the far side of Great Attractor are blue-shifted and galaxies of the near side are red-shifted producing a small Finger of God in the line of sight.

All matters out to a distance of about 250 million light years are flowing toward the Great Attractor. Therefore, radius of the First Sky should be about 300 million light years, after adding half of the width of the surrounding belt of void (250+50).

### **15b. The Second Sky**

As it is shown in figure 2.20, Great Wall, Perseus-Pisces Wall, Sculptor Wall with co-located other structures are forming the Second Sky. The galaxies of the Second Sky are collected mostly along the central plane (central sphere) of the Second Sky; thereby they are forming walls. The concentration of galaxies indicates that the fabric of space is denser in the central sphere of the Second Sky; and as the edges are approached, the fabric of space becomes thinner.

Therefore, the Second Sky is a super-giant spherical wave of space. From the edges of the Second Sky, the space is slopping down into the central sphere of the Sky where the galaxies are sliding down and forming walls.

Only in a waved space, the galaxies should have tendency to move toward the central sphere of the wave and form walls. The formation of walls

shows that the space of the Universe is curved into waves (Skies).

The Second Sky looks 400 million light years wide after adding half of the belt of void in each side (50+300+50).

The central plane of the Second Sky should be about 500 million light years away from the Great Attractor (Radius of First Sky + 1/2 of the width of Second Sky = 500 million light years).

Like Norma Finger of God, the clusters falling into the central sphere of the Second Sky show the Finger of God phenomena.

### 15c. The Third Sky

In the following figure, the Third Sky looks 600 million light years wide, and its central belt (central sphere) is about 1,000 million light years away from the Great Attractor (300+400+300).

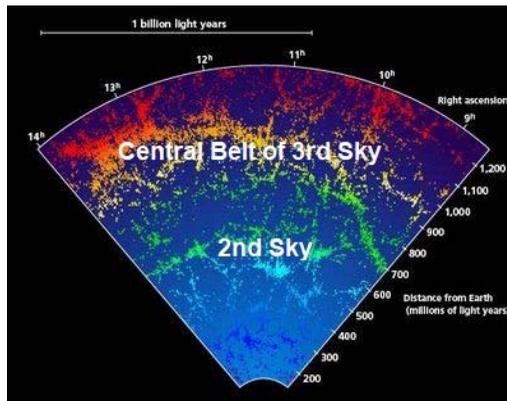


FIGURE 2.21: Likely 2nd and 3rd Sky

So, an outer Sky is wider than the inner Sky. In this scale, the radius of the Universe may be 5 to 7 billion light years at the best. The Universe looks much bigger due to the waved space (Skies) and continuous closing of matter (galaxies) into the central spheres of the waves. The effect is enhanced by Roll-up-Closing-Order of the Universe. The Roll-up-Closing is discussed in Section-7 of Chapter-30.

### 15d. The Universe with Seven Skies

The seven super-giant waves of space make the Seven Skies of the Universe. The waves of space are spherical, one inside another—like the peels of onion.

The Skies are not disconnected; the space, though waved, is continuous.

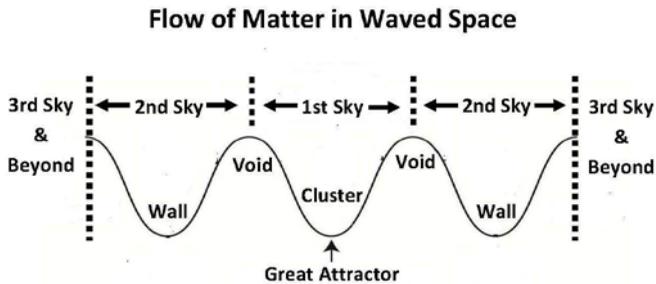


FIGURE 2.22: Skies in two-dimensional Waves

In above figure, the Skies are shown with two-dimensional waves. Outer Skies (Third to Seventh) should be the same as the Second Sky.

## 15e. Doors and Paths of the Skies

It seems in figure 2.20 that the Filaments are holding the galaxies from falling rapidly into the Great Attractor and into the central sphere of Second Sky.

It seems as well that the Filaments are making paths to cross the belts of voids. As the Skies are waves of space, it should be difficult for anything to move from one sky to another. The Filaments may be used by the jinns to move from one Sky to another. The jinns are created from anti-matter.

## 15f. Dark Matter

The dark matter is invisible matter. Anti-matter is a kind of dark matter. The presence of dark matter is conceivable from its gravitational effect on the other matters, as well as the particles with which it may be made of, such as neutrinos, have reasonable evidences of its existence. It is assessed that the Universe contains five times more dark matter than matter. In most regions of the universe, the dark matter and the visible matter are together; proportionately balanced with mutual gravitational attraction.

*“However, we know that the universe must also contain what is called dark matter, which we cannot observe directly- One piece of evidence for this dark matter comes from spiral galaxies. These are enormous pancake-shaped collections of stars and gas. We observe that they are rotating about their centers, but the rate of rotation is sufficiently high that they would fly apart if they contained only the*

*stars and gas that we observe. There must be some unseen form of matter whose gravitational attraction is great enough to hold the galaxies together as they rotate.”*

*– Black Holes and Baby Universes by Stephen Hawking.*

*“Another piece of evidence for dark matter comes from clusters of galaxies. We observe that galaxies are not uniformly distributed throughout the space; they are gathered together in clusters that range from a few galaxies to millions. Presumably, these clusters are formed because the galaxies attract each other into groups. However, we can measure the speeds at which individual galaxies are moving in these clusters. We find they are so high that the clusters would fly apart unless they were held together by gravitational attraction. The mass required is considerably greater than the masses of all the galaxies. This is the case even if we take the galaxies to have the masses required to hold themselves together as they rotate. It follows, therefore, that there must be extra dark matter present in clusters of galaxies outside the galaxies that we see.”*

*– Black Holes and Baby Universes by Stephen Hawking.*

Skilled distribution of matter and dark matter has curved the space into Skies. Or, the curvature of space has determined the distribution of matter in the Universe.

## 15g. Conclusion of Observational Evidence

Allah has curved the space into Skies. The curvatures of space determine in which directions the galaxies to move and in which places they are to be collected, as has been observed that the galaxies of the First Sky are closing toward the center of the First Sky (Great Attractor), and the galaxies of the outer Skies are flowing toward the central spheres of the respective Skies. Within the galaxies, the objects move through their orbits following the local curvatures of space.

## 16. Other Indications of the Skies

In a uniform universe, gas would spread out uniformly. But, as the Universe was structured into Skies, and as the Skies were expanding, the smoke ghettoized into huge conglomerates to form the galaxies.

Only a universe with waved space (Skies) could expand fast and remain balanced:

*“There is another extra ordinary feature pointed out by Stephen Hawking of Cambridge in 1973. If in the primordial fireball the expansion of the universe had differed by only one part in a million millionths from what it actually was, there would have been no possibility of the universe existing as we know it now. If the universe had expanded **one million millionth parts faster**, then all the material in the universe would have dispersed by now. There would have been no possibility of the gas being drawn*

*together by gravity into stars. And if it had been a million millionth parts slower, then gravitational forces would have caused the universe to collapse within the first thousand million years or so its existence. Again, there would have been no long-lived stars and no life”.*

–“*Dawn of a New Era*” by Sir Bernard Lovell in the Encyclopedia of Space Travel and Astronomy edited by John Man

Hawking calculates that if the speed of expansion deviated by **one million millionth parts**, the stars could not form, or the universe would collapse by now. Our appearance was never in such grim probability, because the universe was waved into Skies. Here tiny deviation in the rate of expansion would not matter much.

The seven-sky-universe expands due to the Dark Energy as well, not due to the drive of the Big Bounce only.

## **17. Signs of the Second Beginning**

We have Signs of the Second Beginning (Big Bounce): If one excludes iron, the major portion of the Earth is composed of silicon and elements lighter than silicon. Following four elements make over sixty percent of the Earth—one is silicon; other three are lighter than silicon:

1. Silicon – 15.1 %
2. Oxygen – 30.1 %
3. Magnesium – 13.9 %

4. Aluminum – 1.4 %

5. **Total – 60.5 %**

The Atomic Number of Silicon is 14. The lighter elements in the periodic table are: H, He, Li, Be, B, C, N, O, F, Ne, Na, Mg, and Al. These were created in the contracting universe of the 1st cycle. The elements produced dust and asteroids (lands), with which the Initial Earth could form. So, the Initial Earth was a Silicate Earth.

Holy Bible too supports the idea that the lands existed when the Skies (seven-sky-universe) began to stretch out.

“...I alone stretched out the Skies,  
when I made the Earth (from the  
asteroids); no one helped Me”

- Isaiah 44:24, Holy Bible (GNB)

So, the idea that the elements heavier than helium were created in the first-generation stars may not be true. Present stars may be the first-generation stars.

The Universe could produce at least up to silicon if it had a Big Bounce. The long-lasting stars and the initial planets could be created with these elements.

The galaxies could rapidly form in the expanding Skies. When the Sun formed in the Milky Way galaxy, some of the asteroids were tied with the Sun. The asteroids formed the Initial Earth.

The Initial Earth did not have elements heavier than silicon. The elements heavier than

silicon, such as Iron, phosphorus, sulfur, chlorine, platinum, gold, uranium, etc., produced in some stars and scattered into the space due to the supernova explosions. These elements were then sent down into the Earth. It is said in the following Verses:

“And we sent down the iron, wherein there is strength and many benefits for the people.” [Al Quran 57:25]

The Verse mentions iron only because its amount is significant. Moreover, most of the other elements are unknown to the common people. In simple talk: initial Earth was a silicate Earth, and then it became a silicate Earth with an iron core.

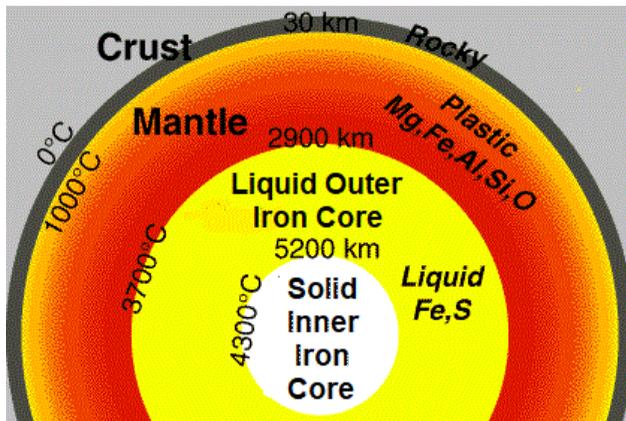


FIGURE 2.24: Interior of the Earth

Elements heavier than silicon, which were descended from the supernova, make 39.5% of the Earth. Out of

these elements, 32.1% is iron. Rest 7.4% (100 – 60.5 – 32.1) is as under:

1. Sulfur – 2.9 %
2. Nickel – 1.8 %
3. Calcium – 1.5 %
4. Remaining 1.2 % consists of trace amounts of other elements.
5. **Total 7.4 %**

These elements (7.4%) serve two purposes mainly:

- **Mountains:** Some of these elements are radioactive. These radioactive elements maintain the temperature of molten Iron Core. The temperature sustains convection current in the Mantle. The pressure of the convection current sustains the high mountain ranges. Otherwise, these heavy mountains would sink into the Earth over time. For example, Indo-Australian plate is continuously pushing Eurasian Plate, so the Great Himalayan Range is standing high.
- **Nourishment:** Some of these elements provide nourishment to the living creatures. Animals need many elements heavier than silicon in their bodies.

The elements (7.4%) serving these two purposes were parked into the Earth in the form of meteorites. It has been said in the following Verses:

“Say: Is it that ye deny Him Who created the land (dust and asteroids) in two days? And do ye join equals with Him? He is the Lord of the universes.

And He placed therein firmly set **mountains** and parked therein from above it and determined therein its **nourishment** in four days (periods) equal; for those who ask.”

[Al Quran 41: 9-10]

Our Earth is about 13-billion-year-old, but the scientists calculate the age as 4 to 5 billion years because, the elements on which the tests are based were created in the supernova about 4 to 5 billion years ago.

## 18. Axis of the Universe

It is likely that the contracting universe began to rotate and developed an Axis. When the Universe reinitiated from the Big Bounce, it was rotating. Therefore, the net angular momentum has dissipated among the galaxies.

A Universe with Skies should have an Axis, and it may be rotating relative to other universes in higher dimensional space.

*“For the past few years, Professor Longo has worked primarily in astrophysics, in particular, analyzing data from the Sloan Digital Sky Survey (SDSS). This has led to strong evidence for a cosmic parity violation in the Universe, as indicated by a*

*statistically significant excess of left-handed spiral galaxies toward the North Galactic Pole and an excess of right-handed in the opposite direction. This also suggests that our Universe has a preferred axis and a net angular momentum. Since angular momentum is conserved this means the Universe must have been born spinning. We can't see outside of our Universe, so we'd have to assume it is spinning relative to other universes in a higher dimensional space. Presumably the Big Bang was spinning initially, and as it expanded, the net angular momentum was dissipated among the galaxies. Now we still see it through the preferred spin direction.”*

*- “Detection of a Dipole in the Handedness of Spiral Galaxies with Redshifts  $z \sim 0.04$ , Michael J. Longo, Phys. Lett. B 699, 224-229 (2011).*

It should not be possible for us to understand the rotation of the universe because we are living inside it.

## **The Axis**

In seven-sky-universe, the Axis, most likely, runs through the “Circles of Great Attractions”. There may be 13 circles of Great Attractions. The Innermost Sky has one circle that is the Great Attractor. Each of other Skies has two circles. In the following figure, the Axis is shown with the circles of the First Sky and the Seventh Sky.

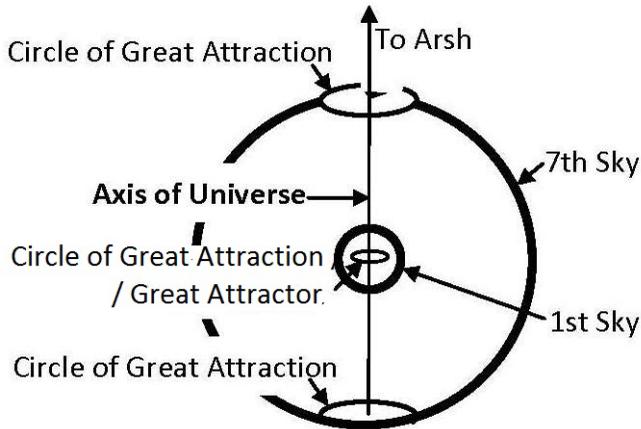


FIGURE 30.12: Axis of the Universe

The axis running through the circles makes a path as well. The channels coming down from the Araf run through this path. This may be the only path, through which something can enter the Universe and cross the Skies. The Command Stations, related to the angels, may be located along this path. [The Channels and the Command Stations are discussed in Section-9 of Chapter-6]

At present, the overall Universe may be rotating around the Axis and contracting.

## 19. Summary

The Skies are 'waves of space', one inside another—like the peels of onion.

## **Section-8 of Chapter-2 [Verse 30–33]: Creation of Adam and his Quality to Learn**

Behold, thy Lord said to the angels, "Indeed, I am going to place in a land (ardi) a vicegerent."

They said, "Will You place therein one who will make mischief therein and shed blood, while we do celebrate Thy praises and glorify Thy holy (name)?" He said, "I know what you know not."

And He taught Adam the names of all of them; then He placed them before the angels and said, "Tell me the names of these if you are right." They said, "Glory to You, of knowledge we have none, save what You have taught us. In truth, it is You Who is perfect in knowledge and wisdom."

He said, "O Adam! Tell them their names."

When he had told them their names, Allah said, "Did I not tell you that I know the secrets of the Sky and Land, and I know what you reveal and what you conceal?"

### **Remarks:**

The above Verses highlight two points:

- Allah created humans as His vicegerents.
- Humans are learning creatures.

### **1. Allah created humans as His vicegerents**

The Verses highlight the purpose of creating human beings. They are vicegerents of God on the lands. Humans are servants of God—but, they are servants as the vicegerents.

The lands are scattered throughout the universes. If the planet Earth is a land, then the planet Mars too is a land. There are lands (planets) in every galaxy of the Samawaat (this universe). And, there are lands (planets) in the Jannaat (another universe).

If I am a vicegerent of Allah on a land, then all the creatures, living on the land, should obey my orders. Disobeying my order should mean disobeying the order of Allah. But elephants, lions, tigers, birds, etc., do not obey my command!

It is because, humans are not yet appointed as vicegerents of God; they are under test. After the Final Judgment, humans will be sent into the lands as responsible and empowered vicegerents of God.

A human in the Jannaat (another universe) will be duly empowered. The poorest in the Jannaat will get a land, ten times bigger than the Earth—it may be a planet of the Jannaat. All creatures of his land will obey his commands; the trees will lean to present their fruits; the rivers will shift their courses on order.

A human in the Samawaat (this Universe) will be forgotten by God, as he forgot Him in his earthly life. He will be a forgotten vicegerent of God over a galaxy. The galaxies are objects of hell. He will be living in a planet (land) of his galaxy.

The number of galaxies in the Samawaat is huge. So, a vicegerent may own a major galaxy and a cluster of dwarf galaxies infested by jinns and other creatures.

There will not be a second human in his galaxy. However, he will get some jinns as his allies.

And he may be able to train some animals to obey a few commands, as it can be done on the Earth.

## **2. Humans are Learning Creatures**

What makes Adam and his children suitable vicegerents of God?

It is their ability to learn. It is a unique quality of a human.

All other animals are genetically taught in the eggs or in the mother's wombs. So, their brains get programmed by birth with the knowledge they need.

The scientists have found out that a polar migratory bird, hatched in an incubator separately, can fly to the polar region, to the flock it belongs to. How it can do it without ever seeing a bird of its kind? Actually, its brain is imprinted with that knowledge by birth. It has programs and sensors to know its present location and time, and it knows the due location of it at that point of time. In one flight, it would cross thousands of miles to reach its location without losing direction at day and night. Ask a pilot how tough a job it does without ever going to a flying school and without having map, star chart, ephemeris, calendar, watch, compass, scale, protractor, and so on, or at least a GPS device!

All other animals have particular living traits. They are not taught those by their parents—they know those by birth.

A baby monkey knows by birth how to hang in the mother's belly. But a human baby cannot grasp anything.

A cow knows by birth how to walk? But a human child needs a year to learn walking.

How they can do it?

When they develop in eggs or wombs, their genome codes design their brains to know all they need to know. They are physically designed to do what they need to do. But, after they are born, they cannot learn anything new—their brains get programmed and fixed.

Here a human differs. While growing in the mother's womb, at a particular stage, his / her brain denies learning from the genes. Therefore, a human baby knows nothing at the time of birth. He does not know how to walk, or how to sit. And, a large part of his big brain remains unused like the white pages.

A human baby starts learning after birth. Therefore, the process of learning remains active throughout his life. This is why humans have developed so much. They have reached the Moon, whereas the chimpanzees are still living in the forests.

A part of human brain (reptilian part mainly), which run the organs, such as lungs, heart, kidney, etc., are genetically programmed.

The creation of leaning brain was a great advancement. Allah made it for humans and proudly showed it to the angels saying: *"Did I not tell you that I know the secrets of the Sky and Land...?"*

An angel too is created with the knowledge he needs. His is programmed by origin. He cannot learn a new thing. So, they could not learn the names, but Adam could learn.

We see how a child keeps on learning new words. He starts with Mama, Papa and within days he starts telling long sentences.

It may be mentioned that some animals can learn to obey a few commands, some birds can learn to tell a few words, but the learning is different; it is not like the learning of humans. They can be trained to follow a few commands by exploiting their traits implanted in them genetically.

“They ask thee what is lawful to them (as food). Say: Lawful unto you are things good and pure, and what you have taught your trained hunting animals ‘in the manner directed to you by God’. Eat what they catch for you, but pronounce the name of God over it, and fear God; for God is swift in taking account.” [Al Quran 5:4]

The above Verse informs that animals can be taught in the manner directed by God. It means that Allah has produced the facilities of training them when He designed their brain.

### **Section-9 of Chapter-2 [Verse 34–39]: Honor of Vicegerent and the Need of Guidance**

And behold, We said to the angels: "Bow down to Adam", and they bowed down—not so Iblis; he refused and was haughty; he was of those who reject Faith.

And We said, "O Adam! Dwell you and your wife in the Jannaat and eat of the bountiful things therein as you will, but approach not this tree or you run into harm and transgression."

Then the Satan made them slip therefrom and got them out from that in which they were. And We said, "Get you down—all with enmity between yourselves. On earth will be your dwelling-place and your means of livelihood for a time."

Then learnt Adam from his Lord words of inspiration, and his Lord turned towards him; for He is Oft-Returning, Most Merciful.

We said, "Get you down all from here, and if, as is sure, there comes to you Guidance from me, whosoever follows My Guidance, on them shall be no fear, nor shall they grieve; but those who reject Faith and belie Our Signs they shall be Companions of the Fire; they shall abide therein."

### **Remarks:**

Iblis denied to bow down. He was a jinni, still living. The jinns are created from anti-matter. Anti-matter is a kind of dark matter.

The Universe is full of dark matter. The ratio of dark matter to ordinary matter (baryonic matter) is 5:1 approximately.

The jinns are original sons of the Skies (Samawaat / this Universe). Adam and Eve were sent into the Skies to suffer punishment.

Humans are land bound creatures, but the jinns are not. They fly through the Skies. They like to

be our friends—actually, they like to possess us and enjoy human lives. Ultimately, they share wealth and children of those that follow them. But any that befriends a jinni by rejecting the Faith is led to the blazing fire.

The jinns are deliberately discussed in Section-3 of Chapter-7.

### **Segment 3** **Causes of forming a New Ummah**

The Third Segment talks about the causes of forming a New Ummah.

The Segment talks about previous Guidance and Children of Israel (Jews). Their Faith is pointed out as correct. But they were not a people to follow Muhammad (pbuh). So, the followers of Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) were gradually isolated from them by mentioning their disobediences. Finally, the followers were made a New Ummah in the Religion of Abraham.

#### **Section-10 of Chapter-2 [Verse 40–46]: Children of Israel (Jews) are called to follow Muhammad (pbuh)**

O Children of Israel! Call to mind the favor, which I bestowed upon you, and fulfill your covenant with Me, as I fulfill My Covenant with you; and fear none but Me.

And believe in what I reveal, confirming the revelation which is with you, and be not the first to reject faith therein, nor sell My Verses for a small price; and fear Me, and Me alone.

And cover not Truth with falsehood, nor conceal the Truth when you know. And perform As-Salat and give Zakat and bow down your heads with those who bow down.

Do you enjoin right conduct on the people and forget yourselves, and yet you study the Scripture? Will you not understand? Nay, seek help with patient perseverance and As-Salat; it is indeed hard except to those who bring a lowly spirit, who bear in mind the certainty that they are to meet their Lord, and that they are to return to Him.

### **Remarks:**

The Surah was revealed in Madinah. In Madinah, there were many Jews, organized in three tribes. Most of them did not accept Muhammad (pbuh), though they knew from their scriptures that he was the Last Prophet—they were hiding the truth with the falsehood.

If the Jews of Madinah accepted Islam, it would be helpful to preach the Quran among the Pagans. They were repeatedly called, but they did not accept. Ultimately, they were in deep confrontation with the growing Islam. The rivalry ended up in war, and they were evicted.

Some of the evicted Jews took shelter in Khaibar and perpetrated an “All Arab Offensive” against the Muslims (the Battle of Khandak). Consequently, they were driven out of Al Jazeera and the land became a safe Center of Islam.

Some of them were killed in the process of eviction and some were enslaved.

### **Note:**

Al Jazeeraah should be the land up to the line joining the tip of Red Sea and the tip of Persian Gulf. However, some Arabs consider Iraq, Syria, Jordan, Lebanon and Palestine as parts of Al-Jazeera.

### **Section-11 of Chapter-2 [Verse 47–64]: They (Jews) Transgressed in the old times too, and went on Transgressing**

Children of Israel call to mind the favor, which I bestowed upon you, and that I preferred you to all other. Then guard yourselves against a Day when one soul shall not avail another, nor shall intercession be accepted for her, nor shall compensation be taken from her, nor shall anyone be helped.

And remember, We delivered you from the people of Pharaoh. They set you hard tasks and punishments; slaughtered your sons and let your women-folk live; therein was a tremendous trial from your Lord.

And remember, We divided the sea for you and saved you and drowned Pharaoh's people within your very sight.

And remember, We appointed forty nights for Moses, and in his absence you took the calf—and you did grievous wrong. Even then We did forgive you—there was a chance for you to be grateful.

And remember, We gave Moses the Scripture and the Furqan (War Scroll)—there was a chance for you to be guided aright.

And remember, Moses said to his people: "O my people! You have indeed wronged yourselves by your

worship of the calf. So turn to your Maker and slay yourselves; that will be better for you in the sight of your Maker." Then He turned towards you; for He is Oft-Returning, Most Merciful.

And remember, you said: "O Moses! We shall never believe in you until we see Allah manifestly." But you were dazed with thunder and lightning even as you looked on. Then We raised you up after your death—you had the chance to be grateful.

And We gave you the shade of clouds and sent down to you Manna and quails saying, "Eat of the good things We have provided for you". To Us, they did no harm, but they harmed their own souls.

And remember, We said: "Enter this town and eat of the plenty therein as you wish, but enter the gate with humility in posture and in words, and We shall forgive you your faults and increase those who do good." But the transgressors changed the word from that which had been given them, so We sent on the transgressors a plague from heaven, for that they infringed repeatedly.

And remember, Moses prayed for water for his people. We said: "Strike the rock with thy staff." Then, gushed forth from there twelve springs. Each group knew its own place for water. So, eat and drink of the sustenance provided by Allah, and do no evil, nor mischief on the earth.

And remember, you said, "O Moses, we cannot endure one kind of food, so beseech thy Lord for us to produce for us of what the earth grows—its pot-herbs and cucumber; its garlic, lentils, and onions." He said, "Will you exchange the better for the worse? Go you down to any town and you shall find what you want!"

They were covered with humiliation and misery; they drew on themselves the wrath of Allah. This was because they went on rejecting the Signs of Allah and slaying His Messengers without just cause. This was because they rebelled and went on transgressing.

**Remarks:**

They drew on themselves the wrath of Allah.

There was a chance to return by accepting the Last Prophet, Muhammad (pbuh), but most of them remained aloof.

Those who believe (Mumins), and those who follow the Jewish, and the Christians, and the Sabians—any who believe in Allah and the Last Day and did good deeds shall have their reward with their Lord; on them shall be no fear, nor shall they grieve.

**Remarks:**

Anybody that believes on “one God” and the “Last Day” and “do good deeds” shall be rewarded. The Verse does not give any time barrier.

After above Verse, we can differentiate Mumin, Muslim, Muhsin and Muttaqi.

**1. Mumin**

The word “Mumin” means “grantor of security”. He does not harm anybody because, he believes on one

God and on the Day of Judgment. So, he grants security passively.

In the Quran, the word “Mumin” is used as a term. He must believe according to the Quran. The Quran is deliberate in respect of the Faith. It develops clear concept of one God by saying repeatedly, which is God, and which is not God. So, a person that believes according to the Quran is a perfect Believer, and he is rightly called Mumin (Believer).

Jews and Christians should not be called Believers (Muminin) though they are believers of one God, because it is used as a term to identify a group following the Quran.

In Holy Bible, Jews are called “Chosen People” and a group is called “Faithful”. It seems that the Book means “Believers” by the “Faithful”.

According to the Verses under discussion, a Believer (Mumin) is to do the following things to be rewarded by Lord:

- He has to believe on one God
- He has to believe the Last Day
- He has to do good deeds.

'Believing the Last Day' means 'believing Dooms Day, Resurrection, Judgment, Paradise and Hell'. The Quran forms deliberate ideas about these.

The Verses do not say how many good deeds a Mumin has to perform. Even if he does a few (at least two) petty good deeds in his lifetime, the last part of the Verse becomes applicable to him: “*shall have their reward with their Lord; on them shall be no fear, nor shall they grieve.*”

However, the Verse may mean doing good deeds in day to day life throughout. For example, a farmer by profession is a 'doer of good deeds', and a thief by profession is a 'doer of bad deeds'.

The Quran suggests to perform As Salat, pay Zakat, Fast in Ramadan, perform Hajj, struggle for the cause of Allah, pray extra at night (Tahazzud), pay extra in Charity, and so on. These are different types of good deeds. These take a person at a higher level in the Paradise.

If a Believer, believing one God and the Last Day, performs trivial good deeds, he is supposed to get paradise according to the Verse under discussion. But, if a person does not believe, he will not go to paradise even if he prays throughout his life and expends billions of dollars in charity.

Therefore, the Faith decides the destination, and the Deeds decide the level of reward, or the level of punishment.

There are many levels in the Jannaat (Paradise) with great differences, as there are differences on the Earth between the Poor and the Rich. The position of a Martyred (Shahid) will be sky-high in relation to a common paradise-dweller.

## **2. Muslim**

The word “Muslim” means “one who submits”. The word is used as a term to mean the people in the cult of Abraham, as the following Verse says: “...*it is the cult of your father Abraham. It is He Who has named you Muslims, both before and in this...*” So, the

People of the Book too can be called Muslims. However, they do not identify them as Muslims.

“And strive in His cause as ye ought to strive. He has chosen you and has imposed no difficulties on you in religion; it is the cult of your father Abraham. It is He Who has named you Muslims, both before and in this, that the Apostle may be a witness for you, and ye be witnesses for mankind! So, establish regular Prayer, give regular Charity, and hold fast to God! He is your Protector, the Best to protect and the Best to help!” [Al Quran 22:78]

The last word of the above Verses, “*So, establish regular Prayer, give regular Charity (give zakat), and hold fast to God (fulfill the covenant / bayah taken to the Prophet)! He is your Protector, the Best to protect and the Best to help*” is said to the Muttaqin, not to the common Muslims. Muttaqin strive to protect Islam.

"Our Lord! Make of us Muslims to Thy, and of our progeny a people Muslim to Thy, and show us our ways of worship and turn unto us; for You are the Oft-Returning, Most Merciful." [Al Quran 2:128]

When we perform As-Salat, we submit to God by raising our hands and by prostrating before Him repeatedly, facing the Kabah. Thus, we surrender to the God of Abraham through a Way of Worship.

### **3. Muttaqi**

“Muttaqi” means “Protector / Guard / Defender”. He is oath (*bayah*) bound to the Highest Islamic Leadership to fight for the Cause of God.

Muttaqin protect Islam through struggle and warfare. But, they are not a Paid Regular Army. They struggle because they are pious:

“That is the Book—no doubt in it—is a Guidance for the Guards (Muttaqin) who believe in the Unseen, and establish As-Salat, and spend out (pay Zakat) of what We have provided for them, and who believe in the Revelation sent to you and sent before your time, and they believe with certainty the Hereafter. They are on guidance from their Lord, and it is these who will prosper.”

[Al Quran 2: 2–5]

The Muttaqin believe in the Unseen, establish As-Salat in the mosque, collect Zakat for the Highest Islamic Leadership (they pay as well), believe the Books, and believe the Hereafter. The Part-1 of the

Quran (this Part) is meant for them. They will be rewarded in the Hereafter like the Prophets of God.

#### **4. Muhsin**

“Muhsin” means “Good-Doer”. Muhsin comes from the root word H-S-N that means beautiful. A Muhsin is one that do *ahsaan* (calming help) to someone.

“Alif, Lam, Mim. These are Signs of the Wise Book. A Guide and a Mercy to *Muhsinin* (Doers of Good), those who establish Regular Prayer (Salat) and give Regular Charity (Zakah), and they believe firmly the Hereafter. These are on the guidance from their Lord, and these are the ones who will prosper.” [Al Quran 31: 1–5]

A Muhsin lives in the society established by Muttaqin. But, he is not oath (bayah) bound to the Highest Islamic Leadership to fight for the cause of God. He is a common member of the Islamic Society. The Quran invites the Muhsinin (plural of Muhsin) to help the Muttaqin.

A Muhsin may not have been allowed to take oath (bayah) and join Muttaqin because, he is a student, or a teacher, or a scientist, or an intellectual, or he is involved in a full time profession, or he is a slave, or he is serving in a National Defense Forces, or he is a vital Government Servant, or Islamic Leadership thinks him lacking personal discipline, or

Islamic Leadership thinks him physically and/or morally unfit, or Islamic Leadership thinks that he does not need any more men in the organization of Al Muttaqin, and so on.

The Muhsinin remain allied to the Imams of the Local Mosques with a view to remain allied to the Highest Islamic Leadership. They are common members of the Islamic Societies.

The Part-3 of the Quran (Chapter 31 to 114) is meant for the Muhsinin. According to the Part-3, they are to do the followings:

- a. Perform regular Salat in the local Mosque.
- b. Pray extra, especially Tahazzud, at night.
- c. Pay Zakat in the local Mosque to send it to the Highest Islamic Leadership.
- d. Pay extra for the cause of God.
- e. Believe in the Hereafter.

Muhsinin too will be rewarded greatly in the Afterlife, even at the scale Al Muttaqin if they can spend significantly for the cause of God and / or can pray extra at nights for long periods of time.

The Muhsinin are parts of Islamic Societies. If the villagers of a village are not commanded by the Imam of the Local Mosque authorized by the Highest Islamic Leadership, the villagers should not be called Muhsinin. They should be called Muslims, though many of them may be Mumins (Believer) only.

**Note:**

1. Zakat goes to the Highest Islamic Leadership. It should be expended through

the Mosques at different levels as per policy given in the Quran. It is economic power of Islam, so it should be expended through the mosques. The Zakat should not be mixed up with the Government tax, even if the Government were Islamic.

2. My ideas about Mumin, Muslim, Muttaqin, and Muhsinin differ from traditional ideas, but my ideas are supported by the Quran.

## 5. Conclusion

Above discussion is aimed to understand the differences between Mumin, Muslim, Muhsin, and Muttaqi. It does not mean that a Mumin will never pray As-Salat, or a Muhsin will never fight a battle. Everybody should try to improve. And there are instructions throughout the Quran, which are common to all.

In subsequent Chapters, a person is repeatedly called to be a Muttaqi, but the foundation stands good. So, one should never be disheartened about Allah even if one finds that one is in the death bed and have a plan to start praying As-Salat from tomorrow, because Allah is Most Merciful, the Supreme. He is answerable to none, and He has declared: *“Those who believe (Muminin), and those who follow the Jewish (scriptures), and the Christians, and the Sabians—any who believe in Allah and the Last Day and do good deeds shall have*

*their reward with their Lord; on them shall be no fear, nor shall they grieve.”*

And remember, We took your covenant and We raised above you Mount (Sinai): Hold firmly to what We have given you and bring to remembrance what is therein; perchance you may fear Allah. But you turned back thereafter. Had it not been for the Grace and Mercy of Allah to you, you had surely been among the lost.

**Section-12 of Chapter-2 [Verse 65–66]: A humiliating punishment they (Jews) suffered, though they were from Chosen People**

And you knew well those among you who transgressed in the matter of the Sabbath. We said to them: "Be you apes, despised and rejected." So, We made it an example to their own time and to their posterity, and a lesson to those who fear Allah.

**Remarks:**

Allah reminded that the Jews were punished beforehand for their disobediences; some of them became apes though they were from the Chosen People. They may face the divine punishment in future as well. Allah is not weak.

But they did not stop their conspiracy against Prophet Muhammad (pbuh).

### **Section-13 of Chapter-2 [Verse 67–71]: A People (Jews) unwilling to obey**

And remember, Moses said to his people: "Allah commands that you sacrifice a heifer." They said: "Do you make fun of us?" He said, "Allah save me from being an ignorant!"

They said: "Beseech on our behalf, thy Lord to make plain to us what it is!" He said, "He says: The heifer should be neither too old, nor too young, but of middling age. Now do what you are commanded!"

They said: "Beseech on our behalf, thy Lord to make plain to us her color." He said, "He says: A fawn-colored heifer pure and rich in tone, the admiration of beholders!"

They said: "Beseech on our behalf, thy Lord to make plain to us what she is? To us are all heifers alike. We wish indeed for guidance, if Allah wills." He said, "He says: A heifer not trained to till the soil or water the fields, sound and without blemish."

They said: "Now have you brought the truth." Then they offered her in sacrifice, but not with good-will.

#### **Remarks:**

Jews could sacrifice any cow, but as they kept on asking questions, and as the answers were coming from Allah, the cow was becoming more and more rare. At the end, it was a unique cow. But they had to buy it with a huge price and had to sacrifice it.

From this story, the Sahabah (Companions of Prophet Muhammad, pbuh) learned not to ask questions to the Prophet (pbuh), but to listen and obey. Prophet was living with them; if they asked too

many questions, answers would come, and the religion would become complex and difficult to follow.

**Section-14 of Chapter-2 [Verse 72-82]: People (Jews) like Rocks—not likely to change**

Remember, you slew a man and fell into a dispute among yourselves as to the crime. But Allah was to bring forth what you did hide. So, We said, "Strike with a piece of the (heifer)." Thus, Allah brings the dead to life and shows you His Signs, perchance you may understand.

Thenceforth were your hearts hardened. They became like a rock and even worse in hardness. For among rocks, there are some from which rivers gush forth, others there are which when split asunder send forth water, and others which sink for fear of Allah. And Allah is not unmindful of what you do.

Can you entertain the hope that they will believe in you, seeing that a party of them heard the Word of Allah and perverted it knowingly, after they understood it?

**Remarks:**

Once the murdered person was made alive as a witness to the crime, they turned hard—not to accept the truth, come-what-may. Thus, Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) was told, not to entertain hope that this type of people (like rocks) would accept him.

The Verses mention that some rocks produce water. There are rocks in the space which send forth water when they split asunder. The primitive Earth

did not have water. A few observations suggest that the oceans might have formed due to the fall of water-bearing asteroids.

Behold! When they meet the men of Faith, they say: “We believe”. But when they meet each other in private, they say: “Shall you tell them what Allah has revealed to you that they may engage you in argument about it before your Lord?”

Do you not understand? Know they not that Allah knows what they conceal and what they reveal?

And there are among them illiterates, who know not the Book but desires, and they do nothing but conjecture.

Then woe to those who write the Book with their own hands and then say: “This is from Allah” to traffic with it for a miserable price! Woe to them for what their hands do write and for the gain they make thereby!

And they say: "The Fire shall not touch us, but for a few numbered days."

Say: "Have you taken a promise from Allah for He never breaks His promise? Or is it that you say of Allah what you do not know?" Nay, those who seek gain in evil and are girt round by their sins, they are Companions of the Fire; therein shall they abide. But those who have faith and work righteousness, they are companions of the Jannaat; therein shall they abide.

### **Section-15 of Chapter-2 [Verse 83-86]: Revolt, Conflict and Separation—an unruly and chaos-making People (Jews)**

And remember, We took a covenant from the Children of Israel: Worship none but Allah, treat with kindness your

parents and kindred and orphans and those in need, speak fair to the people, be steadfast in prayer, and practise regular charity—then did you turn back, except a few among you, and you backslide.

And remember, We took your covenant: Shed no blood among you, nor turn out your own people from your homes, and this you solemnly ratified, and to this you can bear witness.

After this, it is you the same people who slay among yourselves, and banish a party of you from their homes, assist against them in guilt and transgression, and if they come to you as captives, you ransom them, though it was not lawful for you to banish them.

Then is it only a part of the Book that you believe in, and do you reject the rest? But what is the reward for those among you who behave like this but disgrace in this life? And on the Day of Judgment, they shall be consigned to the most grievous penalty; for Allah is not unmindful of what you do.

These are the people who buy the life of this world at the price of the Hereafter; their penalty shall not be lightened, nor shall they be helped.

### **Remarks:**

After Moses, Joshua became the leader of Jewish People and captured Canaan. Joshua was helper of Moses. Most likely, he was the one that carried cooked fish while Moses visited Khidr.

According to the instructions of Moses, Jews were not allowed to make any King, Kingdom and Government (still, the Rabbis do not support the

formation of a state). In Canaan, they were living in tribes for about 125 years.

But they were feeling the need of a Kingdom and a King and prayed to God through the Prophet of the time. God made a Kingdom for them led by three divinely guided Kings, Saul, David and Solomon, succeeding one another.

In 1025 BCE, Talut (Saul) became the first king (how he became King is described in Section-41 of this Chapter).

After Talut, his son in law, David, became the king.

After David, his son, Solomon, became the king.

Once Solomon died, many of the Jews revolted against Religious Rule. They wanted heavy yoke (religious rules) mounted on them to be removed.

Rehoboam (Solomon's Son) had blessing of Solomon. After Solomon, he became king, but many denied to accept him.

A civil war broke out. In and around 930 BCE, the country was divided into two kingdoms. Southern half of the country including Jerusalem remained with Rehoboam and was named "Judah". Solomon's another son, Jeroboam, took the northern half of the country and named it "Israel". Many were killed, looted, and evicted in the process.



FIGURE 2.27: Kingdom of Judah and Israel

### 1. Kingdom of “Israel” (Northern Kingdom)

After Solomon, ten tribes [Reuben, Simeon, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Children of Joseph (Ephraim and Manasseh) and Benjamin] under Jeroboam formed the Kingdom of Israel with its capital in Samaria. Freedom of humanity prevailed in the Kingdom. Soon many began to worship the idols of Baal.

The Kingdom lasted a little over 200 years. The Assyrians conquered the Kingdom, and by 721 BCE, they exiled the Tribes in the east of present day Iran. A little description about their location is

available in Holy Bible—it points out present day Afghanistan:

"In the ninth year of Hoshea, the king of Assyria captured Samaria, exiled the Israelites to Asshur and made them settle in Halah, at the banks of Habor, the river of Gozan as well as in the cities of the Medes."

- 2 Kings 17. 6, Holy Bible

"The king of Assyria deported the Israelites to Assyria and settled them in Halah, on the Habor, the river of Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes."

- 2 Kings 18. 1 Holy Bible

"So the God of Israel brought against them the anger of Pul, king of Assyria and of Tiglath-pileser, king of Assyria, who deported the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and the half tribe of Manasseh. They were taken off to Halah near Habor and the river Gozan. They are still there today."

- 1 Chronicles 5. 26 Holy Bible

“Halah” is present day Heart. River “Gozan” is River Gozni. “Habor” is Peshwar (Pesh-Habor). All are Afghan Territories.

They never returned to Israel and have become known as the "Lost Tribes of Israel."

According to Holy Bible, these lost tribes will return to Jerusalem with Jesus Christ.

Present day Afghans may be from the Lost Tribes. Some of Afghan cultural activities are same as ancient Jewish cultural activities. They possess similar physical appearances and eye-colors. The names of Tribes are similar as well:

<b>Lost Tribes</b>	<b>Afghan Tribes</b>
Reuven	– Rabbani
Shimon	– Shinwari
Levi	– Liwani
Naftali	– Daffani
Gad	– Ghagi
Ashor	– Ashuri
Ephraim	– Afridi
Children of Yossef	– Yusuf Sai

Some people from the lost tribes moved to Europe. Among them, the people from the Tribe of Dan have clear footprints. Macedonia, Denmark, River Danube are after the name of Dan.

“Manasseh” is identified in India.

Black Israelites from Ethiopia have returned. They are descendants of Bilqis (Queen of Seba) and Solomon. So, they are not from the Lost Tribes.

## **2. Kingdom of “Judah” (Southern Kingdom)**

The religious system prevailed in Judah under Rehoboam. However, only two tribes [Benjamin and Judah] remained in his kingdom.

After about 344 years, in 586 BCE, Babylonian King Nebuchadnezzar captured the Kingdom of Judah. He destroyed the Temple of Solomon and forcefully shifted them to Babylon.

After about 47 years, in 539 BCE, Babylon fell to the Persian Emperor Cyrus the Great (Dhul-Qarnain). He allowed the Jews to return to Jerusalem. Their descendants are Jewish people of today.

The captivity lasted for about 48 years. This short duration exile is known as “Babylonian Captivity”. The song, “*By the rivers of Babylon, there we sat down - Yeah, we wept, when we remembered Zion...*” is a recollection of that period.

Cyrus allowed to re-build the Temple. The Temple is known as the Second Temple.

Later, in 70 CE, Romans destroyed the Second Temple utterly. Not a stone remained on another stone.

### **Section-16 of Chapter-2 [Verse 87-103]: Concluding with the Jews**

We gave Moses the Book and followed him up with a succession of apostles. We gave Jesus the son of Mary clear signs and strengthened him with the Holy Soul. Is it that whenever there comes to you an apostle, with what you

yourselves desire not, you are puffed up with pride? Some you called impostors and others you slay!

They say, "Our hearts are wrapped." Nay, Allah's curse is on them for their blasphemy—little is it they believe.

And, when there comes to them a Book from Allah confirming what is with them—although from the old they had prayed for victory against those without Faith—when there comes to them that which they have recognized, they refuse to believe in it, but the curse of Allah is on those without Faith.

Miserable is the price for which they have sold their souls—in that they deny which Allah has sent down in insolent envy that Allah of His Grace should send it to any of His servants He pleases. Thus, have they drawn on themselves Wrath upon Wrath; and humiliating is the punishment of those who reject Faith.

When it is said to them: Believe in what Allah has sent down, they say, "We believe in what was sent down to us"—yet they reject all besides, even if it be Truth confirming what is with them. Say: "Why then have you slain the prophets of Allah in times gone by, if you did indeed believe?"

There came to you Moses with clear signs, yet you worshipped the Calf after that, and you did behave wrongfully.

And remember, We took your Covenant and We raised above you of Mount: "Hold firmly to what We have given you and hearken." They said: "We hear and we disobey." And their hearts absorbed the Calf because of their Faithlessness.

Say: "Worst indeed is that which your faith enjoins on you, if you are believers!"

Say: "If the last Home with Allah be for you specially and not for anyone else, then seek you for death if you are sincere." But they will never seek for death on account of which their hands have sent on before them. And Allah is well acquainted with the wrongdoers. You will indeed find them of all people most greedy of life—even more than the idolaters. Each one of them wishes he could be given a life of a thousand years. But the grant of such life will not save him from punishment. For Allah sees well all that they do.

Say: Whoever is an enemy to Gabriel for he brings it down to your heart by Allah's will a confirmation of what went before and guidance and glad tidings for those who believe—whoever is an enemy to Allah and His angels and apostles, to Gabriel and Michael—lo! Allah is an enemy to those who reject Faith.

We have sent down to you Manifest Verses, and none reject them but those who are perverse. Is it not that every time they make a Covenant, some party among them throws it aside; nay most of them are faithless.

And when there came to them an apostle from Allah confirming what was with them, a party of the People of the Book threw away the Book of Allah behind their backs, as if they did not know!

They followed what the evil ones gave out against the power of Solomon; the blasphemers were not Solomon but the evil ones teaching men magic and such things as came down at Babylon to the angels, Harut and Marut. But neither of these taught anyone without saying: "We are only for trial, so do not blaspheme." They learned from them the means to sow discord between man and wife. But they could not thus harm anyone except by Allah's permission. And they learned what harmed them, not what profited them. And they knew

that the buyers of (black magic) would have no share in the happiness of the Hereafter. And vile was the price for which they did sell their souls—if they but knew!

If they had kept their Faith and guarded themselves from evil, far better had been the reward from their Lord—if they but knew!

### **Section-17 of Chapter-2 [Verse 104-123]: Instructing Muslims in context of the People of the Book**

O you of Faith! Say not words of ambiguous import, but words of respect, and hearken; to those without Faith is a grievous punishment.

It is never the wish of those without Faith among the People of the Book, nor of the Pagans that anything good should come down to you from your Lord. But Allah will choose for His Special Mercy whom He will; for Allah is Lord of grace abounding.

None of Our revelations do We abrogate or cause to be forgotten but We substitute something better or similar. Know you not that Allah has power over all things? Know you not that to Allah belongs the dominion of the Skies and Lands, and besides Him you have neither patron nor helper?

Would you question your Apostle as Moses was questioned before? But whoever changes from Faith to Unbelief has strayed without doubt from the Right Way.

Quite a number of the People of the Book wish, they could turn you back to infidelity, after you have believed, out of selfish envy, after the Truth has become Manifest unto them. But forgive and overlook till Allah accomplishes His purpose; for Allah has power over all things.

And perform As-Salat and give Zakat. And whatever good you send forth before you for your souls, you shall find it with Allah; for Allah sees well all that you do.

And they say: "None shall enter Paradise unless he be a Jew or a Christian."

Those are their wishful thinking. Say: "Produce your proof if you are truthful." Nay, whoever submits his face to Allah and is a doer of good (Muhsinun), he will get his reward with his Lord; on such shall be no fear, nor shall they grieve.

The Jews say, "The Christians follow nothing," and the Christians say, "The Jews follow nothing," yet they study the Book (Bible)—like unto their word said who know not—but Allah will judge between them in their quarrel on the Day of Judgment.

And who is more unjust than he who forbids that in places for the worship of Allah His name should be celebrated—whose zeal is to ruin them? It was not fitting that such should themselves enter them except in fear. For them, there is nothing but disgrace in this world, and in the world to come an exceeding torment. To Allah belong the East and the West—whither so ever you turn, there is Allah's countenance; for Allah is All-Embracing, All-Knowing.

They say: "Allah has begotten a son." Glory be to Him! Nay, to Him belongs all that is in the Skies and Lands; everything renders worship to Him. To Him is due the primal origin of the Skies and Lands; when He decrees a matter, He says to it: "Be," and it is.

And those who have no knowledge say: "Why does not Allah speak to us or why do not a sign come to us?" So said the people before them, words of similar import, their hearts are alike. We have indeed made clear the Signs unto

any people who hold firmly to Faith. Verily, We have sent you in truth as a bearer of glad tidings and a Warner, but of you no question shall be asked of the Companions of the Blazing Fire.

Never will the Jews or the Christians be satisfied with you unless you follow their form of religion. Say: "The Guidance of Allah—that is the Guidance." And if you were to follow their desires after what you have received of Knowledge, then you would have against Allah neither any protector, nor any helper. Those to whom We have sent the Book study it, as it should be studied; they are the ones that believe therein—those who reject faith therein, the loss is their own.

O Children of Israel! Call to mind the special favor, which I bestowed upon you, and that I preferred you to all others. And guard yourselves against a Day when one soul shall not avail another, nor shall compensation be accepted from her, nor shall intercession profit her, nor shall anyone be helped.

**Remarks:**

The Verses of this Segment criticize Jews extensively. But they are criticized in Holy Bible also. It is not new. Rather, it is a great honor that the Creator of the Universes remembered them.

Allah has used them as examples of good and bad to teach the new Ummah so that they do not commit the same offenses.

The Segment justifies the formation of a new Ummah in the Religion of Abraham.

## **Segment 4**

### **A New Ummah Created**

In this Segment, by dedicating a separate *Qiblah* (direction of prayer), the followers of Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) are made a new Ummah (Community) in the Religion of Abraham.

#### **Section-18 of Chapter-2 [Verse 124-131]: Turning to Kabah**

And remember that Abraham was tried by his Lord with certain Commands, which he fulfilled. He said: "I will make you an Imam to the Nations."

He pleaded: "And also from my offspring!"

He answered: "But My Promise is not within the reach of evil-doers."

Remember We made the House (Kabah) a place of assembly for men and a place of safety—and take you the station of Abraham as a place of prayer.

And We covenanted with Abraham and Isma'il that they should sanctify My House for those who compass it round, or use it as a retreat, or bow, or prostrate themselves.

And remember Abraham said: "My Lord, make this a City of Peace and feed its people with fruits—such of them as believe in Allah and the Last Day."

He said: "(Yea), and such as reject Faith. For a while, I will grant them their pleasure but will soon drive them to the torment of Fire, an evil destination!"

And remember, Abraham and Isma'il raised the foundations of the House: "Our Lord! Accept from us; for You are the All-Hearing, the All-Knowing."

"Our Lord! Make of us Muslims to Thy, and of our progeny a people Muslim to Thy, and show us our ways of worship and turn unto us; for You are the Oft–Returning, Most Merciful."

"Our Lord! Send among them an Apostle of their own who shall rehearse Thy Verses to them and instruct them in Scripture and Wisdom and sanctify them; for You are the Exalted in Might, the Wise."

And, who turns away from the Religion of Abraham except him who befools himself? Truly, We chose him in this world, and verily in the Hereafter he will be among the righteous.

Behold! His Lord said to him: "Bow". He said: "I bow to the Lord and Cherisher of the Universes."

**Section-19 of Chapter-2 [Verse 132-134]: They shall reap the fruit of what they did, and you of what you do!**

And this was the legacy that Abraham left to his sons, and so did Jacob: "Oh my sons! Allah has chosen the Faith for you; then die not except in the State of Submission.

Were you witness when death appeared before Jacob? Behold, he said to his sons: "What will you worship after me?" They said: "We shall worship Thy God and the God of thy fathers—of Abraham, Ismail, and Isaac—the one God; to Him we bow."

That was a People that have passed away. They shall reap the fruit of what they did, and you of what you do! Of their merits there is no question in your case!

**Section-20 of Chapter-2 [Verse 135-141]: They shall reap the fruit of what they did, and you of what you do!**

They say: “Become Jews or Christians if you would be guided.” Say ye: “Nay, the Religion of Abraham the True, and he joined not gods with Allah.”

Say ye: “We believe in Allah and the revelation given to us and to Abraham, Ismail, Isaac, Jacob, and the Tribes; and that given to Moses and Jesus; and that given to Prophets from their Lord—we make no difference between one and another of them, and we bow to Allah.”

So, if they believe as you believe, they are indeed on the right path; but if they turn back, then they are only in opposition. So, Allah will suffice you as against them, and He is the All-Hearing, the All-Knowing.

“The Baptism of Allah, and who can baptize better than Allah? And it is He Whom we worship”, say, “Will you dispute with us about God seeing that He is our Lord and your Lord; that we are responsible for our doings and you for yours, and that we are sincere in Him?”

“Or do you say that Abraham, Ismail, Isaac, Jacob and the Tribes were Jews or Christians”, say, “Do you know better than Allah? Ah! Who is more unjust than those who conceal the testimony they have from Allah? But Allah is not unmindful of what you do!”

That was a people that have passed away. They shall reap the fruit of what they did, and you of what you do! Of their merits there is no question in your case.

## Section-21 of Chapter-2 [Verse 142-150]: Formation of a New Ummah

The fools among the people will say: “What has turned them from the *Qiblah* to which they were used?” Say: “To Allah belong both East and West; He guides whom He will to a Way that is Straight.”

Thus, have We made of you an Ummah justly balanced that you might be witnesses over the nations, and the Apostle, a witness over yourselves.

And We appointed the *Qiblah* to which you were used only to test those who followed the Apostle from those who would turn on their heels. Indeed, it was momentous, except to those guided by Allah, and never would Allah make your faith of no effect; for Allah is to all people most surely Full of Kindness, Most Merciful.

We see the turning of your face to the sky; now shall We turn you to a *Qiblah* that shall please you. Turn then your face in the direction of the Sacred Mosque. Wherever you are, turn your faces in that direction. The People of the Book know well that that is the truth from their Lord, nor is Allah unmindful of what they do.

Even if you were to bring to the People of the Book all the Signs, they would not follow your *Qiblah*, nor are you going to follow their *Qiblah*, nor indeed will they follow each other's *Qiblah*. Verily, if you follow their desires after that which you have received of knowledge, then indeed you will be one of the wrongdoers.

The People of the Book know this, as they know their own sons, but some of them conceal the truth, which they themselves know. The Truth is from your Lord, so be not at all in doubt—to each is a goal to which Allah turns him; then

strive together towards all that is good. Where-so-ever you are Allah will bring you together; for Allah has power over all things.

From where-so-ever you start forth, turn your face in the direction of the Sacred Mosque; that is indeed the truth from your Lord; and Allah is not unmindful of what you do.

So, from where-so-ever you start forth, turn your face in the direction of the Sacred Mosque; and where-so-ever you are, turn your face thither—that there be no ground of dispute against you among the people, except those of them that are bent on wickedness. So, fear them not, but fear Me; and that I may complete My favors on you, and you may be guided.

### **Remarks:**

In Madinah, initially Muslims used to pray facing the Temple Mount. Above Verses changed the direction to Kabah.

Changing the direction of prayer was a monumental event. By dedicating a different *Qiblah* (direction of prayer), Allah made the followers of Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) a different Ummah, in the Religion of Abraham, as the Verses says:

“Thus, have We made of you an Ummah justly balanced...”

[Al Quran 2:143].

The number of above Verse is 143. There are 286 Verses in this Surah. So, it is the last Verse of the First Half. From Verse 144, the Quran starts giving directions to the New Ummah; it gives out laws,

rituals, policies and guidance. Thus, it forms the Ummah deliberately.

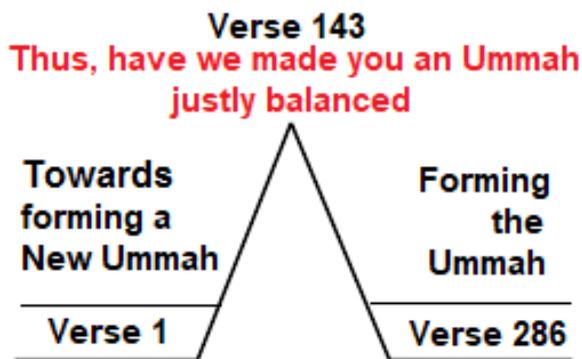


FIGURE 2.28: The Surah forms the Ummah mainly

Therefore, the Facing towards the Kabah puts us in the Ummah of Prophet Muhammad (pbuh). The Kabah is our Direction of Prayer and Symbol of Unity.

In Hebrew Bible (Psalm 84), the Kabah is called Bakkah, and it is highlighted as a great place of pilgrimage. The Quran too, in one Verse calls it Bakkah (Verse 3:96).

Jews wear the Replica of Kabah on their heads as signs of being united with the God. They call it, Tefillin.



FIGURE 2.29: They know this as they know their own sons.

**Section-22 of Chapter-2 [Verse 151-157]: Hard time ahead**

A similar in that We have sent among you an apostle of your own, rehearsing to you Our Verses and purifying you, and instructing you in scripture and wisdom, and in new knowledge.

Then remember Me; I will remember you. Be grateful to Me and reject not Faith.

O you who believe, seek help with patient perseverance and prayer; for Allah is with those who patiently persevere.

And say not of those who are killed in the Way of Allah, "They are dead". Nay, they are living but you perceive not.

Be sure, We shall test you with something of fear, hunger, loss of wealth, lives and the fruits, but give glad tidings to those who patiently persevere, who when afflicted

with calamity say: "To Allah we belong, and to Him is our return." They are those, on whom blessings from their Lord and mercy—and they are the ones that receive guidance.

## **Segment 5**

### **Laws and Rituals of the Ummah**

After creating the new Ummah with a separate *Qiblah*, the Laws and Rituals of the Ummah are given. Thus, the Ummah is properly constituted.

Finally, the Companions of the Prophet (pbuh) are revered.

#### **Section-23 of Chapter-2 [Verse 158-163]: Rituals relating to Kabah**

Behold! Safa and Marwa are among the Symbols of Allah. So, if those who visit the House in the Season or at other times compass them round, it is no sin in them. And, if any one obeys his 'own impulse to Good', be sure that Allah is He Who recognizes and knows.

#### **Remarks:**

Allah recognizes one's 'own impulse to good'. One's way of worship may look different from the way followed in Kabah, but one cannot be stopped.

Verily, those who conceal the clear proofs, evidences, and the guidance after We have made it clear for the People in the Book, they are the ones cursed by Allah and cursed by the cursers, except those who repent and do righteous deed

and openly declare. To them I turn; for I am Oft-Returning,  
Most Merciful.

**Remarks:**

Jews had their Temple on the Temple Mount of Jerusalem. Solomon built it. They had specific rituals based on clear proofs, evidences and guidance. The rituals were intensive. It was concealed at later times—the perpetrators were cursed.

An intensive ritual is likely to be deviated. Muslims are given a few easy rituals relating to Kabah.

It is not the rituals but the Faith that counts:

Those who reject Faith and die rejecting, on them is Allah's curse, and the curse of angels, and of all mankind. They will abide therein. Their penalty will not be lightened, nor will they be reprieved.

And your God is One God; there is no god but He, Most Gracious, Most Merciful.

**Remarks:**

The rituals of Hajj are given in the Quran. Several rituals originated from Prophet's (pbuh) 'own impulse to good'. We follow him- if he was running, we run; if he was throwing, we throw.

Finally, standing on the Mount of Arafat, he delivered his lecture, giving direction to his Ummah, and became happy, and said, 'This is Hajj' or words to that effect.

The main aim of attending Arafat is to hear the lecture of Islamic Leadership.

**Section-24** of Chapter-2 [Verse 164-167]: **Cut off relation with them**

Behold in the creation of the Skies and Lands, in the alternation of the Night and the Day, in the sailing of the ships through the Ocean for the profit of mankind, in the rain which Allah sends down from the skies and the life which He gives therewith to an earth that is dead, in the beasts of all kinds that He scatters through the earth, in the change of the winds and the clouds which they trail like their slaves between the sky and the earth indeed are Signs for a people that are wise.

Yet there are men who take others besides Allah as equal. They love them as they should love Allah. But those of Faith are overflowing in their love for Allah. If only the unrighteous could see, behold, they would see the Punishment that to Allah belongs all power, and Allah will strongly enforce the punishment, then those who are followed would clear themselves of those who follow. They would see the Penalty and all relations between them would be cut off.

And those who followed would say: "If only we had one more chance, we would clear ourselves of them as they have cleared themselves of us". Thus, will Allah show them their deeds as regrets, nor there will be a way for them out of the Fire.

## **Section-25 of Chapter-2 [Verse 168-176]: Food Halal / Haram**

O you people! Eat of what is on earth lawful and good, and do not follow the footsteps of Satan, for he is to you an avowed enemy, for he commands you what is evil and shameful, and that you should say of Allah of which you have no knowledge.

When it is said to them: "Follow what Allah has revealed." They say: "Nay! We shall follow the ways of our fathers."

What! Even though their fathers were void of wisdom and guidance? The parable of those who reject Faith is as if one were to shout like a goatherd to things that listen to nothing but calls and cries—deaf, dumb, and blind; they are void of wisdom.

### **Remarks:**

People grow the 'taste of food' in their childhood from their mothers. For example, if a mother likes to eat snail and feed it to her children, children will grow taste in it (snail is not haram). And mothers normally cook what fathers want to eat. Ultimately, father's food habit trickles down to the children.

Sometimes people are driven by the provocation of Satan—one may not have the habit of eating the flesh of a swine, but may eat out of provocation.

Allah wants people to eat what is lawful and good. If their fathers were eating unlawful food, they should leave it now.

O you who believe! Eat of the good things that We have provided for you, and be grateful to Allah if it is Him you worship. He has only forbidden you dead meat, and blood, and the flesh of swine and that on which any other name has been invoked besides that of Allah. But if one is forced by necessity, without willful disobedience, nor transgressing due limits, then is he guiltless; for Allah is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful.

Verily, those who conceal what Allah has sent down of the Book and purchased a small gain therewith they eat into their bellies nothing but fire. Allah will not speak to them on the Day of Resurrection, nor purify them, and theirs will be a painful torment. They are the ones who buy Error in place of Guidance and Torment in place of Forgiveness—Ah! What boldness for the Fire! Because Allah sent down the Book in truth, but those who seek causes of dispute in the Book are in a schism far.

### **Section-26 of Chapter-2 [Verse 177]: Lifestyle of Righteousness**

It is not righteousness that you turn your faces towards East or West, but it is righteousness to believe in Allah, and the Last Day, and the Angels, and the Book, and the Messengers; to spend of your substance out of love for Him for your kin, for orphans, for the needy, for the wayfarer, for those who ask, and for the ransom of slaves; to perform As-Salat and give Zakat; to fulfill the contracts which you have made (Oath / *Bayah* taken to the Highest Islamic Leadership to struggle for the cause of Allah); and to be firm and patient in

pain and adversity, and throughout all periods of panic. Such are the People of Truth, and they are Al-Muttaqin.

**Section-27** of Chapter-2 [**Verse 178-179**]: **Murder**

O you who believe! The Law of Equality in punishment is prescribed to you in cases of murder: the free for the free, the slave for the slave, the woman for the woman; but if the brother of the slain makes any remission, then grant any reasonable demand and compensate him with handsome gratitude. This is a concession and a Mercy from your Lord. After this whoever exceeds the limits shall be in grave penalty. In the Law of Equality, there is Life to you, O you men of understanding, that you may restrain yourselves.

**Section-28** of Chapter-2 [**Verse 180-182**]: **Bequest**

It is prescribed, when death approaches any of you, if he leaves any goods, that he make a bequest to parents and next of kin according to reasonable manners; a duty upon Al Muttaqin—if anyone changes the bequest after hearing it, the guilt shall be on those who make the change; for Allah hears and knows.

But if anyone fears partiality or wrongdoing on the part of the testator and makes peace between, there is no wrong in him; for Allah is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful.

### **Remarks:**

In Chapter-4, the Quran gives Rules of Inheritance. But, according to the above Verse one may make bequest for Parents and Next of Kin (Children), because some of them may be poor and deserve more.

The Verses allow making bequest for Parents and Next of Kin only. One is not allowed to make bequest for anybody else, even for a religious or charitable organization. If one wants to spend something in charity, one should spend it in one's lifetime.

### **Section-29 of Chapter-2 [Verse 183-187]: Fasting**

O you who believe! Fasting is prescribed to you as it was prescribed to those before you that you may self-restraint for a fixed number of days. But, if any of you is ill or on a journey, the prescribed number from days later; for those who can do it is a ransom: the feeding of one that is indigent, but he that will give more of his own freewill, it is better for him. And it is better for you that you fast—if you only knew.

Ramadan is the (month) in which was sent down the Qur'an as a guide to mankind, also clear for guidance and judgment. So, every one of you who is present during that month should spend it in fasting; but if anyone is ill, or on a journey, then the prescribed period by days later. Allah intends every facility for you; He does not want to put to difficulties to complete the prescribed period, and to glorify Him in that He has guided you; and perchance you shall be grateful.

When My servants ask you concerning Me, I am indeed close; I listen to the prayer of every suppliant when he call on Me. Let them also with a will listen to My call and believe in Me that they may walk in the right way.

Permitted to you on the night of the fasts is the approach to your wives—they are your garments and you are their garments; Allah knows what you used to do secretly among yourselves, but He turned to you and forgave you. So, now associate with them and seek what Allah has ordained for you, and eat and drink until the white thread of dawn appear to you distinct from its black thread; then complete your fast till the night appears. But do not associate with your wives while you are in retreat in the mosques. Those are limits of Allah—approach not nigh thereto.

Thus, does Allah make clear His Verses to men that they may learn self-restraint.

### **Section-30 of Chapter-2 [Verse 188]: Guideline of Economic Policy and Bait**

And do not eat up your property among yourselves for vanities, nor use it as bait for the judges with intent that you may eat up wrongfully and knowingly a little of people's property.

### **Section-31 of Chapter-2 [Verse 189]: New Moon**

They ask you concerning the New Moons. Say: They are but signs to mark fixed periods of time in men and for pilgrimage. It is no virtue if you enter your houses from the back. It is virtue if you fear Allah. Enter houses through the proper doors. And fear Allah that you may prosper.

## **Section-32 of Chapter-2 [Verse 190-195]: Jihad (Main Discussion)**

Fight in the cause of Allah those who fight you, but do not transgress limits; for Allah love not transgressors. And slay them wherever you catch them and turn them out from where they have turned you out; for tumult and oppression are worse than slaughter. But fight them not at the Sacred Mosque unless they fight you there. But if they fight you, slay them; such is the reward of those who suppress faith. But if they cease, Allah is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful.

And fight them on until there is no more tumult or oppression and there prevail justice and faith in Allah, but if they cease, let there be no hostility except to those who practise oppression.

The prohibited month, for the prohibited month and so, for all things prohibited there is the law of equality. If then anyone transgresses the prohibition against you, transgress you likewise against him. But fear Allah and know that Allah is with those who restrain themselves.

And spend of your substance in the cause of Allah and make not your own hands contribute to destruction but do good; for Allah loves those who do good.

### **Remarks:**

“Jihad” means “Struggle”. ‘Fighting a battle in the way of Islam’ is also a kind of Jihad.

The Jihad can be divided into two types: Defensive Jihad and Offensive Jihad.

This Chapter (Chapter-2) forms the Ummah and gives the guidance of Defensive Jihad.

The Furqan (War Book) that starts at Chapter-3 and ends at Chapter-9 guides the Offensive Jihad.

## **1. Defensive Jihad**

Above Verses give guidelines of Defensive Jihad, as it says: “*Fight in the cause of Allah those who fight you...*”

Fighting to protect life / honor / property of a Muslim is a Defensive Jihad.

If a robber attacks a Muslim, and the Muslim fights to protect his life / property, then he is doing a Defensive Jihad.

There may be many forms of Defensive Jihad—even a Muslim fallen in the river swimming to save his life is doing Jihad, because he is trying to save the life of a Muslim (his own life).

The permission of Islamic Leadership is not required to fight a Defensive Jihad.

## **2. Offensive Jihad**

An Offensive Jihad is a war guided by the War Book (Furqan). The War Book starts at Chapter-3 and ends at Chapter-9. The span of the Book is clarified in the ‘Introduction of the War Book’ given after this Chapter.

The permission of the Highest Islamic Leadership or of his authorized representative is

necessary to fight an Offensive Jihad. Actually, such Jihad can be planned and executed by him only.

The Jihad is fought by Al Muttaqin who are oath (Bayah) bound to the Islamic Leadership to fight for the cause of Allah. They are pious people and follow the guidance of the Quran strictly.

In light of the Quran, the Offensive Jihad can be carried out to fulfill the following aims only:

- a. To remove the Taghut (Powers) ruling Pagan (Idolater) Societies so that the Pagans can accept Islam safely and peacefully.
- b. To neutralize the Munafiqun (Hypocrites) with a view to keep Islamic Societies supportive to the Highest Islamic Leadership.
- c. To maintain peace among Muslims when one of the groups of conflicting Muslims has denied to obey the mediation of the Highest Islamic Leadership.

The above points are deliberated as under:

## **2a. To remove the Taghut (Powers)**

Invading Pagans (Idolaters) for the cause of Islam is an Offensive Jihad. The aim of the invasion is to remove the Taghut (Power) ruling over the Idolaters and preach Islam peacefully and effectively.

If People of the Book are protecting the Pagans, the offensive can be directed against them as well, to subdue them and to bring them under a system where they are compelled to pay Jizya. The matter is deliberately discussed in Chapter-9.

Care must be taken against indiscriminate use of forces if believing people are living among the Pagans. The matter is discussed in Section-5 of Chapter-48.

Islam was preached in the Home of Ummah (called Darussalam / Home of Peace) through the way of struggle and warfare. The Home spans from Morocco to Himalaya. The span is clarified in the Introduction of War Book given after this Chapter.

The Home is already established by Sahabah and their immediate followers. There is no Pagan in the Home at present. Now, the War Book is to maintain Islam in the Home.

Preaching Islam in the Way of the War Book is not allowed beyond the Home of Ummah. Such efforts have failed in Spain and East Europe. Islam is supposed to be preached beyond the Home by Sufis and Daees, as it was preached among Turkic, Mongol, Indian, Indonesian and Malaysian People. It is clarified in the Introduction of Part-2 (Part-2 of 3 of this Tafsir).

## **2b. To neutralize the Munafiqun (Hypocrites)**

Invading hypocrites for the cause of Islam is an Offensive Jihad. The Hypocrites are known as Muslims, but they are opposing to the Highest Islamic Leadership. The matter is discussed in Chapter-4 deliberately.

## **2b. To maintain unity among Muslims**

If two groups of Believers are quarreling, the Offensive Jihad can be carried out as under:

“If two parties among the Believers fall into a quarrel, make ye peace between them; but if one of them transgresses beyond bounds against the other, then fight ye against the one that transgresses, until it complies with the command of Allah. But if it complies, then make peace between them with justice, and be fair; for Allah loves those who are fair. The Believers are but a single Brotherhood, so make peace and reconciliation between your two (contending) brothers, and fear God that ye may receive Mercy.”

[Al Quran 49:9–10]

## **3. Conclusion**

3a. Only Chapter-4, Chapter-9, and Chapter-49 give executive orders of Offensive Jihads. Chapter-4 deals with Hypocrites, Chapter-9 deals with Pagans, and Chapter-49 deals with Opposing Believers.

3b. The Quran does not allow fighting against People of the Book unless they are related to the Pagans in hostility, or they are in the role of protecting them, or they have attacked first.

- In light of the policies given in the Quran, Arab capture of Spain and beyond cannot be termed as Jihad. Ottomans captured territories beyond Constantinople; some of their military expeditions beyond Constantinople cannot be termed as Jihad.
- The Battles to capture and protect Constantinople were Jihad because it was the seat of Byzantine Empire who were protecting or were destined to protect Arab Pagans. Prophet (pbuh) foresaw the capture of Constantinople and instructed accordingly.

3c. Fighting against the Hypocrites is another tricky job. A Muslim King / Amir / Elected Ruler even under the Highest Islamic Leadership may look hypocrite to a religious activist. But they cannot start Jihad against him unless he is clearly proven as a hypocrite by specific act. A Hypocrite has to be identified by the Highest Islamic Leadership, and he alone can order for the Jihad against him. It may be mentioned that he can also avoid warring against the Hypocrites, as Prophet (pbuh) avoided.

3d. Offensive Jihad is intensely guided by the Furqan (War Book) that starts at Chapter-3 and ends at Chapter-9. It prepares the Fighters (Al Muttaqin) as well. A religion could not be preached by warring people unless they were specially prepared according to the Guidance of Allah.

### **Section-33 of Chapter-2 [Verse 196-203]: Hajj**

And complete the Hajj or Umrah in the service of Allah.

But if you are prevented, send an offering for sacrifice, such as you may find, and do not shave your heads until the offering reaches the place of sacrifice. And if any of you is ill or has an ailment in his scalp, in compensation (of not shaving the head) either fast or feed the poor or offer sacrifice.

And when you are in peaceful conditions, if anyone wishes to continue the Umrah on to the Hajj, he must make an offering, such as he can afford, but if he cannot afford it, he should fast three days during the Hajj and seven days on his return, making ten days in all. This is for those whose household is not in the Sacred Mosque. And fear Allah and know that Allah is strict in punishment.

For Hajj are the months well known; if anyone undertakes that duty therein, let there be no obscenity, nor wickedness, nor wrangling in the Hajj. And whatever good you do, Allah know it. And take a provision for the journey, but the best of provisions is right conduct. So, fear Me, O you that are wise.

It is no crime in you if you seek of the bounty of your Lord. Then when you pour down from Arafat, celebrate the praises of Allah at the Sacred Monument and celebrate His praises as He has directed you, even though before this you went astray.

Then depart from the place when all people depart and ask Allah for His Forgiveness. For Allah is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful.

So, when you have accomplished your holy rites, celebrate the praises of Allah, as you used to celebrate the

praises of your fathers—yea, with far more heart and soul. There are men who say, "Our Lord! Give us in this world!" But they will have no portion in the Hereafter. And there are men who say, "Our Lord! Give us good in this world and good in the Hereafter and defend us from the torment of the Fire!" To these will be allotted what they have earned; and Allah is quick in account.

Celebrate the praises of Allah during the Appointed Days. But if anyone hastens to leave in two days, there is no blame on him; and if any one stays on, there is no blame on him if his aim is to do right. Then fear Allah and know that you will surely be gathered unto Him.

### **Section-34 of Chapter-2 [Verse 204-212]: Men in the Life of this World and Hereafter**

There is the type of man whose speech about this world's life may dazzle you, and he calls Allah to witness about what is in his heart, yet is he the most contentious of enemies. When he turns his back, his aim everywhere is to spread mischief through the earth and destroy crops and cattle. But Allah love not mischief. When it is said to him, "Fear Allah", he is led by arrogance to crime. Enough for him is hell—an evil bed indeed!

And there is the type of man who gives his life to earn the pleasure of Allah, and Allah is full of kindness to devotees. O you who believe! Enter into Islam wholeheartedly, and follow not the footsteps of Satan; for he is to you an avowed enemy. If you backslide after the clear (Verses) have come to you, then know that Allah is Exalted in Power, Wise.

Will they wait until Allah comes to them in canopies of clouds with angels, and the question is settled? But to Allah do all questions go back. Ask the Children of Israel, how many clear (Signs) We have sent them. And who-ever changes Allah's favour after it had come to him and accept disbelieve (Kufr), then surely Allah is severe in punishment.

The life of this world is alluring to those who reject faith, and they scoff at those who believe. But the righteous will be above them on the Day of Resurrection; for Allah bestows His abundance without measure on whom He will.

### **Section-35 of Chapter-2 [Verse 213-214]: Straight Path in the World of Adversities and Sufferings**

Mankind was one single nation, and Allah sent Messengers with glad tidings and warnings, and with them He sent the Book in truth to judge between people in matters wherein they differed. But the People of the Book, after the clear Signs came to them, did not differ among themselves except through selfish contumacy. Allah by His Grace guided the Believers to the Truth concerning that wherein they differed; for Allah guides whom He wills to a path that is straight.

Or, do you think that you shall enter Jannaat without such as came to those who passed away before you? They encountered suffering and adversity and were so shaken in spirit that even the Apostle and those of faith who were with him cried: "When the help of Allah (will come)?" Ah! Verily, the help of Allah is near!

### **Section-36 of Chapter-2 [Verse 215]: Spending in Charity**

They ask you, what they should spend. Say: "Whatever you spend that is good; it is for parents, and kindred, and orphans, and those in want, and for wayfarers. And whatever you do that is good; Allah knows it well.

### **Section-37 of Chapter-2 [Verse 216-218]: Fighting in the Path of Allah**

Fighting is prescribed for you, and you dislike it. But it is possible that you dislike a thing which is good for you, and that you love a thing which is bad for you—but Allah knows, and you know not.

They ask you concerning fighting in the Prohibited Month. Say: "Fighting therein is a grave, but graver is it in the sight of Allah to prevent access to the path of Allah, to deny Him, to prevent access to the Sacred Mosque and drive out its members—tumult and oppression are worse than slaughter."

Nor will they cease fighting you until they turn you back from your faith, if they can. And if any of you turn back from their faith and die in unbelief, their works will bear no fruit in this life and in the Hereafter; they will be Companions of the Fire and will abide therein.

Those who believed, and those who suffered exile and fought in the path of Allah they have the hope of the Mercy of Allah; and Allah is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful.

### **Section-38 of Chapter-2 [Verse 219-220]: Wine, Gambling, Charity, and Orphans**

They ask you concerning wine and gambling. Say: In them is great harm and some benefits for men, but the harm is greater than the benefits.

They ask you, how much they are to spend? Say: “What is beyond your needs.” Thus, Allah does make clear to you His Laws in order that you may consider in this worldly life and in the Hereafter.

They ask you concerning orphans. Say: “The best thing to do is what is for their good.” If you mix their affairs with yours, they are your brethren—but Allah knows the man who means mischief from the man who means good.

And if Allah had wished, He could have put you into difficulties; He is indeed Exalted in Power, Wise.

### **Section-39 of Chapter-2 [Verse 221]: Marrying Unbelieving Woman**

Do not marry unbelieving women until they believe—a slave woman who believes is better than an unbelieving woman, even though she allures you. Nor marry to unbelievers until they believe—a man slave who believes is better than an unbeliever, even though he allures you. Unbelievers do beckon you to the Fire, but Allah beckons by His Grace to the Jannaat and forgiveness, and makes His Signs clear to mankind that they may receive admonition.

### **Section-40** of Chapter-2 [Verse 222-223]: **Approaching Woman**

They ask you concerning women's courses. Say: They are a hurt and a pollution. So, keep away from women in their courses, and do not approach them until they are clean. But when they have purified themselves, you may approach them in any manner, time, or place ordained for you by Allah; for Allah loves those who turn to Him constantly, and He loves those who keep themselves pure and clean.

Your wives are as a tilth unto you, so approach your tilth when or how you will, but do some good act for your souls beforehand and fear Allah, and know that you are to meet Him; and give good tidings to those who believe.

### **Section-41** of Chapter-2 [Verse 224-225]: **Oath Taking**

And make not Allah's (name) an excuse in your oaths against doing good, or acting rightly, or making peace between persons; for Allah is One Who hears and knows all things. Allah will not call you to account for that which is unintentional in your oath, but He will call you to account for that which your hearts have earned. And Allah is Oft-Forgiving, Most Forbearing.

### **Section-42** of Chapter-2 [Verse 226-237]: **Divorce and Marriage of Widows and Divorced Women**

There are three types of divorce:

1. Divorce through Abstention
2. Regular Divorce
3. Divorce through Social Involvement

'Divorce due to Abstention' and 'Regular Divorce' are discussed below. The 'Divorce through Social Involvement' is discussed in Section 9 of Chapter 4.

### **Subsection A: Divorce through Abstention**

For those who take an oath for abstention from their wives, a waiting for four months is ordained. If then they return, Allah is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful. But, if their intention is firm for divorce, Allah hears and knows all things.

#### **Remarks:**

According to above Verses, if a man takes an 'Oath of Abstention' and remain separate from his wife for four (4) months at a stretch, the divorce gets effective and wife can marry another man.

In this case, two actions are needed:

1. Oath of Abstention.
2. Abstention from sexual contact for four (4) months at a stretch.

The declaration of the 'Oath of Abstention' before wife and genuine witnesses is not made mandatory in above Verses. So, if a husband is lost for four (4) months at a stretch, his wife may consider that he has taken the 'Oath of Abstention' and can marry another man.

But, if the husband is away for four months or more and keeps contact, the counterpart cannot assume that the husband has taken the 'Oath of Abstention' and divorce does not get effective.

## **Subsection B: Regular Divorce**

Divorced women shall wait (in husband's house) concerning themselves for three monthly periods, nor is it lawful for them to hide what Allah has created in their wombs if they have faith in Allah and the Last Day. And their husbands have the better right to take them back in that period if they wish for reconciliation.

And women shall have rights similar to the rights against them, according to what is equitable, but men have a degree over them. And Allah is Exalted in Power, Wise.

### **Remarks:**

If a man divorces a woman by formal declaration of the Oath of Abstention (traditionally by uttering the word, "Talak"), the process of Regular Divorce starts. He then has to remain away from his wife for four months at a stretch to fulfill the procedure of divorce.

For three monthly periods, the wife will remain in the house of husband. She will not hide her pregnancy, if she is pregnant.

Woman can divorce in the same process because the Verses say: "...*women shall have rights similar to the rights against them...*"

A divorce is only permissible twice, after that the parties should either hold together on equitable terms or separate with kindness.

It is not lawful for you to take back any of your gifts, except when both parties fear that they would be unable to

keep the limits ordained by Allah. If you do indeed fear that they would be unable to keep the limits ordained by Allah, there is no blame on either of them if she gives something for her freedom. These are the limits ordained by Allah. So, do not transgress them. If any do transgress the limits ordained by Allah, such persons wrong.

**Remarks:**

After the expiry of four months, the Parties (Guardians / Representatives from husband and wife) settle the divorce. The wife takes what she is supposed to get and can marry another man.

The Parties can reunite the husband and wife by mediation, but for twice in their life time. If husband and wife have completed the acts of the Oath of Abstention for the third time, the Parties must settle the issue by making the divorce effective.

Then the following Verses become applicable on them:

So, if a husband divorces his wife, he cannot after that re-marry her until after she has married another husband and he has divorced her. In that case, there is no blame on either of them if they re-unite; provided they feel that they can keep the limits ordained by Allah.

Such are the limits ordained by Allah, which He makes plain to those who understand.

### **Remarks:**

Therefore, for a Regular Divorce, three acts are required: Oath of Abstention, Abstention, and Settlement by the Parties. One or two acts do not work. Shouting the word “Talak” 3 or 300 times does not make anything. The shouting and sleeping in separate beds for 3 or more months as well do not make anything. All three acts must be fulfilled for a Regular Divorce.

### **Subsection C: Concluding the Divorce**

When you divorce women and they fulfill the term of their (four months), either take them back on equitable terms or set them free on equitable terms, but do not take them back to injure them, to take undue advantage; if any one does that, he wrongs his own soul.

Do not treat Allah's Verses as a jest, but solemnly rehearse Allah's favors on you and the fact that He sent down to you the Book and Wisdom for your instruction. And fear Allah and know that Allah is well acquainted with all things.

When you divorce women and they fulfill the term of their (four months) do not prevent them from marrying their husbands if they mutually agree on equitable terms. This instruction is for all among you who believe in Allah and the Last Day. That is most virtue and purity among you. And Allah knows, and you know not.

### **Subsection D: Infant of Divorced Wife**

The mothers shall give suck to their offspring for two whole years, if the father desires to complete the term. But, he shall bear the cost of their food and clothing on equitable terms. No soul shall have a burden laid on it greater than it can bear. No mother shall be treated unfairly on account of her child, nor father on account of his child and on the heir like that. If they both decide on stopping (stopping to give suck by mother) by mutual consent and after due consultation, there is no blame on them. If you decide on a foster mother for your offspring, there is no blame on you provided you pay what you offered on equitable terms. But fear Allah and know that Allah sees well what you do.

### **Subsection E: Marriage of Widow**

If any of you die and leave widows behind, they shall wait concerning themselves four months and ten days. When they have fulfilled their term, there is no blame on you if they dispose of themselves in a just and reasonable manner. And Allah is well acquainted with what you do.

### **Subsection F: Engagement with Divorced Woman and Widow**

There is no blame on you if you make an offer of betrothal or hold it in your hearts. Allah knows that you cherish them in your hearts. But do not make a secret contract with them except in terms honorable, nor resolve on the tie of marriage till the term prescribed is fulfilled. And know that Allah

Knows what is in your hearts and take heed of Him; and know that Allah is Oft-Forgiving, Most Forbearing.

**Remarks:**

Offering of betrothal to divorced woman is allowed, but the tie of marriage should not be resolved before the waiting period (4 months).

Secret engagement is not acceptable; it should be a formal proposal of marriage followed by the fixing of *mahr* (dowry) by the parties comprising parents / guardians / representatives.

**Subsection G: Mahr (Dowry) in case of Mutah Marriage**

There is no blame on you if you divorce women whom you have not touched, nor you specified for them an obligation (*mahr*), but bestow on them, the wealthy according to his means, and the poor according to his means. A gift of a reasonable amount is due from those who wish to do the right thing.

And, if you divorce them before you touched them while already you have specified for them an obligation (*mahr*), then the half of the *mahr*, unless they remit it, or is remitted by him in whose hands is the marriage tie; and the remission is the nearest to righteousness. And do not forget liberality between yourselves—for Allah sees well all that you do.

### **Remarks:**

In regular marriage, the mahr (dowry) must be given before touching the groom. But in Mutah Marriage, it is possible that if the groom is given with the mahr (dowry) beforehand, she will fly away.

So, in Mutah Marriage, the mahr (dowry) may be given once the marriage ends.

The mahr (dowry) should be given depending on the sexual contact and the contract of the marriage.

Mutah Marriage is further discussed in Section-6 of Chapter-4.

### **Note:**

The third kind of divorce, which is “Divorce through Social Involvement”, has been discussed in Section-9 of Chapter-4.

### **Section-43 of Chapter-2 [Verse 238–245]: As-Salat, Maintenance of women, and Fighting Battles**

Guard strictly As-Salat, especially the Middle Salat, and stand before Allah in a devout (frame of mind). If you fear (an enemy), pray on foot or riding, but when you are in security, celebrate Allah's praises in the manner He has taught you—which you knew not.

Those of you who die and leave widows should bequeath for their widows a year's maintenance and residence, but if they leave, there is no blame on you for what they do with themselves, provided it is reasonable; and Allah is Exalted in Power, Wise.

For divorced women maintenance on a reasonable (scale). These are a duty on the Guards (Al Muttaqin). Thus, does Allah make clear His Verses to you in order that you may understand.

Did you not think of those who went forth from their homes in thousands fearing death? Allah said to them, "Die", and then He restored them to life; for Allah is full of bounty to mankind, but most of them are ungrateful.

Then fight in the cause of Allah and know that Allah Hear and know all things. Who is he that will loan to Allah a beautiful loan, which Allah will double unto his credit and multiply many times? It is Allah that decreases or increases, and to Him you shall return.

#### **Section-44 of Chapter-2 [Verse 246-260]: Islamic Leadership (Main Discussion)**

Have you not turned your vision to the Chiefs of the Children of Israel after Moses? They said to a prophet among them: "Appoint for us a king that we may fight in the cause of Allah".

#### **Remarks:**

Joshua was helper of Moses. Joshua became the Leader of Israelites after Moses had departed. He captured Canaan.

The Tribes of Israel were living in Canaan for about hundred twenty-five years (1150 BCE to 1025 BCE). But, according to the instruction of Moses, they were not allowed to make any King or even the

Tribal Chiefs. In times of crises, they used to be led by temporary leaders called Judges.

The system was peaceful. The statehood ultimately brings forth wars and internal conflicts.

But, due to the conflicts with the neighboring Tribes, the Jews were feeling the necessity of a King. Some of them were evicted from their homes.

He (Prophet) said: "Is it not possible, if you were commanded to fight, that you will not fight?"

They said: "How could we refuse to fight in the cause of Allah seeing that we were turned out of our homes and our families?" But when they were commanded to fight, they turned back, except a small band among them. But Allah has full knowledge of those who do wrong.

Their Prophet said to them: "Allah has appointed Talut as king over you."

They said: "How can he exercise authority over us when we are better fitted than he to exercise authority, and he is not even gifted with wealth in abundance?"

He said, "Allah has chosen him above you, and has gifted him abundantly with knowledge and stature; Allah grants His authority to whom He pleases. Allah is All-Embracing, and He knows all things."

And their Prophet said to them: "A sign of his authority is that there shall come to you the Ark of the Covenant with therein of security from your Lord and the relics left by the family of Moses and the family of Aaron carried by angels. In this is a symbol for you if you indeed have faith."

## **Remarks:**

Allah appointed Talut as their king.

Muhammad (pbuh) was doing both Prophetic and Leadership duties by himself. His Ummah needed a Leader after his death. It is most likely that he nominated Hadrat Ali (R,) as Leader after him.

However, the age of Hadrat Ali was only about 32 when Prophet (pbuh) departed. And, those tribal people were not habituated to obey a young man.

Hadrat Ali was from Makkah. Many of Madinah wanted one from them to be their leader. Roman and Persian Emperors were not defeated by then. To them, the Leadership meant the Leadership of Madinah only.

Ultimately, majority of people took the Bayah of Hadrat Abu Bakr, and he became the first leader. Abu Bakr used to call himself “Caliphatur Rasul”, which means “Representative of Prophet”.

The Highest Islamic Leadership (Highest Imam / Caliph) works as the Guardian of the Islamic Ummah. He commands the Guards (the Forces of Al Muttaqin / an unpaid paramilitary force from the pious people). He collects zakat through the mosques at different levels and spends it according to the Quran.

## The Seat of Islamic Leadership

The Seat of Islamic Leadership was the Prophet's Mosque at Madinah. Subsequently, Hadrat Ali shifted the Seat to the Great Mosque of Kufa.



FIGURE 2.30: The Great Mosque of Kufa

Caliph Omar founded the city of Kufa. He settled some Jews in the city who continued living in Arabian Peninsula even after being evicted from Madinah.

Caliph Omar constructed the Great Mosque as well.

*“Sources attribute the construction of the Great Mosque of Kufa in the middle of the 7th century to the Caliph Omar. There is a legend that says the edifice was built on a temple constructed by Adam...It is also believed that the angel Gabriel was referring to the mosque when he declared, "Twelve miles of lands from all directions of the mosque are blessed by its holiness ...” – Wikipedia, The free Encyclopedia.*

There is a reason for Caliph Omar to found the city of Kufa and Caliph Ali to shift the Seat of Highest Islamic Leadership over there:

Kufa is close to Babylon. In light of the following Verses, the area is the Center of Islamic Ummah:

“And this is a Book, which We have sent down, bringing blessings and confirming which came before it, that thou may warn the ‘Mother of Cities’ and all around her. Those who believe in the Hereafter believe in this, and they are constant in guarding their Prayers.” [Al Quran 6:92]

“Thus, have We sent by inspiration to thee an Arabic Qur'an that thou may warn the ‘Mother of Cities’ and all around her. And warn of the Day of Assembly, of which there is no doubt—some will be in the Jannaat, and some in the Blazing Fire.

If Allah had so willed, He could have made them a single people, but He admits whom He will to His Mercy; and the Wrong-doers will have no protector, nor helper.”

[Al Quran 42:7-8]

Babylon is known as the Mother of Cities. It was Capital of Great Medo-Persian Empires. The city

fell into ruins over time. But it had surviving extensions, such as Seleucia (Capital of Grecian Empire), Ctesiphon (Capital of Persian Empire), Kufa (Capital of Caliphate), and Baghdad (Capital of Abbasid Caliphate and present Iraq).

Many Arabians and Iranians were living around Babylon from the age old times. So, in light of the above Verses, the land of Arabs and Iranians should form the Home of Ummah (called Darussalam / Home of Peace). Thus, the Home extends from Morocco to Pamirs. General area Babylon is the Center of Gravity of the land.

In the Home of Ummah, Islam was preached by defeating the Taghuts (Opposing Tribal Chiefs, Kings and Emperors) in the way of Jihad.

### **The Standard Islamic Leadership**

Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) did not make any Crown, Thorne, or Palace. He did not have bodyguards or ceremonial guards. He did not circulate money. He did not collect tax. He did not make Paid Army and Police. He did not establish any Court. He did not have Ministers. He did not have Majlis al Shura / Parliament.

So, Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) did not make a Government. He fought only to remove the Taghuts (Powers) so that the Pagans could accept Islam freely and peacefully. He led the people from the Mosque of Madinah.

Prophet (pbuh) sent Amirs (Leaders) in captured areas. They too controlled the people from

the Mosques. They collected zakat and sent it to Prophet (pbuh) to spend it according to the Quran.

Therefore, the Islamic Leadership is based in the Mosques at different levels. They sit in the Mosques and lead regular prayers. They were easily approachable to the people.

So, in standard scenario, the Highest Islamic Leadership should be the Imam of the Mosque of Madinah or of the Great Mosque of Kufa.

At national level, a National Leader should be the Imam of a prominent Mosque of his state.

The National Imam should have Zonal Imams under him, and the Zonal Imams should have Community Imams under them.

The Imams of the Community (Village) Mosques are the grassroots.

The above chain may have more tiers. The whole Islamic World should be under one Leadership, establish through the Mosques at different levels.

The Highest Islamic Leadership is the Commander of the Guards (Al Muttaqin) as well, through a different chain of command. They are like a Paramilitary Force, but unpaid.

The Home of Ummah (Darussalam) is a huge land with many nations and states. The National / State Leadership may be a King / Amir / President / Prime Minister. He may be selected, elected, or existing traditionally. He should be oath (bayah) bound to the Highest Islamic Leadership to follow his orders. He should circulate money, collect taxes, and maintain Paid Army, Police, Justice System and Government Departments.

Thus, in every Islamic country, there will be two Military Forces. One is the Forces of Al Muttaqin under the Highest Islamic Leadership. Another is the National Defense Forces of the state under the National Leadership.

The Quran does not say that the whole Ummah should be under a single Government. Each state should be governed independently. Otherwise, some nations will think that they are being subjugated in the name of Islam. However the Highest Islamic Leadership cannot be divided, as it is said in Chapter-42:

“What! Have they partners, who have established for them some religion without the permission of Allah? Had it not been for the Decree of Judgment, the matter would have been decided between them. But verily the wrongdoers will have a grievous penalty.” [Al Quran 42:21]

The National Leaders, such as Kings, Amirs, Presidents, and Prime Ministers run the National Governments. They cannot be oppressive, because people remain active under the Chain of Islamic Leadership established through the Mosques at different levels. The system is better than democracy where Government is given to a Political Party for 4 to 5 years, and they do whatever they may want to do.

To conclude, the Sultan Caliphs that hijacked the Caliphate from the Mosques are not good

examples. One may follow Iran where Imam Khomeini did not take over the Government, but became a Guardian and the Head of the Guards (Islamic Revolutionary Guard Corps).

### **Islamic Leadership of the Grassroots**

The ordinary people living in the villages / communities should be led by the Imams of the village / community mosques.

An Imam of a Village / Community Mosque must be acceptable to the Highest Islamic Leadership.

### **Dos and Don'ts of the Islamic Leadership**

Islamic Leaderships at different levels should exercise their authorities through the mosques at different levels.

An Islamic Leadership should not run a National / State Government directly. A Government often gets corrupted and earns bad name, which is counter-productive to the Islam Leadership. The Governments, circulating money, collecting taxes, maintaining regular Armies, Police, Judicial Systems, Utility Services, etc., should be run by Kings / Presidents / Prime Ministers / Amirs / Governors, etc.

The Highest Islamic Leadership may choose Governors (as Kings / Amirs / Presidents / Prime Ministers, etc.), or the Governors may be elected by people from the ones chosen by the Highest Islamic Leadership. They may be traditional Kings or Amirs as well, loyal to the Highest Islamic Leadership

through Bayah.

The Governments should maintain the Justice Systems, but the punishments of the crimes, mentioned in the Quran, must be according to the Quran. And, the System must follow the procedure of the Quran to Judge and execute the punishment. The Islamic Leadership remains observant.

Salat and Zakat often come together in the Quran. So, both are based in the mosque. Zakat must be collected by the mosques. It should be sent to the Highest Islamic Leadership to spend according to the Quran.

The responsibility of a common Muslim ends after giving Zakat to the Local Mosque. If a person does not pay Zakat to the mosque of his area, it should be considered as Individual Charity, not Zakat.

The rate of Zakat may be fixed by the Highest Islamic Leadership. It may not be 2.5 percent in all cases, at all times. But he cannot forgive it totally, because there are needy people.

## **Limitations of Islamic Leadership**

Following limitations are imposed by Islam.

- The Islamic Leadership has no power inside the perimeter of a Muslim's house. Actually, none has authority to enter a Muslim's house until the owner of the house allows entry. A person is considered as the King of his house, and he can do whatever he may want to do inside his house, without affecting the society.

- Islamic Leadership cannot devise new laws and punishments; he can direct the execution of laws that are clearly mentioned in the Quran. The laws are related to theft, sexual crimes, murder, usury, and order of the land mainly. For example, the Quran does not suggest punishment for drinking wine, so an Islamic Court cannot punish one for drinking wine. It cannot punish for hijab as well, because the Quran does not suggest a punishment for the breaking of hijab.
- The Rules of running the Government Establishments may be made by Governors (such as Kings, Presidents, Prime Ministers, Parliaments, etc.) under Islamic Leadership. But they may fear Allah while deciding the punishment of an offence.
- Islamic Leadership should not make silly laws, which Prophet (pbuh) did not make, such as: women will not drive the cars, a woman will not move alone, a man must keep beard, people will not eat in the public places in the Month of Ramadan, and similar show off rules. The Quran is exhaustive about the religious rules and punishments.
- The Highest Islamic Leadership cannot enforce hijab by force (by Al Muttaqin or by Police). In light of the Quran, he can advice

only, to wear the hijab.

- Only the sexual intercourse without marriage is punishable offence; other sexual activities, such as seeing, touching, etc., have no punishment in the Quran. So, Islamic Leadership cannot stop the mixing of man and woman by force. However, he can advise.
- An Islamic Leader may not like cinema, singing, dancing, etc., as Prophet (pbuh) did not like, but he cannot stop these, because Prophet (pbuh) did not stop, and the Quran is silent about these matters.
- Islamic Leadership cannot stop free thinking by disbanding the books and videos. However, he should have matching counter measures. For example, Prophet (pbuh) had Pet Poets to counter opposing poetry. Action according to Section-2 of Chapter-31 should be taken if one's entertaining narration mislead people from the Path of God without knowledge and throw ridicule.
- In reality, the Kings, Amirs, Governors, Ministers, Leaders, and General People happily follow the Highest Islamic Leadership. They are proactive in following the orders. So, he should be careful in talking—he cannot make everybody an angel.

When Talut set forth with the armies, he said, "Allah will test you at the stream: if any drinks of its water, he goes not with my Army; only those who taste not of it go with me; a mere sip out of the hand is excused."

But they all drank of it, except a few. When they crossed the river—he and the faithful ones with him—they said, "This day we cannot cope with Goliath and his forces". But those who were convinced that they must meet Allah, said, "How oft by Allah's will has a small force vanquished a big one? Allah is with those who steadfastly persevere".

When they advanced to meet Goliath and his forces, they prayed, "Our Lord! Pour out constancy on us and make our steps firm; help us against those that reject faith".

By Allah's will, they routed them, and David slew Goliath, and Allah gave him power and wisdom and taught him whatever He willed.

And did not Allah check one set of people by means of another, the Earth would indeed be full of mischief. But Allah is full of bounty to all the Worlds.

These are the Verses of Allah; We rehearse them to you in truth; verily you are one of the apostles.

### **Remarks:**

Here the need to obey leadership is highlighted with the story of Jews.

They asked God for a King through their Prophet Samuel. But when God nominated Talut (Saul), they were not proactive to accept him. And when Talut was moving for a battle, most of them disobeyed his order.

However, the Forces of Talut defeated the Forces of Goliath.

Goliath was a gigantic warrior and was feared by the people. David killed Goliath. Talut was happy on David and gave him his daughter in marriage.

Talut ruled from 1025 BCE to 1007 BCE. After Talut, David became King. David is famous for his songs.

After David, his son Solomon became the King. During his time, the Kingdom rose to the pick of its glory. He made the First Temple on the Mount of Jerusalem.

Those apostles We endowed with gifts, some above others: to one of them Allah spoke; others He raised to degrees; to Jesus the son of Mary, We gave clear (Signs) and strengthened him with the Holy Soul.

If Allah had so willed, succeeding generations would not have fought among each other after Clear (Signs) had come to them, but they to wrangle—some believing and others rejecting.

If Allah had so willed, they would not have fought each other, but Allah fulfills His plan.

### **Remarks:**

After the death of Solomon, many of the Jews revolted. They wanted heavy yoke (religious rule) mounted on them to be removed. Ultimately, the Kingdom was divided into two Kingdoms.

Crisis arises in an Ummah when some people believe, and others reject. Therefore, spreading the

teachings of Islam and maintaining the societies under the local Mosques are necessary.

But, what Muslims did? Jews divided after three kings, Saul, David and Solomon; Muslims divided after three Caliphs, Abu Bakr, Omar, and Othman. If Muhammad (pbuh) were not the Last Prophet, we would know what we are!

However, after the division, many Jews began to worship the idol of Baal, but Muslims remained Faithful to God.

The Quran has given utmost impotence on Faith building. It is one of the major causes for which Muslims have not deviated from the religion at personal level at least, and the same Quran is followed by all.

Another cause of survival is mosque based societies. Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) practically demonstrated in Madinah how a Mosque based society should be. He has set the culture among Muslims. The Islamic leadership at national and international level may diminish, but Islamic System, even being greatly weakened, survives at social level, awaiting revitalization.

In this respect, we should understand the Evolution of Islamic Leadership too, and decide our future acts.

## **The Evolution of Islamic Leadership**

The matter is discussed under the following headings:

- Lack of Knowledge on the Quran

- The Great Disaster of Karbala and the advent of Sultan Caliphs
- Subsequent Sultan Caliphates
- Reviving Islamic Leadership

### **1. Lack of Knowledge on the Quran**

Allah repeatedly called to think on the Quran, but Muslims do not think as it should be thought. One picks up a Verse from anywhere and tries to explain it with the Hadiths. But Prophet (pbuh) never explained the Quran. He was forbidden to do it. Moreover, he burned the Hadiths that were written by the Sahabah.

Many common people were misguided by pious looking people who did not have genuine knowledge of the Quran.

It was one of the major causes for which the Standard Islamic Leadership got destroyed.

### **2. The great disaster of Karbala and the advent of Sultan Caliphs**

It was Muawiyah and Yazid who finally destroyed the Standard Islamic Leadership and established kingship. They hijacked the title of Caliph. They are now called Sultan Caliphs. The Sultan Caliphs were actually Emperors.

Muawiyah joined Muslims after the capture of Makkah. Subsequently, he got the Governorship of Damascus. The City was a forward Headquarters of the Roman Byzantine Empire. Thus, Muawiyah got

readymade Palaces, Local Army, Forts, and Government Machineries left by the Romans.

Damascus and surrounding area was full of Christians who did not convert by then. Muawiyah married a Christian woman. She was daughter of Bahdal Ibn Unayf, the Chief of an influential Christian Tribe (Kalibite Tribe). The local Christians were highly impressed.

The Byzantines were trying to return with the help of local Christians, but they liked to support an Arab Leader (Muawiyah) instead of supporting a European Emperor.

However, the diplomacy of marriage was not necessary. Islam was rising at that time. Nothing could stand in front of it. It is likely that Allah arranged the security of Arab Christians in this way. They too are an Ummah in the Religion of Abraham. Rather they listened to the call of God before the rest of Arabs. However, the Christianity is greatly deviated. They should become Muslims now.

In those days, many Arabians used to send their babies to grow with the nomad tribes so that they become fit to survive in the harsh terrain. Muawiyah sent his son, Yazid, to his mother's tribe. Thus, Yazid became more of a Christian than a Muslim.

After Hazrat Ali, the People of Madinah elected Hadrat Hasan ibn Ali as the Caliph. Muawiyah pressurized Hadrat Hasan and neutralized him through a treaty. The terms of the treaty stipulated that he (Muawiyah) would become Caliph but would not nominate a successor.

Hadrat Hasan was killed by poisoning in 670 CE. Later, in 676 CE, Muawiyah nominated his son Yazid as his successor.

After the death of Muawiyah, Hadrat Husayn ibn Ali, younger brother of Hadrat Hasan, was going to Kufa to rule as a Caliph from the Great Mosque of Kufa. Hadrat Husayn had his family and a few Al Muttaqin with him. Yazid attacked them with his regular Army assisted by Syrian tribal forces and killed them on the way at Karbala.

Subsequently, Yazid invaded Madinah and punished the people by massive killing and destruction. The city was plundered for three days. Around one thousand women were raped. Thus, the People of Madinah left nominating Caliph forever.

Many Sahabah from Madinah were killed due to the battles of Camel and Siffin. Yazid killed the rest almost.

After the death of Prophet Muhammad (pbuh), if the people of Madinah selected Hadrat Ali as the Caliph, they and their children would not die in this way. Prophet (pbuh) clearly nominated Hazrat Ali as the next Leader.

### **3. Subsequent Sultan Caliphs**

As the time passed, Abbasids appeared in place of Umayyads, but they too did not revive the standard Islamic Leadership. They ruled as Sultan Caliphs.

Another two branches of Sultan Caliphs appeared in Africa (Fatimids and Al Mohad).

The last Caliphate of the Sultan Caliphs appeared in Turkey. It diminished after the First World War.

The Sultan Caliphs were actually Emperors holding the title of Caliph so that nobody rises as a Caliph from the Mosques of Madinah or Kufa. They kept the Mosques under guards.

They were not following the Quran sincerely. Some of them uplifted the Sunnah and gave the religion a different look, though Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) clearly ordered to burn the Hadiths. The Hadith and Sunnah are discussed in Section-2 of Chapter-31.

#### **4. Reviving Islamic Leadership**

In 1979, the Islamic Leadership has revived in Iran. The Leadership matches the guidelines of the Quran. They maintain the Guards (Al Muttaqin) under the name of Islamic Revolutionary Guard Corps (IRGC).

In the last 40 years, they have produced the Fourth Generation Fighter Aircraft. They have produced jet engine, advanced submarines, and missiles with hi-tech guidance system. They have put satellites in the space. It is because they are happy now and dedicated to their jobs.

Similar development has been made by Turks under Recep Tayyip Erdogan. However, Turkey lacks well organized religious establishments.

Thus, we feel us winners. We are not fools fighting disjointed battles here and there. We are promising people in the Religion of Abraham.

O you who believe! Spend out of that with which We have provided for you before a Day comes when there will be no bargaining, nor friendship, nor intercession. Those who reject Faith, they are the wrongdoers.

**Remarks:**

In above Verses, Muslims are called to spend for Islamic Leadership. Spending for Islamic Leadership relates to Faith in cases. If Islamic Leadership needs money for the preparation of a Jihad, and if a person having ability does not donate, the person may be a Hypocrite. So, the Verses talk about the Rejecters of Faith concurrently.

Allah! There is no god but He, the Living, the Self-subsisting, Eternal. No slumber can seize Him nor sleep. His are all things in the Skies and Lands. Who is there can intercede with Him except by His permission? He knows what is before or after or behind them. Nor shall they compass aught of His knowledge except what He willed. Extends His throne (Kursi) into the Skies and Lands, and the guarding of both of them (Samawaat and Jannaat) does not tire Him; for He is the Most High, the Supreme.

Let there be no compulsion in religion; Truth stands out Clear from Error. Whoever rejects evil and believes in Allah has grasped the most trustworthy hand-hold that never breaks. And Allah hears and knows all things.

Allah is the Protector of those who have faith—from the depths of darkness He will lead them forth into light. Of those who reject faith, the patrons are *Taghut*—from light

they will lead them forth into the depths of darkness. They will be Companions of the Fire to dwell therein.

**Remarks:**

The First Paragraph of above Verses is known as Ayatul-Kursi. Allah is Absolute Ruler of the universes. He oversees the Muslim Ummah. He revives them back from the absolute fall.

Have you not turned your vision to one who disputed with Abraham about his Lord, because Allah had granted him Power (Nimrod the Taghut)? Abraham said: "My Lord is He Who give life and death". He said, "I give life and death". Said Abraham: "But it is Allah that causes the sun to rise from the East—do you then cause him to rise from the West". Thus, was he confounded who rejected faith. Nor does Allah give guidance to a people unjust (people that follow Taghut).

**Remarks:**

Above Verses narrate the primary way to deal with the *Taghuts* (Powers). Abraham defeated Nimrod by arguments.

If a Taghut is leading Idolaters, he can be fought following Chapter-9 of the Quran.

If a Taghut organizes the Hypocrites (Munafiqun) against the Islamic Leadership, he can be fought following Chapter-4 of the Quran.

If a Muslim regional King, Amir, President, or Prime Minister becomes Taghut, he can be opposed

as the Verses under discussion dictate. The Verses authorize verbal opposition against him.

By “Muslim Taghut” I mean Muslim Ruler who does not follow Islamic Laws and denies to follow the Highest Islamic Leadership.

Many think “People” as the source of power. But, it is God Who created Earth, Moon, Sun and Stars. He sustains the creations personally. So, we too should follow the divine laws.

Or, the similitude of one who passed by a hamlet all in ruins to its roofs—he said, "Oh! How shall God bring it to life after its death?" But, God caused him to die for a hundred years then raised him up. He said, "How long did you remain?" He said, "A day or part of a day". He said, "Nay, you have remained a hundred years, but look at your food and your drink, they show no signs of age and look at your donkey! And thus, We have made of you a Sign unto the people. Look further at the bones, how We bring them together and clothe them with flesh". When this was shown clearly to him, he said, "I know that God has power over all things."

### **Remarks:**

The Babylonian Emperor Nebuchadnezzar destroyed Jerusalem including the First Temple. He moved the Jews under captivity to Babylon.

The world was full of disbelievers at that time. But, the Jews, though deviated, were believers of one God. Seeing the utter destruction of the Temple and the city of Jerusalem, Uzayr (Ezra, the Last High

Priest of the First Temple) said, *"Oh! How shall God bring it to life after its death?"*

Allah made Uzayr dead.

Decades later, Babylon was captured by Cyrus the Great. He released the Jews and allowed to rebuild the Temple. Within a hundred year, Jerusalem returned to its previous state.

Allah made Uzayr alive again. To him hundred years was like a day or a part of a day; as if he started sleeping seeing the city destroyed, and when he got up after a day or part of a day, the city was full of population and the Temple was rebuilt. He would think the destruction dream if he were not shown the condition of his donkey.

Thus, Allah can revive from the complete fall anytime later. Genghis Khan destroyed Iran and its population. His grandson, Halagu Khan, destroyed Baghdad. It seemed that the Islam had been destroyed. But it revived.

Islam was again defeated in the First World War. It is reviving now.

Thus, the above story of Uzayr tells Muslims not to be disheartened.

Many died. But people should not be sorry for that. Everybody has to die one day. Allah will bring them back to life on the Day of Judgment, as the following story of Abraham narrates:

Behold! Abraham said, "My Lord! Show me how You give life to the dead." He said, "Do you not then believe?" He said, "Yea! But to satisfy my own undertaking." He said, "Take four birds, tame them to turn to you, put a

portion of them on every hill, and call to them—they will come to you with speed. Then know that Allah is Exalted in Power, Wise."

**Remarks:**

Allah will resurrect everybody on the Day of Judgment. But Nimrod, the Taghut, had no power on life and death—he could not make one alive, and he could not make Abraham dead.

So, it is wise to remain in the side of Allah, by supporting the Islamic System and the Highest Islamic Leadership.

**Note:**

Pease read Chapter 31 and Chapter 42 for additional discussion on Islamic Leadership.

**Section-45 of Chapter-2 [Verse 261–274]: Spend in the Way of Allah**

The parable of those who spend their substance in the way of Allah is that of a grain of corn; it grows seven ears and each ear has a hundred grains—Allah gives manifold increase to whom He pleases, and Allah cares for all, and He knows all things.

Those who spend their substance in the cause of Allah and follow not up their gifts with reminders of their generosity or with injury, for them their reward is with their Lord, on them shall be no fear, nor shall they grieve.

Kind words and the covering of faults are better than charity followed by injury; Allah is free of all wants and He is Most-Forbearing.

O you who believe, cancel not your charity by reminders of your generosity or by injury like those who spend their substance to be seen of men but believe neither in Allah nor in the Last Day. They are in parable like a hard barren rock on which is a little soil—on it falls heavy rain, which leaves it a bare stone. They will be able to do nothing with aught they have earned. And Allah guides not those who reject faith.

And the likeness of those who spend their substance seeking to please Allah and to strengthen their souls is as a garden high and fertile; heavy rain falls on it, but makes it yield a double increase of harvest; and if it receives not heavy rain, light moisture suffice it. Allah sees well whatever you do.

Do any of you wish that he should have a garden with date-palms and vines, and streams flowing underneath, and all kinds of fruit—while he is stricken with old age and his children are not strong that it should be caught in a whirlwind with fire therein, and be burnt up? Thus, does Allah make clear to you Verses that you may consider.

O you who believe, give of the good things which you have earned and of the fruits of the earth which We have produced for you, and do not even aim at getting anything which is bad in order that out of it you may give away something, when you yourselves would not receive it except with closed eyes; and know that Allah is free of all wants and worthy of all praise.

The Satan threatens you with poverty and bids you to conduct unseemly. Allah promises you His forgiveness and bounties. And Allah cares for all and He knows all things.

He grants wisdom to whom He pleases; and he, to whom wisdom is granted, receives indeed a benefit overflowing—but none will grasp the message but men of understanding.

And whatever you spend in charity or devotion, be sure Allah knows it all, but the wrongdoers have no helpers.

If you disclose charity, even so it is well, but if you conceal them and make them reach those in need, that is best for you; it will remove from you some of your evil. And Allah is well acquainted with what you do.

It is not required of you to set them on the right path, but Allah sets on the right path whom He pleases. Whatever of good you give, benefits your own souls, and you shall only do so seeking the Face of Allah.

Whatever good you give shall be rendered back to you, and you shall not be dealt with unjustly.

For those in need, who in Allah's cause are restricted and cannot move about in the land seeking—the ignorant man thinks because of their modesty that they are free from want—you shall know them by their mark; they do not beg the people at all; and whatever of good you give, be assured Allah knows it well.

Those who spend of their goods by night and by day in secret and in public have their reward with their Lord; on them shall be no fear, nor shall they grieve.

## **Section-46** of Chapter-2 [Verse 275-281]: Usury

Those who devour usury will not stand except as stands one whom Satan by his touch has driven to madness. That is because they say, "Trade is like usury", but Allah has permitted trade and forbidden usury. Those who after receiving direction from their Lord desist shall be pardoned for the past, their case is for Allah, but those who repeat are companions of the fire. They will abide therein.

Allah will deprive usury of all blessing but will give increase for deeds of charity; for He loves not creatures ungrateful and wicked.

Those who believe, and do deeds of righteousness, and perform As-Salat, and give Zakat will have their reward with their Lord; on them shall be no fear, nor shall they grieve.

O you who believe! Fear Allah and give up what remained of usury if you are indeed Believers. If you do it not, take notice of war from Allah and His apostle. But if you turn back, you shall have your capital sums. Deal not unjustly, and you shall not be dealt with unjustly.

If the debtor is in a difficulty, grant him time till it is easy for him to repay. But if you remit it by way of charity, that is best for you if you only knew. And fear the day when you shall be brought back to Allah. Then shall every soul be paid what it earned, and none shall be dealt with unjustly.

### **Remarks:**

While talking about *usury* (interest of loaned money), the Quran has brought business in it. It declares business as halal and usury as haram [*That is because*

*they say, "Trade is like usury", but Allah has permitted trade and forbidden usury].* There are points to understand in this Verse:

One can provide loan to a business and can take benefit from it if one fulfils following conditions:

- a. One takes benefit if the business is making profit.
- b. One shares the burden of loss.
- c. One makes the written deed of transaction (discussed in the Verses of the next Section).
- d. One does not keep anything in mortgage and does not claim the amount one provided if the business is lost and the amount is not recovered from the dead business.

In cases, the owner of a business does not want to sale the share of business, so he takes loan. But, to a provider of loan, it may be an investment in business. It should be recorded accordingly in the deed of transaction (discussed in the Verses of the next Section). Then the provider of loan can share profit / loss.

In a big business firm, the profit and loss may not be calculated in every month, but a loan giver may need benefit of his investment every month. So, he can take money from the business in fixed rate on projected profit, even if the business may be losing at that time—it is halal because the profit or loss of a big business is not a matter of short time, and in above Verse, the business is declared halal. Here main point is that he cannot go beyond the business.

For example, if the business is finally lost, he can claim his money from the money that is

recoverable from the dead business; but if it does not cover, he cannot ask to fulfill the amount from other source that the person running the business may have. If he does it, he will go beyond the business and whatever benefits he took from the beginning to the end will be considered as usury (*riba*).

The loan provider must not keep anything in mortgage. If he has kept anything in mortgage, he has already put a hand beyond the business, so he is taking usury. He will only make the written deed of transaction.

However, pledge with possession is allowed during a travel (discussed in the Verses of the next Section).

Then what is usury? If a poor take loan from one to meet up his basic need such as marriage, construction of residential house, cultivation of land, treatment, education, or for any other reason that is not a business directly, and one takes interest from it, then it is usury / *riba*.

Therefore, taking interest from a Bank is halal, if the bank fulfills following conditions:

- a. The bank invests from the deposits of Accounts where depositors are agreed to invest in business and ready to accept loss. Depositors agree as well to make a common fund and take benefit on flat-rate from overall benefit. The Accounts may have a different name, such as “Business Account”.
- b. The bank takes benefit from the business in which it invests.

- c. The bank keeps written deed of business where no option is kept to go beyond the business establishment to recover the capital amount in case the business is closed down due to loss or any other reason.
- d. The bank does not keep anything in mortgage. The bank may keep ownership of a part of the business in which it is investing.
- e. The system is better suitable in an Islamic Country where punishment of theft is cutting of hand. Otherwise, money provided by the bank may be stolen showing loss.

Finally, the Verses declare the taking of usury as sin, but it does not declare the giving of usury as sin. So, a person, giving interest to the Bank for his loan will not get any sin, but the Bank and the depositors of money in the Bank will get the sin.

### **Section-47 of Chapter-2 [Verse 282-284]: Transaction**

O you who believe, when you deal with each other in transactions involving future obligations in a fixed period of time reduce them to writing.

Let a scribe write down faithfully as between the parties. Let not the scribe refuse to write, as Allah has taught him, so let him write. Let him who incurs the liability dictate but let him fear His Lord God and not diminish aught of what he owes.

If the party liable is mentally deficient or weak or unable himself to dictate, let his guardian dictate faithfully. And get two witnesses out of your own men; and if there are

not two men, then a man and two women, such as you choose for witnesses so that if one of them errs, the other can remind her.

The witnesses should not refuse when they are called on.

Disdain not to reduce to writing for a future period whether it be small or big—it is more just in the sight of Allah, more suitable as evidence, and more convenient to prevent doubts among yourselves.

But if it be a transaction, which you carry out on the spot among yourselves, there is no blame on you if you reduce it not to writing. But take witness whenever you make a commercial contract and let neither scribe nor witness suffer harm. If you do, it would be wickedness in you. So, fear Allah—for it is Allah that teaches you; and Allah is well acquainted with all things.

If you are on a journey and cannot find a scribe—a pledge with possession; and if one of you deposits a thing on trust with another, let the trustee discharge his trust, and let him fear his Lord. Conceal not evidence; for whoever conceals it his heart is tainted with sin; and Allah knows all that you do.

To Allah belong all that is in the Skies and all that is on the land. Whether you show what is in your minds or conceal it, Allah calls you to account for it. He forgives whom He pleases and punishes whom He pleases; for Allah has power over all things.

## **Section-48 of Chapter-2 [Verse 285-286]: Honor of Sahabah and Concluding Prayer**

The Apostle believes in what has been revealed to him from his Lord, as do the Men of Faith; each one believes in Allah, His angels, His books, and His apostles.

“We make no distinction between one and another of His apostles”, and they say, “We hear, and we obey; your forgiveness Our Lord, and to You is the end of all journeys—on no soul does Allah place a burden greater than it can bear; it gets every good that it earns, and it suffers every ill that it earns—our Lord, condemn us not if we forget or fall into error; our Lord, lay not on us a burden like that which You did lay on those before us; our Lord, lay not on us a burden greater than we have strength to bear; blot out our sins, and grant us forgiveness; have mercy on us. You are our Protector; help us against those who stand against Faith.”

### **Remarks:**

In the first paragraph of above Verses, ‘Men of Faith’ are mentioned with Apostle. So, in this section, “Men of Faith” are “Sahabah”. Allah certifies them: “*Each one believes in Allah, His angels, His books and His Apostles*”.

They heard and obeyed.

The second paragraph describes their prayer.

Looking back into the history, we see that they fulfilled their mission extremely well. May Allah bless them all.

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِیْمِ

**In the name of God, Most Gracious, Most Merciful**  
**Scientific Tafsir of the Quran**  
**Part 1 of 3 [Chapter 2 to 9]**

# **THE WAR BOOK /**

# **FURQAN**

**[Chapter 3 to 9]**



## Introduction of the War Book [Chapter-3 to 9]

The Quran is sometimes called Furqan. But the whole Quran is not Furqan. The Furqan is a part of the Quran. It is understood from the following Verses:

“It is He Who sent down to thee (to Muhammad) the Book in Truth (the Quran) confirming that was before it, and He sent down the Torah (to Moses), and the Gospel (to Jesus). From (here at Chapter-3) before 'Guidance for Mankind' (that starts at Chapter-10) sent down the "Furqan" as well (to Muhammad). Then those who reject faith in the Verses of Allah will suffer the severest penalty; and Allah is Exalted in Might, Lord of Retribution.” [Al Quran 3:3-4]

According to above Verses, the Furqan starts at Chapter-3 and ends before the “Guidance for Mankind”. The “Guidance for Mankind” starts at Chapter-10.

Therefore, the Furqan starts at Chapter-3 and ends at Chapter-9. And, it is a Book like the Torah, the Gospel, and the Quran.

The Furqan (Chapter 3 to 9) guides the Guards (Al Muttaqin) through the path of warfare and defeats the Taghuts (Powers) in the 'Home of Ummah', extending from

Morocco to the Pamirs. It is a Book of warfare. So, I have translated "Furqan" as "War Book".

Such Book was given in the Torah as well, where it is called "War Scroll". It is found with the Dead Sea Scroll.

Therefore, the Part-1 of the Quran (Guidance for the Guards) has two major portions:

- Chapter-2 forms the Ummah of Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) by giving out the Qiblah and the Laws.
- Chapter-3 to Chapter-9 is the War Book that expanded the Ummah and established its Home.

### **Preaching Strategies of the Quran**

The Quran gives two Preaching Strategies. One is for the Home of Ummah, and one is for the rest of the World. The strategies are discussed below under the following headings:

1. Home of Ummah
2. Preaching Strategy in the Home of Ummah
3. Preaching Strategy beyond the Home of Ummah
4. Conclusion

#### **1. Home of Ummah**

If a nation (ummah) is raised, their land (home) should be identified. Israel was raised as a nation through Moses. Allah pointed out Canaan as their Home. Similarly, when Allah created the Ummah of Prophet Muhammad (pbuh), He pointed out its Home. In light of the following Verses, the Home extends from Morocco to the Pamirs:

“And this is a Book, which We have sent down, bringing blessings and confirming

which came before it, that thou may warn the 'Mother of Cities' and all around her. Those who believe in the Hereafter believe in this, and they are constant in guarding their Prayers." [Al Quran 6:92]

We are to identify the 'Mother of Cities' to identify the 'Home of Ummah'. According to Holy Bible, Babylon was the first city of mankind:

“Now the whole earth had one language and the same words. 2 And as people migrated from the east, they found a plain in the land of Shinar and settled there. 3 And they said to one another, “Come, let us make bricks, and burn them thoroughly.” And they had brick for stone, and bitumen for mortar. 4 Then they said, “Come, let us build ourselves a city and a tower with its top in the heavens, and let us make a name for ourselves, lest we be dispersed over the face of the whole earth.” 5 And the LORD came down to see the city and the tower, which the children of man had built. 6 And the LORD said, “Behold, they are one people, and they have all one language, and this is only the beginning of what they will do. And nothing that they propose to do will now be impossible for them. 7 Come, let us go down there and confuse their language, so that they may not understand one another’s speech.” 8 So the LORD dispersed them from

there over the face of all the earth, and they left off building the city. 9 Therefore its name was called Babel, because there the LORD confused the language of all the earth. And from there the LORD dispersed them over the face of all the earth”

[Genesis 11:1-32, Holy Bible (ESV)]

Therefore, the city-life started from Babylon (Babel). It is the oldest civilization of the world—over 7000 years old. So, Babylon is the “Mother of the Cities”.

In course of time, Babylon became central to Mesopotamia. The Great Empires of ancient Mesopotamia were Sumer, Elam, Akkad, Mari, Babylon and Assyria.

Subsequently, Babylon became the Capital of Grecian and Persian Empires. The Headquarters of Grecian Empire, Seleucia, and the Headquarters of Neo-Persian Empire, Ctesiphon, were extensions of Babylon.

Who are the People around the City?

The builders of ancient Babylon came from the east (Iran), as it is said in the above Verses. They built the settlements in the fertile land between Tigris and Euphrates rivers. So, the people around the city were Arabs and Iranian people.

Therefore, the targeted people of the Furqan (War Book) are Arabs and Iranians. Their land, stretching from Morocco to the Pamirs, is the Home of Ummah (called Darussalam / Home of Peace). The Home was established on ground by Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) and his immediate followers following the Furqan.

“Thus, have We sent by inspiration to thee an Arabic Qur'an that thou may warn the Mother of Cities and all around her, and warn of the Day of Assembly, of which there is no doubt; some will be in the Jannaat, and some in the Blazing Fire.” [Al Quran 42:7]

Hazrat Ali moved the Headquarters of Islamic Caliphate in Kufa, a city at 64 km south of ancient Babylon. Later, Baghdad, a city at about 90 km north of Babylon, was the center of Islamic Caliphate for about 500 years. Kufa and Baghdad too are the extensions of Babylon.

The Quran is in Arabic, but Iranians do not speak Arabic. So, the next Verse was revealed:

“If Allah had so willed, He could have made them a single people, but He admits whom He will to His Mercy, and the wrong-doers will have no protector, nor helper.”

[Al Quran 42:8]

There are many Arabic words (around 60%) in Persian language. One that is learning Persian starts understanding the Quran.

Jesus felt for the Muslims around Babylon, as it is narrated in the following Verse:

“She who is at Babylon, who is likewise chosen, sends you greetings, and so does Mark, my son. Greet one another with the kiss of love. Peace to all of you who are in Christ.”

[1 Peter 5:13-14, Holy Bible (ESV)]

Peter was one of 12 Companions (Hawariyyun) of Jesus Christ.

**Note:**

In Holy Bible, Babylon is painted as a cursed city too. There are Prophecies in the New Testament that describe the destruction of Babylon. But when Jesus was living, the city was already in ruins; and according to Holy Bible, it was never to be rebuilt. So, it is not the ancient Babylon (Mother of the Cities) that is cursed; it is the Daughter of Babylon. In Holy Bible, the Daughter of Babylon is called Mystery Babylon as well. The Prophecies of Holy Bible indicate that it may be Rome. The aspect is discussed in Section-13 of Chapter-6.

## **2. Preaching Strategy in the Home of Ummah**

The Furqan guided the Guards through the Path of Jihad that flared up the conversion of Pagans (Idol Worshippers) in many folds and established Islam in the Home of Ummah rapidly. In this area (Morocco to Pamirs), the Taghuts (Powers) were removed by physical fighting. So, the Pagans could accept Islam in safety.

## **3. Preaching Strategy beyond the Home of Ummah**

The Quran introduces the common way of preaching for the people living beyond the Home of Ummah:

“If it had been thy Lord's will, they would all have believed—all who are on earth! Will thou then compel mankind, against their will, to believe!

No soul can believe, except by the will of God, and He will place doubt on those who will not understand.

[Al Quran 10:99-100]

The first paragraph of above Verses negates preaching in the way of struggle and warfare (in the Way of Furqan) among the people living beyond the Home of Ummah. In the second paragraph, Allah wants the people to understand the Quran. If a person tries to understand, Merciful Allah may make him a Believer.

Islam is the religion for the whole world. The concept of the 'Home of Ummah' relates to the Preaching Strategy mainly. The Preaching Strategies for the Home of Ummah and the 'rest of the world' are different. The Part-2 of the Quran (Hudan lil Nas / Guidance for Mankind) is meant for preaching in the 'rest of the world'.

### **Common War Books**

Every major nation has a War Book that narrates the Principle of War. In the following paragraphs, the Principle of War is described from “Wikipedia, the Free Encyclopedia”.

## 1. The Principle of War

*“Principles of Warfare are the evolved concepts, laws, rules and methods that guide the conduct of combat related activities during conflicts. Throughout history, soldiers, military theorists, political leaders, philosophers, academic scholars, practitioners of international law and human rights advocacy groups have sought to determine fundamental rules for the conduct of warfare. Principles of warfare impact on the health and security of civilian populations in a zone of conflict, human and natural environment, social networks and groups, rural and urban societies, national and international economic relations, political structures and international diplomacy, and the means and methods by which conflicts are brought to conclusion. These approaches have been both prescriptive, stating what activities are forbidden in warfare by law, ethical considerations, or religious beliefs, and descriptive, analyzing the best practices and means by which armed forces can achieve victory.”*

– Wikipedia, the Free Encyclopedia

## 2. Ancient Principles

a. The Holy Bible (the Book of Deuteronomy) describes how the Israelite Army was to fight, including dealing with plunder, enslavement of the enemy women and children, and forbidding the destruction of fruit-bearing trees.

b. The Sun Tzu’s book, “The Art of War”, written about 400 BCE listed five Principals of War:

- The Moral Law, or discipline and unity of command

- Heaven, or weather factors
- Earth, or the terrain
- The Commander
- Method and discipline, which included logistics and supply

### **3. Modern issues in deciding the Principle of War**

There are several issues, where appropriate, the laws of land warfare are ambiguous or obsolescent. Among these is the use of private contractors as soldiers or private armies, and whether they are mercenaries or not under international conventions.

In addition, use of several classes of weapons, such as land mines or cluster bombs, has been inhumane by many organizations and governments.

A third issue is the prisoner status of members of organizations which use methods to terrorist societies. The United States interprets the laws of land warfare in such a way as to exclude captives from these organizations from the status of prisoner of war. Other nations and several international organizations believe that the U.S. interpretation is too narrow and can lead to abuse of innocent parties.

### **4. Applied Principle of War**

Principle of Warfare expresses the national and international will. But at Forces level it is streamlined to achieve success in the war.

4a. The U.S. Army's "Field Manual 100-5" has adopted the following basic principles:

- Objective - Direct every military operation toward a clearly defined, decisive and attainable objective.  
"The ultimate military purpose of war is the destruction of the enemy's armed forces and will to fight."
- Offensive - Seize, retain, and exploit the initiative. Even in defense, a military organization is expected to maintain a level of aggressiveness by patrolling and launching limited counter-offensives.
- Mass - Mass the effects of overwhelming combat power at the decisive place and time.
- Economy of Force - Employ all combat power available in the most effective way possible; allocate minimum essential combat power to secondary efforts.
- Maneuver - Place the enemy in a position of disadvantage through the flexible application of combat power.
- Unity of Command - For every objective, seek unity of command and the unity of effort.
- Security - Never permit the enemy to acquire unexpected advantage.
- Surprise - Strike the enemy at a time or place or in a manner for which he is unprepared.
- Simplicity - Prepare clear, uncomplicated plans and concise orders to ensure thorough understanding.

4b. The British Principals of War are:

- Selection and Maintenance of the Aim - A single, unambiguous aim is the keystone of successful military operations. Selection and maintenance of the aim is regarded as the master principle of war.

- Maintenance of Morale - Morale is a positive state of mind derived from inspired political and military leadership, a shared sense of purpose and values, well-being, perceptions of worth and group cohesion.
- Offensive Action - Offensive action is the practical way in which a commander seeks to gain advantage, sustain momentum and seize the initiative.
- Security - Security is the provision and maintenance of an operating environment that affords the necessary freedom of action, when and where required, to achieve objectives.
- Surprise - Surprise is the consequence of shock and confusion induced by the deliberate or incidental introduction of the unexpected.
- Concentration of Force - Concentration of force involves the decisive, synchronized application of superior fighting power (conceptual, physical, and moral) to realize intended effects, when and where required.
- Economy of Effort - Economy of effort is the judicious exploitation of manpower, materiel and time in relation to the achievement of objectives.
- Flexibility - the ability to change readily to meet new circumstances – comprises agility, responsiveness, resilience, acuity and adaptability.
- Cooperation - Cooperation entails the incorporation of teamwork and a sharing of dangers, burdens, risks and opportunities in every aspect of warfare.
- Sustainability - To sustain a force is to generate the means by which its fighting power and freedom of action are maintained.

4c. The Russian Principals of War includes followings:

- High combat readiness
- Surprise, decisiveness and active seeking to secure the initiative
- Full use of all means of combat
- Coordination and interaction of all types and branches
- Decisive concentration
- Simultaneous attack in depth
- Full use of morale-political factor
- Firm and continuous command and control
- Inexorability and decisiveness during the mission
- Security of combat operations
- Timely restoration of troop combat readiness

The above-mentioned principles of warfare are very broad and are tied into military doctrine of the various military services. Doctrine, in turn, suggests but does not dictate strategy and tactics.

## **5. The War Book of the Quran (Chapter-3 to Chapter-9)**

The Furqan is a deliberate War Book. It covers all elements of the Religious War:

- a. It identifies FRIEND and ENEMY.
- b. It gives out the MISSION [To vanquish Rejecters of Faith (Pagans / Idol Worshipers)]
- c. It gives out the TASKs.
- d. It gives Force Ratio, and the ways of Perseverance and Reengagement.
- e. It gives the RULES OF ENGAGEMENT keeping the need of Preaching and Reconciliation in view.

- f. It develops Islamic Families and Societies as Economic and Administrative Back-up.
- g. It has debriefed the fought battles.
- h. It develops men's spirituality for sustained warfare and reconciles war-stricken hearts.
- i. It declares Rewards in this Life and Afterlife.

The Furqan does not look brief and precise, but it serves the purpose, and it is specific where it is needed. It implants necessary ideologies in the brain by the rhythmic Verses, narrated repeatedly. It ensures that the vital points are remembered in need. Thus, a Muslim makes a good soldier, and Islamic Forces were never seen causing atrocities.

The Furqan remains good for all times and for all Muslims. It has proved itself in the last 1400 years and more through its victories, falls, and revivals. It is the Words of God destined to prevail.

### **Conclusion**

The purpose of the Furqan is to vanquish the Rejecters of Faith (Pagans / Idol Worshippers) and to establish the Ummah of Prophet Muhammad (pbuh):

“Say to those who reject Faith (Pagans): Soon will you be vanquished and gathered together to Hell, an evil bed indeed!” [Al Quran 3:12]

The Furqan not only ordered for war, it produced the people that will fulfill the purpose of war. Their presence and activities inspired the pagans of the captured territories to

accept Islam. Otherwise, a religion could not be preached simply by struggle and warfare.

The process of preaching through struggle and warfare is not meant for preaching among People of the Book. As one will go through the War Book (Furqan), one will know that it allows fighting the People of Book when they are protecting Pagans or they have attacked first.

So, the capture of Spain and beyond by the Moors or the capture of East Europe by the Ottomans had no relation with the Furqan (except in case of Constantinople). From the age old times, these peoples were fighting with each other; these wars were continuation of the same fighting. For examples:

- Ancient Persia captured parts of Africa and Europe.
- Then Europe (Greece and Rome) captured Central Asia and Parts of Africa.
- After the rise of Islam, Arabs and Turkic People captured Spain and East Europe.
- In the First World War, Europe captured Africa and Middle East.
- In 2003 USA captured Iraq.

All above Wars between ‘People of the Quran’ and ‘People of the Bible’ were criminal acts of national leaders and their followers. The Furqan had no relation with such wars.

If Muslims would not spoil energy by moving into Spain and beyond, the whole Africa would be Muslim today. The Umayyad Rulers clearly violated the instruction of Furqan and the direction of Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) who said, *‘Do not go where camels do not go’*, and *‘Do not make*

*a Navy*', or words to that effects. Caliph Omar did not allow making a Navy. It was Muawiyah who built the Navy for offensive purposes.

## Chapter 3 [Ali 'Imran THE FAMILY OF IMRAN]

**Aim of the Chapter:** To form a clear view on the Christians who were ensuing adversaries of the *Muttaqin* (Guards), struggling to establish the Ummah.

### Introduction

The Furqan (War Book) starts from this Surah and ends at Chapter-9 (Surah Tawbah).

The Surah sets the purpose of the Furqan as to vanquish the Rejecters of Faith (Pagans / Idolaters). It discusses People of the Book because many Arab Pagans, in the Home of Ummah, were under the protection of Roman Byzantine Emperors and Christian Kings.

The People in the Home of Ummah were tribal. A man from a tribe could not accept Islam if the Tribal Chief did not have accepted it. A Tribal Chief would not accept Islam if the King and the Emperor had not accepted it. So the Taghuts (Emperors, Kings and Tribal Chiefs) were removed by Jihad, and the common people became free to accept Islam.

The Surah discusses the evolution of Christianity and highlights their weaknesses (the Jews were discussed in previous Chapter). It motivated Muslims to fight against them, because their rule in the Middle East was detrimental to the preaching of Islam.

The Furqan discusses several battles to bring out the weaknesses of the *Muttaqin* (Guards) and suggests corrective measures. It is done in modern days as well. In Military Academies, old and recent battles are deliberately taught.

This Surah discusses important lessons brought out from the Battle of Uhud. Muslims would experience similar hard time while fighting against Byzantine Forces.

From this Surah, the Furqan (War Book) gradually develops the simple Arabs and carry them into the international arena where they are declared to be the best of peoples: *“You are the best of peoples, evolved for mankind, enjoining what is right, forbidding what is wrong, and believing in Allah.”* The Verse talks about the Sahabah. They have established the Quran that clearly differentiates the right and the wrong. It establishes perfect Faith on one God (Allah).

The Surah gives deliberate ideas about Paradise and Hell.

### **Structure of the Surah**

The Surah can be divided in four Segments:

The First Segment identifies the Furqan (War Book) and discloses its Purpose. It deactivates Allegorical Verses to some extent and advises Al Muttaqin to act on the direct orders of the Quran. It gives out policies to confront People of the Book (here it is Christians) and policies of friendship and alliance.

The Second Segment broadly discusses the evolution of Christianity and highlights their weaknesses. It alerts Muslims not to accept Christianity.

The Third Segment prepares Muslims to confront the Great Byzantine Empire and discusses the lessons brought out from the Battle of Uhud.

The Forth Segment concludes with the prayer and the promise of God.

Details of Segments and Sections are given in the Flow Chart below:

## **Flowchart of the Tafsir**

### **Segment 1: The Furqan and its Purpose**

Section 1 [Verse 1]: Symbol of Lawh-Mahfuz

Section 2 [Verse 2–4]: The Furqan

Section 3 [Verse 5–9]: Basic and Allegorical Verses

Section 4 [Verse 10–13]: Purpose of the Furqan

Section 5 [Verse 14–18]: Overcome the Weaknesses

Section 6 [Verse 19–25]: Policies to confront People of the Book

Section 7 [Verse 26–32]: Policies of Friendship.

### **Segment 2: People (Christians) that would counter the fulfillment of the Purpose**

Section 8 [Verse 33–36]: Birth of Mary

Section 9 [Verse 37–41]: Birth of Yahya (John)

Section 10 [Verse 42–44]: Mary, chosen above the Women of the Nations

Section 11 [Verse 45–51]: Birth of Jesus Christ

Section 12 [Verse 52–58]: Disciples of Jesus (Hawariyyun)

Section 13 [Verse 59–68]: Jesus was not God / god / Son of God

Section 14 [Verse 69–85]: Alerting Muslims about Christians

Section 15 [Verse 86–92]: Rejecting Faith after it is accepted

Section 16 [Verse 93–94]: One who invents a lie and attribute to Allah

- Section 17 [Verse 95–99]: Call to Christians to follow the religion of Abraham and Visit Kabah
- Section 18 [Verse 100–109]: Way to counter the aggressions of the People of the Book.

### **Segment 3: Preparing Muslims to confront the Roman Empire**

- Section 19 [Verse 110–117]: Calling to International Arana
- Section 20 [Verse 118–120]: No intimacy with them.
- Section 21 [Verse 121–129]: Follow the orders of Allah—success or failure is not your lookout
- Section 22 [Verse 130–132]: Alerting Muslims against the Economy of Usury
- Section 23 [Verse 133–136]: The Jannaat – It is the main discussion of Paradise
- Section 24 [Verse 137–179]: Lessons from the Battle of Uhud

### **Segment 4: Conclusion**

- Section 25 [Verse 180–184]: Calling Jews
- Section 26 [Verse 185–189]: Remain Firm in Faith and Spread the Message
- Section 27 [Verse 190–200]: The Hell – It is main discussion of hell

# **Tafsir of the Surah**

## **Segment 1**

### **The Furqan and its Purpose**

The Segment identifies the Furqan (War Book) and discloses its Purpose as to vanquish the Rejecters of Faith. It deactivates Allegorical Verses to some extent and advises Al Muttaqin (the Guards) to act on the direct orders of the Quran. It gives out policies to confront People of the Book (here it is Christians) and policies of friendship and alliance.

#### **Section-1 of Chapter-3 [Verse 1]: Symbol of Lawh-Mahfuz**

Alif, Lam, Mim

#### **Section-2 of Chapter-3 [Verse 2-4]: The Furqan**

Allah, there is no god except Him, the Ever-Living, the Sustainer of all that exist.

It is He Who sent down to thee the Book (the Quran) in Truth confirming that was before it, and He sent down the Torah, and the Gospel.

From (here) before 'Guidance for Mankind', sent down the 'Furqan' as well. Then those who reject faith in the Verses of Allah will suffer the severest penalty; and Allah is Exalted in Might, Lord of Retribution.

#### **Remarks:**

The last Paragraph of the above Verses is translated word to word. So, one may find the Verse little

different in other Books. The Verse talks about four Books:

- Al Quran – Sent to Muhammad (pbuh)
- Torah – Sent to Moses
- Gospel – Sent to Jesus
- Furqan – Sent to Muhammad (pbuh)

The Verses say: *“From (here) before the ‘Guidance for Mankind’ sent down the ‘Furqan’ as well.”* We find that the Quran turns to mankind in Chapter-10 where the ‘Guidance for Mankind’ starts (It is discussed in the Introduction of Chapter-10). So, the Furqan starts here at Chapter-3 and ends at Chapter-9.

The “Furqan” is the “War Book” of the Quran. The men dedicated to the War Book are called Muttaqin (Guards). They are oath bound to the Highest Islamic Leadership to fight for the cause of Islam.

The Furqan established Islam in the Home of Ummah (Morocco to Himalaya). In this area, the people were under Tribal Chiefs, Kings and Emperors (Taghuts / Powers). The Furqan guided the Guards to defeat the Taghuts. It created a favorable situation for the Pagans (idolaters) to accept Islam.

The “Furqan” is normally translated as “Criterion”. The translation is not proper, rather misleading. Firstly, we may consider the dictionary meaning of Furqan:

“Firqin” means “Parts”;

“Farraqu” means “Divide”;

So, “Furqan” should mean “something that divides”. A sword can be called a Furqan.

Secondly, in the Quran, the Day of the Battle of Badr is called the ‘Day of Furqan’:

“...if you do believe in Allah and what We sent down to Our servant on the ‘Day of Furqan’ (Day of Battle), on the day of the meeting of the two forces; for Allah has power over all things.” [Al Quran 8:41]

Here, the “Day of Furqan” means the “Day of Battle”. So, “Furqan” means “Battle”.

The Verses under discussion say: “*From (here) before the ‘Guidance for Mankind’ sent down the ‘Furqan’ as well.*” Here, the “Furqan” is a “Book” like the Quran, the Torah and the Gospel.

But, taking into account all above points, “Furqan” should be translated as “War Book”.

“O ye who believe! If ye fear Allah,  
He will grant you Furqan, remove  
from you evil you, and forgive you: for  
Allah is the Lord of grace unbounded.”  
[Al Quran 8:29]

The above Verse says: “*If ye fear Allah, He will grant you Furqan...*”, Here it means that He will grant War Book (Furqan). The Jihad (Struggle) of the Sahabah was guided by the Furqan. It made them great.

However, the Furqan is not a separate Book; it is a Book within a Book (that is the Quran). So, we call the Quran by the name of “Furqan” as well.

The Furqan is not identified as a separate Book, probably because some people would reject the Book saying it to be a Book for the Sahabah only. But Allah has not cancelled any Verse. The whole Quran, from Chapter-1 to Chapter-114, is equally applicable for all people at all times to contemplate and follow as solicited.

The Furqan starts at Chapter-3 and ends at Chapter-9. It reached to the climax in Chapter-9 (Surah Tawbah). Al Muttaqin were advancing step-by-step and captured Makkah. The gain was protected by the Battle of Hunain. At that time, the Surah Tawbah was revealed. Indeed, Surah Tawbah commissioned the Muttaqin as the Forces of Allah where Allah gave the order of subsequent wars directly. It is the Surah at the Peak of the Furqan.

The Direction of War given in Chapter-9 (Surah Tawbah) is as under:

“But when the forbidden months are past then fight and slay the Pagans wherever you find them, and seize them, beleaguer them, and lie in wait for them in every place of ambush; but if they repent and establish salat and pay zakat, then open the way for them—for God is Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful.”

[Al Quran (Surah Tawbah) 9:5]

After this, the Pagans turned to Islam in masses. Decades of Prophet's (pbuh) endeavor and his victories fascinated them already toward Islam. In most of the cases, only the Taghuts (Opposing Tribal Chiefs) were defeated and the people under them happily accepted Islam.

The most important 'Rule of Engagement' given in Surah Tawbah is as under:

“Fight those who believe not in God, nor the Last Day, nor hold that forbidden which have been forbidden by God and His Apostle, nor acknowledge the religion of Truth (fight Pagans)—of the People of the Book, until they pay Jizya with willing submission and feel themselves subdued.”

[Al Quran (Surah Tawbah) 9:29]

Above Verse set two policies for two peoples described as under:

### **1. Policy for the Pagans:**

*“Fight those who believe not in God, nor the Last Day, nor hold that forbidden which have been forbidden by God and His Apostle, nor acknowledge the religion of Truth...”* It means that fight the Pagans (Idol Worshipers). And what happens if a pagan surrenders?

“If one amongst the Pagans asks thee for asylum, grant it to him so that he may hear the word of God; and then escort him to where he can be secure. That is because they are men without knowledge.”

[Al Quran (Surah Tawbah) 9:6]

In above Verse, ‘giving of asylum and escorting to secured place’ do not mean that the Pagan should be released—he will be kept arrested in the secured place and motivated till he becomes a Muslim, as the following Verse says:

“...but if they repent and establish salat and pay zakat, then open the way for them—for God is Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful.”

[Al Quran (Surah Tawbah) 9:5]

## **2. Policy for People of the Book:**

*“...of the People of the Book, until they pay Jizya with willing submission and feel themselves subdued.”*

Main aim was to convert all Pagans living in the Home of Ummah (Morocco to Himalaya). But in most of Arab Lands, the Pagans were under the protection of Roman Byzantine Empire and allied Christian Kings. So, Christians had to be subdued. They were to be neutralized to the level that they pay

Jizya with willing submission and feel themselves subdued.

Muhammad (pbuh) was the last Prophet, so the job could not be left for another day. The application of Force to put people into a system was unavoidable.

The Verses under discussion highlight that the Quran confirms the old Books, such as the Torah and the Gospel, but the Furqan does not confirm. The Gospel does not order for Jihad. It aims to convert people by motivation, prophecies, and miracles. But the Furqan applies force.

In the old times, Jews fought several religious battles. So, Moses too was given with a Furqan (War Scroll).

“In the past We granted to Moses and Aaron the Furqan, and a Light, and a Message for the Muttaqin, those who fear their Lord in their most secret thoughts, and who hold the Hour (of Judgment) in awe.”[Al Quran 48–49]

The Jewish Book of War (War Scroll) is discovered with the Dead Sea Scroll.

However, they fought under the guidance of the Prophets or under the guidance of the leaderships selected by the Prophets, and the battles were aimed to capture and defend their lands mainly, not to preach the religion. So, the Furqan was supposed to be different.

Finally, once one will go through the Tafsir, one will understand that from Chapter 3 to 9 is the War Book of the Quran. In this Part, precise understanding is necessary; otherwise it may create harming misconceptions.

### **Section-3 of Chapter-3 [Verse 5-9]: Basic and Allegorical Verses**

Truly nothing is hidden from Allah in the land or in the Skies. He it is Who shapes you in the wombs as He pleases. There is no god but He, the Exalted in Might, the Wise.

He it is Who has sent down to you the Book. In it are Verses basic or fundamental—they are the foundation of the Book; others are allegorical. But those in whose hearts is perversity follow the part thereof that is allegorical—seeking discord and searching for its hidden meanings, but no one knows its hidden meanings except Allah and those who are firmly grounded in knowledge.(\*)

Say: "We believe in the Book; the whole of it is from our Lord. And none will grasp the Message except men of understanding. Our Lord! Let not our hearts deviate now after You have guided us, but grant us mercy from Your own Presence; for You are the Grantor of bounties without measure. Our Lord! You are He that will gather mankind together against a day about which there is no doubt; for Allah never fails in His promise."

#### **Remarks:**

I have broken the Verse at the point of star (\*). In traditional layout, the Verses mean that there are

some Verses in the Quran, which nobody will ever understand. But such Verses that nobody will ever understand would not be revealed by Allah. So, I have broken the Verse by a full stop at the point of the star (\*) and have put the trailing part of the Verse in the next Paragraph. Now the Verses are giving reasonable statement. It may also be mentioned that the punctuations are not divine revelations.

There are allegorical Verses in the Quran, which choreographs the deep thoughts. But, due to the lack of knowledge, the Verses are often explained differently and with ambiguity. If the explanation or understanding of an allegorical Verse counters a clear Verse of the Quran, the clear Verse is to be followed by the Muttaqin (Guards), not the allegorical Verse.

The Verses do not put bar to the study of the Quran; it put bar in the seeking of discord with the Muttaqin.

This Part (War Book / Chapter-3 to Chapter-9) of the Quran is driving the Muttaqin into the Jihad. So, at the outset, the Part is suppressing the counterproductive concepts that can be brought out from the allegorical Verses.

However, the allegorical Verses are not contradictory to the other Verses. The contradictions arise due to poor understanding.

The Verses may also put extra burden on a Muttaqi. For example, by analyzing the allegorical Verses, a person may turn to Sufism. To a Muttaqi, practicing Sufism may be an extra burden, when in reality he is doing a tough job (Jihad). So, the person turning to Sufism should keep his knowledge within

him, or within a few followers of him who are not from Muttaqin. He must not divert a potential Muttaqi as well from the path of Jihad.

As well as, he must not establish a *Sufi Tarikah* (path) for common people and isolate a part of them from the Command of the Highest Islamic Leadership. One must support the Leadership according to one's ability; the basic Islam is clear. Many Sahabah were saints at night, but vehement fighters at day.

**Note:**

The statement of above Paragraph is appropriate in Darussalam (Home of Peace / Home of Ummah extending from Morocco to Pamirs) mainly. At the outside of Darussalam, the Sufis, like Khidr, take the lead in preaching Islam, and they may decide whether they should form the Tarikah or not, and how much they should broadcast. The matter is clarified in the Part-2 of the Quran (Hudan lil Nas).

The extra prayer and extreme *sawm* (self-restraint) is not forbidden. It is bigger jihad. But it is a peace-time jihad, as Prophet (pbuh) called for this jihad when he was returning from a war expedition. It means that when Islamic Leadership wants peace, its subjects are to excel with the extra prayer and extreme *sawm*.

In addition, the Ummah must not be divided into groups (Firkas), such as Hanafi, Hanbali, Maliki, Salafi, Ahle Hadith, Ismaili, Alawi, Twelvers, Sixers, Zaidi, Kaderia, Naqshbandia, and so on, because the basic Islam is clear.

Often the groupings (Firkas) are unknowingly maintained by the religious schools (Madrasahs). If a Madrasah teaches the books of a particular Firka, do not send your children to that Madrasah. Send the children to a Madrasah which teaches the books that are the best on the subjects. They should avoid the books of the Authors that are already branded. The curriculum of a Madrasah should be so designed that it does not lead the students into a Firka.

#### **Section-4 of Chapter-3 [Verse 10-13]: Purpose of the Furqan**

Those who reject Faith, neither their possessions nor their progeny will avail them aught against Allah. They are themselves but fuel for the fire; no better than that of the people of Pharaoh and their predecessors. They denied our Signs, and Allah called them to account for their sins; for Allah is strict in punishment.

Say to those who reject Faith: Soon will you be vanquished and gathered together to Hell, an evil bed indeed!

There has already been for you a Sign in the two armies that met: One was fighting in the cause of Allah; the other resisting Allah—they saw with their own eyes twice their number. And Allah does support with His aid whom He pleases. In this is a warning for such as have eyes to see.

### **Remarks:**

The Verses set the Purpose of the Furqan as to vanquish the Rejecters of Faith (Pagans).

Soon the Muttaqin vanquished the Rejecters of Faith from the 'targeted area' that spans from Morocco to Pamirs (Darussalam).

### **Section-5 of Chapter-3 [Verse 14-18]: Overcome the Weaknesses**

Fair in the eyes of men is the love of things they covet: women, children, heaped-up hoards of gold and silver, branded horses, cattle, and well-tilled land. This is the pleasure of the present world's life, but in nearness to Allah is the best of the goals.

Say:"Shall I give you glad tidings of things far better than those? For the righteous are Jannaat in nearness to their Lord with rivers flowing beneath; therein is their eternal home with companions pure and the good pleasure of Allah."

And in Allah's sight are His servants those who say: "Our Lord! We have indeed believed; forgive us then our sins and save us from the agony of the Fire"; those who show patience, firmness and self-control, who are true, who worship devoutly, who spend, and who pray for forgiveness in the early hours of the morning.

Allah bears witness that (there is) no god except Him, and (so do) the angels, and owners of knowledge standing firm on justice—no god but He, the Mighty, the Wise.

## **Section-6 of Chapter-3 [Verse 19-25]: Policies to confront People of the Book**

The Religion before Allah is Islam. Those who were given the Scripture did not differ except out of mutual jealousy, after knowledge had come to them. And whoever disbelieves in the Verses of Allah then surely Allah is swift in calling to account.

So, if they dispute with you, say: "I have submitted My whole-self to Allah and so have those who follow me." And say to the People of the Book and to those who are unlearned, "Do you submit yourselves?" If they do, they are in right guidance; but if they turn back, your duty is to convey the Message—and in Allah's sight are His servants.

As to those who deny the Verses of Allah, and in defiance of right slay the prophets, and slay those who orders just dealing announce to them a grievous penalty. They are those whose works will bear no fruit in this world and in the Hereafter; they will have no helpers.

Have you not turned your vision to those who have been given a portion of the Book? They are invited to the Book of Allah to settle their dispute, but a party of them turns back and decline. This is because they say, "The Fire shall not touch us but for a few numbered days". And that which they used to invent regarding their religion has deceived them.

How! When we gather them together on a Day, about which there is no doubt, and each soul will be paid out just what it has earned, without injustice?

## **Section-7 of Chapter-3 [Verse 26-32]: Policies of Friendship.**

Say: O Allah, Possessor of kingdom! You give the kingdom to whom You please, and You take the kingdom from whom You please. You endue with honor whom You please, and You bring low whom You please. In Your hand is all good. Verily, over all things You have power. You make the night to enter into the day, and You make the day to enter into the night. You bring the living out of the dead, and You bring the dead out of the living; and You give sustenance to whom You please, without measure.

### **Remarks:**

Allah gives power and honor. But, many Muslim Rulers think that their Governments will be toppled if they are not allied to the correct Super-Power.

Allah gives sustenance. But, many Muslims Rulers think that they cannot run their poor countries without the help of unbelieving Economic Powers.

In above Verses, the Quran is talking about the rotation of the Earth as well: “...*You make the night to enter into the day, and You make the day to enter into the night*”. Allah could straightway say that He rotates the Earth to make the day and night. But, He has not done it to save the Prophet (pbuh) from unwanted problem. At that time, people had the idea that the Earth was fixed. There was no telescope to prove that the Earth was rotating.

Allah rotates the Earth, so the land in front of the Sun (day side) enters the night side, and the land in the night side enters the day side.

The plants could not survive without day and night. So, in the above Verses, the Rotation of Earth is related to the Food Cycle.

The green plants absorb and store sunlight, which is only source of energy that sustains the life on Earth. The plants are consumed by herbivores, herbivores are consumed by omnivores and carnivores, omnivores and carnivores die in course of time and get consumed by the insects (detritivores), insects die and the nutrients are returned to the Earth to be absorbed by the plants.

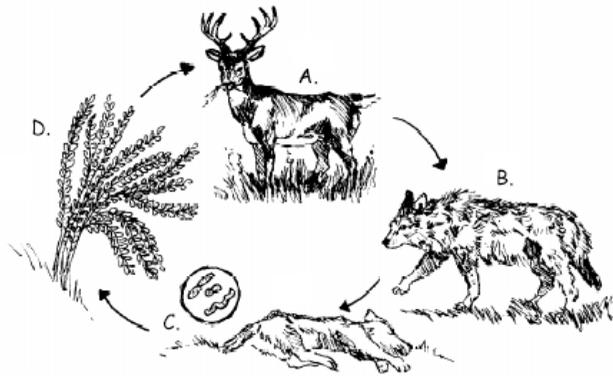


FIGURE 3.1: Food Cycle

So, the Verses say: “*You bring the living out of the dead, and You bring the dead out of the living...*”. It means that Allah runs the Food-Cycle.

We get sustenance from the same cycle. So, the Verses subsequently say: “...and You give sustenance to whom You please, without measure.”

Let not the Believers take for Awliya (friends, protectors, helpers and guides) Unbelievers rather than Believers; if any do that, in nothing will there be help from Allah, except by way of precaution that you may guard yourselves from them. But Allah cautions you against Himself; for the final goal is to Allah.

### **Remarks:**

The word “wali” (“awliya” in plural form) is often translated as “protector / friend / helper / guide”. But a “wali” is not only a protector, or a friend, or a helper, or a guide, he is a combination of all four.

Allah gives kingdom and power—it is not an unbelieving Super-Power that gives these.

Allah gives sustenance—it is not an unbelieving Economic Power that gives it.

Sufficient is Allah, the best Disposer of affairs.

So, let not the Believers take for Awliya Unbelievers rather than Believers.

Say, "Whether you hide what is in your hearts or reveal it, Allah knows it all; He knows what is in the Skies and what is on Lands, and Allah has power over all things.

On the Day when every soul will be confronted with all the good it has done and all the evil it has done, it will wish there were a great distance between it and its evil. But

Allah cautions you against Himself, and Allah is full of kindness to those that serve Him."

Say, "If you do love Allah, follow me; Allah will love you and forgive you your sins; and Allah is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful."

Say, "Obey Allah and His Apostle." But if they turn back, Allah loves not those who reject Faith.

### **Remarks:**

A Believer should not make alliance with those that are acting against Islam. But, they should not hate the Unbelievers. There are great people among the Unbelievers who deserve to get respect.

A Muslim should behave well. The good behavior is an essence of Islam.

### **Segment 2**

#### **People (Christians) that would counter the fulfillment of the Purpose.**

The Second Segment broadly discusses the evolution of Christianity and highlights their deviations from the religion. It alerts Muslims, not to accept Christianity.

#### **Section-8 of Chapter-3 [Verse 33-36]: Birth of Mary**

Allah did choose Adam and Noah, the Family of Abraham, and the Family of Imran above all people—offspring, one of the other—and Allah hears and knows all things.

Behold! An woman of Imran said, "O my Lord! I do dedicate unto You what is in my womb for Your special

service, so accept this of me; for You hear and know all things." When she was delivered, she said, "O my Lord! Behold! I am delivered of a female child," and Allah knew best what she brought forth, and no wise is the male like the female. I have named her Mary, and I commend her and her offspring to your protection from Satan, the Rejected."

### **Section-9 of Chapter-3 [Verse 37-41]: Birth of Yahya (John)**

Right graciously did her Lord accept her (Mary). He made her grow in purity and beauty; to the care of Zakariya she was assigned. Every time that he entered chamber to see her, he found her supplied with sustenance. He said, "O Mary! Where you have got this from!" She said, "From Allah; for Allah provides sustenance to who He pleases without measure."

There did Zakariya pray to his Lord, saying: "O my Lord! Grant unto me from You a progeny that is pure; for You are He that hear prayer!"

While he was standing in prayer in the chamber, the angels called unto him: "Allah does give you glad tidings of Yahya, witnessing the truth of a word from Allah, and noble, chaste, and a prophet of the company of the righteous."

He said, "O my Lord! How shall I have son seeing I am very old and my wife is barren?"

"Thus", was the answer, "does Allah accomplishes what He wills."

He said, "O my Lord! Give me a Sign!"

"Your sign", was the answer, "shall be that you shall speak to no man for three days but with signals. Then

celebrate the praises of thy Lord again and again and glorify Him in the evening and in the morning."

**Section-10 of Chapter-3 [Verse 42-44]: Mary, Chosen above the Women of the Nations**

Behold! The angels said: "O Mary! Allah has chosen you and purified you; chosen you above the women of all nations. O Mary, worship your Lord devoutly. Prostrate thyself and bow down with those who bow down."

This is part of the tidings of the things unseen, which We reveal unto you by inspiration. You were not with them when they cast lots with arrows as to which of them should be charged with the care of Mary; nor were you with them when they disputed.

**Section-11 of Chapter-3 [Verse 45-51]: Birth of Jesus Christ**

Behold! The angels said: "O Mary! Allah gives you glad tidings of a Word from Him; his name will be Christ Jesus, the son of Mary, held in honor in this World and the Hereafter, and of those nearest to Allah. He shall speak to the people in childhood and in maturity. And he shall be of the righteous."

She said, "O my Lord! How shall I have a son when no man has touched me?" He said, "Even so; for Allah creates what He wills. When He has decreed a plan, He but say to it, "Be" and it is! And Allah will teach him the Book and Wisdom, the Law and the Gospel, and an apostle to the Children of Israel: "I have come to you with a Sign from your Lord in that I make for you out of clay 'as it were the figure

of a bird' and breathe into it, and it becomes a bird by Allah's leave, and I heal those born blind and the lepers, and I quicken the dead by Allah's leave, and I declare to you what you eat and what you store in your houses—surely therein is a Sign for you if you did believe. To attest the Law that was before me and to make lawful to you part of what was forbidden to you, I have come to you with a Sign from your Lord. So, fear Allah and obey me. It is Allah Who is my Lord and your Lord; then worship Him—this is a Way that is Straight". "

**Section-12 of Chapter-3 [Verse 52-58]: Disciples of Jesus (Hawariyyun)**

When Jesus found unbelief on their part, He said: "Who will be My helpers to Allah?"

Said the disciples, "We are Allah's helpers; we believe in Allah, and you do bear witness that we are Muslims...Our Lord, We believe in what You have revealed, and we follow the Apostle; then write us down among those who bear witness."

And plotted and planned, and Allah too planned; and the best of planners is Allah.

Behold! Allah said: "O Jesus! I will take you and raise you to Myself and clear you of those who blaspheme. I will make those who follow you superior to those who reject faith, to the Day of Resurrection. Then shall you all return unto me, and I will judge between you of the matters wherein you dispute. As to those who reject faith, I will punish them with terrible agony in this world and in the Hereafter, and they have no helpers." As to those who believe and work

righteousness, Allah will pay them their reward; but Allah loves not those who do wrong.

This is what we rehearse unto you of the Signs and the Message of Wisdom.

### **Section-13 of Chapter-3 [Verse 59-68]: Jesus was not God / god / Son of God**

The similitude of Jesus before Allah is as that of Adam. He created him from dust then said to him, "Be", and he was—the Truth from Allah alone, so be not of those who doubt. If any one disputes in this matter with you now, after knowledge has come to you, say: "Come! Let us gather together—our sons and your sons, our women and your women, ourselves and yourselves—then let us earnestly pray and invoke the curse of Allah on those who lie!" This is the true account: There is no god except Allah. And Allah! He is indeed the Exalted in Power, the Wise. But if they turn back, Allah has full knowledge of those who do mischief.

#### **Remarks:**

Jesus was not God. He was created as Adam was created. A creation cannot be God—God is eternal.

Jesus was not Son of God as well. God is one—if He has a son, He does not remain one; He becomes two.

Jesus was created without a father to make his physique better interactive to the Holy Soul (Ruhul Quddus). The Holy Soul is an extended elementary soul (unknown force field / ruh) of Allah—it is not Gabriel.

Allah has a form (like a human); He sits in the Kursi, located in the Arsh, existing beyond the universes. His nafs (main soul), permeating His body in form, is composed of many known and unknown force fields (elementary souls / ruhhs). He has extended several force fields of His nafs beyond His body in form—like a hand extends from a body. He designed the extended force fields at His will to act in fixed patterns, and infused (did *istawa*) the extended parts into the space to sustain and evolve the universe, e.g., the gravitational force is an extended elementary soul of Allah. So, Allah is present everywhere; nothing can exist without being sustained by Him. It is deliberately discussed in Chapter-1.

The Holy Soul (Ruhul Quddus) too is an extended elementary soul (force field / ruh) of Allah, but it is not designed to act in fixed pattern, and it is not used to sustain and evolve the inert creations. So, the soul is holy.

Christians think the Holy Soul as Angel Gabriel and put him as one in three God. Many Muslims too think the Holy Soul (Ruhul Quddus) as Gabriel—though Quddus is one of the Names of Allah.

Actually, Holy Soul (Ruhul Quddus) is an extended elementary soul (force field / ruh) of Allah, which is extended from His Nafs, permeating His body in form.

Jesus is called *Ruhullah* (Soul of God) because often the Holy Soul used to be infused into the body of Jesus. Then, Jesus would be connected to God directly, and God could aid his talking. So, Jesus

is sometimes called *Qalamullah* (Speech of God) as well.

The gravitational force is one of the extended elementary souls (force field / ruhhs) of Allah, which permeates the entire Universe. The soul exposes through a deposit of matter as a pulling force. It does not make the deposit of matter, such as the Earth, God. Similarly, Jesus was not God, though he was a point of exposure of the Holy Soul.

The basic remains good forever: *Adonai Eloheinu Adonai Ehad*.

The Holy Soul (Ruhul Quddus) is effective to some extent in other humans as well. It aids the Muslims:

"When We substitute one revelation for another, and God knows best what He reveals, they say: "You are but a forger." But most of them understand not. Say: "Has descended the Holy Soul (*nazzallahu Ruhul Quddusi*) from your Lord in Truth in order to strengthen those who believe and provide Guidance and Glad Tidings to Muslims."" [Al Quran 16: 101-102]

According to the above Verses, the Holy Soul strengthens the Faith of Muslims, guide them, and maintain their hope for Jannaat. So, the Muslims cannot be misguided by calling Muhammad (pbuh) forger.

It was foretold in Holy Bible that the Muslims would be baptized with the Holy Soul (Ruhul Quddus). Notice the last lines of the following Verses:

“A voice of one calling in the desert,  
“Prepare the way for the Lord make  
Straight Paths for him.”

And so John the Baptist  
appeared in the wilderness, preaching  
a baptism of repentance for the  
forgiveness of sins.

The whole Judean countryside  
and all the people of Jerusalem went  
out to him. Confessing their sins, they  
were baptized by him in the Jordan  
River.

John wore clothing made of  
camel’s hair, with a leather belt around  
his waist, and he ate locusts and wild  
honey.

And this was his message:  
“After me comes the one more  
powerful than I, the straps of whose  
sandals I am not worthy to stoop down  
and untie. I baptize you with water, but  
he will baptize you with the Holy Soul  
(Ruhul Quddus).”

– Gospel of Mark 1: 3-8, Holy Bible

Muslims are baptized by Allah. It is said in the  
Quran as well:

“The Baptism of God: And who can baptize better than God? And it is He Whom we worship.” [Al Quran 2:138]

So, Holy Soul (Ruhul Quddus) is an extended elementary soul (force field / ruh) of Allah. It is not Gabriel. However, in cases, Gabriel may be assisted by God through the Holy Soul. While narrating any of these cases, Gabriel can be called Holy Soul.

The physique of Jesus was deviated from a normal human physique to make him interactive the Holy Soul. It seems that the process of making the deviation began from Mary. Mary was sacrificed when she was in the womb, and she was created safe from the satan, as it is said in the Verses under discussion. The trait passed down into her offspring (Jesus) who was improved further genetically. Jesus was a clone of Mary.

The cloning was done by Gabriel. He is a doctor type angel. He operated the chest of Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) for several times. Most likely, a genome of Mary was improved by him, and he planted it in the womb of Mary. Actually, Allah did it through the Holy Soul and Gabriel. So, while narrating this matter, Gabriel can be called Holy Soul.

Thus, Jesus had a great deviation in his body; he was a new creation like Adam.

There is something in a human body that set him apart from the divine world. It is to make him a proper human. But a Prophet of God needs to receive the divine messages. When Prophet Muhammad

(pbuh) was child, Gabriel opened his chest and did something. When he grew up, He was not like other boys; he could sense the stones offering him salutation. Later in young age, he started going to the Cave of Hera for meditation (the last thing an Arab would do). He could go into a trance and could see a distant event. He could see the angels and the jinns. He could talk to them.

In the Cave of Hera, Gabriel showed him a few Verses written on something, but he could not read (he was unlettered). So, Gabriel embraced him and made a path through his backbone into his brain. The entry-point of the path appeared as *Mohr-e-Nobuat*, a swollen muscle on the backbone, below the neck. Through this path, subsequent minor angels of Gabriel used to put the Verses of the Quran into his brain. According to the Quran, the Verses came as ruhhs / brain data. Necessary arrangement was also made in his brain to store the Verses. In addition, Gabriel probably inserted a kind of data-base into his brain. So, when several Chapters (Surahs) were revealed simultaneously, the Verses did not get mixed.

Similarly, Jesus needed some deviations to be aided by Ruhul Quddus intensely.

Muhammad (Pbuh) and Jesus are two Major Prophets who lead most people of the Abrahamic Religion. To perform the prophetic duties, they needed special abilities to interact with the angels and to receive the revelations. Their souls and physiques were modified to provide them with the abilities. But other Prophets were not like them. Moses got

complete Book written on stone tablets, and he used to talk to God face to face in appointed time and place.

Prophets except these three got guidance in the form of visions mainly; later they wrote it down. A few were given books into their brains through one or a few insertions, which were demanding on them mentally and physically.

Say: "O People of the Book, come to common terms as between us and you that we worship none but Allah, that we associate no partners with him, that we erect not from among ourselves Lords and patrons other than Allah". If then they turn back, say you: "Bear witness that we are Muslims".

You People of the Book, why dispute you about Abraham when the Law and the Gospel were not revealed till after him? Have you no understanding? Ah! You are those who fell to disputing in matters of which you had some knowledge, but why you dispute in matters of which you have no knowledge? It is Allah Who knows, and you who know not! Abraham was neither a Jew nor a Christian, but he was true in Faith, and bowed his will to Allah's, and he joined not gods with Allah. Without doubt, among men, the nearest of kin to Abraham are those who follow him, as are also this Apostle, and those who believe; and Allah is the Protector of those who have faith.

## **Section-14 of Chapter-3 [Verse 69-85]: Alerting Muslims about Christians**

It is the wish of a section of the People of the Book to lead you astray. But they shall lead astray but themselves, and they do not perceive!

Ye People of the Book, why reject you the Verses of Allah of which you are witnesses?

Ye People of the Book, why do you clothe Truth with falsehood and conceal the Truth while you have knowledge?

### **Remarks:**

It is not possible to hide the Truth, but when it is mixed with falsehood, it may get concealed.

A section of the People of the Book say, "Believe in the morning what is revealed to the Believers, but reject it at the end of the day, perchance they may turn back, and believe no one unless he follows your religion".

Say, "Verily! Right Guidance is the Guidance of Allah," and do not believe that anyone can receive like that which you have received, otherwise they would engage you in argument before your Lord.

Say, "All bounties are in the hand of Allah; He grants them to whom He pleases. And Allah cares for all, and He knows all things". For His Mercy, He specially chooses whom He pleases; for Allah is the Lord of bounties unbounded.

Among the People of the Book are some who if entrusted with a hoard of gold, will pay it back; others who if entrusted with a single silver coin, will not repay it unless

you constantly stood demanding, because they say: "There is no call on us with these ignorant". But they tell a lie against Allah, and they know it. Nay, those that keep their plighted faith and act aright; verily Allah loves those who act aright.

Verily, those who purchase a small gain at the cost of Allah's Covenant, and their oaths they shall have no portion in the Hereafter, nor will Allah speak to them or look at them on the Day of Judgment, nor will He cleanse them; they shall have a grievous penalty.

There is among them a section who distorts the Book with their tongues—you would think, it is a part of the Book, but it is no part of the Book; and they say, "That is from Allah," but it is not from Allah. It is they who tell a lie against Allah, and they know it!

It is not that a man to whom is given the book and wisdom and the prophetic office should say to people: "Be you my worshippers rather than Allah's;" on the contrary: "Be you worshippers of Him Who is truly the Cherisher of all;" and you have been teaching the Book, and you have studied it earnestly—nor would he instruct you to take angels and prophets for Lords and patrons. What! Would he bid you to unbelief after you have bowed your will?

Behold! Allah took the covenant of the prophets, saying: "I give you a book and wisdom; then comes to you an apostle (Muhammad, pbuh) confirming what is with you—do you believe in him and render him help?" Allah said, "Do you agree and take this my Covenant as binding on you?" They said, "We agree". He said, "Then bear witness, and I am with you among the witnesses".

If any turn back after this, they are perverted transgressors. Do they seek for other than the Religion of Allah, while all creatures in the Skies and on the Lands

willing or unwilling bowed to His will, and to Him shall they all be brought back?

Say: "We believe in Allah, and in what has been revealed to us and what was revealed to Abraham, Ismail, Isaac, Jacob, and the Tribes, and in (the books) given to Moses, Jesus, and the prophets from their Lord. We make no distinction between one and another among them, and to Allah do we bow our will".

If anyone desires a religion other than Islam, never will it be accepted of him, and in the Hereafter, He will be in the ranks of those who have lost.

### **Section-15 of Chapter-3 [Verse 86-92]: Rejecting Faith after it is accepted**

How shall Allah Guide those who reject Faith after they accepted it, and bore witness that the Apostle (Muhammad, pbuh) was true, and that clear proofs had come unto them? And Allah guides not a people unjust. Of such, the reward is that on them the curse of Allah, of His angels, and of all mankind—in that will they dwell, neither will their torment be lightened, nor will it be delayed or postponed, except for those that repent after that and make amends; for verily Allah is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful.

But those who reject Faith after they accepted it and then go on adding to their defiance of Faith, never will their repentance be accepted; for they are those who have gone astray. As to those who reject Faith and die rejecting, never would be accepted from any such as much gold as the earth contains, though they should offer it for ransom. For them is a penalty grievous, and they will find no helpers.

By no means shall you attain righteousness unless you give of that, which you love; and whatever you give, of a truth, Allah knows it well.

**Remarks:**

A Muslim does not turn into an idolater. He cannot be a Jew as well, because one has to be a Jew by birth. But, there remains scope to become a Christian. So, it is said in above Verses, what will happen to a person who would leave the *Ummah* of Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) after he had accepted it.

A man born in a Christian family and remained Christian throughout his life may be acceptable to God, but a Muslim becoming Christian is not acceptable to Him, as it is said in above Verses: *“How shall Allah Guide those who reject Faith after they accepted it, and bore witness that the Apostle (Muhammad, pbuh) was true, and that clear proofs had come unto them?”*

Sometimes, a Muslim may fall in love of a Christian woman who would not marry him unless he would become a Christian. In such case, he should give of that, which he loves. The item of love may be money, business, social position, and so on as well.

**Section-16 of Chapter-3 [Verse 93-94]: One who invents a lie and attribute to Allah**

All food was lawful to the Children of Israel except what Israel made unlawful for itself before the Law was revealed. Say, "Bring you the Law and study it if you be men of truth".

If any after this invent a lie and attribute it to Allah, they are indeed unjust wrongdoers.

**Section-17 of Chapter-3 [Verse 95-99]: Call to Christians to follow the religion of Abraham and Visit Kabah**

Say, "Allah speaks the truth: follow the religion of Abraham, the sane in faith; he was not of the Pagans". The first house appointed for men was that at Makkah, full of blessing and of guidance for all kinds of beings. In it are signs manifest, the station of Abraham; whoever enters it attains security. Pilgrimage thereto is a duty men owe to Allah—those who can afford the journey; but if any deny faith, Allah stands not in need of any of His creatures.

Say, "O People of the Book! Why reject you the signs of Allah when Allah is Himself witness to all you do?"

Say, "O you People of the Book! Why obstruct you those who believe from the Path of Allah seeking to make it crooked, while you were yourselves witnesses? But Allah is not unmindful of all that you do."

**Remarks:**

Abraham built Kabah. Christians are called to follow the Religion of Abraham and turn to Kabah.

The Kabah was built about 1900 before the birth of Christ. On the other hand, the First Temple of Jerusalem was built by Solomon who lived from 990 BCE to 934 BCE. So, the sacred structure of Makkah is much older than the sacred structure of Jerusalem. Thus, the above Verses say: "*The first house appointed for men was that at Makkah*".

Nothing of Solomon's temple except the stones and a wall exists at present. It was destroyed by Babylonian and Roman Emperors.

But what happened to the King of Yemen, Abraha, who came with the elephants to destroy Kabah?

“Seest thou not how thy Lord dealt  
with the Companions of the Elephant?

Did He not make their  
treacherous plan go astray?

And He sent against them  
Flights of Birds, striking them with  
stones of baked clay.

Then did He make them like an  
empty field of stalks and straw, has  
been eaten up.

[Al Quran 105]

[The Army of Abraha was destroyed near Makkah in the year Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) was born]

However, the precinct of Temple Mount is blessed, “*Glory to (God) Who did take His servant for a Journey by night from the Sacred Mosque to the Farthest Mosque, whose precincts We did bless...*” [Al Quran 17:1] And it had been our Qiblah for some times before the Ummah was formed.

Thus, be Baptized by Allah and come to Kabah. The Kabah bears the clear signs of spirituality. It is called the House of weeping; even a heart of iron melts in Kabah. These are understood once one visits it.

**Section-18 of Chapter-3 [Verse 100-109]: Way to counter the aggressions of the People of the Book**

O you who believe, if you listen to a faction among the People of the Book, they would render you apostate after you have believed! And how would you deny faith while unto you are rehearsed the Verses of Allah and among you live the Apostle? Whoever holds firmly to Allah will be shown a way that is straight.

O you who believe! Fear Allah as He should be feared and die not except in a state of Islam. And hold fast all together to the rope of Allah, and be not divided among yourselves, and remember with gratitude Allah's favor on you—for you were enemies and He joined your hearts in love so that by His Grace you became brethren; and you were on the brink of the pit of fire, and He saved you from it. Thus, does Allah make His signs clear to you that you may be guided.

Let there arise out of you a band of people inviting to all that is good, enjoining what is right, and forbidding what is wrong—they are the ones to attain felicity.

Be not like those who are divided among themselves and fall into disputations after receiving Clear Signs—for them is a dreadful penalty.

On the Day when some faces will be white, and some faces will be black—to those whose faces will be black: "Did you reject Faith after accepting it; taste then the penalty for rejecting Faith!" But those whose faces will be white, they will be in Allah's mercy; therein to dwell.

These are the Verses of Allah. We rehearse them to you in Truth, and Allah means no injustice to any of His creatures. To Allah belongs all that is in the Skies and on Lands. To Him do all questions go back.

### **Remarks:**

In above Verses, Muslims are given Three guidelines to counter the aggression of Christians.

1. In the first paragraph, it is suggested: Do not listen to them.
2. In the second paragraph, it is suggested: Be proper Muslim and hold fast all together the rope of Allah—remain united.
3. In the third paragraph, it is suggested that there should arise a band of people inviting to all that is good and forbidding what is wrong. So, keep people in religious order through the Mosques at community / village level.

These are the Rules of Thumb to counter political, cultural, and religious aggressions of the People of the Book.

### **Segment 3**

## **Preparing Muslims to confront the Roman Empire**

The Third Segment aims to prepare Muslims to confront the Great Roman Byzantine Empire.

### **Section-19 of Chapter-3 [Verse 110-117]: Calling to International Arana**

You are the best of peoples, evolved for mankind, enjoining what is right, forbidding what is wrong, and believing in Allah.

If only the People of the Book had faith, it was best for them; among them are some who have faith, but most of them are perverted transgressors. They will do you no harm, barring a trifling annoyance. If they come out to fight you, they will show you their backs, and no help shall they get. Shame is pitched over them wherever they are found, except when under a covenant from Allah and from men. They draw on themselves wrath from Allah and pitched over them is destitution. This is because they rejected the Verses of Allah and slew the Prophets in defiance of right; this is because they rebelled and transgressed beyond bounds.

Not all of them are alike. Of the People of the Book is a portion that stands, they rehearse the Verses of Allah all night long, and they prostrate themselves in adoration. They believe in Allah and the Last Day, they enjoin what is right and forbid what is wrong, and they hasten in good works. They are in the ranks of the righteous. Of the good that they do, nothing will be rejected of them; for Allah know well those that do right.

Those who reject Faith, neither their possessions, nor their progeny will avail them aught against Allah. They will be companions of the Fire dwelling therein. What they spend in the life of this world may be likened to a wind, which brings a nipping frost; it strikes and destroys the harvest of men who have wronged their own souls. It is not Allah that has wronged them, but they wrong themselves.

**Section-20 of Chapter-3 [Verse 118-120]: No intimacy with them**

O you who believe! Take not into your intimacy those outside your ranks; they will not fail to corrupt you. They only desire your ruin, rank hatred has already appeared from their mouths, what their hearts conceal is far worse. We have made plain to you the Verses, if you have wisdom.

Ah! You are those who love them, but they love you not; though you believe in the whole of the Book. When they meet you, they say, "We believe." But when they are alone, they bite off the very tips of their fingers at you in their rage.

Say: "Perish in you rage; Allah know well all the secrets of the heart".

If aught that is good befalls you, it grieves them; but if some misfortune overtakes you, they rejoice at it.

But if you are constant and do right, not the least harm will their cunning do to you; for Allah compass round about all that they do.

**Remarks:**

Jews are a dynamic and intelligent race. And among the Christians, there are races that are genetically

higher than other races, such as Greeks, Germans, British, French, Spanish, etc. They have white skins, well-built physiques, intelligent brains, and active natures. They crossed the oceans with wooden boats and settled in far-flung corners of the world hundreds of years ago. They reached the Moon decades back. They have greatly developed in Science and Technology. They are very much capable to influence anybody. So, it is said in the Verse of the first paragraph, *“They will not fail to corrupt you.”*

So, the Rule of Thumb is: *“Take not into your intimacy those outside your ranks”*.

Holy Bible is meant for the Jews. Holy Bible never says that do not take *Awliya* (friend, protector, helper and guide) from outside, because if a Jews take *Awliya* from outside, the *Awliya* are in the thick soup, not the Jews. But the Muslims are counted in billions and there are multifarious types with utter simplicity, so the Quran has repeatedly said not to take *Awliya* from outside.

**Section-21 of Chapter-3 [Verse 121-129]: Follow the orders of Allah—success or failure is not your lookout**

Remember that morning you did leave your household to post the faithful at their stations for battle; and Allah hears and knows all things.

Remember two of your parties meditated cowardice, but Allah was their protector; and in Allah should the faithful put their trust. Allah had helped you at Badr, when you were a contemptible little force; then fear Allah, thus you may show your gratitude.

Remember you said to the Faithful: "Is it not enough for you that Allah should help you with three thousand angels sent down?" Yea, if you remain firm and act aright, even if the enemy should rush here on you in hot haste, your Lord would help you with five thousand angels making a terrific onslaught.

Allah made it but a message of hope for you and an assurance to your hearts—there is no help except from Allah, the Exalted, the Wise—that He might cut off a fringe of the Unbelievers or expose them to infamy, and they should then be turned back frustrated of their purpose.

Not for you is the decision whether He turns in mercy to them or punishes them; for they are indeed wrongdoers. To Allah belongs all that is in the Skies and on Lands; He forgives whom He pleases and punishes whom He pleases; but Allah is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful.

### **Section-22 of Chapter-3 [Verse 130-132]: Alerting Muslims against the Economy of Usury**

O you who believe! Devour not usury, doubled and multiplied, but fear Allah that you may prosper. Fear the Fire, which is prepared for those who reject Faith. And obey Allah and the Apostle that you may obtain mercy.

### **Section-23 of Chapter-3 [Verse 133-136]: The Jannaat (Main Discussion)**

Be quick in the race for forgiveness from your Lord and for a Jannaat, whose width is that of the Skies and Lands (Universe); prepared for the righteous those who spend whether in prosperity or in adversity, who restrain anger and

pardon men, for Allah loves those who do good, and those who having done something to be ashamed of or wronged their own souls earnestly bring Allah to mind and ask for forgiveness for their sins, and who can forgive sins except Allah, and do not persist in what they have done, while they know. For such the reward is forgiveness from their Lord and Jannaat with rivers flowing underneath, an eternal dwelling. How excellent a recompense for those who work!

### **Remarks:**

In this Section, I will describe the Jannaat. I will also prove it to be a separate universe by analyzing the Verses of the Quran and Hadith. The discussion will progress in the following sequence:

1. Traditional description of the Jannaat
2. This Universe is not fit to possess the objects of the Jannaat
3. The Jannaat is an independent Universe, located beyond this Universe
4. Location of the Jannaat
5. General Appearance of the Jannaat
6. Large scale Structure of the Jannaat
7. Conclusion
8. Summary

### **Background Knowledge:**

It is better if a reader has background knowledge of “The Large Scale Structure of the Universe”, discussed in Section-7 of Chapter-2

## 1. Traditional description of the Jannaat

The Jannaat is created by Allah Who willed that it will not be demolished. The Jannaat has flowing water and flowering trees. There are maidens with lustrous eyes, restraining their glances.

The idea of Jannaat is not given in Holy Bible. Holy Bible talks about the Salvation, but does not talk about the location. The idea of Jannaat is given to the last Prophet, Muhammad (pbuh).

Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) had a physical visit to the Jannaat. So, he is an eyewitness of its existence, and he was famous for his truthfulness from the childhood; people used to call him by the name of Al-Amin (the trusted one). The Hadith related to Jannaat are the Hadith of the Night Journey (Miraj) mainly.

According to Prophet Muhammad (pbuh), the Jannaat is visible from the Seventh Sky, but is not connected to the Seventh Sky. A Part of the Arsh is its ceiling.

The Jannaat have levels. The distance between two levels is like the distance between the Skies.

Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) said, "I entered the Jannaat; most of its inhabitants were from the Poor."

From the Land of the Final Judgment, the people will move into As-Sirat (a Path / Channel leading to the Jannaat). They will move through As-Sirat and will reach the space of Jannaat after crossing the Araf. The Araf is a huge land, located at the top of the *Barzakh* (Barrier). The *Barzakh* seems to be a

space with different nature, which separates the domains of the Samawaat (this Universe) and the Jannaat.

In the entry of the Jannaat, they will come across a river where they will take bath. It will make their physiques fit for the Jannaat. They will move further and reach another river. They will drink its water. It will make them good hearted people. They will not hate each other.

The people of Jannaat will have the form of Adam. One will be sixty cubit tall. They will not have body hair that bothers people, but will have head hair and eyebrows. Men will not have beards. A man will be identifiable by light green mustache, as men too will wear ornaments.

There is no urinating or defecating in Jannaat. They will sweat and release gas in the process of metabolism. The perspiration of the people will not produce bad smell. They will never be tired or sad.

They will not have children and will not wish to have children.

The Jannaat have animals. The animals can talk; they obey humans. The horses of Jannaat can fly.

The pebbles of Jannaat are precious stones and pearls. The Jannaat has trees with trunks of gold. There are huge trees; if one spends 100 years riding a quick horse, one will not depart its shade. There are trees, named Tuba, from which the clothes of the people come. There are trees, which produce the sound of Music when they sway in the wind.

The buildings of Jannaat are made of gold and silver bricks. The mortar for those bricks is musk with

fragrance. Some homes are one gigantic hollowed pearl, sixty-mile-high. In each building, there will be many maidens (Hoorain). They will belong to the person owning the building. The Hoorain are not from the Earth.

The women wear something that does not hide their beauty. If a finger of a woman appeared in this world, it would illuminate all of it.

Each person in Jannaat will have many servants who are ever delightful. The poorest in Jannaat will have 10,000 servants carrying trays of gold and silver. They are youths, not from the Earth. They are beautiful like untouched pearls.

Prophet (pbuh) said that there are many gardens in the Jannaat. There are special gardens that have furniture and the containers made of gold and silver. In some Hadith, these gardens are called markets. In the Markets of Jannaat, there are free women who do not belong to a particular person.

The Jannaat have goblets put next to the water containers. The Jannaat have pillows to lean. The Jannaat have fine carpets. The combs are made of gold. The incense burners contain al-Ud, a high-quality fragrance. The Ud of Jannaat does not need fire to release scent.

Wine is not *haram* (forbidden) in Jannaat. There are rivers of wine. The most precious is “Zanjawir”. It will not cause headache (it would not cause hangover if they would sleep). People being drunk will be flying for years.

“And near above them its shades and  
hang low its cluster of fruits in  
humility.

And amongst them will be  
passed round vessels of silver and  
goblets of crystal—crystal-clear—  
made of silver; they will determine the  
measure thereof.

And they will be given to drink  
there of a cup mixed with Zanjabil—a  
fountain there, called Salsabil.

And round about them will be  
youths, perpetual. If thou see them,  
thou would think them scattered  
Pearls.

And when thou look, then thou  
will see blessing and a kingdom great.

Upon them will be green  
garments of fine silk and heavy  
brocade, and they will be adorned with  
bracelets of silver, and their Lord will  
give to them to drink of a wine pure  
and holy.”

[Al Quran 76: 14-21]

The Jannaat has places to sit, made of gold  
and decorated with jewels, rubies, and emeralds.

According to the Hadith, there are pictures  
available in the markets of Jannaat, in which one can  
enter. These may be dynamic pictures of the virtual  
reality. Entering a picture may mean entering a virtual  
world. It may allow getting tough and risky

enjoyments, such as sky diving, dangerous expeditions, etc., sitting in a chair.

In the Jannaat, there are facilities to “command view”, as has been said in the following Verses:

“Truly the Righteous will be in Naimin (a level of Jannaat) on Thrones they look.

Thou will recognize in their faces the beaming brightness of Bliss.

Their thirst will be slaked with Pure Wine, sealed:”

[Al Quran 83: 22-25]

The facility to look should be something like the facilities of internet, but in higher form, because with this system they will be able to see and talk to the people in hell, billions of light years away. It has been said in the following Verses:

“But on this Day the Believers will laugh at the Unbelievers on Thrones observing.

Will not the Unbelievers have been paid back for what they did?”

[Al Quran 83: 34-36]

A person in Jannaat will just command and a 3D vision of the person in hell will be presented in front of him with the facility to talk on one-to-one basis, without any buffering. The objects of hell are

evolving in this Universe (Samawaat) billions of light years away. So, the system may work on the technique of teleportation [The system is already deployed in the universes; it is discussed in Section-9 of Chapter-6].

After a time is passed, Allah will meet the people of Jannaat and declare that He is happy on them forever.

If the enjoyment of Jannaat is compared with an ocean, the total enjoyment of the Earth will be trace of water on the tip of a needle.

## **2. This Universe (Samawaat) is not fit to possess the objects of Jannaat**

Following I have put forward the arguments that confirm Jannaat as a separate universe:

### **2a. Nature of this Universe**

The Universe (Skies / Samawaat) is full of violent quasars and burning galaxies; the entire space is showered with harmful radiations—here nothing can remain unchanged. It is a dangerous place indeed. If one is tuning a radio set, one hears high pitch noises coming from the gigantic explosions occurring in the galaxies and quasars. Those are the objects of hell.

The Universe is natural living place of the jinns and other anti-creatures created from the “fire of hole” (black hole). They fly through the Skies. The jinns are original sons of the Skies (this Universe).

On the contrary, the Jannaat is full of rivers and flowering trees. That is a place where people do not age; where the verbal orders are materialized instantly. The nature of this Universe negates the creation of such object. Here everything is put into the flow of time—aging is a must.

Adam and Eve were primarily put into the Jannaat. The Jannaat is the home universe of mankind.

## **2b. This Universe is destined to Perish**

This Universe (Samawaat) has two broad futures. It may expand forever, or it may start contracting. In both ways the Universe will perish.

Eventually, an ever-expanding universe will fade out in the ocean of darkness with black holes and super cool objects scattered far and wide. Ultimately, the atoms would explode in the stretching space and the black holes would evaporate. What would exist forever are photons that never decay.

*“And what is the fate of the universe? It is possible that the beginning can only be explained by a ‘Rediscovery of God’ and the end will be infinite dissipation in an infinite void”*

– *To the Edge of Eternity* by John Gribbin in  
*The Encyclopedia of Space Travel and Astronomy*  
edited by John Man.

Alternatively, the expansion of Universe may stop due to gravitational force and the contraction may begin. Eventually, the Universe may collapse

into a Fireball or a Big Crunch (the Singularity at the end of the collapsing Universe is called Big Crunch):

*“If there is enough matter, eventually gravity will overcome the expansion, and the universe will slow to a halt. The whole drama will then be played out in reverse. The universe will collapse faster and faster under the over whelming pulls of gravity until it is squashed into another fireball”*

– *To the Edge of Eternity* by John Gribbin in  
*The Encyclopedia of Space Travel and Astronomy*  
edited by John Man.

In any of the ways, ever-expansion or contraction, the objects of this Universe will perish.

The Quran suggests that the universe will collapse being rolled up:

“On the day when We will roll up the Skies (Samawaat / this Universe) like the rolling up of the scroll for writings; as We originated the first creation, We shall reproduce it—a promise on Us; surely We will bring it about.”

[Al Quran 81: 104]

“All that on it will perish but will abide the Face of thy Lord, Full of Majesty, Bounty, and the Honor.”

[Al Quran 55: 26–27]

The Jannaat being an everlasting creation cannot exist in this Universe. It must be found out at the outside.

## **2c. Eternal Salvation**

After the Resurrection, each will live forever. Allah will come for the salvation of the pious people. But where will He salvage?

No object of this Universe is suitable for peaceful living.

Therefore, the Jannaat should be a separate universe altogether.

## **3. Jannaat is an independent Universe, located beyond this Universe**

The divine Verses and the Hadiths point out the Jannaat as a separate universe. I have discussed it as under:

### **3a. More Universes**

The following Verses suggest that there are more universes.

“Praise be to Allah, the Cherisher and Sustainer of the universes (*Alamin*); Most Gracious, Most Merciful; Master of the Day of Law” [Al Quran 1: 2–3]

The Quran and Hadith frequently talk about the Samawaat (this universe) and the Jannaat (another universe).

The Quran talks about Arsh, Araf, Barzakh, Illiyin and Sijjin as well. We will discuss these under appropriate Verses.

### **3b. Different Origin**

In the Quran, this Universe, where we are living now, is called Samawaat (Skies). It is called Samawaat-wal-Ard (Skies and Lands) as well. From the Big Bounce, the Samawaat has been created, not the Jannaat.

“Do not the unbelievers see that the Skies and Lands were joined together before We clove them asunder”

[Al Quran 21:30]

Therefore, Jannaat should be a separate creation by origin.

The Quran frequently mentions that the rivers of Jannaat flow from the underground water.

“...their portion is Jannaat; flow from underneath it the rivers.”

[Al Quran 2:25]

“...For the righteous are Jannaat in nearness to their Lord; flow from underneath it the rivers.”

[Al Quran 3:15]

“...and Jannaat; flow from underneath it the rivers—an eternal dwelling”

[Al Quran 3:136]

“...verily, I will blot out from them their iniquities and admit them into Jannaat; flow from underneath it the rivers...” [Al Quran 3:195]

“On the other hand, for those who fear their Lord are Jannaat; flow from underneath it the rivers...”

[Al Quran 3:198]

“Those are limits set by God; those who obey God and His Messenger will be admitted to Jannaat; flow from underneath it the rivers ...”

[Al Quran 4:13]

In above Verses, the Arabic word “*tajri min tahtihal anhar*” is normally translated as “with rivers flowing beneath”. But the word-to-word translation is: “*flow from under it the rivers*”. It means that the rivers of Jannaat are not dependent on the supply of rainwater; water flow from underneath, like artesian well.

We may try to imagine, how much water was needed to create billions of planets, suitable for human living! Following Verse indicates that a huge quantity of water was created before the creation of this Universe (Samawaat).

“He it is Who created the “Skies and Lands” (this Universe) in six days, and His Arsh was over the waters.”

[Al Quran 11:7]

Holy Bible too talks about the same water:

“In the beginning, when God created the Universe, the Earth was non-existent. The raging ocean that covered everything was engulfed in total darkness, and the Soul of God was hovering over the water.”

–Genesis 1: (1–2), Holy Bible, GNB

It seems that the water was created for the Jannaat mainly.

From the Hadith, we know that the poorest in Jannaat will be given a land, ten times bigger than the Earth. A land that is ten times bigger than the Earth should be a big planet. The Jupiter, the biggest planet of the Solar System, is ten times bigger than the Earth in volume.

There will be billions of humans in the Jannaat. Each will be given one or more of such planets. So, there are billions of habitable planets. A

huge quantity of water was needed to create those planets.

Therefore, it is most likely that the water, which was created before the Big Bang, was created for the Jannaat. The water was created through another Big Bang, or through some other Process.

The water was floating in the Super Space like a huge ball of water. The following Verses of Holy Bible indicate that the Big Bang occurred in the center of that water-ball.

“Then God commanded: Let there be dome to divide the water and to keep it in two separate places—and it was dome. So, God made a dome, and it separated the water under it from the water above it. He named the dome “sky”. Evening passed, and morning came that was the second day”

- Genesis 1: (6–8), Holy Bible, GNB

The Big Bang produced smoke (hydrogen and helium mainly). The smoke produced a huge bubble in the center of the water-ball. In Holy Bible, the bubble is called dome because, a bubble and a dome look the same.

When a bubble is produced in the water, it rises on the surface of the water. But the enormous water-ball was floating in the Super Space—it had no up or down. Therefore, the bubble (dome) was expanding in the center of the water-ball in an explosive speed. The expanding bubble, full of

smoke, has formed the Sky. In the Verses of Holy Bible too, the Sky means the Universe.

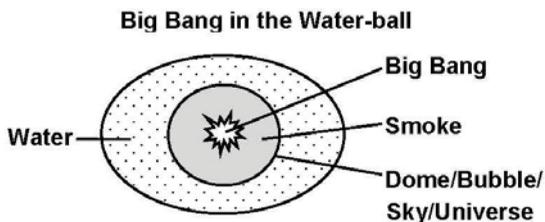


FIGURE 3.2

Eventually, due to the pressure of evolving gas, water-ball burst. The water gaining greater momentum drifted away from the smoke and scattered. The water has been used to create the objects of Jannaat.

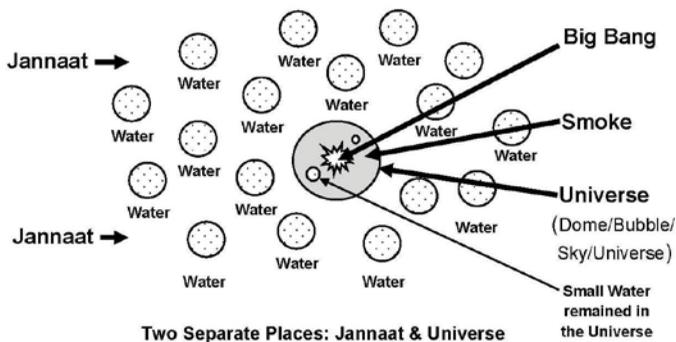


FIGURE 3.3

The Verses talk about “Two Separate Places”:  
*“Let there be dome to divide the water and to keep it*

*in two separate places*". These two separate places are two universes: the Samawaat (this universe) and the Jannaat (another universe).

The smoke, produced in the bubble / dome, has been used to create the objects of the Samawaat (Skies / this Universe).

The water has been used to produce the planets of the Jannaat.

A small quantity of water fell into the dome (bubble). Later, the Earth has been provided with the water from this source. The vast oceans were filled up with the water of 'falling water bearing asteroids'.

### **3c. The Possibility of a Big Bounce**

It is likely that the expansion of the universe (smoke) halted due to the pressure of water-ball. And the universe began to contract due to the gravitation force.

The contraction produced silicon and lighter elements in the smoke, with which some dust and asteroids (lands) formed.

Eventually, the universe was re-initiated through a Big Bounce. The following Verse is talking about the Big Bounce re-initiation of the universe:

“Do not the unbelievers see that the Skies and the Lands were sewed (/joined together), before We emitted them (/clove them asunder)”

[Al Quran 21:30]

The initial universe could have lands (dust and asteroids) if it started from a Fireball through a Big Bounce.

From the Big Bounce, the universe could revive as a seven-sky-universe where the gases could easily concentrate into the galaxies.

*"The Big Bounce is a hypothesized cosmological model for the origin of the known universe. It was originally suggested as a phase of the cyclic model or oscillatory universe interpretation of the Big Bang, where the first cosmological event was the result of the collapse of a previous universe. It receded from serious consideration in the early 1980s after inflationary theory emerged as a solution to the horizon problem, which had arisen from advances in observations revealing the large scale structure of the universe. In the early 2000s, inflation was found by some theorists to be problematic and unfalsifiable in that its various parameters could be adjusted to fit any observations, so that the properties of the observable universe are a matter of chance. Alternative pictures including a Big Bounce may provide a predictive and falsifiable possible solution to the horizon problem, and are under active investigation as of 2017."*

– WIKIPEDIA, The Free Encyclopedia

### **3d. Two completely separate Entities**

We know from the Hadith that there are seven Skies and eight Jannaat, and they are not connected to each other directly.

None can go out of the Universe (Samawaat) except through special paths (As Sirat):

“O ye assembly of jinns and men, if it be ye can pass beyond the boundary of Skies and Lands (this Universe), pass ye! Not without authority shall ye be able to pass!” [Al Quran 55:33]

On the Day of Final Judgment, the people will move to the Jannaat through the special paths, called As Sirat.

Therefore, Jannaat and Samawaat are separate universes.

#### **4. Location of Jannaat**

The Jannaat exists at the outside of this Universe. It is a separate universe altogether.

“Be quick in the race for forgiveness from your Lord and for a Jannaat, whose width is that of the Skies and Lands (this Universe); prepared for the righteous...” [Al Quran 3:133]

“Race to forgiveness from your Lord and the Jannaat, the width of which is as the width of the Sky and Land”  
[Al Quran 57:2]

Holy Bible too talks about a separate universe as the place of Salvation.

“Because only a few will be saved,  
God has created two universes instead  
of only one”

- 2 ESDRAS 7:50, Holy Bible, GNB

Therefore, according to the Quran, Holy Bible and Hadith, there is another Universe at the outside of this Universe, named Jannaat. We may not have a scientific basis of it, but the idea of its existence is supportive to the salvation scenario where the universe culminates into a Point of Doom and resurrects as Hell.

The scientists would tell that there is nothing beyond the Big Bang; that the time began at the Big Bang; that the Universe has no outside, and so on, because they do not know.

This fine-tuned universe proves the existence of God. And the Quran is proven Message of God. The Quran says that there is another Universe called Jannaat.

## **5. General Appearance of the Jannaat**

The Jannaat is full of habitable planets (objects). The Planets of Jannaat are scattered in eight layers of space (Space of Jannaat).

Hadith: "One in the lower level of  
Jannaat will observe a higher one like

a rising star in the eastern or western corner of the sky." [Bukhari]

"Martyrs live in Jannaat located beneath the Arsh, which look like bright stars from the Seventh Sky"  
[Hadith]

A person living in a planet of the Jannaat will see the planet of another person like a bright star in the horizon, as we see planet Mars, Venus, etc., like the bright stars.

**Note:**

According to the above Hadith, some objects of Jannaat are visible from the Seventh Sky. It means that the light can pass through the Barzakh. But, matter cannot pass through. So, the Barzakh may be a space with different nature that does not support the matter.

The planets of Jannaat are big—the smallest one is ten times bigger than the Earth.

“The poorest in the Jannaat will own an area, ten times bigger than the Earth” [Hadith]

In this Universe, the gravity of such a big object (ten times bigger than the Earth) would be too strong. The object would explode due to high pressure and

temperature resulting from its gravitational contraction. It seems that some of the natural laws of Jannaat are different from that of this universe. The construction of the planets may also be different. The planets of Jannaat may have cores of water.

The nature of Jannaat is not exactly same as the nature of the Earth. For instance, there is no night and day in the Jannaat. Even after a long period of time, people will feel that they have entered the Jannaat shortly. People will not become tired; they will not sleep (but will rest sometimes in the beds). They will never be old. Their orders will be materialized instantly—plants, animals, and physical objects will obey their orders (probably, their conscious's will be matching with the conscious's of the surrounding objects).

## **6. Large scale Structure of the Jannaat**

According to Hadith, the planets of Jannaat are scattered in eight layers of space (Space of Jannaat). The distance between two adjacent layers is like the distance between two adjacent Skies. If a sphere of void between two adjacent Skies is 150 million light years thick, then the distance between two adjacent layers of the Jannaat is 150 million light years too. The names of the layers are as follows:

1. Firdaws (May be the Highest Jannaat)
2. Nayeem (May be the Highest Jannaat)
3. Mawa
4. Makam
5. Karar

6. Salam
7. Adan
8. Khuld (the Lowest Jannaat).

In the this Universe (Samawaat), one Sky surrounds the inner Sky the way white part of a boiled egg surrounds inner yellow part, but the layers of Jannaat do not surround each other; the layers stand side by side, as all layers fall directly under the Arsh:

“All Jannaat have single roof that is the Arsh of Allah” [Hadith]

The Layers of Jannaat stand side by side, but in ascending order, as it is mentioned in the following Hadith:

“Layers of Jannaat are laid out like the steps of a staircase” [Hadith]

So, the people of Jannaat will see the planets of the higher layer like the stars in the horizon.

From the Hadith, we know that the Jannaat is a vast creation. Nobody other than Allah knows how big it is? There must be billions of planets in each layer of Jannaat. Each human will be given one or more of those planets.

Angel Gabriel has 500 wings. He can travel a distance of 500 years with one swing of a wing. Once he was flying through the Jannaat. Suddenly, he felt that it was not ending! How come! To see the end of Jannaat, he started to use more number of wings. At

the end, he was found thrusting all his wings to the pick of his power, but there was no end. After some times, he realized that it was an audacity to try finding the end of creation, when he stopped and turned to Allah for forgiveness.

## **7. Conclusion**

Allah initially settled Adam and Eve in Jannaat. Therefore, humans are designed to live in Jannaat. But we are living on the Earth. The Earth has been made suitable for our exile living.

But, the Earth is not that good. Here gravity is strong; everybody suffers from the back-pain at least once in his lifetime. After a lot of processing, we eat food, but it creates diseases and constipation. Our intestines are not created for such foods. We are helpless without doctors and hospitals.

### **7a. Anti-Universe?**

The Jannaat is not anti-universe of this Universe (Samawaat). A universe and an anti-universe should originate from the same source. But, Jannaat and Samawaat are created from different sources.

However, the perception of anti-universe is not a fiction in religious view. This universe (Samawaat) really has an anti-universe. The anti-universe exists in this universe—one inside another—but in different dimensions.

The anti-universe is the domain of jinns. The universe that contains five times more dark matter

than matter should possess anti-creatures (jinns), made out of anti-matter. The anti-matter is a kind of dark matter.

This Universe (Samawaat) will perish and revive, including its anti-universe. But the Jannaat is everlasting. So, Jannaat cannot be anti-universe of this universe.

### **7b. Women in Jannaat**

As a human, a woman is as good as a man. A woman will get an independent domain in the Jannaat—she will not be under her husband. However, relatives will often meet each other. In Jannaat, people will have transports to visit.

A man who guides his family in the path of Islam will be sent to Jannaat with his family. But, each of them will have dedicated domain in the Jannaat.

Humans are created as Vicegerents of Allah. So, human males and females have inherent tendency to command. Two Commanders, may be one male and one female, in one domain do not make a peaceful living.

Original women (Hoorain) of Jannaat are created differently; they are not from Adam and Eve. So, they are not human beings. They cannot be jealous of one another.

The human women may be changed. An abolition of sexual difference is likewise suggested in Saying 22, (a Gnostic interpretation of Galatians 3:28):

‘Jesus saw some infants at the breast. He said to his disciples: ‘These children at the breast are like those who enter the kingdom’. They said to him: ‘Shall we, then, enter the kingdom as children?’ Jesus said to them: ‘When you make the two one, and when you make the inner as the outer and the outer as the inner and the above as below, and when you make the female one, so that the male is no longer male and female, when you make eyes in place of an eye, and a hand in place of a hand, and a foot in place of a foot, an image in place of an image, then you will enter the kingdom.’ [Saying 22]

## **8. Summary**

The Jannaat is located at the outside of this Universe (Samawaat). It is a different Universe altogether. The Jannaat is original home and desired final destination of mankind.

### **Section-24 of Chapter-3 [Verse 137-179]: Lessons from the Battle of Ohud**

Many were the Ways of Life that have passed away before you; travel through the earth and see what the end of those who rejected Truth was. Here is a plain statement to men, a

guidance and instruction to those who fear Allah! So, lose not heart, nor fall into despair; for you must gain mastery, if you are true in Faith.

If a wound has touched you, be sure a similar wound has touched the others. Such days We give to men and men by turns that Allah may know those that believe, and that He may take to Himself from your ranks Martyr, witnesses. And Allah loves not those that do wrong.

Allah's object also is to purge those that are true in Faith and to deprive of blessing those that resist Faith.

Did you think that you would enter Jannaat without Allah testing those of you who fought hard and remained steadfast? You did indeed wish for death before you met it; now you have seen it openly with your own eyes.

Muhammad is no more than an apostle; many were the apostles that passed away before him. If he died or were slain, will you then turn back on your heels? If any did turn back on his heels, not the least harm will he do to Allah; but Allah will swiftly reward those who are grateful.

Nor can a soul die except by Allah's leave; the term being fixed as by writing. If any do desire a reward in this life, We shall give it to him; and if any do desire a reward in the hereafter, We shall give it to him; and swiftly shall We reward those that (serve us with) gratitude.

How many of the Prophets fought and with them large bands of godly men, but they never lost heart if they met with disaster in Allah's way, nor did they weaken, nor give in; and Allah loves those who are firm and steadfast.

All that they said was: "Our Lord! Forgive us our sins and anything we may have done that transgressed our duty. Establish our feet firmly and help us against those that resist Faith." And Allah gave them a reward in this world and the

excellent reward of the Hereafter. For Allah love those who do good.

O you who believe! If you obey the unbelievers, they will drive you back on your heels, and you will turn back to your own loss. Nay, Allah is your protector; and He is the best of helpers.

Soon shall We cast terror into the hearts of the unbelievers for that they joined companions with Allah, for which He had sent no authority; their abode will be the Fire; and evil is the home of the wrong-doers!

Allah did indeed fulfill His promise to you, when you with His permission were about to annihilate your enemy, until you flinched and fell to disputing about the order and disobeyed it, after He brought you in sight, which you love (booty). Among you are some that hanker after this world and some that desire the hereafter. Then did He divert you from your foes in order to test you. But He forgave you; for Allah is full of grace to those who believe.

Behold! You were climbing up the high ground without even casting aside glance at any one, and the Apostle in your rear was calling you back. There did Allah give you one distress after another by way of requital to teach you not to grieve for that had escaped you, and for that had befallen you; for Allah is well aware of all that you do.

After the distress, He sent down calm on a band of you, overcome with slumber, while another band was stirred to anxiety by their own feelings, moved by wrong suspicions of Allah—suspicions due to ignorance. They said: "What affair is this of ours?" Say you: "Indeed, this affair is wholly Allah's". They hide in their minds what they dare not reveal to you. They say: "If we had had anything to do with this affair, we should not have been in the slaughter here". Say:

"Even if you had remained in your homes, those for whom death was decreed would certainly have gone forth to the place of their death." But that Allah might test what is in your breasts and purge what is in your hearts; for Allah know well the secrets of your hearts.

Those of you who turned back on the day the two hosts met—it was Satan who caused them to fail because of some (evil) they had done. But Allah has blotted out; for Allah is Oft-Forgiving, Most Forbearing.

O you who believe! Be not like the Unbelievers who say of their brethren when they are travelling through the Earth or engaged in fighting: "If they had stayed with us, they would not have died or been slain." So, Allah makes that a regret in their hearts. It is Allah that gives life and death, and Allah sees well all that you do.

And if you are slain or die in the way of Allah, forgiveness and mercy from Allah are far better than all they could amass. And if you die or are slain—lo! it is unto Allah that you are brought together.

It is part of the mercy of Allah that you do deal gently with them. Were you severe or harsh-hearted, they would have broken away from about you. So, pass over and ask for forgiveness for them.

And consult them in affairs. Then, when you have taken a decision, put your trust in Allah; for Allah loves those who put their trust.

If Allah helps you, none can overcome you; if He forsakes you, who is there after that that can help you. In Allah then let believers put their trust.

No prophet could be false to his trust. If any person is so false, he shall on the Day of Judgment restore what he

misappropriated. Then shall every soul receive its due, whatever it earned; and none shall be dealt with unjustly.

Is the man who follows the good pleasure of Allah like the man who draws on himself the wrath of Allah, and whose abode is in Hell, a woeful refuge! They are in varying grades in the sight of Allah, and Allah sees well all that they do.

Allah did confer a great favor on the believers when He sent among them an apostle from among themselves rehearsing unto them the signs of Allah, sanctifying them, and instructing them in scripture and wisdom; while before that they had been in manifest error.

What! When a single disaster smites you, although you smote with one twice as great, do you say: "From where does this come to us?" Say: "It is from yourselves; for Allah has power over all things".

What you suffered on the day the two armies met was with the leave of Allah in order that He might test the believers, and the hypocrites also. These were told: "Come, fight in the way of Allah, or drive". They said: "Had we known how to fight, we should certainly have followed you". They were that day nearer to Unbelief than to Faith; saying with their lips what was not in their hearts; but Allah has full knowledge of all they conceal.

The ones that say while they themselves sit: "If only they had listened to us they would not have been slain". Say: "Avert death from your own selves, if you speak the truth." Think not of those who are slain in Allah's way as dead. Nay, they live finding their sustenance in the presence of their Lord. They rejoice in the bounty provided by Allah and with regard to those left behind—who have not yet joined them. The glory in the fact that on them is no fear, nor have they

grieve; they glory in the Grace and the bounty from Allah; and in the fact that Allah suffers not the reward of the Faithful to be lost.

Of those who answered the call of Allah and the Apostle even after being wounded, those who do right and refrain from wrong have a great reward. Men said to them, "A great army is gathering against you" and frightened them. But it increased their Faith. They said, "For us Allah suffice, and He is the best disposer of affairs". And they returned with Grace and bounty from Allah; no harm ever touched them, for they followed the good pleasure of Allah; and Allah is the Lord of bounties unbounded.

It is only the Satan that suggests to you the fear of his votaries. Be you not afraid of them but fear Me if you have Faith.

Let not those grieve you who rush headlong into unbelief; not the least harm will they do to Allah. It is Allah's plan that He will give them no portion in the Hereafter but a severe punishment.

Those who purchase unbelief at the price of faith, not the least harm will they do to Allah, but they will have a grievous punishment.

Let not the unbelievers think that our respite to them is good for themselves. We grant them respite that they may grow in their iniquity. But they will have a shameful punishment.

Allah will not leave the believers in the state in which you are now—until He separates what is evil from what is good—nor will He disclose to you the secrets of the Unseen. But He chooses of His Apostles whom He pleases. So, believe in Allah and His apostles. And if you believe and do right, you have a reward without measure.

## **Segment 4 Conclusion**

The Segment gives vital knowledge about hell. It concludes the Chapter with prayer and promise of God.

### **Section-25 of Chapter-3 [Verse 180-184]: Calling Jews**

And let not those who covetously withhold of the gifts which Allah has given them of His Grace think that it is good for them. Nay, it will be the worse for them. Soon on the Day of Judgment shall the things which they covetously withheld be tied to their necks like a twisted collar. To Allah belongs the heritage of the Skies and Lands, and Allah is well acquainted with all that you do.

Allah has heard the taunt of those who say, "Truly, Allah is poor, and we are rich!" We shall certainly record their word and of slaying the prophets in defiance of right, and We shall say, "Taste you the penalty of the Burning Fire! This is because of that which your hands sent on before you—Allah is never unjust to slaves."

They said, "Allah took our promise not to believe in an apostle unless He showed us a sacrifice consumed by Fire". Say, "There came to you apostles before me with clear signs and even with what you ask for; why then did you slay them if you speak the truth?"

Then if they reject you, so were rejected apostles before you who came with clear signs, books of dark prophesy, and the book of enlightenment.

## **Section-26 of Chapter-3 [Verse185-189]: Remain Firm in Faith and Spread the Message**

Every soul shall have a taste of death, and only on the Day of Judgment shall you be paid your full recompense. Only he who is saved far from the fire and admitted to the Jannaat will have attained the object; for the life of this world is but goods and chattels of deception.

You shall certainly be tried and tested in your possessions, and in your personal selves. And you shall certainly hear much that will grieve you from those who received the book before you, and from those who worship many gods, but if you persevere patiently and guard against evil, then that will be a determining factor in all affairs.

And remember, Allah took a covenant from the People of the Book to make it known and clear to mankind and not to hide it, but they threw it away behind their backs and purchased with it some miserable gain; and vile was the bargain they made!

Think not that those who exult in what they have brought about and love to be praised for what they have not done—think escape the penalty? For them is a penalty Grievous indeed.

To Allah belong the dominion of the Skies and Lands, and Allah has power over all things.

## **Section-27 of Chapter-3 [Verse 190-200]: The Hell (Main Discussion)**

Behold in the creation of the Skies and Lands (Samawaat-wal-Ard / this Universe) and the alternation of night and day; there are indeed signs for men of understanding—men who

celebrate the praises of Allah, standing, sitting, and lying down on their sides and contemplate the creations in the Skies and Lands: "Our Lord! Not for naught have You created this! Glory to You! Give us salvation from the penalty of the Fire. Our Lord, any whom You dost admit to the Fire, truly You cover with shame, and never will wrongdoers find any helpers"!

### **Remarks:**

The above Verse highlights that if a man of understanding thinks on the creations of the Universe (Samawaat), he will know the hell. It will inspire him to pray for the salvation from the Fire. This is a clear indication that the Objects of Hell are created in this Universe.

In this Chapter, I shall identify the Objects of Hell considering the Quran and Hadith. The discussion will progress in the following sequence:

1. Location of Hell
2. Identifying the Fire of Hell
3. The Fire
4. The Objects of Hell
5. The Objects of Hell, as said in the Hadith
6. Hell in General
7. Living in the Hell
8. Conclusion

### **Background Knowledge**

It is better if one reading about the Hell has background knowledge of the following subjects:

- Large-Scale Structure of the Universe: discussed in Section-7 of Chapter-2
- Jannaat: discussed in Section-23 of Chapter-3

## 1. Location of Hell

There are many Verses in the Quran as well as there are many Hadiths, which confirm that the Objects of Hell are evolving in this Universe (Samawaat):

“And We have adorned the Sky of the World with lamps (stars), have made such missiles (meteorites) to drive away the satan, and have prepared for them the penalty of the blazing fire of hell” [Al Quran 67:5]

According to the above Verse, the Sky holds lamps, missiles, and 'blazing fire of hell'.

One may read the description of the *Miraz* (Night Journey) when Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) observed the Objects of Hell in each of Seven Skies:

“During Miraz, I saw in the Seventh Sky: there were thunder and roaring sound and a group of people. Their bellies were as big as houses. In those, there were many snakes that were being seen from the outside. I asked to Gabriel, which kind of people they

were? He said, “It is the scene of those, who devoured usury.”

[Hadith, Bukhari]

After the Final Judgment, this Universe (Samawaat) will be known as the hell. We have already discussed in Section-23 of this Chapter that the Jannaat (paradise) is a separate universe altogether.

## 2. Identifying the Fire of Hell

Following Hadith identifies the Fire of Hell:

"After burning for thousands of years, the fire of hell becomes red. Again, after burning for thousands of years, it becomes white. Then, after burning for thousands of years, it becomes dark black and remains in that state"

[Tirmizi]

The above Hadith narrates the major stages, through which the Fire of Hell is produced. These “stages” and the “stages of stellar evolution” are similar. It indicates that the stars are evolving to produce the Fire of Hell. For the ease of explanation, I have divided the Hadith in three parts, as under:

**Part 1 of the Hadith:** “After burning for thousands of years, the fire of hell becomes Red...”

**Part 2 of the Hadith:** "...Again, after burning for thousands of years, it becomes White..."

**Part 3 of the Hadith:** "...Then, after burning for thousands of years, it becomes Dark Black and remains in that state."

### **Part 1 of the Hadith**

"After burning for thousands of years, the fire of hell becomes Red..."

This part of the Hadith points out the formation of Red Giant Stars. After burning for a long time, a massive star becomes a Red Giant. In the stellar evolution, it is the end state of the first phase.

In the previous cycle of the universe, the Big Bang produced hydrogen. Later 25% of hydrogen turned into helium.

In the contracting phase of the previous cycle, the heavier elements at least up to silicon were produced. Some of the heavier elements produced dust and asteroids (lands).

After the contraction, the present cycle of the Universe began from a Big Bounce that waded the space into Skies. In the waded space (Skies), the gases, dust and asteroids evenly distributed throughout the universe. And, the matter could easily concentrate into conglomerates to form the galaxies with stars and other objects.

The stars formed with hydrogen and helium mainly. The gases concentrated around the accumulations of the heavier elements, including the dust and the asteroids.

A heavier element deposits below the lighter element. So, the matter deposited in a star in multiple layers, with the heaviest silicon in the center, and the lightest hydrogen at the outermost layer.

However, the bulks of matter of a star were hydrogen and helium, roughly at the ratio of 3:1. The helium being heavier than hydrogen formed the core of the star with a small nucleus of heavier elements in the center.

A star gradually contracts due to the gravitational force. So, the pressure in the center continues to increase. The increasing pressure raises the heat progressively.

At one stage, the increasing pressure and heat initiate nuclear fusion reaction. The hydrogen atoms in and around the core undergo fusion reaction and produce more and more heat. The heat tries to expand the star.

In one hand the gravity tries to squeeze the star, on the other hand the extreme heat, produced in the core, tries to expand the star—it brings a balance. A balanced star burns for millions of years and hydrogen produces helium through nuclear fusion reaction. The helium deposits into the core.

Thus, the core gets heavier and heavier. When it reaches to a critical mass, it starts collapsing due to its own gravitational force, and the outer hydrogen layer expands. The hydrogen layer growing in many

folds stretches out into the space. This is the Red Giant State of a star.

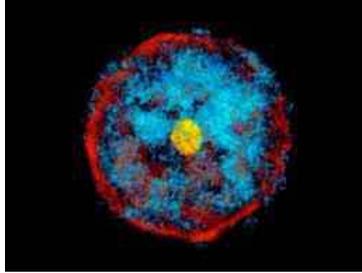


FIGURE 3.4: The Red Giant

In a Red Giant, the outer hydrogen layer is inflated like a huge balloon, when the core with the layers of helium and other heavier elements is contracting.

*“The shell of burning hydrogen dumps its ‘ashes’ on to this core, building it up progressively with supplies of more and more helium. But the core with no energy sources of its own cannot grow indefinitely. When it reaches to a critical mass the center collapse and the outer layer of the star expands stretching out into space and growing in size one hundred-fold.”*

– *The Life and Death of Stars* by Geoffrey Bath in *The Encyclopedia of Space Travel and Astronomy* edited by John Man

So, after burning for a long time, a star becomes a “Red Giant”. And, this Part of the Hadith

says: “*After burning for thousands of years, the fire of hell becomes Red...*” [Tirmizi]

## **Part 2 of the Hadith**

“...Again, after burning for thousands of years, it becomes white...”

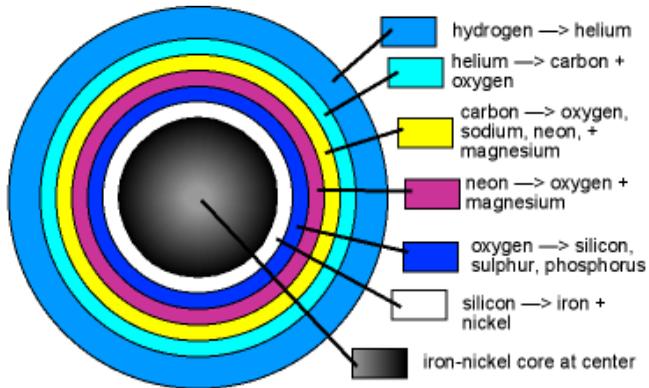
[Tirmizi]

This Part of the Hadith points out the White Dwarf state. In the stellar evolution, it is the end state of the second phase.

The gravitational force continues to squeeze the core of a massive Red Giant Star. It increases its pressure and density progressively. The increasing pressure and density develops the heat. Eventually, the center becomes hot enough to ignite fusion reaction in the helium nuclei. The helium undergoes fusion reaction and produces more complex elements, mainly carbon and oxygen. Carbon and oxygen being heavier than helium deposit into their layers below.

The ignition of helium is only the first in a whole series. As the pressure and temperature increase in the center, the more complex nuclei are successively burnt. Carbon and oxygen burn to silicon- silicon burns to iron”

In this way, the layers of heavier elements get heavier and heavier, and the cores of new even heavier elements are successively produced.



**The "onion layers" of an evolved core of a high-mass star; from hydrogen in the outermost shell to iron at the center.**

FIGURE 3.5

Iron is the last element that can be produced in the way of fusion, because elements more complex than iron, such as uranium, have tendency to undergo fission (splitting apart spontaneously) and produce less complex elements.

*“What halts the sequence of burning to even more complex nuclei? At the point when iron is being forged in the center of a massive star, with surrounding shells of silicon, oxygen, carbon, helium and hydrogen, the end of the road is near. When the iron core collapse there is no hope of a new reaction stepping in, to save the star, for it is not possible to fuse iron into more complex element (such as uranium) and release energy at the same time. Indeed, elements much more complex than iron have*

*a tendency to undergo fission, splitting apart spontaneously into less complex elements”*

–*The Life and Death of Stars* by Geoffrey Bath in *The Encyclopedia of Space Travel and Astronomy*, edited by John Man

When the fusion reaction stops, the object gradually cools and shrinks due to gravitational force. Eventually, it is squeezed to such density that a glass of matter would weigh several tons.

The shrinking stops when the degenerated electrons exert a special kind of pressure (exclusion principle repulsion between the electrons in the matter). The pressure balances the star against the gravity. So far, the star remains below a critical mass the electron pressure can save the star from further collapse. A star at this stage can cool without collapsing. These are called “White Dwarfs”.



FIGURE 3.6: White Dwarf

The evolution of many stars ends at the state of White Dwarf. A White Dwarf is a compact star slowly cooling off in the space. The normal gas on its surface heats up when it is squeezed. It leads to series

of nuclear burning reactions in the outer layers of the object. Thereby, a White Dwarf shines.

So, we find that after burning for a long time, a Red Giant becomes a White Dwarf. And this Part of the Hadith says: “...Again, after burning for thousands of years, it becomes White...” [Tirmizi]

### **Part 3 of the Hadith**

“...Then, after burning for thousands of years, it becomes dark black and remains in that state.” [Tirmizi]

Finally, the fire of hell becomes dark black and remains at that state forever. This is the Black Hole, the final state of a massive star.

A white dwarf radiates and gradually cools off in the space. The electron pressure cannot stop the collapse of a massive white dwarf. If the mass of a white dwarf is more than one and a half time of the mass of the Sun (known as Chandrasekhar’s Limit), then the gravity is strong enough to squeeze the object further.

Down to further collapse, electrons and protons bind together and become neutrons. At this state a star is called Neutron Star where density of matter per cubic inch would become hundreds of million tons. The neutrons exert ‘Neutron Degeneracy Pressure’ (the exclusion principle repulsion between neutron and proton), which can hold a star of up to three solar masses from further collapse.

*“The white dwarf cools off in space and becomes steadily fainter and fainter as they slowly freeze. Eventually they form completely dead stellar stumps. In atoms electrons and protons are crushed together even more than they are in a white dwarf. They bind together forming neutrons. Neutrons exert their own ‘Neutron Degeneracy Pressure’, which is even more powerful than that of electrons. It is able to support a star of up to three solar masses. A neutron star with the mass of the Sun would be about the size of Manhattan”*

– *The Life and Death of Stars* by Geoffrey Bath in *The Encyclopedia of Space Travel and Astronomy*, edited by John Man



FIGURE 3.7: A Neutron Star

If a star possesses more mass than three solar masses, the gravitational force can overcome Neutron Degeneracy Pressure, and the star squeezes further. Eventually, it turns into a Black Hole.

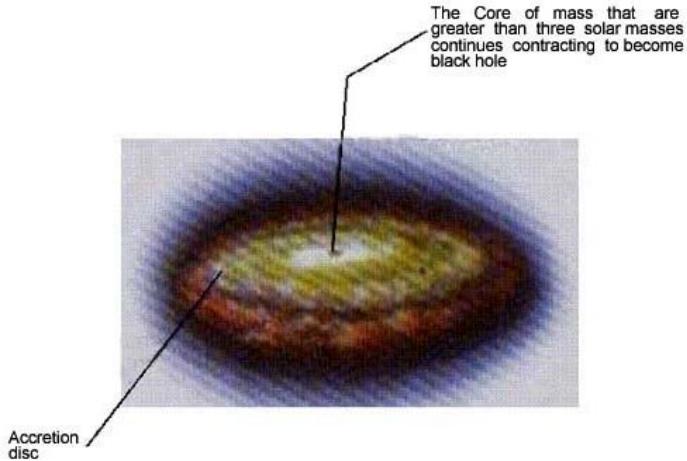


FIGURE 3.8: Formation of Black Hole

*“The collapse continues indefinitely. All the matter showers into a central point, squashed by gravity to infinite density and form a black hole. Densities are reached which are so enormous that light itself cannot escape from the surface. With the increasing strong gravitational fields associated with the increasing density the velocity needed for escape increase. Eventually a stage is reached at which this escape velocity is greater than the velocity of light. Nothing can escape, then or even after. The collapsing star disappears behind an impenetrable horizon, the Event Horizon, and is hidden forever from our eyes”*

– *The Life and Death of Stars* by Geoffrey Bath in *The Encyclopedia of Space Travel and Astronomy*, edited by John Man

In some cases, the stars having less mass than three solar masses grasp matter from the surrounding space (if available) and overcome neutron degeneracy pressure at some points of time. The stars then squeeze further and turn into Black Holes.



FIGURE 3.9: Black Hole

In some cases, due to intense gravitational force, the outer layers of a white dwarf or a neutron star suddenly collapse. All of a sudden, the gas becomes extremely compressed and overheated. Thus, the outer layers of the star explode. The explosion is called “Supernova Explosion”.



FIGURE 3.10: Crab Supernova Explosion

Due to extreme pressure and temperature of supernova explosion, the elements that are heavier

than iron are produced. Gold, platinum, uranium, etc., produced in the Supernova Explosion in this way.

All elements that produced and deposited in the outer layers of the star throughout its life are flung out into the space.

The core of the object shrinks due to extreme implosive pressure and becomes Black Hole.



FIGURE 3.11: Black Hole

So, we find that after burning for a long time a White Dwarf becomes a Black Hole. It is the end state of the object. And Part 3 of the Hadith says: “...*Then, after burning for thousands of years, it becomes dark black and remains in that state.*” [Tirmizi]

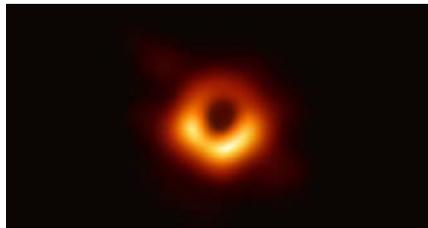


FIGURE 3.12: A Black Hole

All stars cannot cross all three stages. A star having less mass possesses less gravitational force. As a result, it burns slowly for a long time. Depending on the amount of matter, some stars end at Red Giant State and some at White Dwarf State. Only a massive star can turn into a Black Hole at the end of its evolution.

If a star of one solar mass turns into a Red Giant, its diameter will increase to one hundred forty million km. When our Sun will turn into a Red Giant, its perimeter will cross the orbit of Mars. If it turns into a White Dwarf, it will squeeze, and its diameter will reduce to thirteen thousand km. If it becomes a Neutron Star, its diameter will be sixteen km only. And, if it becomes a Black Hole, it will be half a km across (Stars with the mass of the Sun end at Red Giant stage).

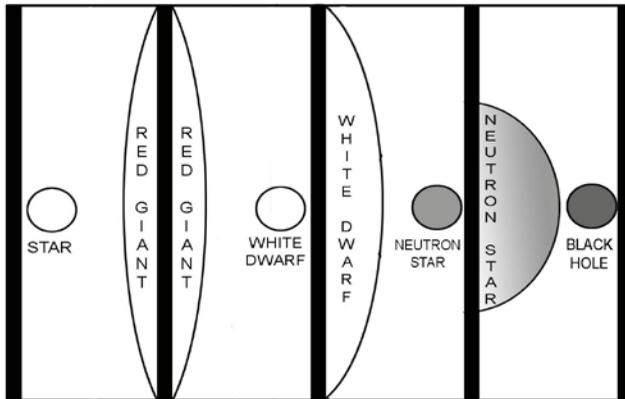


FIGURE 3.13: Stages of Collapsing Star

### **Note:**

Black hole is the theoretical end state of a massive star. If it is found wrong, then the Neutron Star is the end state. The Neutron Stars too are black, as they have nothing to radiate. They too serve the purpose of hell.

### **3. The Fire**

The evolution of the 'fire of hell' and the evolution of a black hole are the same. But we cannot address a black hole as the fire of hell, because a black hole itself is absolutely cold.

But if we explore further, we find that a black hole produces the most violent and the hottest fire of the universe. The black holes form the pivots of the objects of hell.

A black with its extremely powerful gravitational force sucks matter from the surrounding space; sometimes it tears off matter from a nearby star; sometimes it sucks up a whole star. A black hole may even squeeze a whole galaxy around itself.

A black hole can absorb matter without releasing much of energy when the amount is small. If a stone is thrown into a black hole, it will just vanish being squeezed to a size smaller than a dust. But, if the amount of matter is huge, a black hole cannot absorb it immediately.

*“But if the mass of several million stars is compressed around it, there will be a massive pile up of material- gas, dust and even whole stars- sucked in*

*by the intense gravity field but unable to squeeze immediately into the tight 'throat' funneling down into the hole”*

– *The Life and Death of Stars* by Geoffrey Bath in *The Encyclopedia of Space Travel and Astronomy*, edited by John Man

Inside the collapsing material, a black hole rotates in a tremendous speed winding its strong magnetic field around itself. Due to rotating magnetic field, the collapsing material cannot fall into the black hole directly. It spreads a blanket of in-falling material in the plane of rotation—like the ring of the Saturn, but on a vastly greater scale. The swirling material then releases energy due to friction (the friction causes fission).

Thus, the magnetic fields associated with a rotating black hole produce the Accretion Disk, where tremendous heat is produced.

*“A central black hole surrounded by a swirling mass of material which is constantly being fed from outside and heated up by collision. These are called ‘Quasars’. As much as 20% of this whirlpool mass can be turned into energy. This is how a quasar can shine for a hundred million years or more while devouring the heart of a galaxy”*

– *The Life and Death of Stars* by Geoffrey Bath in *The Encyclopedia of Space Travel and Astronomy*, edited by John Man

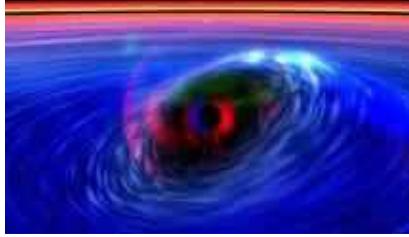


FIGURE 3.14: Black Hole

*“Quasars come in a variety of shapes and size, sometimes with a radio structure spreading across millions of light years, but all of them deriving their energy from some tiny central source, which may produce bursts of energy up to ten thousand times the energy of all the stars in our Milky Way galaxy put together. Einstein’s most famous equation  $E = mc^2$  tells us how much energy could be obtained by converting all of a mass into energy and assuming that only a fraction of this mass-energy is being liberated in the quasars. We know that the total mass involved must be much more than a million times the mass of the Sun. Yet it is typically squeezed with in a volume of space no larger across than our solar system, the size of the largest stars. Such an object can only be a giant black hole. But black holes in theory, absorb radiation; they cannot shine as the brightest phenomena in the universe. But there is no paradox. It is not the quasar that shines; it is the matter around it.”*

*- The Life and Death of Stars by Geoffrey Bath in The Encyclopedia of Space Travel and Astronomy, edited by John Man*

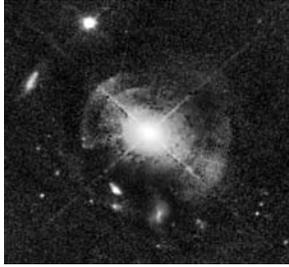


FIGURE 3.15: Quasar MC2 1635+119

*“The whole picture hangs together in a thoroughly satisfactory way, given the reality of black holes and the efficiency with which gravity can turn a million or so solar mass into energy. Of course, the energies are like nothing we experience on the Earth. But why should they be? The universe is not only much bigger than we can really imagine, it is unimaginably more violent than anything conceived of only a few years ago”.*

– *The Life and Death of Stars* by Geoffrey Bath in *The Encyclopedia of Space Travel and Astronomy*, edited by John Man

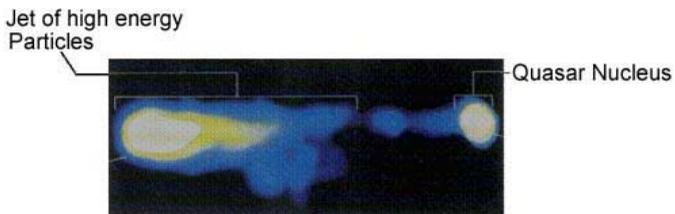


FIGURE 3.16: Quasar (3C273)

A black hole surrounded by the swirling mass of material producing immense heat through friction is called a Quasar. The Quasars are the most violent objects in the Universe.

It is thought that every galaxy harbors a super-massive black hole in its central hub. The central hubs are associated with hot gas in violent motion and immense radiation. It is the ‘gulf of doom’ where the stars fall, get destroyed, and produce devastating energy.

#### **4. The Objects of Hell**

The following Verses from the Quran prove the quasars and the galaxies as the objects of hell.

##### **4a. Mother of the Sinner**

“But he whose balance will be light,  
his mother will be endless hole. And  
what will explain to thee what this is?  
A fire blazing fiercely”

[Al Quran 101: 8–11]

The Endless hole that is blazing with fierce fire should be a quasar. The fierce fire is produced in the hot gas in violent motion. It may be the central super-massive black hole of a galaxy as well.

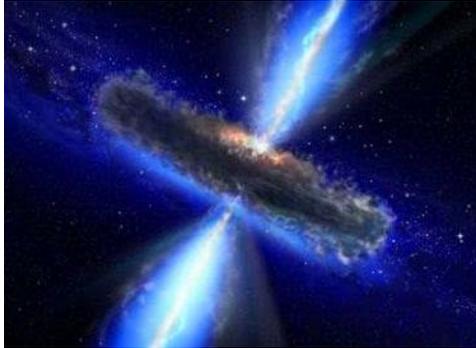


FIGURE 3.17: Quasar

In this Universe, only a black hole can be termed as the “endless hole”. It is a perfect place to arrest a jinni. A nearby planet can be an abode of a sinful human.



FIGURE 3.18: Quasar

#### **4b. No means to Turn Away**

A sinner will be put into an object close to a black hole so that he can feel the heat. The planet will be so

close to the black hole that the sinner will always be in tension that his object may fall into the intense gravitational spiral of the black hole:

“One Day He will say, "Call on those whom you thought to be My partners," and they will call on them, but they will not listen to them. And We shall set a Crucible (*Mawbiqan*) between them, and the sinful shall see the fire and apprehend that they have to fall therein—no means will they find to turn away from there.”

[Al Quran 18: 52-53]

The gravitational spiral leads an object into the Accretion Disk. The objects, falling into the Accretion Disk, get destroyed due to friction and produce devastating energy.

In above Verse, the “Accretion Disk” is called “Crucible” (*Mawbiqan*). A crucible is a container in which metals or other substances are melted, or subjected to very high temperatures.



FIGURE 3.19: Accretion Disc / a Crucible

In one galaxy, there will be one human. But, there will be a good number of other creatures, such as poisonous snakes, insects, and jinns, specially the jinni who was invested by Iblis (Chief Satan) to misguide him, and the idol-jinns that he used to worship, and so forth. The jinns will not answer his call because they will be punished in a different dimension beyond the black hole.

We cannot see a complete galaxy. We see objects of visible (baryonic) matter only. In a galaxy, there is dark matter, minimum five times more than the visible matter.

The visible matter and the antimatter (antimatter is kind of dark matter) form two different dimensions of a galaxy. The same gravitational force binds the matter and the antimatter. So, a black hole can be viewed as a door connecting the dimensions.

The jinns, created from anti-matter, live in the dimension of antimatter; humans live in the dimension of visible matter. If the jinns are called, they are supposed to come out through the black hole, but they will not be able to come out easily, because of the *Mawbiqan* (Crucible / Accretion Disk).

How a human can call an anti-creature (a jinni)? But, in above Verses, Allah is asking the hell dweller to call the jinns. It means that a human has potential ability to call them, or he will have such ability after the resurrection. One day the hell dwellers will be able to use them as allies:

“...We made the satans (jinns) friends  
to those without faith.”

[Al Quran 7:27]

“...I will fill hell with jinns and men  
all together” [Al Quran 11:119]

“...I will fill hell with jinns and men  
all together” [Al Quran 32:13]

A human nafs (soul) is a combination of unknown force fields. Some of the force fields can interact with both matter and anti-matter, as gravitational force can interact with both matter and anti-matter. So, a human may obtain the soul aided vision (third-eye-vision) suitable to see the anti-creatures.

The nafs of a human spreads throughout his body, and it has vital points called *Latifa / Chakra*. The vital point of the forehead will work as the third eye (human soul is deliberately discussed in Section-10 of Chapter-6).

A person will be a Vicegerent of God over a whole galaxy, but a jinni does not obey so easily. Satan, a Jinni, denied to prostrate himself before Adam.

#### **4c. The Mighty Adjuration**

“But nay, I swear by the Houses of  
Stars (Mawaqin-Nujumi / Galaxies).

And, indeed it surely a swear if you know great” [Al Quran 56: 75–76]

The stars are not haphazardly scattered throughout the space; they are collected into houses called galaxies. So, “Mawaqin-Nujumi” (Houses of Stars) means “Galaxies”.

There are billions of galaxies in the Universe. We live in the Milky Way galaxy. Then why, in above Verse, Allah is trying to scare us by pointing out the galaxies?

There could be no other reason but that many humans will be destined on the Day of Judgment to live in those galaxies forever.

A sinner will be posted alone in a galaxy as a vicegerent of God. But, he will be a forgotten vicegerent. He will not get any divine help. He will be in pain due to the very nature of his abode.

Humans are vicegerents of God by birth. When Allah intended to create Adam, He did not say, “I am going to create a new species.” He said, “*Behold, thy Lord said to the angels, “I will create a vicegerent on a land”*” [Al Quran 2:30]. In this Verse, “land” does not mean Planet Earth; all objects of the universes are lands. The good ones will be vicegerents of God in the good objects of the Jannaat, and the bad ones will be vicegerents of God in the bad objects of the Samawaat (this universe).

Every galaxy of this universe holds a super-massive black hole in its center. It is the protecting mother of the galaxy and of the sinner. A sinner,

placed in a violent object of the galaxy, will be in pain, but he will not die.

The exploding galaxies are called Seyfert Galaxies. The N-galaxies are more violent than the Seyferts. Observation shows that the amount of matter in the central hub determines how violent a galaxy should be.

*“The classic examples of exploding galaxies are called Seyfert galaxies. These galaxies were first identified in 1943 by Carl Seyfert, after whom they are named. He found that about one percent of all spiral galaxies have very insignificant spiral arms but very bright central regions. Such systems have now been studied across the spectrum. The observation shows that the radiation of the nucleus is produced by hot gas in violent motion with a central condensation, concentrating the mass of millions of Suns in a small volume”*

- *The Life and Death of Stars* by Geoffrey Bath in *The Encyclopedia of Space Travel and Astronomy*, edited by John Man



FIGURE 3.20: Potw1128 a Seyfert

Allah is not pushing humans into those objects—it is some humans who are moving over

there by following the satan jinns. Allah is Merciful; He will make them robust enough to survive over there. But a giant too feels pain.

#### **4d. That collects and hides**

“By no means! For it would be the Fire of Hell! Plucking out right to the skull! Inviting such as turn their backs and turn away their faces, and collect and hide it! [Al Quran 70: 15-18]

A black hole with its immensely powerful gravitational force pulls everything from the surrounding space, so it invites. It devours everything, so it collects!

The escape velocity of a black hole is so high that even the light cannot come out. An object fallen into a black hole gets hidden forever. So, a black hole collects and hides.

However, a sinner will not fall into a black hole. He will only feel its pull (and heat as well): “...*Inviting such as turn their backs and turn away their faces...!*”

In the life on the Earth, he used to collect and hide the wealth so that he doesn't have to spend it in charity. In the afterlife, he will have the object of like nature.

#### 4e. Fire of God

“Woe to every scandalmonger and  
backbiter!

Who piles up wealth and  
counts it.

Thinking that his wealth would  
make him last forever!

By no means! He will surely to  
be thrown into the Crusher.

And what will explain to thee  
what the Crusher is?

The Fire of God kindled, which  
mount up to the Hearts.

Verily, it upon them closed  
over in columns extended.”

[Al Quran 104]

In above Verses, the “Accretion Disk” is called the “Crusher” where falling objects get crushed and swirl around the black hole in a violent speed, and produce devastating fire due to friction.

The fire is produced due to intense gravitational force of a black hole. The gravitational force is an extended elementary soul (ruh) of Allah. So, in the above Verses, the “Fire” is called “Fire of God” (Soul of God is discussed in Chapter-1).

The burning matter and energies erupt through the contours of the magnetic fields associated with the rotating black hole. Thus, the Verse says: “*Verily, it upon them closed over in columns extended.*”

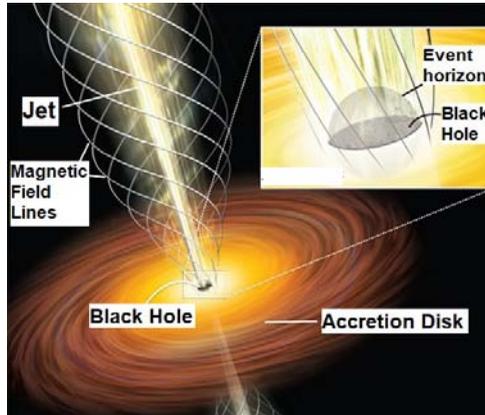


FIGURE 3.21: Column of Magnetic Field

There will be no object to hide.

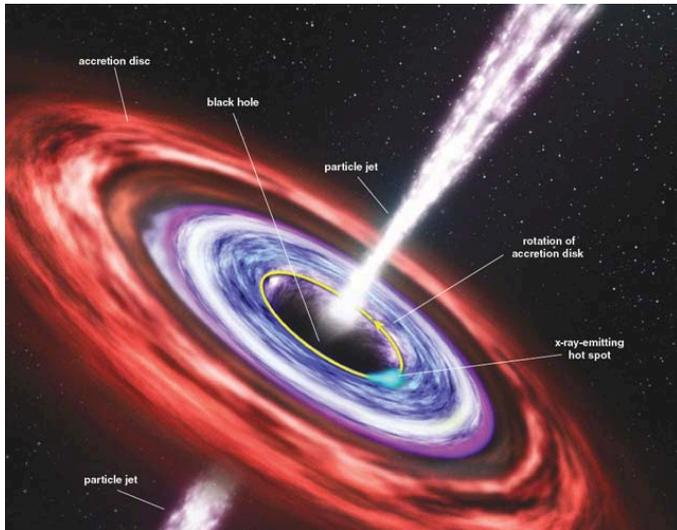


FIGURE 3.22: “closed over in columns extended.”

## 5. The Objects of Hell, as said in the Hadith

In the following, I have discussed several Hadith indicating galaxies as the objects of hell:

### 5a. The Boundary of Hell

The Hadith says that the boundary of hell will be four thick barriers of fire:

“Boundary of the hell will be four thick barriers of fire. Width of each barrier will be a distance of 40 years”  
[Tirmizi]

A rotating super-massive black hole may spread layers of magnetic fields; the hot gas spreading in the fields may produce the barriers of fire.



FIGURE 3.23: Quasar

“They shall have layers of fire above them and layers below them; with this

does God warn off his servants: "O My Servants! Then fear ye Me!"

[Al Quran 39:16]

A spiral galaxy has three basic components: nucleus or central bulge, disc with spiral arms, and halo containing globular clusters. No place is safe.

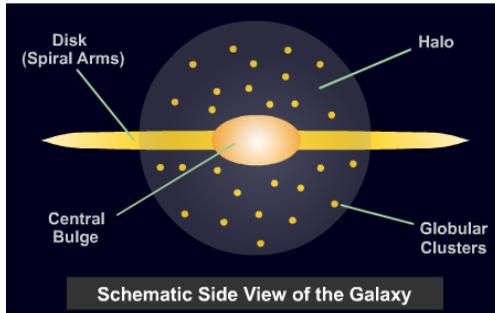


FIGURE 3.24: Three Basic Components of a Spiral Galaxy

A hell dweller will live forever. One day he may be able to make a space ship and move to an object far away from the central hub, but no object is shady and protecting against the sparks produced by the central super-massive black hole. Those will throw sparks as forts over him.

So, a hell dweller has no reason to be happy that he is going to own a complete galaxy as a vicegerent of God. A forgotten Vicegerent will be in great difficulties.

“Proceed to that which ye used to reject as false! Proceed to a shadow having three columns, no shade of coolness and is of no use against the fierce Blaze. Indeed, it throws about sparks as Forts, as if there were yellow camels.” [Al Quran 77: 29-33]

In old times, if one were standing beside a busy trade route, one would see endless camels coming day and night. Such will be the sparks of fire, coming endlessly.

In above Verse, the ‘*shadow*’ represents the cooler zones of a galaxy. For example, the Earth is in the shadow because the central hub of the Milky Way galaxy or any other Quasar cannot shower on the Earth directly. There are obstructing objects. But, the abode of a hell-dweller will be under ‘*three columns*’ that will throw ‘*sparks*’ from the ‘*fierce blaze*’ produced in the Accretion Disk.

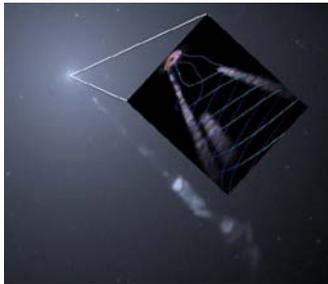


FIGURE 3.25: Hubble Telescope observation of the M87 jets from the Accretion Disk [Turbulent Mass Injection Process]

## **5b. Hot and Cold Region**

“In the hell, the people suffering from the extreme heat will ask for cold; then they will be thrown into the extreme cold” [Hadith]

So, the hell is not full of fire only; it has cold regions too. The black hole itself is absolutely cold, when the Accretion Disk is extremely hot.

## **5c. One part of hell eats another part**

“Hell urges to Allah saying that: ‘O Lord, my one part has eaten up another part’. Then Allah allows it to expel two breathes—one is in the summer, another is in the winter. The extreme heat or cold we may observe in a summer or in a winter are caused due to those breathes.” [Hadith]

The objects that seem breathing are known as the “Pulsating Stars”. The brightness of a Pulsating Star increases and decreases periodically, like a beacon in the space. These objects (pulsars) have peculiar structures with neutron stars in their centers.

In these breathing objects, one part eats another part by matter antimatter interaction and produce energy.

The surface layers of the pulsars dam up the photons in their flight. The barrier presented by the layers causes the temperature and pressure to build up. It expands the layers. In the expanded state, the radiation escapes easily, and the brightness of the star increases rapidly to the pick. Once the radiation is released, the outer layers cool and collapse.

There are various classes of Pulsating Stars including the RR Lyrae, the Mira Variables, and the Cepheids. The RR Lyrae oscillate in a period of less than a day, the Cepheids oscillate in a typical period of five days, whereas the Mira Variables oscillate in a period as long as several years.

If a summer is too hot, it may be because of these objects.

The objects radiate anti-particles as well, which may make some of the winters colder than usual.

However, all stars breath. The Sun breaths in a cycle of eleven and half years, but one part of the Sun does not eat another part—it is not divided in matter and anti-matter zones.

## **5d. Fuel of Hell**

According to the Quran and Hadith, stones and iron are fuels of hell.

“...Then fear the fire whose fuel is  
Men and Stones...” [Al Quran 2:24]

Here, it is interesting to notice that only black holes

and neutron stars can use iron and stones as fuels. It proves black holes and neutron stars as pivots of the objects of hell.

All stars cannot become black holes or neutron stars. They produce matter that will be used as the fuel of hell. On the Day of Judgment, the matter produced in the average stars (like the Sun) will be thrown into the hell, as fuel.

Hadith: “On the Day of Final Judgment, the Sun and the Moon will be thrown into hell”

[Mashnad-i-Ahmed]

It is mentioned in the Hadith that if a bucket of waste from the hell were thrown into the Earth, the Earth would be destroyed. A bucket of matter that can destroy the Earth is available around a black hole or neutron star only.

## **6. Hell in General**

The Verses of the Quran and the Hadith point out the galaxies as the objects of Hell. There are many kinds of objects in a galaxy. We have discussed Quasars, Pulsars, etc. But everybody will not be thrown into an extreme object. According to the Quran and Hadith, there are boiling water, trees (Zaqqum) with bitter fruits, poisonous snakes and insects in the hell. These things may be available in the planet like objects.

“These two antagonists dispute with each other about their Lord. But those who deny, for them will be cut out a garment of Fire. Over their heads will be poured out boiling water. With it will be scalded what is within their bodies as well as skins. In addition, there will be maces of iron (to) them. Every time they wish to get away from there from anguish, they will be forced back therein—and "Taste ye the Penalty of Burning!"

[Al Quran 22: 19-22]

“Is that the better entertainment, or the Tree of Zaqqum?

For We have truly made it a trial for the wrong-doers.

For it is a tree that springs out of the bottom of Hell-Fire.

The shoots of its fruit-stalks are like the heads of devils.

Truly they will eat thereof and fill their bellies therewith.

Then on top of that they will be given a mixture made of boiling water.

Then shall their return be to the Fire.

Truly they found their fathers on the wrong Path.

So, they were rushed down on their footsteps!

And truly before them many of  
the ancients went astray!”

[Al Quran 37: 62-71]

If an object is showered with the energy produced by a black hole, the object should be considered as an object of hell. In this sense, our Earth too is an object of hell, because radiations produced by the black holes come here too. Our Earth is an object in the region of Jahannam (a level of hell). However, the Earth has got protections at present.

Hadith: “At that time, the lands  
(planets) and its rivers will be full of  
fire. Present region of the world will  
be the region of Jahannam”

[Tafsir-e-Mareful Quran]

A hell-man will be thrown into a region of his galaxy according to the verdict of punishment. Each object of hell (each galaxy) is divided in seven levels basing on the degree of punishment; these are: Hawiyah, Sayeer, Jaheem, Hutamah, Saqqar, Ladha, Jahannam. Each level has a gate of entry. A gate of entry has the same name.

A person getting the verdict of highest punishment will be thrown into “Hawiyah”. “Hawiyah” is an Arabic word. It is the name of the lowest level. “Hawiyah” means “endless hole”. Therefore, the central super-massive black hole of a

galaxy and its surrounding space is Hawiyah. We know that it is the most violent region of a galaxy.

The names, Saeer (Blaze), Jaheem (Blazing Fire), Hutamah (Crushing Fire), and so on indicate that these are levels radiating from the central super-massive black hole.

The more is the distance from the central super-massive black hole, the less is the extremity. So, the outermost region of a galaxy, Jahannam, is the least punishing zone.

The final destination, Hell or Jannaat, will be decided according to the Faith. If a person is destined to the Hell, his level of sin will indicate in which level of his galaxy he deserves to fall. There are millions of objects in a galaxy. Every object is eagerly waiting to receive him.

There will be one man in a galaxy, or in a group of galaxies.

## **7. Living in the Hell**

How can one survive in such a violent object?

The Quran indicates that a person will not survive only; one day the hell will be his home:

“If then they have patience, the Fire will be a home for them! And if they beg to be received into favor, into favor will they not be received. And We have destined for them intimate companions who made alluring to them what was before them and behind

them, and the sentence among the previous generations of jinns and men who have passed away is proved against them; for they are utterly lost.”

[Al Quran 41: 24–25]

On the Day of Judgment, each person will be resurrected with fully matured soul, permanently fixed in his body. His body will be suitable for the object where he will live:

“Do ye then see what ye throw out (sperm and ovum carrying haploid chromosomes / Double Helix DNAs)? Is it ye who create it, or are We the Creators?

We have decreed Death to be your common lot, and We are not to be frustrated from changing your forms and creating you in that ye know not.

And ye certainly know already the first form of creation; why then do ye not celebrate His praises?”

[Al Quran 56: 58-62]

It is indicated in the Hadith that a person in hell will be huge in size. He will be hundreds of kilometers tall. He will need a space from Makkah to Madinah to sit. His skin will be very thick.

The jobs of ninety-eight percent DNA Double Helix Molecule are unknown. And we see on the Earth, how many varieties of living creatures the

DNA Molecules can produce! The genomes differ in the code only.

So, it is possible to create giants with the same DNA Double Helix Molecules [The DNA Double Helix is discussed in Section-3 of Chapter-31].

A human will be created suitable for the object where he will live. Hadith says that if a person from the hell were put into the fire of the Earth, he would fall sleeping due to excessive comfort.

A hell-dweller's skin will burn in the hell, but it will regenerate spontaneously (the act of Allah will look natural):

“Those who reject our Signs, We shall soon cast into the Fire. As often as their skins are roasted through, We shall change them for fresh skins that they may taste the penalty; for God is Exalted in Power, Wise.”

[Al Quran 4:56]

## **8. Conclusion**

*“Most quasars must now be dead, their central black holes starved of matter to swallow up and turn into energy, so they sit quietly at the center of galaxies. Some like Centaurus A, are dying. Some holes never quite got enough mass together to become quasars but have had active past. The universe is a violent place, but less violent then it was, and getting less violent still as time goes by, will it fed away into an ever expanding sea of ever quieter galaxies, with the*

*light of the stars and galaxies going out one by one until all that is left is a void filled with a scattering of black holes? Or, some more interesting fate is prospect?"*

– *To the Edge of Eternity* by John Gribbin in  
The Encyclopedia of Space Travel and Astronomy,  
edited by John Man

“We created not the Skies and Lands  
and all between them merely in sport.  
We created them not except for just  
ends. But most of them do not  
understand. Verily the day of sorting  
out is the time appointed for all of  
them.” [Al Quran 44: 38–39]

It is the Day of Final Judgment when people will be sorted out. Some will be shifted to the Jannaat, which is a different universe altogether.

But, the Universe (Samawaat) has not been created in sport. Many will be left here to live in the galaxies (Objects of Hell) forever.

### **8a. On the Day of Judgment**

The Universe is expanding—astronomers observe the galaxies receding. They think that the Universe may contract in future. But, in light of the Quran, the Universe is already contracting by rolling up the space from the outermost boundary (Seventh Sky). It is not possible to visualize the rolling space. I have discussed a likely process in Section-7 of Chapter-30.

Finally, the Skies will be rolled up compactly. In the extremely squeezed universe (Skies), the matter will perish, but the information (photons) will survive.

Thus, the objects of hell will survive as information. After the Judgment, when the Skies will be un-rolling, the objects (galaxies) will be reviving just by gaining the volumes of space. And, they will catch the sinners.

“The Striking Hour. What is the Striking? And what will make you know what the Striking is? It is a Day whereon mankind will be like moths scattered about, and the mountains will be like carded wool.

Then as for him whose balance will be heavy, he will live a pleasant life.

But he whose balance will be light, his mother will be endless hole (black hole, released from the rolled up Skies). And what will explain to thee what this is? A fire blazing fiercely.”

[Al Quran 101]

[I have discussed the Resurrection and the Final Judgment deliberately in Section-6 of Chapter-39.]

"Our Lord! We have heard the call of one calling to Faith: Believe you in the Lord, and we have believed. Our Lord! Forgive us our sins, blot out from us our iniquities, and

take to Yourself our souls in the company of the righteous. Our Lord! Grant us what You did promise unto us through Your apostles and save us from shame on the Day of Judgment; for You never break Your promise".

And their Lord has accepted of them and answered them: "Never will I suffer to be lost the work of any of you, be he male or female; you are members one of another. Those who have left their homes, or been driven out from there, or suffered harm in My cause, or fought or been slain, verily, I will blot out from them their iniquities and admit them into Jannaat with rivers flowing beneath;" a reward from the presence of Allah; and from His presence is the best of rewards.

Let not the strutting about of the unbelievers through the land deceive you. Little is it for enjoyment. Their ultimate abode is Hell—what an evil bed! On the other hand, for those who fear their Lord are Jannaat with rivers flowing beneath; therein are they to dwell—a gift from the presence of Allah, and that which is in the presence of Allah is the best for the righteous.

And there are certainly among the People of the Book those who believe in Allah, in the revelation to you, and in the revelation to them, bowing in humility to Allah; they will not sell the Verses of Allah for a miserable gain; for them is a reward with their Lord; and Allah is swift in account.

O you who believe, persevere in patience and constancy—vie in such perseverance; strengthen each other and fear Allah that you may prosper.

## Chapter 4 [Al-Nisa' THE WOMEN]

**Aim of the Chapter:** To form Islamic Family and Society, and to keep the societies effective by neutralizing the Hypocrites.

### Introduction

The running Part of the Quran (Chapter-2 to Chapter-9 / Hudan lil Muttaqin / Guidance for the Guards) developed the followers step by step. Finally, in the last Chapter (Chapter-9 / Surah Tawbah), it declared all out war against the Pagans that were living in the Home of Ummah extending from Morocco to the Pamirs.

Previously, Chapter-2 established the *Ummah* and gave out its Laws. Chapter-3 motivated Muslims to fight against the Christians that were ruling the Targeted Area, Morocco to the Pamirs.

This Chapter (Chapter-4) formed Islamic Family by giving out the rules of marriage, divorce, inheritance, etc., and delivered necessary instructions to form the Islamic Society.

The Hypocrites are misguided individuals of an Islamic Society, but known as Muslims. They harm from inside. Before confronting the Romans and the Persians, they were to be neutralized. The characters of the Hypocrites were discussed in Chapter-2. This Chapter discussed the ways to identify them and declared war: "...slay them wherever you find them...".

But, the Hypocrites were not killed, because Prophet (pbuh) did not give the executive order of war. He said, '*If I kill them, the people will say that Muhammad kills his own*

*man'* (or words to this effect). It means that the executive order of Islamic Leadership is necessary to fight a battle of the Furqan.

However, the declaration of war had some effects- the Hypocrites got demoralized and neutralized to some extent.

## **Structure of the Surah**

The Chapter can be divided in five Segments:

The First Segment establishes the Islamic Family.

The Second Segment outlines the Islamic Society.

The Third Segment declares war against the Hypocrites.

The Fourth Segment alerts against the Jewish propaganda.

The Fifth Segment clears a doubt about Inheritance.

## **Flowchart of the Tafsir**

### **Segment 1: Forming Islamic Family**

Section 1 [Verse 1]: Women are Primarily Mothers

Section 2 [Verse 2-4]: Marriage

Section 3 [Verse 5-6]: Releasing the Property of the Orphans

Section 4 [Verse 7-14]: Rules of Inheritance

Section 5 [Verse 15-21]: Guilt of Lewdness

Section 6 [Verse 22-28]: Lawful to Marry

### **Segment 2: Forming Islamic Society**

Section 7 [Verse 29-32]: Socio-Economic Safety—Scope of Socialism and Communism is Closed.

Section 8 [Verse 33]: Portion of Brotherhood  
Section 9 [Verse 34-35]: Divorce through Social Involvement  
Section 10 [Verse 36-42]: Serve Allah—Spend for Needy  
Section 11 [Verse 43]: Washing and *Tayyammum*

Section 12 [Verse 44-50]: Spoiling the Society for Business

### **Segment 3: Jihad against Hypocrites**

Section 13 [Verse 51-58]: A call to Islamic Leadership  
Section 14 [Verse 59-70]: Obey Islamic Leadership; Reject Taghuts (Powers) and Hypocrites.  
Section 15 [Verse 71-76]: Falling out Hypocrites  
Section 16 [Verse 77-85]: Hypocrites surface on the call of Jihad.  
Section 17 [Verse 86]: Return Greeting to a Hypocrite  
Section 18 [Verse 87-91]: Slay them (Hypocrites) wherever you find them  
Section 19 [Verse 92-93]: Killing a Believer by Mistake  
Section 20 [Verse 94]: Be cautious in Discrimination  
Section 21 [Verse 95-96]: Do not think all except those who do Jihad as Hypocrites.  
Section 22 [Verse 97-100]: No doubt on the people who have forsaken their homes in the cause of Allah  
Section 23 [Verse 101-104]: Prayer in March  
Section 24 [Verse 105-126]: Follow the Messenger / Islamic Leadership obediently—no argument in favor of Hypocrites  
Section 25 [Verse 127-135]: Women and Orphans  
Section 26 [Verse 136-149]: General Guidance about the Hypocrites

## **Segment 4: A Call to Christians**

Section 27 [Verse 150-162]: Jews are not Credible

Section 28 [Verse 163-170]: Muhammad was a Real  
Messenger

Section 29 [Verse 171-175]: The Call to Christians

## **Segment 5: Clearing Doubt**

Section 30 [Verse 176]: Al-Kalalah

# **Tafsir of the Surah**

## **Segment 1**

### **Forming Islamic Family**

#### **Section-1 of Chapter-4 [Verse 1]: Women are Primarily Mothers**

O mankind, reverence your Guardian-Lord Who created you from a Soul Single (Nafsin-Wahidatin / GUT Force+). Created from it its (human's) Pair (DNA Double Helix), and from both of them (from both DNA strands) countless men and women. Fear Allah, through whom you demand, and the wombs; for Allah ever watches over you.

#### **Remarks:**

Allah created everything, including the human nafses, from a Soul Single (Nafsin-Wahidatin). It was a huge composite soul (GUT Force+), created from known

and unknown force fields (elementary souls / ruhhs). Allah provided it from His own Nafs.

Later, Allah created a Pair (DNA Double Helix) for the nafs of Adam. From the strands of the DNA Double Helix, he has created countless men and women.

So, when one demands a child, one should fear Allah and the womb where Allah shapes up the child.

## **Section-2 of Chapter-4 [Verse 2-4]: Marriage**

To orphans restore their property, nor substitute worthless things for good ones and devour not their substance with your own; for this is indeed a great sin.

### **Remarks:**

The Verses are talking about the marriage of widows who have children from their dead husbands. If one marries such a woman, one must not devour the property of her orphan children, which is left by their dead father [In light of the Quran, a child is orphan when his father is dead].

If one thinks that one will not be able to deal justly with the orphans, one should not marry the widow, having orphans.

If you fear that you shall not be able to deal justly with the orphans, marry women of your choice, two, or three, or four; but if you fear that you shall not be able to deal

justly, then only one, or that your right hands possess—that will be more suitable to prevent you from doing injustice.

And give the women their dower as a free gift, but if they of their own good pleasure remit any part of it to you, take it and enjoy it with right good cheer.

### **Remarks:**

The policy of “marrying four” can be deduced from the above Verses. But, according to the Verses, the policy is applicable to the ‘women of choice’ (principally virgins) only; widows, having orphans, are not counted. It means that one can marry four virgins and uncounted number of widows, having orphans.

A family that has more than one woman is happier. They can help each other in family works. It makes the home safe for the infants—if one is working, another can look after the infants. It frees the husband from additional home engagements; he becomes a better member of the society. It is prestigious for him as well.

However, policy of marrying more than one woman is suitable in the Muslim Societies mainly.

The word “...*but if you fear that you shall not be able to deal justly, then only one...*” relates to the economic condition mainly.

### **Section-3 of Chapter-4 [Verse 5-6]: Releasing the Property of the Orphans**

To those weak of understanding, make not over your property that Allah has made a means of support for you, but feed and clothe them therewith (with their dead father's property) and speak to them words of kindness and justice.

Make trial of orphans until they reach the age of marriage; if then you find sound judgment in them, release their property to them—but consume it not wastefully, nor in haste against their growing up.

If the guardian (step father) is well-off, let him claim no remuneration; but if he is poor, let him have for himself what is just and reasonable.

When you release their property to them, take witnesses in their presence. But all-sufficient is Allah in taking account.

#### **Remarks:**

Above Verses instruct a person who has married a widow, having children from her previous dead husband.

If an orphan shows the ability of sound judgment, his/her inherited properties have to be released. But, if he/she does not show the ability of sound judgment, then his/her properties should be released when he/she attains marriageable age. Once an orphan has attained marriageable age, no more trial can be done; as the Verses say: *“Make trial of orphans until they reach the age of marriage...”*

### **Note:**

A girl attains marriageable age at 9 (Nine), because Allah gives her puberty by that age. Prophet (pbuh) brought Hazrat Aysha in his house at the age of nine.

The fixing of marriageable age at 9 (nine) is good for the following reasons too:

- It increases population.
- It reduces the burden of poor fathers.
- It keeps society clean. If a girl grows older than nine, she is likely to fall in illegal love.

A girl should normally remain in the house and should go outside in hijab. It is the responsibility of her parents, relatives and society to arrange her marriage.

## **Section-4 of Chapter-4 [Verse 7-14]: Rules of Inheritance**

### **4a. General Guideline**

For men is a share of what the parents and close relatives leave, and for women is a share of what the parents and close relatives leave—be it little or much, an obligatory share.

### **Remarks:**

The Verses give the rules of inheritance.

The Verse dictates that the share of men (son) and women (daughter) are to be divided after giving

the shares of dead person's parents and close relatives (wife / husband) from the overall property.

It means that while dividing the property following sequence is to be followed (otherwise there will be mismatch in calculation).

- Step-1: Total Property – Payment of Legacies and Debts – Share of Parents = Leftover Property (1)
- Step-2: Left-over Property (1) – Share of Close Relative (wives / husband) = Leftover Property (2)
- Step-3: Leftover Property (2) is to be divided among men (sons) and women (daughters) as it is instructed subsequently. The sons and daughters should be biological children.

**Note:**

In above Verses “close relatives” should mean wife/husband of the dead person. However, the word “close relatives” is used probably to include a slave-woman, if she has bore a child of the dead person. Then, she gets the share like a wife, and her child / children like son(s)/daughter(s).

And when relatives and orphans and the needy are present in the division, then provide for them out of the estate and speak to them words of appropriate kindness.

### **Remarks:**

Morally, nobody has right to expend from the property of a deceased person. If a wife / son / daughter of the deceased person expends an amount of wealth, the amount should be curtailed from his / her share of inheritance.

But, once a person dies, many relatives, orphans and needy people come to visit. Who will feed them?

Therefore, in above Verse, Allah has given permission to expend from the property of deceased person. Relatives, orphans, and the needy can be fed from the deceased person's property.

### **4b. Appointment of Judges**

Let those (disposing of an estate) have the same fear in their minds as they would have for their own if they had left a helpless family behind. Let them fear Allah and speak words appropriate.

Those who unjustly eat up the property of orphans, eat up a Fire into their own bodies. They will soon be enduring a Blazing Fire!

### **Remarks:**

It is an advice to those who would judge the distribution of property. The inheritors should appoint the Judges mutually, or the Local Leadership will appoint them. The Islamic Local Leadership is centered in the Village / Community Mosque.

In these Verses, the Judges are instructed to safeguard the interest of the family left behind by the dead person. Family means husband, wife and children. Dependent parents are also parts of the family. But if the parents are rich and living separately, they may not be considered as a part. However, their shares must be given.

Though the shares of inheritors are specified, these Verses give the Judges limited power to favor the members of the deceased person's family in terms of choice of properties, but not in terms of value.

#### **4c. Disposal of Property**

Allah directs you as regards your children's: to the male, a portion equal to that of two females; if only females, two or more, their share is two-thirds of the inheritance; if only one, her share is a half.

For parents, a sixth share of the inheritance to each if the deceased left son. If no son and the parents are the heirs, the mother has a third; if the deceased left brothers, the mother has a sixth—after the payment of legacies and debts.

You know not whether your parents or your children are nearest to you in benefit. These are settled portions, ordained by Allah; and Allah is All-Knowing, All-Wise.

In what your wives leave, your share is a half if they leave no son; but if they leave a son, you get a fourth—after payment of legacies and debts.

In what you leave, their share is a fourth if you leave no son; but if you leave a son, they get an eighth—after payment of legacies and debts.

If the man or woman whose inheritance is in question was left in *Kalalah* but has left a brother or a sister, each one of the two gets a sixth; but if more than two, they share in a third—after payment of legacies and debts so that no loss is caused (to anyone).

Thus, is it ordained by Allah; and Allah is All-Knowing, Most Forbearing.

### **Remarks:**

Above Verses discuss children's share, parents' share, husband's share and wife's share sequentially.

The Verses also discuss the shares of brothers and sisters in case the inheritance is left in *Kalalah* (*Kalalah* is discussed subsequently).

For clear explanation, I have broken the Verses in 11 parts, as below:

1. Children's Share: Serial 1 (1a to 1c)
2. Parents' Share: Serial 2 (2a to 2c)
3. Husband's Share: Serial 3 (3a and 3b)
4. Wife's Share: Serial 4 (4a and 4b)
5. *Kalalah*: Serial 5 to 9 (Serial 5 is here, and serial 6 to 9 are in the last Verse of this Surah)

### **1. Children's Share:**

*Allah directs you as regards your children's:*

Following three points, from serial 1a to serial 1c, describe the children's share:

**1a.** *“to the male, a portion equal to that of two females”:*

In this case, deceased person has left son(s) and daughter(s). A son and a daughter get at the ratio of 2:1. For example, if there are three sons and two daughters, the property is divided in eight parts—each son get two parts, and each daughter gets one part.

This division of 2:1 is made after the payment of legacies and debts, and after giving the shares of deceased person's parents and wife/wives as under:

**1a-I.** Parents are given  $\frac{1}{6}$  of total property (after payment of the legacies and debts) as narrated in serial 2a below.

**1a-II.** Wife/Wives are given  $\frac{1}{8}$  of the total property (after payment of the Parents' Share), as instructed in serial 4b below.

**1b.** *“if only females, two or more, their share is two-thirds of the inheritance”:*

In this case, deceased person has not left any son. He has left two or more females. Here, the females may be deceased person's wives and daughter(s), e.g., one wife and one daughter. It may be wives only, e.g., two wives.

In this case, the daughter(s) and/or wives jointly get  $\frac{2}{3}$  of the total property (after payment of legacies and debts). The wife/wives get  $\frac{1}{4}$  of this  $\frac{2}{3}$ , as instructed in serial 4a below. The rest of  $\frac{2}{3}$  goes to the daughter(s).

If the females are wives only, they share the  $\frac{2}{3}$  equally.

Another  $\frac{1}{3}$  is divided among Father and Mother of deceased person as narrated in serial 2b or 2c below (Mother gets  $\frac{1}{3}$  of this  $\frac{1}{3}$  if deceased left no brother; but if deceased left brother, she gets  $\frac{1}{6}$  of this  $\frac{1}{3}$ ).

**1c. “if only one, her share is a half”:**

This “only one” is daughter or wife of the deceased person. She gets  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the total property (after payment of legacies and debts).

Another  $\frac{1}{2}$  is divided among Father and Mother of deceased person as directed in serial 2b or 2c below (Mother gets  $\frac{1}{3}$  of this  $\frac{1}{2}$  if deceased left no brother; but if deceased left brother, she gets  $\frac{1}{6}$  of this  $\frac{1}{2}$ ).

**2. Parents’ Share:**

Parent’s shares vary depending on the sex and the number of offspring deceased person has left. It is as under:

- If the deceased person has left son(s), or son(s) and daughter(s), Parents’ share is  $\frac{1}{6}$ .
- If the deceased person has left two or more females, Parents’ Share is  $\frac{1}{3}$ .
- If the deceased person has one female (a daughter or a wife), Parents’ Share is  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

In Parents’ share, the portions of father and mother are not always equal. How the share is to be divided is said below (from serial a to serial c):

**2a.** “*For parents, a sixth share of the inheritance to each if the deceased left son*”:

The serial is related to serial 1a above. Here “*a sixth share of the inheritance to each*” means that  $1/6$  of total property (after payment of legacies and debts) will be divided among the Parents—it is not  $1/6$  (Father) +  $1/6$  (Mother); it is  $1/12$  (Father) +  $1/12$  (Mother).

It is said in this way (*a sixth share of the inheritance to each*) to mean that each one of them should get a share of property—mother being a woman should not be deprived.

To justify above explanation,  $1/6+1/6$  makes  $1/3$ , which is the share of the parents if deceased leaves females only, as in serial 1b. Parents Share in both cases (serial 1a and 1b) should not be the same in the essence of these Verses.

In this case,  $1/6$  of total property (after payment of legacies and debts) is equally divided among deceased person’s father and mother, as the Verse say: *a sixth share of the inheritance to each*, (the Verse does not mention any ratio of division).

**2b.** “*if no son, and the parents are the heirs, the mother has a third*”:

Here, “*...the parents are the heirs...*” means that the deceased person has left no brother (justified in the next serial).

In this case, after the payment of legacies and debts, and after the payment of female’s share, the Parents get  $1/3$  or  $1/2$  of the property. Father gets  $2/3$  of  $1/3$  or  $1/2$ , and mother gets  $1/3$  of  $1/3$  or  $1/2$ .

**2c.** *“if the deceased left brothers, the mother has a sixth...”*:

In this case, father gets  $\frac{5}{6}$  of  $\frac{1}{3}$  or  $\frac{1}{2}$ , and mother gets  $\frac{1}{6}$  of  $\frac{1}{3}$  or  $\frac{1}{2}$  (after the payment of legacies and debts, and after the payment of female’s share).

### **3. Husband’s Share:**

**3a.** *“In what your wives leave, your share is a half if they leave no son;”*:

In this case, if the deceased woman has left two or more daughters, her Parents’ get  $\frac{1}{3}$  (to be divided as serial 2b or 2c). From the rest  $\frac{2}{3}$ , husband gets  $\frac{1}{2}$ . Rest goes to her daughters.

If she has left one daughter, her Parents’ get  $\frac{1}{2}$  (to be divided as serial 2b or 2c). From the rest  $\frac{1}{2}$ , husband gets  $\frac{1}{2}$ . Rest goes to her daughter.

If she leaves no son and no daughter,  $\frac{1}{2}$  goes to her parents (to be divided as serial 2b or 2c), and  $\frac{1}{2}$  goes to her husband.

Her property has to be divided after the payment of her legacies and debts.

**3b.** *“but if they leave a son, you get a fourth”*:

This point is like serial 1a. In this case, Parents’ of the deceased woman get  $\frac{1}{6}$  (to be divided equally). From the rest of property, her husband gets  $\frac{1}{4}$ . Rest goes to her son(s), or to her son(s) and daughter(s) at the ratio of 2:1

#### **4. Wife's Share:**

**4a.** *"In what you leave, their share is a fourth if you leave no son;"*:

In this case, if the deceased person has left daughters, wife/wives get the share from "Female's Property" as described in serial 1b. So, the wife/wives get  $\frac{1}{4}$  of  $\frac{2}{3}$ .

But, if he leaves no daughter as well, and if there is one wife, she gets  $\frac{1}{2}$  of total property (after payment of legacies and debts) as described in serial 1c; and if there are wives, they share  $\frac{2}{3}$  of the total property (after payment of legacies and debts) as described in serial 1b.

Rest of the property goes the Parents of the deceased person. The Parents' property is to be divided as serial 2b or 2c.

**4b.** *"but if you leave a son, they get an eighth"*:

If the deceased person leaves a son, the wives share one-eighth of total property (after payment of legacies and debts and after payment of Parents' Share). Rest remains with the son(s) and daughter(s).

Above 10 points covers all likely cases of a married man died.

Brothers and sisters of a deceased person are not given any property. Father and mother of the deceased person get the property. Once mother dies her property goes to her children that are brothers and sisters of deceased person, and once father dies his property goes to his children that include deceased person's step brothers and step sisters as well.

The last point (5) discussed below talks about a couple of special situations:

**5.** *“If the man or woman whose inheritance is in question was left in “Kalalah” but has left a brother or a sister, each one of the two gets a sixth; but if more than two, they share in a third;”*

Kalalah is a person whose father is not living. (Kalalah is broadly discussed in the last Verse of this Surah). So, it is a question, should father’s share go directly to his (father’s) children that are brother(s) and sister(s) of the deceased person, and may include step brother(s) and step sister(s) as well?

Yes, it goes according to this Verse as under:

**5a.** If deceased has left *“a brother or a sister, each one of two gets a sixth”*. So, 1/6 of Parents’ Share (1/6 of total property after paying legacies and debts) goes to brother or sister. So, brother or sister gets 1/6 of 1/6; rest (5/6 of 1/6) goes to deceased person’s mother (she is *‘one of two’*, as said in the Verse under discussion).

**5b.** If deceased person left more than one brother or sister, they share in a third, as it is said in the next part of Verse: *but if more than two, they share in a third.*

In this case, 1/3 of Parents’ Share (1/6 of total property after paying legacies and debts) goes to brothers and sisters. So, brothers and sisters get 1/3 of 1/6 (to be

divided at the rate of 2:1)]. Rest (2/3 of 1/6) goes to deceased person's mother, as it went in serial 5a.

This judgment justifies that if a son/daughter of a deceased person is already dead, and if the dead son/daughter has left offspring, then the share of the dead son/daughter is to be given to his/her offspring.

Those are limits set by Allah; those who obey Allah and His Messenger will be admitted to Jannaat with rivers flowing beneath to abide therein, and that will be the supreme achievement. But those who disobey Allah and His Messenger and transgress His limits will be admitted to a Fire to abide therein, and they shall have a humiliating punishment.

#### **Section-5 of Chapter-4 [Verse 15-21]: Guilt of Lewdness**

If any of your women are guilty of lewdness take the evidence of four witnesses from among you against them; and if they testify, confine them to houses until death do claim them, or Allah ordain for them some way.

#### **Remarks:**

The above Verse provides security to the family. If one's wife involves herself in lewdness, she should be dealt as the Verse dictates.

The above Verse mentions, "...or Allah ordain for them some way". Subsequently, in Surah Al Nur, the punishment of hundred stripes was

decreed for the guilt, and the way to release the guilty from the confinement was opened:

“The woman and the man guilty of adultery- flog each of them with a hundred stripes: Let not compassion move you in their case, in a matter prescribed by God, if ye believe in God and the Last Day: and let a party of the Believers witness their punishment.” [Al Quran 24:2]

If two among you are guilty of lewdness, punish them both. If they repent and amend, leave them alone; for Allah is Oft-Returning, Most Merciful.

**Remarks:**

The above Verse is talking about "two" (in some of the Books, it is wrongly translated as "two men"). These "two" may be one man and one woman involved in fornication, or two men involved in sodomy, or two women involved in the sexual activities (lesbian); or they may be involved in any other kind of lewdness. They should be punished.

The decree of punishment offers easy way to escape: Repent and Amend.

The punishment may be similar to the punishment prescribed in previous Verse, which is caning. But, as soon as an offender repents, he/she should be deemed amended and released.

Allah accepts the repentance of those who do evil in ignorance and repent soon afterwards; to them will Allah turn in mercy; for Allah is full of knowledge and wisdom.

Of no effect is the repentance of those who continue to do evil until death faces one of them and he says, "Now have I repented indeed", nor of those who die rejecting Faith; for them have We prepared a punishment most grievous.

O you who believe, you are forbidden to inherit women against their will. Nor should you treat them with harshness that you may take away part of the dower you have given them, except where they have been guilty of open lewdness; on the contrary live with them on a footing of kindness and equity. If you take a dislike to them, it may be that you dislike a thing, and Allah brings about through it a great deal of good.

But if you decide to take one wife in place of another, even if you had given the latter a whole treasure for dower, take not the least bit of it back. Would you take it by slander and manifest wrong? And how could you take it when you have gone in unto each other, and they have taken from you a solemn covenant?

#### **Section-6 of Chapter-4 [Verse 22-28]: Lawful to Marry**

And marry not women whom your fathers married, except what is past. It was shameful and odious; an abominable custom indeed.

Prohibited to you are: your mothers, daughters, sisters; father's sisters, mother's sisters; brother's daughters, sister's daughters; foster-mothers (who gave you suck), foster-sisters; your wives' mothers; your step-daughters under your guardianship—born of your wives to whom you have

gone in—no prohibition if you have not gone in; wives of your sons, proceeding from your loins; and two sisters in wedlock at one and the same time, except for what is past; for Allah is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful.

Also, women already married, except those whom your right hands possess. Thus, has Allah ordained against you.

Except for these, all others are lawful provided you seek with gifts (Mahr) from your property, desiring chastity, not lust. Seeing that you derive benefit from them, give them their dowers as prescribed, but if after a dower is prescribed agree mutually, there is no blame on you; and Allah is All-Knowing, All-Wise.

### **Remarks:**

The above Verses provide the scope of Mutah Marriage (verbal, temporary, private marriage), as the Verses say, *“Except for these, all others are lawful provided you seek with gifts (Mahr) from your property, desiring chastity, not lust...”*

The ‘giving of mahr (dowry)’ is the only ritual, prescribed by the Quran for a marriage. All other rituals, such as giving of formal proposal and accepting it in front of the witnesses, marrying the woman with her father’s permission, feeding people, preparing written deeds, etc., are traditional; so, optional from the religious point of view.

Therefore, if a man offers an amount of mahr (dowry) to a woman, and if she accepts it, they are married according to the Quran. They may fix a period after which the marriage tie would end.

The Mutah Marriage is practiced among Shia Muslims as a temporary, verbal, and private marriage.

If any of you have not the means wherewith to wed free believing women, they may wed believing girls from among those whom your right hands possess, and Allah has full knowledge about your faith; you are one from another. Wed them with the leave of their owners and give them their dowers according to what is reasonable. They should be chaste, not committing illegal sex, nor taking boy-friends. And after they are taken in wedlock, if they commit illegal sexual intercourse, their punishment is half that for free women. This is for those among you who fear sin, but it is better for you that you practise self-restraint. And Allah is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful.

Allah does wish to make clear to you, and show you the ways of those before you, and turn to you; and Allah is All-Knowing, All-Wise.

Allah does wish to turn to you, but the wish of those who follow their lusts is that you should turn away—far, far away. Allah wishes to lighten for you; and man was created weak.

## **Segment 2**

### **Forming Islamic Society**

**Section-7 of Chapter-4 [Verse 29-32]: Socio-Economic Safety—Scope of Socialism and Communism is closed.**

O you who believe, eat not up your property among yourselves unjustly, but let there be among you traffic and

trade by mutual consent, nor kill yourselves, for verily Allah has been to you Most Merciful!

If any do that in aggression and injustice, soon shall We cast them into the Fire, and easy it is for Allah.

If you avoid the most heinous of the things, which you are forbidden to do, We shall expel out of you all the evil in you, and admit you to a gate of great honor.

And wish not for the things in which Allah has made some of you to excel others—to men is allotted what they earn, and to women what they earn, but ask Allah of His bounty; for Allah has full knowledge of all things.

### **Remarks:**

Above Verses cancel Communism and Socialism by the words: *“O you who believe, eat not up your property among yourselves unjustly, but let there be among you traffic and trade by mutual consent”*.

A Muslim is forbidden to wish for the things in which Allah has made some to excel others, as the above Verses say: *“And wish not for the things in which Allah has made some of you to excel others...”* Therefore, in a Muslim society, there cannot be any kind of “class struggle”.

Ask Allah of His bounty; for Allah has full knowledge of all things.

### **Section-8 of Chapter-4 [Verse 33]: Portion of Brotherhood**

To everyone, We have appointed heirs of that left by parents and relatives. To those also with whom you have made a

pledge (of brotherhood); give their due portion; for truly Allah is witness to all things.

**Remarks:**

If one makes a pledged brother, he does not inherit a portion of property as a real brother. Actually, the making of pledged brother is discouraged in Islam.

However, the above Verse made a difference in case of *Ansans* and *Muhajirs*. They were to be considered as the real brothers in cases of the inheritance of property as well.

**Section-9 of Chapter-4 [Verse 34-35]: Divorce through Social Involvement**

Men are the protectors and maintainers of women, because Allah has given the one more than the other, and because they support them from their means.

Therefore, the righteous women are devoutly obedient and guard in absence what Allah orders them to guard.

As to those women on whose part you fear disloyalty and ill-conduct, admonish them, refuse to share their beds, beat them; but if they return to obedience, seek not against them means. Surely, Allah is Most High, Great.

If you fear a breach between them twain, appoint arbiters, one from his family and the other from hers. If they wish for peace, Allah will cause their reconciliation. Indeed, Allah has full knowledge and is acquainted with all things.

## **Remarks:**

There are three processes of divorce:

1. Divorce due to Abstention (discussed in Section 42 of Chapter 2)
2. Regular Divorce (discussed in Section 42 of Chapter 2)
3. Divorce through Social Involvement (discussed here)

## **Divorce through Social Involvement**

The Verses under discussion narrate the process of “Divorce through Social Involvement”.

If a man fears disloyalty and ill conduct on wife’s part, he is given right to control her by admonishing – refusing to share bed – and beating.

Beating is the last resort to correct a wife.

If it is reported to the Local Leadership (based in the Local Mosque) that one has beaten one’s wife, and if the Leadership fears breach between them, they appoint arbiters who decide—as the Verses say: “*If you fear a breach between them twain, appoint arbiters...*”

If the arbiters give the verdict of divorce, the husband gives divorce by formal uttering of the word, “Talak” (divorce) in front of wife, arbiters and genuine witnesses.

The husband cannot take her back until another person marries her and divorce her after consummation.

The divorced woman leave husbands house after three monthly periods (to confirm that she is not carrying). She may get herself engaged with another person and can formally marry after four months in total.

The Chapter (Surah) is establishing Islamic Family and Society. The Verses narrate the social responsibilities relating to divorce. The Social Leadership comes into play by deputing the arbiters when a person has beaten his wife.

Once the Islamic Local Leadership has mediated the divorce through arbiters, the divorce is considered final, and the divorcing man loses scope to take her back. Moreover, the divorcing man has performed the acts of First and Second Divorce informally, as he refused to share bed and beaten his wife.

**Note:**

1. Allah has permitted to beat wife in case one ‘fear disloyalty and ill-conduct’, as the Verses say: “...*on whose part you ‘fear disloyalty and ill-conduct’ admonish them, refuse to share their beds, beat them; but if they return to obedience, seek not against them means.*”

Allah has not permitted to beat for any other reason. If it is reported that one has beaten one’s wife for any other reason, such as for bad cooking or for disobeying day to day order, she should be helped by Local Islamic Leadership, and the offending husband should

be tried and punished in the concept of eye for an eye.

2. In cases of ‘Divorce due to Abstention’ or ‘Regular Divorce’, discussed in Section 42 of Chapter 2, the Local Islamic Leadership does not interfere.

### **Section-10 of Chapter-4 [Verse 36-42]: Serve Allah— Spend for Needy in the Society**

Serve Allah and join not any partners with Him and do good to parents, kinsfolk, orphans, those in need, neighbors who are near of kin, neighbors who are strangers, the companion by your side, the wayfarer, and what your right hands possess; verily, Allah loves not the arrogant, the vainglorious, those who are miserly, or enjoin miserliness on others, or hide the bounties, which Allah has bestowed on them—indeed We have prepared for those who resist Faith a punishment that steepens them in contempt—and those who spend of their substance to be seen of men but have no faith in Allah and the Last Day; and whoever takes Satan as an intimate, then what a dreadful intimate he has!

And what burden were it on them if they had faith in Allah and in the Last Day, and they spent out of what Allah has given them for sustenance; for Allah has full knowledge of them.

Allah is never unjust in the least degree; if there is any good, He doubles it and gives from Him a great reward.

How then, if We brought from each people a witness, and We brought you as a witness against these people! On that Day those who reject Faith and disobey the Messenger

will wish that they were buried in the earth, but they will never be able to hide a single fact from Allah!

### **Section-11** of Chapter-4 [**Verse 43**]: **Washing and Tayyammum**

O you who have believed, do not approach prayer (salat) while you are intoxicated, until you know what you are saying, and not aside (*junuban*), except passing a way, until you have washed.

#### **Remarks:**

This Surah is about Islamic Society. If a person wants to join in a social assembly of salat (jamaat), he must not be intoxicated. And he must wash the dirty parts of his body if he is in the state of *Junuban*.

Traditionally, “*junuban*” is explained as being “unclean due to ejaculation after mixing with the wife”.

If a person becomes dirty on the way to the assembly of prayer, he does not need to wash, as the Verses say: “...*except passing a way*...”. For example, if a speedy car smashes a dirty fluid comprising feces, urine, blood, etc., and if it spread on one’s body thoroughly, one need not to wash it, or stop going to the assembly of prayer; one can go and can pray without washing. The main point is that He must start from home clean.

## **Bathing or Washing:**

One may take bath after sexual intercourse and ejaculation. It is good to take bath. Some pious people suggest that not a single hair should remain dry, and add up mouth washing with gargling thrice, and nostril washing up to the soft interior thrice. Some more pious people suggest to do wudu before taking the bath.

But, Allah says to wash only. Then one may wash dirty parts of body and feel free. There are people passing cold nights who do not want to miss the prayer at dawn (Fazr Prayer). For them it is a Mercy of God. Allah is Wise and Compassionate.

A person is expected to be clean in general in the assembly of prayer (Salat). He should look clean, and irritating smell should not come from his body, because other people in the assembly may feel bad to sit beside him. It is better to use perfume.

And if you are ill, or on a journey, or one of you come after answering the call of nature or you have been in contact with woman and you find no water, perform "*Tayyammum*" with clean earth and rub therewith your faces and hands. For Allah does blot out sins and forgive again and again.

## **Remarks:**

The above Verses narrate the process and occasions of doing *Tayyammum*.

## **1. The Process and Occasions of Tayyammum**

One has to rub face and hands up to elbow with clean earth to make the Tayyammum. One has to make it in the following circumstances:

- If a person is ill, he can do Tayyammum to perform the salat, even if the water is available.
- If a person is on a journey, he can do Tayyammum to perform the salat, even if the water is available.
- If water is not available, a person can answer the nature's call and clean with any suitable thing available, such as stone, earth, toilet paper, cloth, etc. He can then do Tayyammum to perform the salat.
- If a person finds no water after sexual intercourse and ejaculation, he has to do Tayyammum to perform the salat.

## **2. The Situations of washing**

From the above discussions, we get two occasions when washing is required, if water is available:

- a. While 'coming back' after answering the nature's call.
- b. After sexual intercourse and ejaculation.

## **3. The points of confusion in washing**

3a. The Quran does not give a list of unclean substances; no substance is unclean. If one's semen is

sticking to one's wife's body, she can perform As-Salat without cleaning it, because semen is not unclean.

3b. If drops of urine, or bits of feces bounce back and stick to the body, one need not to wash it, because these are not declared as unclean substances.

3c. If drops of urine comes out unintentionally, there is no need to wash, because the person is not coming after answering the nature's call. The rule of washing is applicable to a person who is 'coming after answering the nature's call'.

He does not have to change the cloth as well, to perform As-Salat, because the Quran has not declared urine unclean.

3d. The Jews got themselves clarified about the cleanliness [related Verses of the Torah is given in Section-3 of Chapter-5]. It made their religion heavy and difficult to follow.

Cleanliness has hardly anything to do with the religion. The Quran, in above Verses, highlights the need of cleanliness for the assembly of people mainly.

#### **4. Cleanliness of Clothing**

A person should wear clean dress when he goes out of his house, especially when he starts from his house in the morning. He should keep himself clean:

“O thou wrapped up (in a mantle),  
arise and deliver thy warning! And thy  
Lord do thou magnify! And purify  
your clothing and avoid  
uncleanliness!” [Al Quran 74:1-5]

If a person had night pollution, he needs to wash his clothing to remove the stain.

### **Section-12 of Chapter-4 [Verse 44-50]: Spoiling the Society for Business**

Have you not turned your vision to those who were given a portion of the Book—they traffic in error and wish that you should lose the right path. But Allah has full knowledge of your enemies; Allah is enough for a Protector, and Allah is enough for a Helper.

#### **Remarks:**

There are people that create consumer societies for the sake of businesses. They try to destroy Islamic way of life to develop wrong culture that helps to produce consumer societies, where people purchase amenities and lead dazzling life. Thus, they traffic in error.

A group of capable people, who were given a portion of the Book, conduct big scale operations to spoil the societies. They think that everybody except them will go to hell. So, they find no problem in their acts. Their thoughts were correct before Jesus Christ

when they were the only Believers in the World. But, now the situation is different.

Anybody acting to harm the Muslims may have the curse of Allah. He has full knowledge of the enemies.

Of the Jews, there are those who displace words from their places, and say: "We hear, and we disobey", and "Hear, may you not hear", and "Ra'ina" with a twist of their tongues and a slander to Faith. If only they had said, "What hear, and we obey, and (you) do hear (the Prophet), and do look at us," it would have been better for them, and more proper. But God has cursed them for their unbelief, and but few of them will believe. O you People of the Book, believe in what We have revealed (Al Quran), confirming what was with you, before We change the face and fame of some beyond all recognition and turn them hind-wards, or curse them as We cursed the Sabbath breakers; for the decision of Allah must be carried out.

**Remarks:**

They cannot say: "Do look at us". Their societies are full of vices.

Allah forgives not that partners should be set up with Him, but He forgives anything else to whom He pleases. To set up partners with Allah is to devise a sin most heinous indeed.

Have you not turned your vision to those who claim sanctity for themselves? Nay, but Allah does sanctify whom He pleases. But never will they fail to receive justice in the

least little thing. Behold! How they invent a lie against Allah, but that by itself is a manifest sin!

### **Segment 3** **Jihad against Hypocrites**

#### **Section-13** of Chapter-4 [Verse 51-58]: **A call to Islamic Leadership**

Have you not turned your vision to those who were given a portion of the Book? They believe in sorcery and evil and say to the unbelievers that they are better guided in the way than the Believers! They are whom Allah has cursed, and those whom Allah has cursed, you will find have no one to help.

Have they a share in dominion or power? Behold, they give not a farthing to their fellow-men. Or do they envy mankind for what Allah has given them of his bounty? But We had already given the People of Abraham the Book and Wisdom and conferred upon them a great kingdom. Some of them believed; and some of them averted their faces from him, and enough is Hell for a burning fire.

Those who reject our Signs, We shall soon cast into the Fire; as often as their skins are roasted through, We shall change them for fresh skins that they may taste the penalty. Truly, Allah is Exalted in Power, Wise.

But those who believe and do deeds of righteousness, We shall soon admit to Jannaat with rivers flowing beneath; their eternal home. Therein shall they have companions pure and holy. We shall admit them to shades, cool and ever deepening.

Allah does command you to render back your trusts to those to whom they are due, and when you judge between

man and man that you judge with justice. Verily how excellent is the teaching, which He gives you! For Allah is He Who hears and sees all things.

**Remarks:**

Allah conferred upon the Jews a great kingdom; some of them believed, and some of them averted their faces from the Faith.

Muslims too were about to be given with a greater Empire, so Allah commands Islamic Leadership: *“Render back your trusts to those to whom they are due (to Muttaqin); and when you judge between man and man (may be a Muslim and a Jew) that you judge with justice”*.

A part of above Verses, *“as often as their skins are roasted through, We shall change them for fresh skins that they may taste the penalty”* is considered as a sign of the Quran being a divine Book. In those days, the people did not know that our skin has pain receptors (skin has different types of receptors like heat sensors, pressure sensors, etc.). If the skin is burnt to the third degree, one does not feel pain. So, the Verses say that the skin will be changed, as it will be roasted through, so that one can feel pain.

**Section-14 of Chapter-4 [Verse 59-70]: Obey Islamic Leadership; Reject Taghuts (Powers) and Hypocrites**

O you who believe, obey Allah and obey the Messenger and those charged with authority among you. If you differ in anything among yourselves, refer it to Allah and His

Messenger—if you do believe in Allah and the Last Day. That is best and most suitable for final determination.

Have you not turned your vision to those who declare that they believe in the revelations that have come to you and to those before you, and they wish to go for judgment to the Taghut, though they were ordered to reject him; and Satans wish is to lead them astray, far away.

When it is said to them, "Come to what Allah has revealed and to the Messenger" you see the hypocrites avert their faces from you in disgust. How then, when they are seized by misfortune because of the deeds which their hands have sent forth?

Then their come to you swearing by Allah, "We meant no more than good-will and conciliation!" Those men, Allah knows what is in their hearts, so keep clear of them; but admonish them and speak to them a word to reach their very souls.

We sent not a Messenger but to be obeyed in accordance with the will of Allah. If they had only, when they were unjust to themselves, come unto you and asked Allah's forgiveness, and the Messenger had asked forgiveness for them, they would have found Allah indeed Oft-returning, Most Merciful.

But no, by the Lord, they can have no Faith until they make you judge in all disputes between them and find in their souls no resistance against your decisions but accept them with the full conviction.

If We had ordered them to sacrifice their lives or to leave their homes, very few of them would have done it; but if they had done what they were told, it would have been best for them and would have gone farthest to strengthen their (faith), and We should then have given them from our

presence a great reward, and We should have shown them the Straight Way.

All who obey Allah and the Messenger are in the company of those on whom is the grace of Allah, of the Prophets, the Sincere, the Witnesses and the Righteous. Ah! What a beautiful fellowship! Such is the bounty from Allah, and sufficient is it that Allah knows all.

### **Remarks:**

The first line of this Section, “*O you who believe, obey Allah and obey the Messenger and those charged with authority among you*” is a guidance related to the Islamic Leadership.

Now, Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) is dead. The Highest Islamic Leadership / Caliph represents the Prophet (pbuh). So, Muslims should follow the Highest Islamic Leadership and the Leaders in his chain of command.

It is said in the above Verses, how ‘those charged with authority’ are to be obeyed: “*We sent not a Messenger but to be obeyed in accordance with the will of Allah.*” The will of Allah is reflected in the Quran.

A Leader away from the Islamic Leadership is a Taghut. Muslims should not go to a Taghut to settle a dispute.

Muslims should keep themselves clear from the people who are away from the Islamic Leadership and trying to establish peace in the society in their own way. They are hypocrites. Admonish them and speak to them a word to reach their very souls.

Section-7 of this Surah discards the possibility of establishing Socialism or Communism in the Muslim countries. This Section discards the possibility of establishing democracy.

In a poor country, the democracy produces a factory of thieves. People come in power for four to five years and start stealing Government money as fast as possible—they view *amanat* (people's wealth) as *ghanimat* (war booty). They are not wrong in their perspective, as they have captured the Government Machineries by moving through the hard path of politics.

In Arab countries, where people do not change their loyalty frequently, the democracy produces autocratic leaders. They are Taghuts if they are not following Islam. However, Arabs are honest people; the Leaders do not steal and transfer money to the foreign banks.

The Islamic Leadership may face occasional fall in national and international levels, but in village / community level, it should survive uninterruptedly. Islam has created societies centered by the mosques, which restrict the vices and develops the spirituality. In an Islamic Society, people leave in safety (safety from the vices), and in the afterlife they would be reaching Jannaat easily.

## **Section-15 of Chapter-4 [Verse 71-76]: Falling out Hypocrites**

O you who believe, take your precautions and either go forth in parties or go forth all together; there are certainly among you men who would tarry behind.

If a misfortune befalls you, they say, "Allah did favour us in that we were not present among them." But if good fortune comes to you from Allah, they would be sure to say, as if there had never been ties of affection between you and them, "Oh! I wish I had been with them; a fine thing should I then have made of it!"

Let those fight in the cause of Allah who sell the life of this world for the hereafter. To him who fights in the cause of Allah, whether he is slain or gets victory, soon shall We give him a reward great. And why should you not fight in the cause of Allah, and for those who being weak are ill-treated—men, women, and children—whose cry is: "Our Lord! Rescue us from this town whose people are oppressors and raise for us from you one who will protect and raise for us from you one who will help!"

Those who believe fight in the cause of Allah, and those who reject Faith fight in the cause of Taghut. So, fight you against the friends of Satan; ever feeble indeed is the plot of Satan.

### **Remarks:**

The Surah establishes Islamic Family by giving out the rules, such as the rules of marriage, divorce, inheritance, etc. The Surah gives the instructions to form the Islamic Society, and it cancels Democracy,

Socialism and Communism. The Surah directs people to obey the Leadership of Islam.

The Hypocrites harm the Islamic Societies, so they are dealt in this Surah. The Hypocrites are people who identify them as Believers, but they are not Believers in reality; Islamic Faith has not gone into their hearts; they follow the Taghuts (Power that is not Islamic), national and international.

Hypocrites are defined in Section-3 of Chapter-2. But, it is very difficult to identify them on ground. However, they are easily recognizable when the Highest Islamic Leadership stirs up the people for a Jihad (struggle and warfare).

#### **Section-16 of Chapter-4 [Verse 77-85]: Hypocrites surface on the call of Jihad.**

Have you not turned your vision to those who were told to hold back their hands (from fight) but establish regular prayers and spend in regular charity? When the order for fighting was issued to them, behold, a section of them feared men as or even more than they should have feared Allah. They said, “Our Lord! Why have You ordered us to fight? Would You not grant us respite to our term, near?”

Say, “Short is the enjoyment of this world; the hereafter is the best for those who do right—never will you be dealt with unjustly in the very least. Wherever you are, death will find you out, even if you are in towers built up strong and high!”

If some good befalls them, they say, “This is from Allah”; but if evil, they say, “This is from you”. Say: “All things are from Allah.”

So, what is wrong with these people that they fail to understand any word? Whatever good happens to you is from Allah, but whatever evil happens to you is from your soul (nafs). And We have sent you as a Messenger to mankind; and enough is Allah for a witness.

### **Remarks:**

The following parts of the above Verses look contradictory to each other. The parts are quoted below:

Part 1. “*All things are from Allah,*”

Part 2. “*Whatever good happens to you is from Allah, but whatever evil happens to you is from your soul (nafs)*”.

To explain, the fate of everybody was written fifty thousand years before the creation of universe:

Hadith: “Fate of everybody has been written fifty thousand years before the creation” [Tirmizi]

The fates were written by an automated Pen:

Hadith: “The first thing that was created by Allah was the Pen. Allah then ordered the Pen to write. The Pen asked, “What should it write?” Allah ordered to write the fate of everybody.

The Pen wrote all those would happen  
from the beginning to the end.”

[Tirmizi]

The Pen was taught / programmed:

“He Who taught the Pen—Taught man  
that which he knew not.”

[Al Quran 96:3-5]

The Pen wrote on a Disc Protected (Lawh-  
Mahfuz). It was a Saving Disc keeping the records:

“With Him are the keys of the Unseen,  
the treasures that none knows but He.  
He knows whatever there is on the  
earth and in the sea. Not a leaf does  
fall but with His knowledge: there is  
not a grain in the darkness of the earth,  
nor anything fresh or dry, but is in a  
record clear.” [Al Quran 6:59]

"Nay, it is a glorious Quran in a Disc  
Protected (Lawhin-Mahfuzin)"

[Al Quran 85:21-22]

The Pen and the Disc are linked to a  
Motherboard. It is called 'Mother of the Book'. It is  
said in the following Verse:

“Ha, Mim. By the Book that makes  
things clear. We have made it a

Recitation in Arabic that ye may be able to understand. And verily, it is in the **Mother of the Book**, in Our Presence, high, full of wisdom.”

[Al Quran 43:1-4]

The Mother of the Book gave birth to the Book. So it is an esteemed system with circuits, devices and programs (Motherboard).

The Pen, the Disc (Lawh-Mahfuz) and the Motherboard (Mother of the Book) jointly make a huge computer. It is the computer of Allah Who created the genome code, the living cell and the brain billions of years ago. It may be a huge rational computer with its disc revolving in the Arsh. The disc may be bigger than the Earth. I call it "Computer for the Creations" or "CC" in short.

Before creating of the universe, Allah created a dynamic virtual universe in the CC with virtual humans and other living creatures to plan the creation.

The fate of each human was predicted and adjusted in the CC. Then the fates were written by the Pen in different files of the same CC. Each human is monitored by the angels accordingly. Therefore, it can be said: “*All things are from Allah*”.

In the virtual universe, the emotions, such as fear, greed, love, anger, joy, sadness, etc., of one’s soul (nafs) have introduced some evil deeds and consequences in one’s life, which are also written as fate, and brought into reality. Therefore, it can be said: “*whatever evil happens to you is from your soul (nafs)*”.

The fate is deliberately discussed in Section-9 of Chapter-6.

He who obeys the Messenger obeys Allah, but if any turns away, then We have not sent you to watch over them. They have “Obedience” on their lips, but when they leave you, a section of them meditate all night on things very different from what you tell them. But Allah records their nightly (plots). So, keep clear of them and put your trust in Allah; and enough is Allah as a disposer of affairs.

Do they not consider the Qur’an? Had it been from other than Allah, they would surely have found therein much discrepancy.

When there comes to them some matter touching safety or fear, they divulge it. If they had only referred it to the Messenger or to those charged with authority among them, the proper investigators would have understood it from them...Were it not for the Grace and Mercy of Allah unto you, all but a few of you would have followed Satan.

Then fight in the cause of Allah—you are held responsible only for yourself—and rouse the believers. It may be that Allah will restrain the fury of the unbelievers; for Allah is the strongest in might and in punishment.

Whoever recommends and helps a good cause becomes a partner therein, and whoever recommends and helps an evil cause shares in its burden. And Allah has power over all things.

## **Section-17 of Chapter-4 [Verse 86]: Return Greeting to a Hypocrite**

When a greeting is offered you, meet it with a greeting still more courteous, or of equal courtesy. Allah takes careful account of all things.

### **Remarks:**

Fighting against Hypocrites is authorized in the following Section. But, in day-to-day life, misbehaving or showing cold shoulder to an apparently welcoming hypocrite is not expected from a person, struggling for the cause of Allah. These negative acts would be counterproductive to the overall Jihad that includes motivation and preaching.

A Muslim should behave well. But when the Highest Islamic Leadership decides to fight, he should fight decisively.

Thus, the Hypocrites, offering greeting, should be answered with a greeting still more courteous or of equal courtesy.

## **Section-18 of Chapter-4 [Verse 87-91]: Slay them (Hypocrites) wherever you find them**

Allah—there is no god but He—of a surety He will gather you together against the Day of Judgment, about which there is no doubt. And whose word can be truer than Allah's?

Then what is the matter with you that you are divided into two parties about the hypocrites? Allah has upset them for their deeds. Would you guide those whom Allah has

thrown out of the Way? For those whom Allah has thrown out of the way, never shall you find the Way.

They but wish that you should reject Faith, as they do, and thus be on the same footing. So, take not “Awliya” (friends, protectors, helpers and guides) from their ranks until they emigrate in the Way of Allah. But if they turn renegades, seize them and slay them wherever you find them.

And take neither ally nor helpers from their ranks except those who join a group between whom and you there is a treaty, or those who approach you with hearts restraining them from fighting you as well as fighting their own people. If Allah had pleased, He could have given them power over you, and they would have fought you. Therefore, if they withdraw from you, but fight you not, and offer you peace, then Allah has opened no way for you.

Others you will find that wish to gain your confidence as well as that of their people. Every time they are sent back to temptation, they succumb thereto. If they withdraw not from you, nor give you (guarantees) of peace besides restraining their hands, seize them and slay them wherever you get them. In their case, We have provided you with a clear argument against them.

**Remarks:**

The Hypocrites identify them as Believers, but they are not Believers. The above Verses allow the Highest Islamic Leadership to fight and slay them.

## Preconditions to Fight against the Hypocrites

Everybody cannot call for an offensive war. The permission of the Highest Islamic Leadership is necessary. Fighting without his permission, even for the cause of Islam, is creating disorder in the societies, which is bigger crime than murder.

Above Verses clearly says, “...*seize them and slay them wherever you get them*”. But the People of Madinah did not kill them, because Prophet (pbuh) did not give executive order to fight.

The Verses related to warfare are not executive orders (except several Verses of Surah Tawbah). These are Guidance:

“That is the Book—no doubt in it—is  
a Guidance for the Guards  
(*Muttaqin*)...” [Al Quran 2:2]

So, the Highest Islamic Leadership has scope to delay a war, or try to avoid it.

The Verses under discussion do not order to kill all hypocrites—all cannot be identified as well. The Verses order to kill the Hypocrites who are involved in the following two activities:

- a. The Hypocrites that are organized under a leadership, opposing Islam. They can be seized and slain till they maintain hostility, as the Verses say, “*Therefore if they withdraw from you, but fight you not, and offer you peace, then Allah has opened no way for you*”.

- b. The Hypocrites that are trying to gain the confidence of the Muslims; they can be seized and slain, as it is said in the last Paragraph of the above Verses: *“Others you will find that wish to gain your confidence as well as that of their people.”* They may try to gain confidence through friendship, economic aid, amenities, and so on. If they do not stop, they can be seized and slain.

The characters and activities of a Hypocrite are discussed in Section-3 of Chapter-2. In Prophet’s (pbuh) time, there was a clearly identified Hypocrite named Ibn Salul. He had some followers, as he was a Chief of the Khazraj Tribe. But Prophet (pbuh) did not seize and slay them, because they did not fulfill above conditions: They did not fight against Muslims, or they did not try to gain confidence of Muslims by deliberate acts.

Allah was not happy on Ibn Salul. The Verses instructing not to pray for the Hypocrites were revealed after his death.

Hadith: “It is narrated: When Abdullah bin Ubai bin Salul died, Allah’s Apostle (pbuh) was called upon to offer his funeral prayer. When Allah’s Apostle stood up to offer the prayer, I (Umar bin Al-Khattab) got up quickly and said, “O Allah’s Apostle! Are you going to pray for Ibn Ubai, and he said

so and so on such and such occasions?”...and I started mentioning all that he had said. Allah’s Apostle smiled and said, “O ‘Umar! Go away from me.” When I talked too much, he said, “I have been given the choice and so I have chosen. Had I known that he would be forgiven by asking for Allah’s forgiveness for more than seventy times, surely I would have done so.” Umar added: Allah’s Apostle offered his funeral prayer and returned and after a short while the two verses of Surah Tawbah were revealed: *“Nor do thou ever pray for any of them that dies, nor stand at his grave; for they rejected God and His Apostle and died in a state of perverse rebellion [Al Quran 9:84]”* Umar added, “Later I astonished at my daring before Allah’s Apostle on that day. And Allah and His Apostle know better.” [Hadith]

Only the Highest Islamic Leadership can declare a person as a Hypocrite.

The order of the Highest Islamic Leadership must be clear. He has to identify the Hypocrites clearly, and then, he has to give executive order to fight against them.

After the war is over (when Islamic Leadership has ceased the hostility), there is no punishment for the hypocrisy of a Munafiq.

The Verses under discussion ensure the security of the Pious Muslims. If the Verses were not revealed, Pious Muslims would hesitate to fight against the Hypocrites (as they are known as Muslims) who may be struggling against them in favor of the Infidels.

### **Section-19 of Chapter-4 [Verse 92-93]: Killing a Believer by Mistake**

Never should a Believer kill a Believer. But by mistake if one kills a Believer, it is ordained that he should free a believing slave and pay compensation to the deceased's family, unless they remit it freely. If the deceased belonged to a people at war with you and he was a Believer, the freeing of a believing slave. If he belonged to a people with whom you have treaty of Mutual alliance, compensation should be paid to his family and a believing slave be freed. For those who find this beyond their means, a fast for two months running by way of repentance to Allah. And Allah has all knowledge and all wisdom.

If a man kills a Believer intentionally, his recompense is Hell to abide therein, and the wrath and the curse of Allah are upon him, and a dreadful penalty is prepared for him.

#### **Remarks:**

In course of fighting against the Hypocrites, a Muslim could kill a Believer by mistake. So, the Verses alert

the Muslims and proclaim the penalty of killing a Believer by mistake. It has made the fighting against hypocrites difficult.

**Section-20** of Chapter-4 [Verse 94]: **Be cautious in Discrimination**

O you who have believed, when you go forth in the cause of Allah, investigate and do not say to one who offers you peace, "You are not a Believer" seeking the perishable goods of the worldly life. There are much more profits and booties with Allah. Even as he is now, so were you yourselves before, till Allah conferred on you His favors. Therefore, be cautious in discrimination; for Allah is well aware of all that you do.

**Remarks:**

The Verses of this Section make the fighting against Hypocrites more difficult.

Prophet (pbuh) did not fight a single battle against the Hypocrites. After the Battle of Uhud, he (pbuh) attacked Jewish Tribe, Banu Nadir, and expelled them from Madinah, but he did not attack Muslims who left him immediately before the battle.

**Section-21** of Chapter-4 [Verse 95-96]: **Do not think all except those who do Jihad as Hypocrites**

Not equal are those believers who sit and receive no hurt, and those who strive and fight in the cause of Allah with their wealth and their lives. Allah has granted a grade higher to those who strive and fight with their wealth and lives than to

those who sit. Unto all Allah has promised good, but those who strive and fight He has distinguished above those who sit by a special reward—ranks specially bestowed by Him, and Forgiveness and Mercy. And Allah is Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful.

**Remarks:**

One sitting at home may look like a Hypocrite to a struggling Muttaqi. So, above Verses alert the Muttaqin.

**Section-22 of Chapter-4 [Verse 97-100]: No doubt on the people who have forsaken their homes in the cause of Allah**

When angels take the souls of those who die in sin against their souls, they say, "In what were you?" They reply, "Weak and oppressed were we in the Earth." They say, "Was not the Earth of Allah spacious enough for you to move yourselves away?" Such men will find their abode in Hell—what an evil refuge—except those who are weak and oppressed men, women and children who have no means in their power, nor to direct their way. For these, there is hope that Allah will forgive. For Allah does blot out and forgive again and again.

He who forsakes his home in the cause of Allah finds in the Earth many a refuge, wide and spacious. Should he die as a refugee from home for Allah and His Messenger, his reward becomes due and sure with Allah. And Allah is Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful.

## **Section-23 of Chapter-4 [Verse 101-104]: Prayer in March**

When you travel through the land, there is no blame on you if you shorten As-Salat for fear that the Unbelievers may attack you; verily the Unbelievers are unto you open enemies.

When you are with them and stand to lead them in prayer, let one party of them stand up with you taking their arms with them; when they finish their prostrations, let them take their position in the rear, and let the other party come up, which has not yet prayed. And let them pray with you taking all precautions and bearing arms. The unbelievers wish, if you were negligent of your arms and your baggage, to assault you in a single rush. But there is no blame on you if you put away your arms because of the inconvenience of rain or because you are ill, but take precaution for yourselves. For the unbelievers Allah has prepared a humiliating punishment.

### **Remarks:**

This is an order for the time when the Muslims are moving to the Battle Field.

The enemies may approach stealthily or deceptively and mount a surprising attack. So, the above procedure of the salat is suggested.

The procedure is also applicable when a troop is returning from the Battle Field.

When you pass prayers celebrate Allah's praises standing, sitting down, or lying down on your sides; but when you are free from danger, perform As-Salat. Verily, As-Salat is enjoined on Believers at stated times.

**Remarks:**

This is an order for the time when the troop is involved in hand to hand fight, or the enemy is in the vicinity.

In this time, the salat can be skipped, and it is not required to pray the skipped salats at later times, because the Verses mentions, "*As Salat is enjoined on Believers at stated times*".

When one is skipping the salat, one has to celebrate Allah's praises standing, sitting down, or lying down on one's sides.

And slacken not in following up the enemy. If you are suffering hardships, they are suffering similar hardships; but you have hope from Allah, while they have none. And Allah is full of knowledge and wisdom.

**Remarks:**

This is the order for the time when enemy is defeated and flying away, and the Muttaqin are engaged in Hot Pursuit. It is the final phase of a battle.

A Pursuit may continue for days. It is an extremely tedious job. Orders regarding the salat remain effective at this phase as well, that is the salat can be skipped.

**Section-24 of Chapter-4 [Verse 105-126]: Follow the Messenger / Islamic Leadership obediently– No argument in favor of Hypocrites**

We have sent down to you the Book in truth that you might judge between men as guided by Allah. So, be not as an advocate by those who betray their trust. And seek the forgiveness of Allah—for Allah is Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful.

And argue not on behalf of those who deceive themselves. Verily, Allah does not like anyone who is a betrayer, sinner—they may hide from men, but they cannot hide from Allah—seeing that He is with them when they plot by night in words that He cannot approve. And Allah does compass round all that they do.

Ah! You are those who have argued for them in the life of this world, but who will argue for them on the Day of Judgment against Allah; or who will then be their defender?

If any one does evil or wrongs his own soul but afterwards seeks Allah's forgiveness, he will find Allah Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful.

And if any one earns sin, he earns it against His own soul; and Allah is full of knowledge and wisdom.

But if any one earns a fault or a sin and throws it on to one that is innocent, He carries a falsehood and a flagrant sin. Had not the grace of Allah and His mercy upon you, a party of them would certainly have plotted to lead you astray. But, they will only lead their own souls astray, and to you they can do no harm in the least; for Allah has sent down to you the Book and wisdom and taught you what you knew not, and great is the grace of Allah unto you.

In most of their secret talks, there is no good; but if one exhorts to a deed of charity or justice or conciliation between men—to him who does this seeking the good pleasure of Allah, We shall soon give a reward of the highest.

If anyone contends with the Messenger even after guidance has been plainly conveyed to him and follows a path other than that becoming to Men of Faith, We shall leave him in the path he has chosen and land him in Hell; what an evil refuge!

Allah forgive not joining other gods with Him, but He forgives whom He pleases other sins than this. And one who joins other gods with Allah has strayed far, far away. Leaving Him, call but upon female deities; and they invoke nothing but Satan, the persistent rebel!

Allah did curse him, but he said: "I will take of Your servants a portion marked off. I will mislead them, and I will create in them false desires—I will order them to slit the ears of cattle and to deface the nature created by Allah." Whoever, forsaking Allah, takes Satan as a guardian has of a surety suffered a loss that is manifest. Satan makes them promises and creates in them false desires; but Satan's promises are nothing but deception. They will have their dwelling in Hell, and from it they will find no way of escape.

But those who believe and do deeds of righteousness, We shall soon admit them to Jannaat, with rivers flowing beneath, to dwell therein forever. Allah's promise is the truth, and whose word can be truer than Allah's?

It will not be in accordance of your desires, nor of those of the People of the Book—whoever works evil will have the recompense thereof—nor will he find besides Allah any protector or helper.

If any do deeds of righteousness, be they male or female, and have faith, they will enter Jannaat and not the least injustice will be done to them.

Who can be better in religion than one who submits his whole self to Allah, does good and follows the way of Abraham, the true in Faith? For Allah did take Abraham as a friend. But to Allah belong all things in the Skies and on Lands. And He it is that encompasses all things.

### **Section-25 of Chapter-4 [Verse 127-135]: Women and Orphans**

They ask your instruction concerning the women, say: Allah does instruct you about them, and what has been rehearsed unto you in the Book concerning the orphans of women, to whom you give not the portions prescribed and yet whom you desire to marry, as also concerning the children who are weak and oppressed that you stand firm for justice to orphans. And whatever good you do Allah is Ever Well-Acquainted with what you do.

If a wife fears cruelty or desertion on her husband's part, there is no blame on them if they arrange an amicable settlement between themselves, and such settlement is best even though men's souls are swayed by greed. But if you do good and practise self-restraint, Allah is well-acquainted with all that you do.

You are never able to be fair and just as between women even if it is your ardent desire, but turn not away altogether, so as to leave her hanging. If you come to a friendly understanding and practise self-restraint, Allah is Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful.

But if they disagree (and must part), Allah will provide abundance for all from His all-reaching bounty; for Allah is He that care for all and is Wise.

To Allah belong all things in the Skies and on Lands. Verily, we have directed the People of the Book before you and you to fear Allah. But if you deny Him, lo! unto Allah belongs all things in the Skies and on Lands, and Allah is free of all wants, worthy of all Praise.

Yea, unto Allah belong all things in the Skies and on Lands, and enough is Allah to carry through all affairs. If it were His will, He could destroy you, O mankind, and create another race; for He has power this to do. If anyone desires a reward in this life, in Allah's (gift) is the reward of this life and of the hereafter; for Allah is He that hears and sees.

O you who believe, stand out firmly for justice as witnesses to Allah even as against yourselves, or your parents, or your kin, and whether it be rich or poor; Allah can best protect both. Follow not the lusts, lest you swerve, and if you distort or decline to do justice, verily Allah is well acquainted with all that you do.

### **Section-26 of Chapter-4 [Verse 136-149]: General Guidance about the Hypocrites.**

O you who believe! Believe in Allah and His Messenger and the scripture, which He has sent to His Messenger, and the scripture, which He sent to those before. Any who deny Allah, His angels, His Books, His Messengers, and the Day of Judgment has gone far, far astray.

Those who believe then reject faith, then believe and reject faith, and go on increasing in unbelief—Allah will not forgive them, nor guide them on the way. To the Hypocrites

give the glad tidings that there is for them a grievous penalty—yea, to those who take Unbelievers as *Awliya* (guardians, friends, helpers, and guides) rather than Believers. Is it honor they seek among them? Nay, all honor is with Allah.

Already has He sent you Word in the Book that when you hear the Verses of Allah held in defiance and ridicule, you are not to sit with them unless they turn to a different theme; if you did, you would be like them. Surely, Allah will collect the hypocrites and those who defy faith—all in Hell.

The ones who wait and watch about you; if you do gain a victory from Allah, they say: "Were we not with you?" But if the unbelievers gain a success, they say: "Did we not gain an advantage over you, and did we not guard you from the Believers?" Allah will judge between you on the Day of Judgment. And never will Allah grant to the unbelievers a way over the believers.

The hypocrites, they think they are over-reaching Allah, but He will over-reach them. And when they stand up for as salat they stand without earnestness, to be seen of men, but little do they hold Allah in remembrance, distracted in mind even in the midst of it, being for neither one group nor for another—whom Allah leaves straying, never will you find for him the way.

O you who believe, take not Unbelievers as *Awliya* (friends, protectors, helpers and guides) rather than Believers. Do you wish to offer Allah an open proof against yourselves? The Hypocrites will be in the lowest depths of the Fire; no helper will you find for them, except for those who repent, mend, hold fast to Allah, and purify their religion as in Allah's sight. If so, they will be with the Believers; and soon will Allah grant to the Believers a reward of immense value.

What can Allah gain by your punishment if you are grateful, and you believe? Nay, it is Allah that recognizes and knows all things.

Allah loves not that evil should be uttered in public speech, except where injustice has been done; for Allah is He who hears and knows all things.

Whether you disclose a good deed, or conceal it, or cover evil with pardon, verily Allah does blot out and has power.

**Remarks:**

The instruction that '*Allah loves not that evil should be uttered in public speech, except where injustice has been done*' is put in the guidance about hypocrites. So, if a hypocrite is in power, his acts of injustice may be discussed in public.

**Segment 4**  
**A Call to Christians**

**Section-27 of Chapter-4 [Verse 150-162]: Jews are not Credible**

Those who deny Allah and His Messengers and wish to separate Allah from His Messengers saying, "We believe in some but reject others" and wish to take a course midway, they are in truth unbelievers, and we have prepared for Unbelievers a humiliating punishment. And those who believe in Allah and His Messengers and make no distinction between any of the Messengers we shall soon give their rewards; and Allah is Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful.

The people of the Book ask you to cause a Book to descend to them from the sky. Indeed, they asked Moses for an even greater, for they said, "Show us Allah in public"—so, struck them the thunderbolt for their wrongdoing.

Then they worshipped the calf even after clear signs had come to them—even so We forgave them.

And we gave Moses manifest proofs of authority.

And we raised over them the Mount for their covenant.

And we said: "Enter the gate with humility."

And we commanded them: "Transgress not in the matter of the Sabbath."

And we took from them a solemn covenant. In that they broke their covenant, that they rejected the signs of God, that they slew the Messengers in defiance of right, that they said: "Our hearts are the wrappings".

Nay, God hath set the seal on their hearts for their blasphemy, and little is it they believe.

That they rejected Faith; that they uttered against Mary a grave false charge; that they said, "We killed Christ Jesus, the Son of Mary, the Messenger of Allah."

But they killed him not, nor crucified him; but so it was made to appear to them. And those who differ therein are full of doubts, with no knowledge, but only conjecture to follow; for of a surety they killed him not. Nay, Allah raised him up unto Himself; and Allah is Exalted in Power, Wise.

And there is none of the People of the Book but must believe in him before his death, and on the Day of Judgment he will be a witness against them.

For the iniquity of the Jews, we made unlawful for them certain (foods) good and wholesome, which had been

lawful for them—in that they hindered many from Allah's way.

That they took usury though they were forbidden, and that they devoured men's substance wrongfully.

And we have prepared for those among them who reject faith a grievous punishment.

But those who are well grounded in knowledge among them and the Believers, believe in what has been revealed to you and what was revealed before you, and the ones who perform as salat, and the ones who give zakat, and the ones believe in Allah, and in the Last Day—to them shall We soon give a great reward.

### **Section-28 of Chapter-4 [Verse 163-170]: Muhammad was a Real Messenger**

We have sent you inspiration as we sent it to Noah and the Messengers after him; We sent inspiration to Abraham, Ismail, Isaac, Jacob, and the Tribes; to Jesus, Job, Jonah, Aaron, and Solomon; and to David We gave the Psalms; of some Messengers, we have already told you the story; of others, we have not; and to Moses, Allah spoke direct—Messengers as bearers of good news as well as of warning in order that mankind should have no plea against Allah, after the Messengers. And Allah is Exalted in Power, Wise.

But, Allah bears witness that what He has sent down unto you; He has sent it with His knowledge, and the angels bear witness, and enough is Allah as a witness.

Those who reject Faith and keep off (men) from the way of Allah, have verily strayed far, far away from the Path. Those who reject Faith and do wrong, Allah will not forgive

them, nor guide them to anyway except the way of Hell to dwell therein forever; and this to Allah is easy.

O mankind! The Messenger has come to you in truth from Allah; believe in him; it is better for you, but, if you reject Faith—to Allah belongs all things in the Skies and on Lands; and Allah is All-Knowing, All-wise.

### **Section-29 of Chapter-4 [Verse 171-175]: The Call to Christians**

O People of the Book! Commit no excesses in your religion, nor say of God aught but the truth. Christ Jesus, the son of Mary, was a Messenger of God, and His speech—he shined in Mary—and a ruh from Him. So, believe in God and His Messengers. Say not "Trinity", desist, it will be better for you; for God is One God—Glory be to Him, above having a son; to Him belong all things in the Skies and on Lands, and enough is Allah as a Disposer of Affairs.

Christ disdain nor to serve and worship Allah, nor do the angels those nearest. Those who disdain His worship and are arrogant He will gather them all together unto Himself to (answer). But to those who believe and do deeds of righteousness, He will give their rewards and more out of His bounty. But those who are disdainful and arrogant, He will punish with a grievous penalty. And they will not find besides Allah any protector or helper for themselves.

O mankind, verily there has come to you a convincing proof from your Lord, and we have sent unto you a light manifest. Then those who believe in Allah and hold fast to Him, soon will He admit them to Mercy and Grace from Himself and guide them to Himself by a Straight Way.

## **Segment 5 Clearing Doubt**

### **Section-30 of Chapter-4 [Verse 176]: Al-Kalalah**

They ask you for a legal decision. Say, Allah directs about Al-Kalalah. If it is a man that dies leaving a sister but no son, she shall have half the inheritance. If a woman who left no son, her brother takes her inheritance. If there are two sisters, they shall have two-thirds of the inheritance; if there are brothers and sisters, the male having twice the share of the female. Thus, does Allah make clear to you lest you err; and Allah has knowledge of all things.

#### **Remarks:**

Prophet (pbuh) did not say the meaning of “Kalalah”. It was risky for him to explain the Quran, as it can be understood from the following Verses:

“A Message sent down from the Lord of the Universes. And if the Apostle were to invent any sayings in Our name, we should certainly seize him by his right hand, and We should certainly then cut off the artery of his heart: Nor could any of you withhold him. [Al Quran 69:43-47]

It is Allah Who is to explain the Quran, as it is indicated in the following Verses:

“Move not thy tongue concerning the (Qur'an) to make haste therewith. It is for Us to collect it and to promulgate it. But when We have promulgated it, then follow thou its recital. Nay, more, it is for Us to explain it.”

[Al Quran 75:16-19]

The following Verse dictates the followers to give thought on the Verses:

“...and We have sent to you the remembrance (ability of brain to memorize) that thou may show to mankind what has been sent down to them, and that they may give thought.”

[Al Quran 16:44]

The Verses of the Quran were revealed in small parts basing on the evolving situations. The people acted on a situation according to the newly revealed Verses. So, the explanation was not necessary.

If Prophet (pbuh) explained a Verse, the explanation would be final, and no further explanation would be accepted after that, whereas the Quran is to guide till the Day of Doom, and it unfolds itself over the time and time ahead.

Prophet (pbuh) did not say what “Kalalah” was? Even if he said, the Hadith is not available at present.

## **Likely meaning of Kalalah**

Islamic Scholars consider Kalalah as a person who has no father, no son.

“Kalalah” is a derivative of “Ikli”. Ikli means crown that surrounds the head. In the old times, it used to be worn by the soldiers in the battle fields.

Therefore, “Kalalah” should mean a law enforcing agent, such as a policeman. “Kalalah” may also mean the influential persons of a society, who has the ability to settle a dispute.

When a part of property is to go to the stepbrother(s) or to the stepsister(s), the deceased person’s mother, wife, and daughter(s) of may not agree, and they may raise dispute. The situation may become hot during the actual handing over of the property.

Similar situation may arise in cases of a husband / wife, getting the property of his / her dead wife / husband.

In such cases, the Judge, appointed by Islamic Leadership according to Section-4, should arrange the presence of Al Kalalah. Al Kalalah ensures peaceful hand over of the property.

## **Division of Property**

In the following, I have explained relevant portions of the Verse under discussion (Serial-6 to Serial-9).

6. *“Allah directs about Al-Kalalah. If it is a man that dies leaving a sister but no son, she shall have half the inheritance.”*

In this case, as deceased person does not have a son, the Parents' Share will be  $\frac{1}{3}$  or  $\frac{1}{2}$  [ $\frac{1}{3}$  if the deceased person has left two or more females (daughters and wives) and  $\frac{1}{2}$  if the deceased person has left only one female]. The sister gets half of the Parents' Share ( $\frac{1}{2}$  of  $\frac{1}{3}$  or  $\frac{1}{2}$ ). The rest of Parent's Share ( $\frac{1}{2}$  of  $\frac{1}{3}$  or  $\frac{1}{2}$ ) goes to the mother of the deceased person.

7. *“...If a woman, who left no son, her brother takes her inheritance.”*

In this case, the division of property shows that deceased woman has no son and no daughter. Her property goes to her brother(s), not to the brother(s) and sister(s) of her husband.

Other rules apply, such as if she has left husband, her husband gets  $\frac{1}{2}$  according to Section-5; the rest goes to her brother(s).

Here point to notice is that the deceased woman's property does not go to her sister.

8. *“If there are two sisters, they shall have two-thirds of the inheritance;”*

It is a continuation of serial 6 that talked about one sister. Now, deceased man has two sisters.

In this case, as deceased person does not have a son, the Parents' Share will be  $\frac{1}{3}$  or  $\frac{1}{2}$  [ $\frac{1}{3}$  if the deceased person has left two or more females (daughters and wives) and  $\frac{1}{2}$  if the deceased person

has left only one female]. The sisters get  $\frac{2}{3}$  of the Parents' Share ( $\frac{2}{3}$  of  $\frac{1}{3}$  or  $\frac{1}{2}$ ). The rest of Parent's Share ( $\frac{1}{3}$  of  $\frac{1}{3}$  or  $\frac{1}{2}$ ) goes to the mother of the deceased person.

9. *“if there are brothers and sisters, the male having twice the share of the female.”*

It is a continuation of serial 8 above. Here, the Parents' Share ( $\frac{2}{3}$  of  $\frac{1}{3}$  or  $\frac{1}{2}$ ) will be divided among brothers and sisters at the rate of 2:1.

## Chapter 5 [Al Ma'idah / THE REPAST]

**Aim of the Chapter:** Living with the People of the Book and the Policies of Interaction.

### Introduction

In Chapter-2 and Chapter-3, the Quran talked about Jews and Christians. In those Chapters, the discussions were aimed to instruct the Guard (Al Muttaqin) to protect and expand the Ummah through struggle and warfare. In this Chapter, the discussion is focused on interaction. These are policies to deal with Jews and Christians living in Muslim Territories. As well as the Chapter instructs Muslims living in their countries.

The Surah was revealed after the treaty of Hudaibiyah. After the treaty, Prophet (pbuh) wrote letters to Arab and Iranian Kings. Thus, Prophet (pbuh) looked forward to expand the Ummah, and the Surah was revealed.

The Surah confirms that the Torah is still acceptable to Allah for Jews, and the Gospel is still acceptable to Allah for Christians. The Chapter calls People of the Books and Muslims to abide by the laws and compete in a race of virtues.

The Quran together with the acceptance of old divine Books highlights the drawbacks of Jews and Christians so that they accept the last Book. If a Jew or a Christian is convinced that Muhammad (pbuh) was the last Prophet, and the Quran is a divine Book, he/she must accept Islam, otherwise he/she may be considered as a Rejecter of Truth.

“Those who deny God and His Messengers and wish to separate God from His Messengers saying, "We believe in some but reject others" and wish to take a course midway, they are in truth unbelievers; and we have prepared for unbelievers a humiliating punishment.” [Al Quran 4:150-151]

## **Structure of the Surah**

The Surah is divided in four Segments:

The Quran confirms the old divine Books, but in the cases of food and cleanliness there are differences. These are discussed in the First Segment. The Segment makes marrying women from the People of the Book legal. It advises to be true as a witness if Muslim(s) and Jew(s) / Christian(s) are involved in a legal case.

Allah knew that many Jews would be living in Muslim Territories. So, the instructions and policies about them are given in the Second Segment.

Allah also knew that many Muslim would be living in Christian countries. So, the Muslims are advised in the Third Segment.

The Forth Segment concludes the Chapter by discussing the Salvation of Christians.

## **Flowchart of the Tafsir**

### **Segment 1: General Instructions in respect of the People of the Book**

- Section 1 [Verse 1-2]: Maintaining Peace while moving for Hajj or Umrah
- Section 2 [Verse 3-5]: Marrying Woman from People of the Book
- Section 3 [Verse 6-7]: Way to be Clean for Prayer
- Section 4 [Verse 8-11]: Stand out firmly as a Just Witness
- Section 5 [Verse 12-19]: People of the Book are called to accept Islam

### **Segment 2: Policies to deal with the Jews living in Muslim Territories**

- Section 6 [Verse 20-26]: A Rebellious People
- Section 7 [Verse 27-37]: Punishment of Waging War and Spreading Mischief
- Section 8 [Verse 38-40]: Punishment of Theft
- Section 9 [Verse 41-50]: Judge According to the Revelation
- Section 10 [Verse 51-63]: Guidance to take *Awliya* (Friends, Protectors, Helpers and Guides)
- Section 11 [Verse 64-66]: Major Drawbacks of the Jews
- Section 12 [Verse 67-68]: Call them to join the Ummah
- Section 13 [Verse 69]: A Policy of Merciful Allah
- Section 14 [Verse 70-71]: Concluding with the Jews

### **Segment 3: Advice to the Muslims living in Christian Countries**

Section 15 [Verse 72-77]: Major Drawbacks of Christians

Section 16 [Verse 78-86]: Difference between Jews and Christians

Section 17 [Verse 87-88]: Do not make Lawful Food Unlawful

Section 18 [Verse 89]: Oath

Section 19 [Verse 90-93]: Intoxication and Gambling

Section 20 [Verse 94-98]: Affiliation to Kabah

Section 21 [Verse 99-100]: Abundance of “Khabiss”

Section 22 [Verse 101-105]: Ask not Question and do not invent Rituals

Section 23 [Verse 106-108]: Bequest

### **Segment 4: Conclusion**

Section 24 [Verse 109-119]: Salvation of Christians

## **Tafsir of the Surah**

### **Segment-1**

#### **General Instructions in respect of the People of the Book**

#### **Section-1 of Chapter-5 [Verse 1-2]: Maintaining Peace while moving for Hajj or Umrah**

O you who believe, fulfill obligations. Lawful unto you are all four-footed animals with the exceptions named. But animals of the chase are forbidden when you assume “Ihram”

for “Hajj” or “Umrah” (pilgrimage). For Allah does command according to His will and plan.

O you who believe, violate not the sanctity of the symbols of Allah, nor of the Sacred Month, nor of the animals brought for sacrifice, nor the garlands that mark out such animals, nor the people resorting to the sacred house seeking of the bounty and good pleasure of their Lord. But when you finish the “Ihram” you may hunt and let not the hatred of some people in shutting you out of the Sacred Mosque lead you to transgression. Help you one another in righteousness and piety but help you not one another in sin and transgression. And fear Allah. Verily, Allah is strict in punishment.

### **Remarks:**

In the old times, many Christians were living in the Middle East. Often, the caravans of Muslim Pilgrims used to move through their communities. A local man would not like that a wild beast of his territory were hunted by an outsider. The hunting would cause hatred and the local people would shut the movement of the pilgrims through their area. Ultimately, it would lead Muslims into transgression.

So, hunting animals of the chase is forbidden after *Ihram* for the *Hajj* or *Umrah* is assumed [It may be mentioned that *Ihram* should be assumed from a mosque close to the pilgrim’s home, as Prophet (pbuh) assumed it from a mosque near Madinah.]

## **Section-2 of Chapter-5 [Verse 3-5]: Marrying Woman from People of the Book**

Forbidden to you are: dead meat, blood, the flesh of swine, and that on which has been invoked the name of other than Allah; that which has been killed by strangling, or by a violent blow, or by a headlong fall, or by the goring of horns; that which has been eaten by a wild animal, unless you are able to slaughter it; that which is sacrificed on stone; also is the division by raffling with arrows—that is impiety. This day those who reject faith have given up all hope of your religion—yet fear them not but fear Me. This day I have perfected your religion for you, completed My favour upon you, and have chosen for you Islam as your religion. But if any is forced by hunger with no inclination to transgression; Allah is indeed Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful.

### **Remarks:**

According to above Verses, all animals except swine are halal for the Muslims. But most of the Muslims follow Sunnah. It is likely that the People of the Quraysh Tribe including Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) had the habit of eating animals suggested in the Torah— Prophet (pbuh) did not eat reptile offered by Saifullah Khalid ibne al-Walid.

Though the formal law (Torah) came through Moses, it is likely that Abraham had similar food habit from Noah. Probably, the food habit of Abraham came down to the People of Quraysh through Ismail.

The Chapter-11 of Leviticus gives the long list of animals that can be eaten. The Chapter contains 46 Verses. The Verse 1 to the Verse 9 are given below:

1 Yahweh spoke to Moses and Aaron and said to them,

2 "Speak to the people of Israel and say: 'Of all the animals on the earth these are the animals you may eat.

3 You may eat any animal that has divided hoofs, divided into two parts, and that also chews the cud.

4 You may not eat: the camel, because though it chews the cud, it does not have divided hoofs;

5 the rabbit, because though it chews the cud, it does not have divided hoofs;

6 the hare, as well;

7 the pig, because though it has divided hoofs, it does not chew the cud.

8 You must not eat the meat of such animals nor their dead bodies; they are unclean for you.

9 Of all that lives in water you may eat anything that has fins and scales, and lives in sea or river.

– Leviticus 11, Holy Bible

Christians know the Laws as cancelled and eat everything they can, including pork.

Now, the Muslims have got from the Quran, which meats can be eaten. The blood is declared forbidden (haram).

The Verses highlight the need of proper slaughtering which is required for the blood to flow out from the carcass.

Some Christians kill the animals by the strangling, or by the violent blow, or by the hitting on the head, or by the goring of horn or horn-like peg. The process of killing does not allow the blood to flow out completely. A Muslim man marrying a Christian woman should remain careful so that she slaughters the animal properly, for cooking.

They ask you what is lawful to them? Say: lawful unto you are things good and pure, and what you have taught your trained hunting animals in the manner directed to you by Allah—eat what they catch for you, but pronounce the name of Allah over it, and fear Allah; for Allah is swift in taking account.

### **Remarks:**

The part of the Verses, “...*what you have taught your trained hunting animals in the manner directed to you by Allah...*” needs explanation.

I have discussed in Section-8 of Chapter-2 that the other animals are genetically taught in the eggs or in their mother’s wombs. They cannot learn after they are born. So, the Quran has used the above Part of the Verses to remain true—the Quran is true always.

An animal can be trained in special way to follow a few commands. This “special way” is “the manner of training directed to us by Allah”.

This day things good and pure are made lawful unto you. The food of the People of the Book is lawful unto you and yours is lawful unto them. (Lawful unto you) are chaste women who are believers, and chaste women from those who were given scripture—when you give them their due dowers and desire chastity, not lewdness, nor secret intrigues. If anyone rejects faith, fruitless is his work, and in the Hereafter, he will be in the ranks of those who have lost.

**Remarks:**

In this Verse, chaste women from People of the Book (Bible) are made lawful to marry. Now, it is not desirable that one marries one of them and always remains in doubt to eat what she cooks. Therefore, their food is made halal.

This Verse talks about food. If a Jew or a Christian offers cooked food including cooked meat, and if it is good and pure in outlook, smell, and test, it is halal (some Christians eat pork, which is to be clarified before eating cooked meat).

**Section-3 of Chapter-5 [Verse 6-7]: Wudu and Tayyammum**

O you who believe, when you intend to offer As-Salat wash your faces and your hands to the elbows; rub your heads and your feet to the ankles.

**Remarks:**

The procedure of making “Wudu” is described above.

Most Muslims wash feet to the ankles with water. But the Verse suggests to rub only. So, the washing with water is not needed to make the wudu.

Moreover, if one wash without touching the feet, the wudu may remain incomplete (rubbing is a must).

If you are in the state of *Junuban*, then purify yourself.

**Remarks:**

A person is considered in the state of *Junuban* when he has completed sexual intercourse with ejaculation. He has to purify himself by washing with water, as it is said in the following Verse:

“O you who have believed, do not approach prayer (salat) while you are intoxicated, until you know what you are saying; or in the state of *Junuban*, except passing a way, until you have washed...” [Al Quran 4:43]

The Verses do not order to take bath; it orders to wash only. Therefore, if he cleans the unclean parts of his body by washing with water, it should be okay [The matter is deliberately discussed in Section-11 of Chapter-4].

He can then make wudu as narrated in the Verses under discussion and can perform As-Salat.

But, if you are ill, or on a journey, or one of you come from the toilet or you had contact with women and not you find water then do *Tayyammum* with clean earth and rub therewith your faces and hands.

**Remarks:**

The purifying and wudu are not required if one has done *Tayyammum* in one of above situations [The situations of *Tayyammum* are deliberately discussed in Section-11 of Chapter-4].

Allah does not wish to place you in a difficulty, but to make you clean and to complete His favor to you that you may be grateful.

**Remarks:**

The Quran does not mention anything as unclean substance. Nothing is unclean. If a speedy car smashes a bit of dirty fluid on the road, which may be a mixture of water, feces, urine, semen, normal blood, ministerial blood and alcohol, and if the mixture spread on a pedestrian's body thoroughly, he should not stop going to the mosque; he can go and can pray without washing his body.

The Quran does not talk about unclean animals as well. But some remain anxious about dog. According to the Quran, the swine is haram to eat, but

it is not declared as unclean. Therefore, wearing shoe made from the skin of swine is okay. The touch of dog does not break one's wudu.

And call in remembrance the favour of Allah unto you and His covenant, which He ratified with you, when you said: "We hear, and we obey". And fear Allah; for Allah knows well the secrets of your hearts.

### **Remarks:**

There may be questions, such as: What the Verses means by "...and you find no water..."? How far one should explore to find it?

The above Verses discourage asking such question, as the Verses mention: "...you said: We hear, and we obey".

So, the policy is: hear and obey; do not ask question.

Jews are intelligent people. So, they asked questions and got the matter clarified. Followings are a few lines from the Leviticus 15 (Torah) of Holy Bible that deal with the matter:

1 Yahweh spoke to Moses and Aaron;  
he said,

2 "Speak to the sons of Israel and say  
to them:

3 When a man has a discharge from  
his body, that discharge makes him  
unclean. The rules about his  
uncleanness are:

Whether his body allows the discharge to flow or whether it retains it, he is unclean.

4 Any bed the man lies on and any seat he sits on shall be unclean.

5 Anyone who touches his bed must wash his clothing and take a bath and will be unclean until evening.

6 Anyone who sits on a seat where the man has sat must wash his clothing and take a bath and will be unclean until evening.

7 Anyone who touches the body of a man so affected must wash his clothing and take a bath and will be unclean until evening.

8 If the sick man spits on someone who is clean, that person must wash his clothing and take a bath and will be unclean until evening.

9 Any saddle the sick man travels on will be unclean.

10 All those who touch any object that may be under him will be unclean until evening. Anyone who picks up such an object must wash his clothing and take a bath and will be unclean until evening.

11 All those whom the sick man touches without washing his hands must wash their clothing and take a bath and will be unclean until evening.

12 Any clay pot the sick man touches must be broken and any wooden utensil must be rinsed.

13 When the man suffering from a discharge is cured, he must allow seven days for his purification. He must wash his clothing and take a bath in running water and he will be clean.

14 On the eighth day he must take two turtledoves or two young pigeons and come before Yahweh at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting, and give them to the priest.

15 The priest is to offer a sacrifice for sin with one of them, and with the other a burnt offering. So the priest will perform the rite of atonement before Yahweh for the man's discharge.

16 When a man has a seminal discharge, he must bathe his whole body with water and he shall be unclean until evening.

17 Any clothing or leather touched by a seminal discharge must be washed and it will be unclean until evening.

18 When a woman has slept with a man, both of them must take a bath and they will be unclean until evening.

19 When a woman has a discharge of blood, and blood flows from her body, this uncleanness of her monthly

periods shall last for seven days.  
Anyone who touches her will be  
unclean until evening.

20 Any bed she lies on will be  
unclean; any seat she sits on will be  
unclean.

21 Anyone who touches her bed must  
wash his clothing and take a bath and  
will be unclean until evening.

22 Anyone who touches any seat she  
has sat on must wash his clothing and  
take a bath and will be unclean until  
evening.

23 If there is anything on the bed or  
the chair on which she sat, anyone who  
touches it will be unclean until  
evening.

24 If a man sleeps with a woman who  
is unclean because of her monthly  
period, he shall be unclean for seven  
days. Any bed he lies on will be  
unclean.

25 If a woman has a flow of blood for  
several days outside her period, or if  
her period is prolonged, during the  
time this flow lasts she shall be  
unclean as during her monthly periods.

26 Any bed she lies on during the time  
this flow lasts will be unclean as  
during her monthly period. Any seat  
she sits on will be unclean; as it would  
be during her monthly periods.

27 Anyone who touches them will be unclean; he must wash his clothing and take a bath and will be unclean until evening.

28 When she is cured of her flow, she will let seven days pass; then she will be clean.

29 On the eighth day she is to take two turtledoves or two young pigeons and bring them to the priest at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting.

30 With one of them the priest is to offer a sacrifice for sin and with the other a burnt offering. This is the way in which the priest will perform the rite of atonement over her before Yahweh for the flow that made her unclean.

31 Make the sons of Israel aware of everything unclean, lest they die because of defiling the Tent of my presence among them.

32 Such is the law concerning a man with a discharge, anyone made unclean by a seminal discharge,

33 a woman unclean because of her monthly periods, a man or a woman with discharge, a man who sleeps with an unclean woman."

– Leviticus 15, Holy Bible

Now in the Quran, the easy way is prescribed. Thanks to Sahabah who did not ask questions. Thanks to Allah for His favour unto us.

However, if one is not satisfied, one may follow Torah (Holy Bible) to remain clean. There is no objection in following the Torah at times. Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) in one occasion judged according to the Torah when he ordered for “stoning to death” to persons that committed illegal sexual acts. The Quran does not order for “stoning”. It is ordered in Torah as under:

“then you shall bring them both out to the gate of that city, and you shall stone them to death with stones, the young woman because she did not cry for help though she was in the city, and the man because he violated his neighbor’s wife. So you shall purge the evil from your midst.”

– Deuteronomy (Torah) 22:24,  
Holy Bible

However, there is a doubt about following the Torah. Muhammad (pbuh) was one among the Prophets. He could follow any revelation. But, can we follow being submitted to the Ummah of Prophet Muhammad (pbuh)? It is likely that we are only to believe those as divine revelations, but should follow the Quran only. If something is not there in the Quran, it is forgiven by Allah.

## **When wudu gets broken / nullified?**

To answer: The Quran does not say that wudu can be broken / nullified.

So, touching, holding, kissing cannot nullify wudu.

So, smoking, drinking, eating cannot nullify wudu.

So, the sticking of dirty things, such as urine, stool, blood, etc., on the body and clothing cannot nullify wudu.

So, holding or touching dog or swine cannot nullify wudu.

So, the emission of vomit, blood, pus, sweat, etc., cannot nullify the wudu.

The unintentional emission of gas, urine, feces cannot nullify the wudu. But, the intentional emission of these will mean the answering of nature's call, and it will revive the condition of doing wudu. A person should redo wudu if the condition of doing wudu arises again. The conditions are as under:

1. If a one loses one's sense for sleeping or any other reason, one's intention to perform the salat gets lost. If one wants to perform the salat after gaining the sense, one is to do wudu.
2. If one has completed the salat and has got involved in another job so deeply that one has forgotten about the wudu (his intention of performing salat is gone)—if one wants to perform the salat again, one has to do wudu.
3. If one answers the nature's call.

4. If one goes into the state of Junuban due to sexual intercourse and ejaculation.

**Section-4 of Chapter-5 [Verse 8-11]: Stand out firmly as a Just Witness**

O you who believe! Stand out firmly for Allah as just witnesses and let not the enmity and hatred of others make you avoid justice. Be just, that is next to piety, and fear Allah; for Allah is well acquainted with all that you do.

To those who believe and do deeds of righteousness, Allah has promised forgiveness and a great reward. Those who reject faith and deny our signs will be companions of Hell-fire.

O you who believe! Call in remembrance the favour of Allah unto you when certain men formed the design to stretch out their hands against you, but He held back their hands from you—so fear Allah; and on Allah let Believers put their trust.

**Remarks:**

A Muslim should be a just witness, as the Verses say: *Stand out firmly for Allah as just witnesses and let not the enmity and hatred of others make you avoid justice.*

They should not be worried about the conspiracy of Jews and Christians, as the Verses say that Allah would hold back their hands: *O you who believe! Call in remembrance the favour of Allah unto you when certain men formed the design to stretch out their hands against you, but He held back their hands*

*from you—so fear Allah; and on Allah let believers put their trust.*

**Section-5 of Chapter-5 [Verse 12-19]: People of the Book are called to accept Islam**

Allah did aforetime take a covenant from the Children of Israel. And we appointed twelve captains among them. And Allah said: "I am with you if you establish As-Salat and give Zakat, believe in my apostles, honor and assist them, and loan to Allah a beautiful loan; verily I will wipe out from you your evils and admit you to Jannaat with rivers flowing from beneath. But if any of you after this resists faith, he has truly wandered from the path of rectitude."

But because of their breach of their covenant, We cursed them and made their hearts grow hard; they change the words from their places and have abandoned a good part of the message that was sent to them. And you will not cease to discover deceit in them, except a few of them. But forgive them and overlook. Verily, Allah loves those who are kind.

From those too, who call themselves Christians, We did take a covenant, but they forgot a good part of the message that was sent them. So, we estranged them with enmity and hatred between the one and the other to the Day of Judgment. And soon will Allah show them what it is they have done.

O people of the Book! There has come to you our Apostle, revealing to you much that you used to hide in the Book and passing over much. There has come to you from Allah a light and a perspicuous Book wherewith Allah guides all who seek His good pleasure to ways of peace and safety,

and leads them out of darkness by His will unto the light, guides them to a path that is straight.

Indeed, those are in blasphemy that say, "Allah is Christ the son of Mary". Say: "Who then has the least power against Allah if His will were to destroy Christ the son of Mary, his mother, and all every one that is on the earth? For to Allah belong the dominion of the Skies and Lands and all that is between. He creates what He pleases. For Allah has power over all things."

The Jews and the Christians say: "We are sons of Allah and His beloved." Say: "Why then does He punish you for your sins? Nay, you are but men—of the men He has created. He forgives whom He pleases, and He punishes whom He pleases; and to Allah belong the dominion of the Skies and Lands and all that is between, and unto Him is the final goal".

O People of the Book! Now has come unto you Our Apostle making clear unto you after the break in our apostles, lest you should say, "There came unto us no bringer of glad tidings and no Warner." But now has come unto you a bringer of glad tidings and a Warner. And Allah has power over all things.

### **Remarks:**

In above Verses, Jews and Christians are called to become Muslims; and four points have been highlighted as the reasons for becoming Muslims:

1. In the Old Testament, the words have been shifted from their places, and parts have been abandoned. And in the New Testament, parts have been forgotten.

2. It is blasphemous to call Christ Jesus, God.
3. They say, "We are sons of God". But Allah does not want to identify humans as His children.
4. The last Prophet (pbuh) has come with a complete Book that is enough for three things described below:
  - a. *Guides all who seek His good pleasure to ways of peace and safety.*
  - b. *Leads them out of darkness by His will unto the light.*
  - c. *Guides them to a path that is straight.*

## **Segment 2**

### **Policies to deal with the Jews living in Muslim Territories**

#### **Section-6 of Chapter-5 [Verse 20-26]: A Rebellious People**

Remember Moses said to his people: "O my people! Call in remembrance the favor of Allah unto you when He produced prophets among you, made you kings, and gave you what He had not given to any other among the peoples. O my people! Enter the holy land which Allah has assigned unto you, and turn not back, for then you will be overthrown to your own ruin."

They said: "O Moses! In this land are a people of great strength. Never shall we enter it until they leave it. If they leave, then shall we enter."

Among God-fearing men were two on whom Allah had bestowed His grace. They said, "Assault them through the gate; for when you are in, victory will be yours; and on Allah put your trust if you have faith."

They said, "O Moses," while they remain there, "never shall we be able to enter to the end of time. Go you and your Lord, and fight you two, while we sit here."

He said: "O my Lord! I have power only over myself and my brother, so separate us from this rebellious people!"

Allah said: "Therefore will the land be out of their reach for forty years, in distraction will they wander through the land, but sorrow you not over these rebellious people."

### **Remarks:**

Jews are an Arab clan but descendants of Noah who most likely was a blue-eyed man from the area of Black Sea. Most likely, after the flood, he settled in Iraq (in the area of Nineveh) where his descendants flourished. Gradually, many of them moved towards Babylon.

Nimrod, the King of Babylon, was great grandson of Noah. During his time, Abraham moved from Babylon to Canaan. It happened around 1900 to 2300 years before the birth of Christ. Abraham too was a descendant of Noah.

Later, a grandson of Abraham, Jacob, moved to Egypt. In course of time, his children became a big community. Chapter 12 (Surah Yusuf) narrates how he and his sons settled in Egypt.

Moses brought them out from Egypt around 1300 years before the birth of Christ. But they could not settle for the reason described in above Verses. They were a rebellious people. They worshipped the cow and later denied to fight for the land.

After the death of Moses, they defeated the opposition under the leadership of Joshua and settled in Canaan (Palestine). However, they were not allowed by God to form a state.

More than hundred years passed peacefully, and they started praying to God for the permission of forming a state. Around 1000 years before the birth of Christ, they were allowed to form a state. God put Saul as the King over them. The country survived for several hundred years.

Their land was centered by Mighty Empires: Persian and Medo-Persian Empires in the East, Assyrian Empire in the North, Greek / Roman Empires in the west, and Egyptian Empire in the South. The end result of statehood was: 10 Tribes lost, 2 Tribes survived hiding among the people of other races. As the time passed, they became hopeless of having a state.

From flimsy historical references, it reveals that Moses settled some Jews in Madinah. Obviously, Moses wanted them to receive the Last Prophet (pbuh). But when the Last Prophet (pbuh) came after about 1800 years, many of them opposed him. So, they were evicted from Madinah. About eight hundred of them were killed in the process of eviction. For one more time they toppled the plan of Moses.

However, Jews are Children of Abraham and a nation of many Prophets. Allah often forgives them and uses them even in their negative drive. Due to the presence of Jews, the Arabs of Madinah knew that the Last Prophet (pbuh) would come to their city. So, the

Arabs of Madinah were proactive to receive him. In addition, they had idea about monotheistic religion. And the Verses related to the People of the Book could be revealed in practical scenario. Finally, the eviction of Jews strengthened new Muslim Ummah economically and politically.

Their Promised Land extends from the Nile to the Euphrates. Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) instructed, not to allow them in Arabian Peninsula that extends up to the line joining the tip of Red Sea and the tip of Persian Gulf. Therefore, they are supposed to live in the Promised Land, excluding Arabian Peninsula, without making a State or Government.

Many of them were living in Arab countries safely for hundreds of years. The Quran talks about the Jews so extensively that a Muslim knows them more than he knows his neighboring Tribes. It creates a kind of bondage in subconscious mind. A Muslim may look at a Jew with doubtful eyes, but never attacks a Jew until he is physically attacked.

In 19<sup>th</sup> Century, the Jews had no state. Some of them were pursuing to establish a homeland around Jerusalem, but Ottoman Sultan did not allow them. During the First World War, the Ottomans lost the Arab lands to Britain and France. They identified Palestine as the land of Jews.

But, Jews were reluctant to come in the barren land—most of them were living in the rich cities of Europe for hundreds of years.

During the Second World War, Hitler evicted them from Europe, and they began to come into Palestine in large groups. Muslims welcomed them

initially, but, as the crises began, several Arab Chiefs escaped from Palestine. Many Muslims were evicted. Many Jews settled in Muslim-Lands instead of settling in unclaimed and purchased land.

They maintained low intensity rivalry by petty oppositions to keep the migration of Arabs alive. Finally, confused Autocratic Leaders of Egypt and Syria made the people of Palestine helpless by getting defeated in the wars.

However, the Jews are supposed to live in the Middle East (except in Arabian Peninsula) and many of them are living there for hundreds of years. Therefore, the policies about them are given in this Part.

### **Section-7 of Chapter-5 [Verse 27-37]: Punishment of Waging War and Spreading Mischief**

Recite to them the truth of the story of the two sons of Adam. Behold! They each presented a sacrifice. It was accepted from one, but not from the other. The latter said, "Be sure I will slay you". "Surely," said the former, "Allah does accept of the sacrifice of those who are righteous. If you do stretch your hand against me, to slay me, it is not for me to stretch my hand against you to slay you; for I do fear Allah, the Cherisher of the universes. For me, I intend to let you draw on yourself my sin as well as yours; for you will be among the companions of the fire, and that is the reward of those who do wrong."

The soul (nafs) of the other led him to the murder of his brother—he murdered him and became one of the lost ones.

Then Allah sent a raven, who scratched the ground to show him how to hide the dead body of his brother. "Woe is me!" said he, "Was I not even able to be as this raven and to hide the dead body of my brother?" Then he became full of regrets.

On that account, We ordained for the Children of Israel that if any one slew a person, unless it be for murder or for spreading mischief in the land, it would be as if he slew the whole mankind; and if any one saved a life, it would be as if he saved the life of the whole mankind. Then, although there came to them our apostles with clear signs, yet, even after that many of them continued to commit excesses in the land.

The recompense of those who wage war against Allah and His Apostle, and do mischief in the land is execution, or crucifixion, or the cutting off of hands and feet from opposite sides, or exile from the land—that is their disgrace in this world, and a heavy punishment is theirs in the Hereafter, except for those who repent before they fall into your power; in that case, know that Allah is Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful.

O you who believe! Do your duty to Allah, seek the means of approach unto Him and strive in His cause that you may prosper.

As to those who reject Faith, if they had everything on earth and twice repeated to give as ransom for the penalty of the Day of Judgment, it would never be accepted of them; theirs would be a grievous penalty. Their wish will be to get out of the Fire, but never will they get out from there—their penalty will be one that endures.

## **Remarks:**

Jews have reasons to be jealous of Muslims. Their sacrifice on the Temple Mount is stopped, but Muslim's sacrifice thousands of camels and goats in every Hajj. Muslims sacrifice themselves as well, in the Jihad. Each Muslim is ready to die in the cause of Allah like Ismail was ready to be sacrificed.

But the Jews are not to compete positively. Many of them conspire, spread mischief in the land, and wage war.

If Jews living in a Muslim Territory wage war against Muslims or spread mischief in the land, their punishment will be, as said in the above Verses: execution, or crucifixion, or the cutting off of hands and feet from opposite sides, or exile from the land.

It may be mentioned that these punishments are not applicable to the Hypocrites acting against Islamic Leadership. The Punishment of Hypocrites is said in Section-19 of Chapter-4.

If the Highest Islamic Leadership identifies the Hypocrites and declares war against them, they can be killed wherever they may be found. After the war is over (when Islamic Leadership has ceased the war), there is no punishment for the hypocrisy.

## **Section-8 of Chapter-5 [Verse 38-40]: Punishment of Theft**

As to the thief, male or female, cut off his or her hands—a punishment by way of example from Allah for their crime; and Allah is Exalted in Power. But, if the thief repents after his crime and amends his conduct, Allah turns to him in

forgiveness; for Allah is Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful. Know you not that to Allah belongs the dominion of the Skies and Lands? He punishes whom He pleases, and He forgives whom He pleases; and Allah has power over all things.

**Remarks:**

There is a reason for which “Punishment of Theft” is discussed here:

The Chapter gives policies for the People of the Book living in Muslim Territories. And in the next Section, the People of the Book are permitted to follow the Torah in their Judgments. Thus, they are allowed to establish their Courts in the Muslim Territories.

Before giving the permission, the Law of Theft is given, which means that in case of a theft, the punishment of this Section will be applicable to the People of the Book as well.

Otherwise, there would be grave disparity: a Muslim committing theft would lose his hand, and a Jew committing theft would not lose, while both were living in the same land. It may be mentioned that the Torah does not order for the cutting off of the hands:

“A thief must certainly make restitution, but if he has nothing, he must be sold to pay for his theft.”

- Exodus 22:3

“...He must return what he has stolen  
...He must make restitution in full and  
add a fifth of the value of it...”

- Leviticus 6:4

A Judge may not punish for stealing if he is convinced that the thief has repented and would not steal again, as the Verses say: “*But, if the thief repents after his crime and amends his conduct, Allah turns to him in forgiveness; for Allah is Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful.*” Here, the thief is repenting after his crime- not after his punishment. So, if the thief is repenting and the Judge is convinced that the thief is repenting genuinely, he should presume that God has forgiven, and he cannot proclaim the punishment.

But, if the thief steals again later, there is no reason for the Judge to think that the thief really repents, and he should proclaim the punishment.

The Verses do not say, from where the hand is to be cut. It should be decided by the Judge according to the graveness of the offence. He may order to cut from the tip of a finger, or from the wrist, or from the elbow, or from where he feels justified.

But Muslims follow Sunnah and cut the hands from the wrists in all cases, which should not be done, because we do not elaborately know the case dealt by the Prophet (pbuh). May be, the thief did not repent, or the Prophet (pbuh) was not convinced that the thief would not do the same crime again (genuine repentance stops a person from doing the same crime again). So, the Quran is to be followed, not the

Sunnah. The Quran gives enough flexibility to the Judges in respect of the punishment.

**Section-9 of Chapter-5 [Verse 41-50]: Judge According to the Revelation**

O Apostle! Let not those who hurry to fall into disbelief grieve you—among those who say, "we believe," with their lips, but whose hearts have no faith (Hypocrites).

And of the Jews are men who listen much and eagerly to lies—will listen to others who have never come to you. They change the words from their times and places. They say, "If you are given this, take it, but if not, beware!"

And whomsoever Allah wants to put in *al-fitna*, you can do nothing for him against Allah. For such, it is not Allah's will to purify their hearts. For them, there is disgrace in this world and in the Hereafter a heavy punishment.

Listen to falsehood to devour anything forbidden. If they do come to you, either judge between them, or decline to interfere. If you decline, they cannot hurt you in the least. If you judge, judge in equity between them; for Allah loves those who judge in equity.

But why do they come to you for decision when they have law before them; therein is the command of Allah—yet, even after that they would turn away; for they are not People of Faith. It was We who revealed the law; therein was guidance and light; by its standard have been judged the Jews by the Prophets who bowed to Allah's will, by the Rabbis and the Doctors of Law; for to them was entrusted the protection of Allah's Book and they were witnesses thereto.

Therefore, fear not men, but fear me; and sell not my Verses for a miserable price. And whosoever does not judge by what Allah has revealed such are the Disbelievers.

We ordained therein for them: life for life, eye for eye, nose for nose, ear for ear, tooth for tooth, and wounds equal for equal; but if any one remits the retaliation by way of charity, it is an act of atonement for himself. And if any fail to judge by what Allah has revealed, they are Wrongdoer.

**Remarks:**

Jews should judge by the laws revealed to them.

In the Muslim territories, they may have separate courts to Judge according to the Torah. Hazrat Omar allowed the Jews to have separate Court in Jerusalem.

And in their footsteps, We sent Jesus, the Son of Mary, confirming the Law (Torah) that had come before him. We sent him the Gospel; therein was guidance and light, and confirmation of the Law (Torah) that had come before him—a guidance and an admonition to those who fear Allah. Let the People of the Gospel judge by what Allah has revealed therein. If any do fail to judge by what Allah has revealed, they are those who rebel.

**Remarks:**

Christians should judge according to the Gospel and Torah. So, the Christians living in Muslim Territories may have their own Courts.

To you We sent the Scripture in truth, confirming the scripture that came before it, and guarding it in safety. So, judge between them by what Allah has revealed and follow not their vain desires diverging from the truth that have come to you.

To each among you we have prescribed a law and an open way. If Allah had so willed, He would have made you a single people—but to test you in what He has given you. So, strive as in a race in all virtues; the goal of you all is to Allah; it is He that will show you the truth of the matters in which you dispute.

And this: Judge you between them by what Allah has revealed and follow not their vain desires, but beware of them, lest they beguile you from any of that which Allah has sent down to you. And if they turn away, be assured that for some of their crime, it is Allah's purpose to punish them; and truly most men are rebellious.

Do they then seek judgment of ignorance? And who is better in judgment than Allah for a people who have firm faith.

### **Section-10 of Chapter-5 [Verse 51-63]: Guidance to take *Awliya* (Friends, Protectors, Helpers and Guides)**

O you who believe, take not the Jews and the Christians as *awliya*—they are but *awliya* to each other. And he among you that turns to them is of them. Verily, Allah guides not a people unjust. Those in whose hearts are a disease you see how eagerly they run about among them, saying: "We do fear lest a change of fortune bring us disaster." Ah! Perhaps Allah will give victory or a decision according to His will. Then will they repent of the thoughts, which they secretly harbored

in their hearts. And those who believe will say: "Are these the men who swore their strongest oaths by Allah that they were with you?" All that they do will be in vain, and they will fall into ruin.

O you who believe, if any from among you turn back from his Faith, soon will Allah produce a people whom He will love as they will love Him—lowly with the believers, mighty against the rejecters, fighting in the way of Allah, and never fear of the blame of the blamers; that is the grace of Allah, which He will bestow on whom He pleases. And Allah encompasses all, and He knows all things.

Your *wali* (a friend, protector, helper and guide) is Allah, His Apostle, and the Believers those who perform As-Salat and give Zakat, and they bow down humbly. As to those who turn to Allah, His Apostle, and the Believers; it is the fellowship of Allah that must certainly triumph.

O you who believe, take not as awliya those who take your religion for a mockery or sport, whether among those who received the scripture before you or among those who reject faith, but fear you Allah if you have faith. When you proclaim your call to prayer, they take it as mockery and sport; that is because they are a people without understanding.

Say: "O people of the Book! Do you disapprove of us for no other reason than that we believe in Allah and the revelation that has come to us and that which came before, and that most of you are rebellious and disobedient?" Say, "Shall I point out to you something much worse than this regarding the recompense from Allah—those who incurred the curse of Allah and His wrath, those of whom He transformed into apes and swine, those who worshipped

*Taghut* (Power); such are worse in rank and far more astray from the even path!"

When they come to you, they say: "We believe," but in fact, they enter with a mind against Faith, and they go out with the same; but Allah knows fully all that they hide.

And you see many of them hurrying toward sin and transgression and eating illegal things. Evil indeed are the things that they do. Why do not the Rabbis and the Doctors of Law forbid them from their uttering sinful words and eating things forbidden? Evil indeed are their works.

### **Section-11 of Chapter-5 [Verse 64-66]: Major Drawbacks of Jews**

The Jews say: "Allah's hand is tied up." Be their hands tied up, and be they accursed for what they utter. Nay, both His hands are widely outstretched. He gives and spends as He pleases. But the revelation that come to you from Allah increases in most of them their obstinate rebellion and blasphemy. Among them we have placed enmity and hatred till the Day of Judgment. Every time they kindle the fire of war, Allah does extinguish it. And they strive to do mischief on earth; and Allah loves not those who do mischief.

If only the People of the Book had believed and been righteous, We should indeed have blotted out their iniquities and admitted them to Jannaati-Naimi. If only they had stood fast by the Torah, the Gospel, and all the revelation that was sent to them from their Lord, they would have enjoyed happiness from every side. There is from among them a party on the right course, but many of them follow a course that is evil.

**Section-12** of Chapter-5 [Verse 67-68]: **Call them to join the Ummah**

O Apostle! Proclaim the (message), which has been sent to you from your Lord. If you did not, you would not have fulfilled and proclaimed His mission. And Allah will defend you from men. Verily, Allah guides not those who reject Faith.

Say: "O People of the Book, you have no ground to stand upon unless you stand fast by the Law, the Gospel, and all the revelation that has come to you from your Lord." Verily, that which has been sent down to you from your Lord increases in most of them obstinate rebellion and disbelief. But sorrow you not over people without Faith.

**Remarks:**

Prophet (pbuh) was instructed through above Verses to preach among People of the Book as well, to fulfill the Prophetic Mission.

**Section-13** of Chapter-5 [Verse 69]: **A Policy of Merciful Allah**

Those who believe (in the Qur'an), those who follow the Jewish (scriptures), and the Sabians, and the Christians—any who believe in Allah and the Last Day and work righteousness, on them shall be no fear, nor shall they grieve.

### **Remarks:**

For selecting the people for paradise (Jannaat) this is the basic policy of Allah: “...*any who believe in Allah and the Last Day and work righteousness, on them shall be no fear, nor shall they grieve.*”

### **Section-14 of Chapter-5 [Verse 70-71]: Concluding with the Jews**

We took the covenant of the Children of Israel and sent them apostles. Every time there came to them an apostle—with what they themselves desired not—some they called impostors, and some they slay. They thought there would be no trial, so they became blind and deaf. Yet Allah turned to them, yet again many of them became blind and deaf. But Allah sees well all that they do.

### **Segment-3**

#### **Advice to the Muslims living in Christian Countries**

Christianity is spread in many nations of the world. Many Muslims live in their countries. Following Verses make the Muslims aware of their condition and instruct accordingly.

### **Section-15 of Chapter-5 [Verse 72-77]: Major Drawbacks of Christians**

They do blaspheme who say: "Allah is Christ (Messiah)." But said Christ: "O Children of Israel worship Allah, my Lord and your Lord; whoever joins other gods with Allah, Allah

will forbid him the Jannaat, and the Fire will be his abode. For the wrongdoers, there will be no one to help."

They do blaspheme who say: Allah is one of three in a Trinity; for there is no Allah except one Allah. If they desist not from their word, verily a grievous penalty will befall the blasphemers among them. Why turn they not to Allah and seek His forgiveness? For Allah is Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful.

Christ, the son of Mary, was no more than an apostle; many were the apostles that passed away before him. His mother was a woman of truth. They had both to eat their food. See how Allah does make His signs clear to them; yet see in what ways they are deluded away from the truth!

Say: "Will you worship besides Allah something, which has no power either to harm or benefit you? But Allah! He it is that hears and knows all things."

Say: "O people of the Book, exceed not in your religion the bounds trespassing beyond the truth, nor follow the vain desires of people who went wrong in times gone by, who misled many and strayed from the even way.

### **Remarks:**

Christians call Jesus God. And some of them believe in the Trinity. It makes their Faith imperfect. Anybody who has something to worship beside Allah is heading to hell.

## **Section-16 of Chapter-5 [Verse 78-86]: Difference between Jews and Christians**

Those among the Children of Israel who disbelieved were cursed by the tongue of David and Jesus, son of Mary. That was because they disobeyed and were ever transgressing beyond bounds. They used not to forbid one another from *Al-Munkar* (wrong-doing / evil-doing / disbelief / polytheism / sins), which they committed. Vile indeed was what they used to do.

You see many of them turning in friendship to the unbelievers. Evil indeed is that which their souls have sent forward before them. For that Allah's wrath fell upon them, and in torment they will abide. If only they had believed in Allah, in the Apostle, and in what have been revealed to him, never would they have taken them for friends and protectors. But most of them are rebellious wrongdoers.

Strongest among men in enmity to the Believers you will find the Jews and Pagans, and nearest among them in love to the Believers you will find those who say, "We are Christians" because among these are men devoted to learning and men who have renounced the world, and they are not arrogant. And when they listen to the revelation received by the Apostle, you will see their eyes overflowing with tears; for they recognize the truth. They pray: "Our Lord, we believe; write us down among the witnesses. And why should we not believe in Allah and the truth, which has come to us? And we wish that our Lord to admit us to the company of the righteous?" So, because of what they said, Allah rewarded them with *Jannaat* with rivers flowing from underneath; their eternal home. Such is the recompense of those who does

good. But those who reject Faith and belie our Verses, they shall be companions of Hell-fire.

**Section-17** of Chapter-5 [Verse 87-88]: **Do not make Lawful Food Unlawful**

O you who believe make not unlawful the good things, which Allah has made lawful for you, but commit no excess; for Allah loves not those given to excess. Eat of the things, which Allah has provided for you, lawful and good; but fear Allah, in Whom you believe.

**Remarks:**

A Muslim, living in a Christian country, should not show abhorrence to their food. All animals except swine are Halal for Muslims.

**Section-18** of Chapter-5 [Verse 89]: **Oath**

Allah will not call you to account for what is futile in your oaths, but He will call you to account for your deliberate oaths—for expiation feed ten indigent persons on a scale of the average for the food of your families, or clothe them, or give a slave his freedom. If that is beyond your means, fast for three days. That is the expiation for the oaths you have sworn. But keep to your oaths. Thus, does Allah make clear to you His signs that you may be grateful.

### **Remarks:**

The oath that has been sworn should be followed through, even if it favors a Christian Individual, Organization, or Country. If one fails to keep the oath, one needs to pay the expiation as described above.

### **Section-19 of Chapter-5 [Verse 90-93]: Intoxication and Gambling**

O you who believe! Intoxicants and gambling, stones and arrows are an abomination of Satan's handwork; eschew such that you may prosper. Satan's plan is to excite enmity and hatred between you with intoxicants and gambling and hinder you from the remembrance of Allah and from prayer; will you not then abstain?

### **Remarks:**

The Christian countries are full of bars and casinos. A Muslim, living in a Christian country, should not involve himself in drinking and gambling.

People of Madinah left drinking after the revelation of above Verses. However, wine is not declared haram in the Verses; it is declared forbidden.

The prohibition was brought about through stages. Initially, limited restrictions were imposed through the following Verses:

“O ye who believe, approach not prayers with a mind befogged, until ye can understand all that ye say...”

[Al Quran 4:43]

“They ask thee concerning wine and gambling. Say: "In them is great harm, and some profit for men, but the harm is greater than the profit...”

[Al Quran 2:219]

Therefore, a new Muslim, having the habit of drinking wine from beforehand, may leave drinking in stages over a period of even several years. A bottle of beer, having 3 to 5 percent alcohol, or a little quantity of wine does not intoxicate a person to a level that he fails to understand what he is saying. The new Muslim can pray even after drinking such quantities of intoxicants.

Obey Allah and obey the Apostle, and beware; if you do turn back, know you that it is Our Apostle's duty to proclaim in the clearest manner.

### **Remarks:**

The Sahabah were busy to establish Islam. They were memorizing the Quran and performing the salat regularly. It was likely that the Prophet (pbuh) had been hoping for the Verses that would prohibit the drinking of wine—so that one, being drunk, does not spoil time.

Hence, the above Verses reminded to obey the Prophet (pbuh) as well.

If a Prophet forbids eating something, it becomes haram for the followers. The Sahabah left drinking then and there.

Not on those who believe and do the good deeds any sin for what they ate when that they fear and they believe and they do good deeds; then they fear and believe; then they fear and do good. And Allah loves the good-doers.

### **Remarks:**

A new Muslim, who had the habit of drinking wine from beforehand, should try to his best to avoid it. However, if he drinks, there is no sin, according to the above Verses, when he fears Allah, believes and does good deeds.

If he drinks again, he should again fear Allah and believe.

If he drinks once again, he should again fear Allah and do good deeds.

Moreover, if Allah forgives a sin thrice for the repentance, He forgives the sin forever: “...Allah says, *this of My servants is doing the same sin again and again, and asking for My forgiveness again and again; I forgive him this sin forever*” (or words to that effect) - Hadithe-Qudsi. Allah forgives because He likes the servant, repenting.

However, the servant does not know, whether Allah has accepted his repentance or not. So, if a

believing good-doer drinks, he should fear Allah and should continue believing and doing good deeds.

To conclude, one should train one's child in the way of Islam so that he never drinks a drop of alcohol, because it is seriously forbidden in the Verses under discussion. A Muslim by born should never drink.

### **Section-20 of Chapter-5 [Verse 94-98]: Affiliation to Kabah**

O you who believe, Allah will certainly make a trial of you with something in the game that is well within the reach of your hands and your lances that Allah may test him who fears Him unseen—any who transgresses thereafter will have a grievous penalty.

O you who believe, kill not game while you are in a state of *Ihram*. If any of you does so intentionally, the compensation is an offering brought to the Kabah of a domestic animal equivalent to the one he killed, as adjudged by two just men among you; or for expiration, he should feed poor persons or its equivalent in fasts that he may taste of the penalty of his deed. Allah forgives what is past; for repetition, Allah will exact from him the penalty; for Allah is Exalted, and Lord of Retribution.

Lawful to you is the pursuit of water-game and its use for food for the benefit of yourselves and those who travel, but forbidden is the pursuit of land-game as long as you are in the sacred precincts or in pilgrim garb; and fear Allah, to Whom you shall be gathered back.

Allah made the Kabah the Sacred House, an asylum of security for men, as also the Sacred Months, the animals

for offerings, and the garlands that mark them that you may know that Allah has knowledge of what is in the Skies and on Lands, and that Allah is well acquainted with all things. Know you that Allah is strict in punishment and that Allah is Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful.

**Remarks:**

Wherever a Muslim may be, in Alaska or Australia, he should visit Kabah at least once in his lifetime. The Kabah is spiritual center of the Muslim Ummah. One, moving to Kabah, should not hunt the land animals; it would disturb the locals and would grow hatred and enmity. But one may hunt water-animals.

**Section-21 of Chapter-5 [Verse 99-100]: Abundance of *Khabiss***

The duty of Apostle is nothing but to convey, but Allah knows all that you reveal and you conceal. Say, "Not equal are *Khabiss* (evil person, thing, deed, belief, etc.) and *al-Tayyib* (good person, thing, deed, belief, etc.) even though the abundance of *Khabiss* may please you. So, fear Allah, O you that understand, in order that you may prosper."

**Remarks:**

There are many things that look good, but are *Khabiss* in reality. A dazzling city, praised by all, may be full of *Khabiss*.

Abundance of the *Khabiss* may please one, but one should not forget that in the real life the *Khabiss*

is not better than the *Tayyib* that may even look poor and humble.

**Section-22 of Chapter-5 [Verse 101-105]: Ask not Question and do not invent Rituals**

O you who believe! Ask not questions about things which if made plain to you, may cause you trouble. But if you ask about things when the Qur'an is being revealed, they will be made plain to you. Allah has forgiven that; for Allah is Oft-forgiving, Most Forbearing. Some people before you did ask such questions, and on that account lost their faith.

**Remarks:**

In this respect, one may remember the story of the cow narrated in Chapter-2. The Jews could sacrifice any cow, but they asked questions about its qualities, for which the cow became rare. They had to find out the cow, buy it with a high price, and had to sacrifice.

Muslims are advised not to ask questions—if something is not mentioned in the Quran, Allah has forgiven that.

It was not Allah who instituted a slit-ear she-camel or a she-camel let loose for free pasture, or idol sacrifices for twin-births in animals, or stallion-camels freed from work. It is blasphemers who invent a lie against Allah, but most of them lack wisdom.

When it is said to them: "Come to what Allah has revealed; come to the Apostle." They say: "Enough for us are the ways we found our fathers following." What! Even

though their fathers were void of knowledge and guidance? O you who believe, guard your own souls. If you follow guidance, no hurt can come to you from those who stray. The goal of you all is to Allah; it is He that will show you the truth of all that you do.

### **Section-23 of Chapter-5 [Verse 106-108]: Bequest**

O you who believe, when death approaches any of you, (take) witnesses among yourselves when making bequests two just men of your own, or others from outside if you are in journey through the earth and the chance of death befalls you. If you doubt, detain them both after prayer, and let them both swear by Allah: "We wish not in this for any worldly gain, even though the (beneficiary) be our near relation; we shall hide not the evidence before Allah; if we do, then indeed the sin be upon us."

But, if it gets known that these two were guilty of the sin, let two others stand forth in their places—nearest in kin from among those who claim a lawful right. Let them swear by Allah: "We affirm that our witness is truer than that of those two, and that we have not trespassed, for then indeed we should be of the wrong-doers."

That should make it closer that their testimony would be in its true shape, or else they would fear that (other) oaths would be admitted after their oaths. And fear Allah and listen. And Allah guides not a people who are "Al-Fasiqun" (rebellious, disobedient, and defaulters).

## **Remarks:**

In Section-5 of Chapter-4, the Quran gives Rules of Inheritance where shares of son, daughter, wife and parents are mentioned. If a Muslim is living in a land that runs on Islamic Laws, bequest is not necessary. But, if one is living in a land, which is not being ruled by Islamic Laws, then making bequest may be necessary. The bequest should be according to the guidance of the Quran, as stated in Section-5 of Chapter-4; otherwise it might be sinful because the person is not establishing Islam in his family, in this aspect. However, one can deviate by reasonable amount. It means that a poor son can be given more than a rich son.

## **Segment 4 Conclusion**

### **Section-24 of Chapter-5 [Verse 109-119]: Salvation of Christians**

One day Allah will gather the apostles together, and ask: "What was the response you received?" They will say, "We have no knowledge; it is You Who know in full all that is hidden."

Then Allah will say, "O Jesus the son of Mary! Recount My favour to you and to thy mother. Behold! I strengthened you with Holy Soul (Ruhul-Quddus) so that you did speak to the people in childhood and in maturity. Behold! I taught you the Book and wisdom, the Law and the Gospel. And behold, you make out of clay as it were the figure of a

bird by My leave, and you breathe into it, and it becomes a bird by My leave; and you heal those born blind and the lepers by My leave; and behold, you bring forth the dead by My leave.

And behold! I did restrain the Children of Israel from you when you did show them the clear Signs and the unbelievers among them said, "This is nothing but evident magic".

And behold! I inspired the disciples to have faith in Me and Mine Apostle. They said, "We have faith and bear witness that we bow to Allah as Muslims".

Behold! The disciples said, "O Jesus the son of Mary! Can your Lord send down to us a table spread (with food) from heaven?"

Jesus said, "Fear Allah, if you have faith." They said, "We only wish to eat thereof and satisfy our hearts and to know that you have indeed told us the truth, and that we ourselves may be witnesses to the miracle."

Jesus the son of Mary said, "O Allah our Lord! Send us from heaven a table set that there may be for us—for the first and the last of us—a solemn festival and a sign from you; and provide for our sustenance, for you are the best Sustainer."

Allah said, "I will send it down unto you. But if any of you after that resist faith, I will punish him with a penalty such as I have not inflicted on any one among all the peoples."

And behold! Allah will say: "O Jesus the son of Mary! Did you say unto men, worship me and my mother as gods, in derogation of Allah?"

He will say: "Glory to You, never could I say what I had no right. Had I said such a thing, you would indeed have

known it. You know what is in my heart though I do not know what is in Yours. Truly, You, only You are the All-Knower of all that is hidden. Never I said to them aught except what You did command me to say to wit, "Worship Allah, my Lord and your Lord," and I was a witness over them while I dwelt among them; when You did take me up, You was the Watcher over them, and You are a witness to all things. If You do punish them, they are Your servant; if You do forgive them, You are the Exalted in power, the Wise."

Allah will say: "This is a day on which the truthful will profit from their truth; theirs are gardens with rivers flowing from beneath—their eternal Home. Allah is well-pleased with them, and they with Allah. That is the great salvation. To Allah does belong the dominion of the Skies and Lands and all that are therein, and it is He Who has power over all things.

### **Remarks:**

Above Verses prove that Jesus will not disown people who worship him and his mother as God/gods. Jesus will request for their Salvation saying: *"If You do punish them, they are Your servant; if You do forgive them, You are the Exalted in power, the Wise."*

Allah may or may not forgive—it is not clarified in above Verses.

Therefore, it is not justified to say that the Catholics and that have similar Faiths are not followers of original Jesus—they are followers of Jesus, the son of Marry, but have deviated from the correct teachings.



## Chapter 6 [Al An'am THE CATTLE]

**Aim of the Chapter:** To highlight the Furqan's Way of Preaching Islam

### Introduction

The Chapter narrates why we need guidance—we have another determined term. And once the Message has come, if the people will not accept it, they may face destruction, like some races of the old.

The Chapter teaches the way of preaching Islam through struggle and warfare. It talks about Taboo and Wrongful Sacrifices with which wrongful leaders and so called priestly leaders delude people from the right path. Thus, it highlights the need to remove the *Taghuts* (Powers) through physical fighting so that people can leave the wrong paths safely and peacefully.

Throughout the Surah, there are Verses that acquaint us with Allah.

### Structure of the Surah

The Surah is divided in four Segments:

The First Segment highlights the importance of the afterlife.

The Second Segment discusses the preaching strategy and gives the guidance.

The Third Segment talks about the people that counter the preaching.

The Fourth Chapter highlights Islam as the religion that was preached by the Prophets of all times. It calls People of the Book to follow.

The Segments and Sections are given below:

## **Flowchart of the Tafsir**

### **Segment 1: The Universe has another Determined Term**

Section 1 [Verse 1-4]: Another Determined Term

### **Segment 2: The Preaching Strategy of the Furqan**

Section 2 [Verse 5-6]: Deriving Lessons from the Previous Generations

Section 3 [Verse 7-9]: The Miracle does not work in real sense. Learn through Observations and Analyses. The Environment of Test is to be Maintained

Section 4 [Verse 10-19]: The Call of Truth and the Stand of Prophet (pbuh)

Section 5 [Verse 20-32]: Kinds of people Prophet (pbuh) was Confronting

Section 6 [Verse 33-37]: Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) was not given with any Miraculous Power / Sign

Section 7 [Verse 38-47]: Calamities, sufferings, and adversities do not soften a People

Section 8 [Verse 48-58]: Obligations of Prophet (pbuh) and Suggested Standpoints

Section 9 [Verse 59]: Fate and the Computer of Creations (CC) - Main Discussion

Section 10 [Verse 60-67]: Human Soul (Main Discussion)

Section 11 [Verse 68-70]: Negative discussion about the Verses

Section 12 [Verse 71-73]: Allah's Guidance is the Guidance

Section 13 [Verse 74-94]: Home of Ummah and the Mother of Cities (Main Discussion)

Section 14 [Verse 95-106]: Who is Allah

Section 15 [Verse 107-114]: Concluding Segment-2

### **Segment 3: The people that counter the preaching of Islam; their ways and counter-measures**

Section 16 [Verse 115-122]: A Check to the Wicked Leaders

Section 17 [Verse 123-135]: Wicked Leader and Possession by Satan Jinns

Section 18 [Verse 136-145]: Taboo, Wrongful Sacrifice, and Halal Food

### **Segment 4: Islam is the Religion of Abraham**

Section 19 [Verse 146-147]: Difference of the Quran in respect of Halal Food

Section 20 [Verse 148-149]: Difference in the Idea of Determinism

Section 21 [Verse 150-153]: In basic matters the Quran is like the Holy Bible

Section 22 [Verse 154-157]: The Quran is a clear and Independent Book.

Section 23 [Verse 158-164]: Those that divide the Religion

Section 24 [Verse 165]: Some people are given more just to Test.

# Tafsir of the Surah

## Segment-1

### The Universe has another Determined Term

#### Section-1 of Chapter-6 [Verse 1-4]: Another Determined Term

Praise be to Allah Who created the “Skies and Lands” (this Universe) and made the Darkness and the Light. Yet those who reject Faith hold as equal with their Guardian-Lord.

#### Remarks:

One needs to know the Olber’s Paradox to understand the above Verses in full.

The stars are grouped into galaxies. The universe contains over hundred seventy billion galaxies.

All stars emit light. The light has no destruction. So, the light of every star should come to the Earth at some time.

Then, in the universe with more than hundred seventy billion galaxies, our every line of sight should end on the surface of a star, and the whole sky should look crammed with stars, forming a carpet, far brighter than the sun. The scientists calculate that the sky should be 40,000 times brighter than the Sun at noon.

Where the light is going? Why the night is dark, and why there is no light at day except the light of the Sun?

*“The key question- a deceptively simple one was asked by a man who we might justly regard as the first cosmologist: de Cheseaux (1744). It was he who first wondered why a supposedly infinite universe full of bright stars should be dark at night. Alas for de Chesaux no one else at that time seemed able to realize the significance of his question. It was thought up again independently by a German astronomer Wilhelm Olbers in 1826. For this reason, the puzzle is known ‘Olber’s Paradox’”*

*– The Expanding Universe by John Gribbin in the Encyclopedia of Space Travel and Astronomy, edited by John Man.*

*“To look at the problem, imagine thin layers, or shells of stars surrounding the Earth. The intensity of light from all stars in any one shell can easily be worked out. The distance cancels out the increase in star light. Never the less in an infinite universe, there would be an infinite number of shells so that we might guess that the universe should have an infinite bright sky. In fact, though nearby stars block out some of the light from further away when this is taken into account, we can say that the night sky should be ‘only’ as bright as the surface of an average star in total, just 40,000 times the brightness of the Sun at noon. The puzzle is not therefore, why is the sky dark at night. It is why the sky is so dark even in day time.”*

*– The Expanding Universe by John Gribbin in The Encyclopedia of Space travel and Astronomy edited by John Man.*

The mystery was resolved when it was discovered that the universe was expanding. In 1920s, an American Scientist, Edwin Hubble, discovered that all distant galaxies were receding. The recessional velocity increases with the distance—the further away a galaxy is, the faster it is moving away. The nearby galaxies are receding at a rate of two to three hundred miles per second, while the furthest galaxies, discovered so far, are receding at speeds nearing the speed of light. It implies that the universe is expanding.

*“Expansion solves the problem. The light and heat from all the objects in the sky has to spread over more thinly into the void to fill the increasing space between them. This effectively weakens the light, lowering the density of the energy of starlight- the brightness of the sky- everywhere. The faster each light source recedes, the weaker its contribution will be, and in a universe with the more distant shells receding more rapidly than those nearby, only the very nears are left making any noticeable contribution to conditions here on the Earth.”*

– *The Expanding Universe* by John Gribbin in  
The Encyclopedia of Space Travel and Astronomy,  
edited by John Man.

As the universe is expanding, the emitting energies of the stars are spreading out to fill the increasing space. Thus, the expansion of the universe has reduced the light to the level of darkness.

“What! Are you more difficult to create, or the sky? He has constructed it. He has raised its thickness, and He has given it order and perfection. Its night does He endow with darkness, and its splendor does He bring out. And the land moreover has He extended. He draws out there from its moisture and its pasture. And the mountains He firmly fixed. For use and convenience to you and your cattle.” [Al Quran 79: 27–33]

To Allah, it would not matter whether the universe was hot or cold / bright or dark. He has expanded the universe to make the day and the night for us and our cattle.

Now it is said that the scientists should have understood the expansion of the universe much before Hubble’s discovery, because the dark nights can exist in an expanding universe only.

“So verily I swear by the receding ships (receding galaxies) disappear, and the Night as it departs and the Dawn as it breathes.”

[Al Quran 81: 15–18]

[The Quran in several Verses has called the galaxies ships: “*It is not permitted to the Sun to outstrip the Moon, nor can the night outstrip the day, and all are in a ship (Milky Way Galaxy) they are floating.*” – Al

Quran 36: 40. The Milky Way Galaxy is like a spaceship, carrying gases, dust, stars, and other objects like the Sun and the Moon.]

He it is Who created you from *tinin* and then decreed a stated term. And there is in His presence another determined term, yet you doubt within yourselves!

### Remarks:

The *tinin*, mentioned in the above Verses, is a guitar like instrument that is compared with the human zygote, having 23 pairs of DNA Double Helix Molecules, each six feet long if unwound and stretched. Allah has created a human from the music of the *tinin* (zygote) known to us as the genome expression:

“He it is Who shapes you in the wombs as He pleases. There is no god but He, the Exalted in Might, the Wise.” [Al Quran 3:6]

In Chapter-1, we discussed that we are living in the 2nd Cycle of the universe. We come to know from the darkness (discussed under the previous Verses) that the universe has been expanded. The universe will collapse once again in the future, as the following Verse says:

“On the day when We will roll up the Skies (Samawaat / Universe) like the

rolling up of the scroll for writings; as We originated the first creation, We shall reproduce it—a promise on Us; surely We will bring it about.”

[Al Quran 81: 104]

The universe will be collapsed by rolling up the Skies. Subsequently, from the collapsed universe (Rolled up Skies / Big Crunch / Thaqal), the universe will be reproduced again. The first creation was originated through the Big Bang-1, so the next universe will be initiated through the Big Bang-2.

Thus, the universe has another determined term (the next term). The evolution is shown in the following figure:

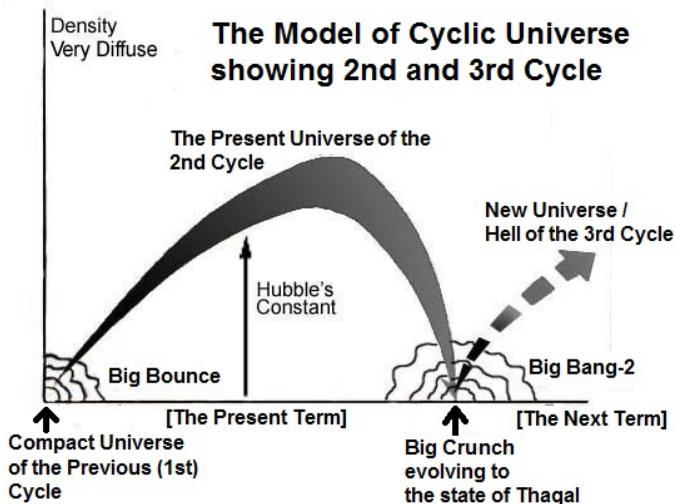


Figure 6.1: Evolution of Universe

What is the role of a human being in this dynamic universe? We get the answer from the Quran, the True Words of God.

The following Verse indicates that the collapsed universe (Rolled up Skies / Big Crunch evolving to the state of Thaqal) is the Point of Resurrection. Mankind will be resurrected on the Thaqal and will be shifted to the Land of Judgment, specially created in the Super Space:

“And not they honored Allah, true honor, while the Land (the Land of Judgment) is assembling in His hand on the Day of Resurrection, and the Skies (the Universe) rolled-up in His right hand. Glory be to Him! And high is He above what they associate”.

[Al Quran 39: 67]

After the Judgment, the good ones will be shifted to a separate universe, named Jannaat, where they will live forever in peace and satisfaction. That is another determined term for the good ones.

The sinners will be left in the collapsed universe (Rolled up Skies). The Rolled up Skies will be un-rolling and the galaxies will be reviving just by gaining the volumes of space. Thus, the universe will be created again.

The sinners will never die. They will be scattered in the reviving galaxies. The galaxies are the objects of hell where they will live forever in disasters

and pains. That is another determined term for the sinners.

So, a human is passing through a term of life in the present cycle (2nd Cycle) of the universe. He has another determined term of life in the next cycle (3rd Cycle) of the universe.

And He is God in the Skies and on Lands. He knows what you hide and what you reveal, and He knows what you earn. But, never did a single one of the Verses of their Lord reaches them but they turned away from there.

## **Segment-2**

### **The Preaching Strategy of the Furqan**

#### **Section-2 of Chapter-6 [Verse 5-6]: Deriving Lessons from the Previous Generations**

And now they reject the truth when it reaches them, but soon shall they learn the reality of what they used to mock at.

See they not how many of those before them We did destroy? Generations We had established on the Earth in strength such as We have not given to you; for whom We poured out rain from the skies in abundance and gave streams flowing beneath them; yet for their sins, We destroyed them, and raised in their wake fresh generations.

**Section-3 of Chapter-6 [Verse 7-9]: The Miracle does not work in real sense. Learn through Observations and Analyses. The Environment of Test is to be Maintained**

And even if We had sent down unto you a Message written on paper so that they could touch it with their hands, the Unbelievers would have been sure to say: "This is nothing but obvious magic!"

They say: "Why is not an angel sent down to him?"

If We did send down an angel, the matter would be settled at once, and no respite would be granted them.

And had we appointed him an angel, We should have sent him as a man, and We would have certainly confused them in which they are already confused.

**Remarks:**

If one exists in this term of the Universe, one will exist in the next term too—nothing can be erased. The space-time is like a scrolling paper for writings.

So, we need a God for the salvation from this universe, full of burning galaxies. Our search of God is made easy by sending Messengers.

Allah has fulfilled His part by sending the Last Messenger over about 1450 years ago. If one listens to him, it is good—one will be salvaged to the Jannaat, the original home of human being.

But, if one will not listen, it is good too—one will remain in this universe (Samawaat) in the next determined term. One will be a vicegerent of God over a whole galaxy, but a forgotten vicegerent. One

will be in disasters and pains for the inherent nature of one's galaxy.

Allah equally owns both the universes (Samawaat and Jannaat). He has planned to depute His vicegerents in the objects of the universes. But all objects are not the same—some are hostile, some are peaceful. So, He has prepared a level plain ground of test—it is the Earth.

The test is easy: *“...any who believe in God and the Last Day, and work righteousness, shall have their reward with their Lord; on them shall be no fear, nor shall they grieve.”* [Al Quran 2:62]

So, the Earth is a place to determine who deserves what in the eternal next term? So, there should remain the scopes of disbelieve.

Therefore, preaching by human Messengers is the way Allah has chosen. The last Messenger has left the Quran that calls mankind to the Straight Path, leading to Jannaat.

If Allah would send visible angels, the test environment would be lost.

#### **Section-4 of Chapter-6 [Verse 10-19]: The Call of Truth and the Stand of Prophet (pbuh)**

Mocked were apostles before you, but their scoffers were hemmed in by the thing that they mocked. Say: "Travel through the earth and see, what the end of those was who rejected Truth."

## Remarks:

A city faces many natural disasters in the passage of time, and it may be destroyed at one point or the other. But many old cities are surviving! Damascus is more than six-thousand-year-old. Its sister cities, such as Sodom, Gomorrah, Alba are gone, but Damascus is surviving.

In all destroyed cities, we find idols. The idols could not save the cities from the disasters of annihilation.

The frequency of massive natural disasters that can annihilate a city is not consistent. In the last 1400 years and more, no city has been annihilated. A city faces disaster of annihilation when its people reject a Messenger of God. And the Last Messenger has passed away.

People of Madinah were facing the call as they got Prophet Muhammad (pbuh). So, they are told in above Verses: *"Say, "Travel through the earth and see, what the end of those was who rejected Truth."*

Say: To whom belong all that is in the Skies and Lands (Universe)?

Say: To Allah. He has decreed for Himself Mercy that He will gather you together for the Day of Judgment; there is no doubt what-so-ever; it is they who have lost their own souls that will not believe. And to Him belong all that dwell in the night and the day, and He is the one who hears and knows all things.

## Remarks:

Allah has created an enormous universe (Samawaat) and He has set its evolution on a very long timescale. Here, a thing happens when it is the best time to happen. Allah will carry out the Final Judgment when the present cycle (2nd Cycle) of the universe will culminate. Mankind has a time determined. Allah is not in a hurry—He is ever living.

Everything will be gathered together for the Judgment of the Most High—the universe will collapse. So, it has been said in the Verses under discussion: “...*He has decreed for Himself Mercy; that He will gather you together for the Day of Judgment; there is no doubt what-so-ever*”

Allah could carry out the Final Judgment on the Earth and could send people to the hell (the galaxies of this Universe) or to the paradise (the objects of the Jannaat) from here. But that would be a difficult undertaking.

Therefore, He will carry out the Judgment at a perfect time when everything will be encapsulated in an extremely rolled-up space. That is the time when the super compact universe will be re-configured and re-programmed for the re-initiation. People that did good in the preceding term will achieve good in the next term.

Say: Shall I take for my protector any other than Allah, the Maker of the Skies and Lands (Universe)? And He it is that feeds, but is not fed?

Say: Nay! But I am commanded to be the first of those who bow to Allah. And be not you of the company of those who join gods with Allah.

Say: I would, if I disobeyed my Lord, indeed have fear of the Penalty of a Mighty Day. On that day, if the Penalty is averted from any, it is due to Allah's Mercy; and that would be the obvious fulfillment of all desires. If Allah touches you with affliction, none can remove it but He; if He touches you with happiness, He has power over all things. He is the Irresistible above His slaves, and He is the Wise, Acquainted with all things.

Say: What thing is most great in witness?

Say: Allah is witness between you and me. This Qur'an has been revealed to me by inspiration that I may warn you and all whom it reaches. Can you possibly bear witness that besides Allah there is another God?

Say: I bear no witness!

Say: But in truth He is the only one God. And truly I am innocent of what you join in worship with Him.

### **Section-5 of Chapter-6 [Verse 20-32]: Kinds of people Prophet (pbuh) was Confronting**

Those, to whom We have given the Book, know this as they know their own sons. Those who have lost their own souls refuse therefore to believe. Who does more wrong than he who invents a lie against Allah or reject His Verses? But verily the wrongdoers never shall prosper.

One day shall We gather them all together. We shall say to those who ascribed partners: "Where are the partners whom you talked about?" There will then be no subterfuge for them but to say: "By Allah, our Lord, we were not those

who joined gods with Allah." Behold! How they lie against their own souls! But the which they invented will leave them in the lurch.

Of them there are some who listen to you, but We have thrown veils on their hearts, so they understand it not, and deafness in their ears; if they saw every one of the signs, not they will believe in them—in so much that when they come to you, they dispute with you. The unbelievers say, "These are nothing but tales of the ancients," and they prevent others from it, and they themselves keep away. But they only destroy their own souls, and they perceive it not.

If you could but see, when they are confronted with the Fire! They will say: "Would that we were but sent back, then would we not reject the Verses of our Lord, but would be among those who believe!" Yea, in their own will become manifest what before they concealed.

But if they were returned, they would certainly relapse to the things they were forbidden, for they are indeed liars.

And they say: "There is nothing except our life on this earth, and never shall we be raised up again."

If you could but see when they are confronted with their Lord! He will say: "Is not this the truth?"

They will say: "Yea, by our Lord!"

He will say: "Taste you then the Penalty, because you rejected Faith."

Lost indeed are they who treat it as a falsehood that they must meet Allah, until on a sudden the hour is on them, and they say: "Ah! Woe unto us that we took no thought of it". For they bear their burdens on their backs, and worsen indeed are the burdens that they bear?

What is the life of this world but play and amusement? But best is the Home in the Hereafter—for those who are righteous.

Will you not then understand?

**Section-6 of Chapter-6 [Verse 33-37]: Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) was not given with any Miraculous Power / Sign**

We know indeed the grief, which their words do cause you. It is not you they reject; it is the Verses of Allah, which the wicked contemn. Rejected were the Apostles before you; with patience and constancy they bore their rejection and their wrongs, until Our aid did reach them; there is none that can alter the words of Allah. Already you have received some account of those Apostles.

**Remarks:**

The Quran by its elegant literature, scientific signs, and absolute correctness proves its divinity. So, it has been said: *“It is not you they reject; it is the Verses of Allah, which the wicked contemn”*.

The Quran is meant to prevail—it is becoming brighter as human knowledge is flourishing.

If their spurning is hard on you, then if you were able to seek a tunnel in the ground or a ladder to the sky so that you may bring them a sign!

If it were Allah's will, He could gather them together unto true guidance. So, be not you among those who are swayed by ignorance! Those who listen, be sure, will accept.

As to the dead, Allah will raise them up, then will they be turned unto Him.

And they said, "Why is not a Sign sent down to him from his Lord?"

Say: "Allah certainly has power to send down a Sign", but most of them understand not.

**Remarks:**

Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) did not have Miraculous Power. Jesus could heal leper and blind, Moses had a stick that could be a snake, Solomon could understand all creatures and could command them. But none of such signs was given to Prophet Muhammad (pbuh).

Actually, Miraculous Sign does not work in real sense. The clear signs of Moses could not change Pharaoh and his Chiefs:

“They said (to Moses): "Whatever be the Signs thou bring to work therewith thy sorcery on us, we shall never believe in thee.

So, We sent on them Wholesale Death, Locusts, Lice, Frogs, and Blood—signs openly self-explained, but they were steeped in arrogance; a people given to sin.

Every time the penalty fell on them, they said: "O Moses! On our behalf, call on thy Lord in virtue of His promise to thee—if thou will remove the penalty from us, we shall truly

believe in thee, and we shall send  
away the Children of Israel with thee."

But every time We removed  
the penalty from them according to a  
fixed term, which they had to fulfill,  
behold, they broke their word!

So, We exacted retribution  
from them. We drowned them in the  
sea, because they rejected Our Signs  
and failed to take warning from them."

[Al Quran 7: 132–136]

A person is guided by his ideologies in personal life. But, in social life, he has to comply with the orders of the Social Leaders (Taghuts) and the Religious Leaders. These two kinds of leadership maintain harmony and safeguard mutual interests. A person in such society cannot accept a new religion even if he is shown divine miracles. The leaderships oppose change due to the fear of earthly loss; they call 'Prophet with Miraculous Power' Sorcerer.

What happens if a person like King Solomon comes up with divine miracles? In such case, people obey, but the obedience does not endure after him. The people under Solomon revolted against religious rule just after his death, and a civil war broke out. The country was divided in two parts.

The religious part consisting of two tribes formed the Kingdom of Judah under Solomon's son Rehoboam; and the disobedient part consisting of ten tribes formed the Kingdom of Israel under Solomon's

another son Jeroboam. The People of Israel soon began worshipping the Baal.

What happens if the miracle is so great that none can call it sorcery? Jesus had such power. He could make the dead alive. But the Power was given with the scope of test. Jesus was created without a father. People call him Son of God.

Only a few believed him (Jesus), but many of others were out to kill him as soon as possible. Ultimately, God had to rescue him from crucifixion.

We are difficult things indeed!

So, Allah took a different path to press the teachings home. It was the path of struggle and warfare (Jihad). A small number of deeply motivated people took refuge in Madinah. They formed their own society and preached the religion with the Divine Verses, reasoning, and personal examples; at the same time fought battles to remove the Taghuts and expand the area of influence. A Prophet with miraculous power would be counterproductive in this way of preaching.

Actually, Islam is not preached only, it is established and maintained by the application of compulsory-group-prayers (Salat mainly) and Laws.

After Muhammad (pbuh) died, his followers followed the same way. They did not feel the requirement of Miraculous Power to preach the religion.

The Christianity is preached by Sainly Preachers (mainly Fathers from Vatican). Islam does not renounce such preaching as well. Islam was preached among Mongol, Indian and Indonesian

people by the Saints (Sufis). It is discussed in the Introduction of Part-2.

**Section-7 of Chapter-6 [Verse 38-47]: Calamities, sufferings, and adversities do not soften a People**

There is not an animal on the earth, nor a being that flies on its wings, but communities like you—nothing have We omitted from the Book (Lawh-Mahfuz), and they shall be gathered to their Lord in the end.

**Remarks:**

Holy Bible says that there are people whose names are not written in the Book of Life—they will not have Salvation.

“And I saw the dead, the small and the great, standing before YAHWEH (God). And books were opened. And another Book was opened, which is the Book of Life. And the dead were judged out of the things written in the books, according to their works...And if anyone was not found having been written in the Book of Life, he was thrown into the Lake of Fire.”

– Revelation 20 (12-15),

Some people, misinterpreting above Verses, say that the names of people from the nether world are not written in the Book of Life; they will be thrown into

the hell directly. Some of them think that only Jews and Christians will go to paradise, and others will not.

But the above Verses of the Quran declare that not the names of humans only, all the creatures are listed in the Book (Lawh-Mahfuz) as separate communities, and all will be resurrected.

However, Holy Bible mentions the Book as “...*another Book...which is the Book of Life*” where name of everybody will not be found. This “*another Book*” may be the record of people that will go Jannaat. In the main Book, all living creatures are listed as separate communities.

Those who reject our Verses are deaf and dumb; in the middle of darkness profound—whom Allah wills, He leaves to wander; whom He wills, He places on the Way that is Straight.

Say, “Have you seen, if there come to you punishment of Allah or come to you the Hour, is it other Allah you call, if you are truthful? Nay, Him alone you call. And He would (then) remove what (caused) you to call upon Him, if He wills, and you would forget what you associate!”

Before you We sent to many nations and We afflicted the nations with suffering and adversity that they might learn humility. When the suffering reached them from Us, why then they did not learn humility? On the contrary, their hearts became hardened, and Satan made their acts seem alluring to them.

So, when they forgot the warning they had received, We opened to them the gates of all things; until in the middle of their enjoyment of Our gifts, on a sudden, We called them to account, when lo! they were plunged in despair! Of the

wrongdoers, the last remnant was cut off. Praise be to Allah, the Cherisher of the Universes.

**Remarks:**

One may think that if Allah gives calamity and sufferings to a people and remove it after they call Him, the people will become Believers.

But, the thought is not correct. Calamities and sufferings harden the hearts, instead of making people to learn humility.

Humans have an excellent quality: the tougher the life one lives, the tougher one becomes. Thus, the calamities and sufferings do not cause him to evaluate his past deeds and make corrections for the future; he becomes tougher and more arrogant.

Say: "Tell me, if Allah took away your hearing and your sight and sealed up your hearts, who a god other than Allah could restore them to you?" See, how variously We explain the Verses; yet they turn aside.

Say: "Tell me, if the punishment of Allah comes to you, whether suddenly or openly, will any be destroyed except those who do wrong?"

**Remarks:**

Neither the "miraculous sign" is good enough to convert a people, nor the "calamity followed by relief".

And Allah would not force a people to make them Believers, because humans are undergoing tests.

They are created to be the Vicegerents of God in the lands (objects) of the Samawaat and the Jannaat.

“Behold, thy Lord said to the angels: "I will create a vicegerent on a land ..."

[Al Quran 2:30]

“Allah created the ‘Skies and Lands’ (this Universe) for just ends, and in order that each soul may find the recompense of what it has earned and none of them be wronged.”

[Al Quran 54:22]

“Be quick in the race for forgiveness from your Lord and for a Jannaat, whose width is that of the Skies and Lands (this Universe), prepared for the righteous...” [Al Quran 3:133]

Allah has sent Prophets with Books—read the Verses, see the creations, think and obey the orders. If a person will not do it, Allah may take away his hearing and sight, and seal up his heart. Then hearing he will hear not, seeing he will see not; he will be utterly lost. Ultimately, he will find a violent galaxy of this Universe as his abode. He will live there forever, as a forgotten Vicegerent of God.

## **Section-8 of Chapter-6 [Verse 48-58]: Obligations of Prophet (pbuh) and Suggested Standpoints**

We send the apostles only to give good news and to warn. So, those who believe and mend, upon them shall be no fear, nor shall they grieve. But those who reject Our Verses, them shall punishment touch; for that they ceased not from transgressing.

Say: I tell you not that with me are the treasures of Allah, nor do I know what is hidden, nor do I tell you I am an angel; I but follow what is revealed to me.

Say: "Can the blind be held equal to the seeing; will you then consider not?"

Give this warning to those in who is the fear that they will be brought before their Lord; except for Him, they will have no protector, nor intercessor—that they may guard. Turn not away those who call on their Lord morning and evening seeking His Face. In naught are you accountable for them and in naught are they accountable for you that you should turn them away and thus be of the unjust.

Thus, We have tried some of them with others that they might say: "Is it these whom Allah has favored from amongst us?"

Does not Allah know best those who are grateful?

When those come to you who believe in Our Verses, say: "Peace be on you. Your Lord has decreed for Himself Mercy. Verily, if any of you did evil in ignorance and thereafter repented and amended—lo! He is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful."

Thus, do We explain the Verses in detail that the way of the sinners may be shown up.

Say: I am forbidden to worship those other than Allah whom you call upon.

Say: I will not follow your vain desires; if I did, I would stray from the path and be not of the company of those who receive guidance.

Say: For me, I on a clear proof from my Lord, but you deny it. I have not gotten what you are asking for impatiently (Miraculous Sign). The command rests with none but Allah. He declares the truth, and He is the best of judges.

Say: If I had that which you are asking for impatiently, the matter would be settled at once between you and me. But Allah knows best those who do wrong.

### **Section-9 of Chapter-6 [Verse 59]: Fate and the Computer for the Creations (CC) - Main Discussion**

With Him are the keys of the unseen, the treasures that none knows but He. He knows whatever there is on the earth and in the sea. Not a leaf does fall but with His knowledge. There is not a grain in the darkness of the earth, nor anything fresh or dry, but is in a “Record Clear”.

#### **Remarks:**

One follows a fixed path recorded as one’s fate.

In this Section, I have discussed how the fate was predicted, and how one is monitored and stirred. The discussion will follow the sequence given below:

1. Role of Allah
2. Head of the System
3. The Writing of the Fate
4. Records

5. Barzakh (Barrier)
6. The Cybernetic System of the Universe (Samawaat)
7. The Observer
8. Ruhh (Soul)
9. Angels
10. Reporting back to the CC
11. Reporting to Allah
12. Several Chief Angels
13. Conclusion

## **Background Knowledge**

It is better if a reader has background knowledge of the following subjects:

1. The Large-Scale Structure of the Universe, discussed in Section-7 of Chapter-2
2. The Jannaat, discussed in Section-23 of Chapter-3

### **1. Role of Allah**

Allah is sustaining and evolving the universes. To know about the fate, we need to know how He is sustaining and evolving. It is deliberately discussed in Chapter-1. Here, it is recapitulated in short:

Allah has a form. He sits in a Kursi, located in the Arsh, beyond the universes. According to the Quran, He has face, eyes, ears, mouth, hands, legs, etc. According to the Hadith, He created human in His own image. The same is said in the Holy Bible also:

“And Elohim created the man in His own image; in the image of Elohim He created them. He created them male and female.” [Genesis 1:27, Holy Bible]

So, Allah has a form.

How Allah, having a form, can exist everywhere to sustain and evolve the universes?

To answer:

The nafs (main / composite soul) of Allah is a combination of known and unknown force fields.

A force field and an elementary soul are the same things. An elementary soul is called ruh.

His nafs permeates His body in form.

He has extended several force fields (elementary souls / ruhhs) of His nafs beyond His body in form—as the hands are extended from a body.

It may be mentioned that His hands of the 'body in form' are not extended; His hands of nafs are extended into the universes. The hands of nafs are invisible, because these are hands of force fields (elementary souls / ruhhs).

He sustains this universe (Samawaat) by the right hand of His nafs, and He sustains the Arsh and Jannaat by the left hand of His nafs. Each of these hands may be comprised of 10 to 12 force fields.

If the nafs of Allah comprises 99 known and unknown force fields, he may have extended 10 to 12 to sustain and evolve the creations. Then, each of the

hands of nafs may be comprised of 10 to 12 force fields.

The Gravitational Force Field is an elementary soul of Allah, which He has extended to sustain and move the objects. The Vacuum Energy, the Dark Energy, and many of the Quantum Fields may also be His extended elementary souls.

He, at His will, has designed the extended elementary souls to act in fixed patterns. So, we view their acts as natural laws.

In addition, he has extended a few of His elementary souls (force fields / ruhhs) from His face and chest. He uses those for different purposes.

So, Allah exists everywhere. He is closer to us than our jugular veins. He sustains the creations from the level of sub-atomic particles to the level of giant universes. He sees everything, hears everything. He can do whatever He may want to do, at any place, at any time. Every inert thing is devotedly obedient to Him. He says, “Be”, and it is!

Allah has designed the space into seven spherical waves (seven skies), one inside another—like the peels of onion. The objects are moving in the skies through their paths, predetermined by Him. We view His all-embracing grip and performances as the acts of Time. He rotates the Earth to change the day and night.

“On the authority of Abu Hurayrah,  
who said that the Messenger of Allah  
says: “Children of Adam inveigh

against Time; I am Time; I change the day and night.” [Al Bukhari]

Allah is sustaining and evolving the inert universe systematically. No human, angel or jinn can help Him in these affairs—an atom is too small to help, and the universe is too big.

Allah is one. He alone is enough to run the inert universe, because the universe started with a suitable initial configuration, and it is sustained and evolved by His extended elementary souls (force fields / ruhhs) designed to act in fixed patters that are viewed by us as some of the natural laws. The inert entities of the universe are also designed to follow the fixed patterns that are viewed by us as some of the natural laws.

But, Allah has created many living creatures too. And, the living creatures have diversified activities. So, Allah has got the fates of living creatures written in a Protected Disc (Lawh-Mahfuz) and has invested angels to monitor them.

“...There is not a moving creature but He has grasp of its fore-lock. Verily, it is my Lord that is on a Straight Path”

[Al Quran 11:56]

## **2. Head of the System**

If we analyze the Verses and the Hadith, we find that Allah has invested an enormous system to monitor and steer the fates. The system includes innumerable

angels organized in a Hierarchy. The Head of the system is a huge computer. When we read the Quran and the Hadith, we come to know about the computer from the narrations of its components. These are:

- a. The Pen,
- b. The Disc,
- c. The Motherboard

I have discussed the components in the following to understand the computer and its role in materializing the fates.

## **2a. The Pen**

We know from the Hadith that Allah got the fates of living creatures written by a Pen:

Hadith: "The first thing that was created by Allah was the Pen. Allah then ordered the Pen to write. The Pen asked, what should it write? Allah ordered to write the fate of everybody. The Pen wrote all those would happen from the beginning to the end."

[Tirmizi]

It was a Pen that asked question: What should it write? And when it was ordered, it could write the fate of every living creature that would grow in course of time.

Therefore, it is an automated Pen, driven by an intelligent system.

It is already written when a leaf will grow, and when and how it will fall. It happens naturally. The angels monitor the compliance.

Allah knows what is written and what is happening, so it is said in the Verse under discussion: “...*Not a leaf does fall, but with His knowledge...*”

## **2b. The Disc**

The Pen did not write on papers; it wrote in a Disc (Lawh):

"Nay, it is a glorious Quran in a Disc-Saved (Lawh-Mahfuz)"

[Al Quran 85: 21–22]

“Lawh” means “plank / tablet / disc”. “Mahfuz” means “saved / protected”. So, “Lawh-Mahfuz” means “Disc-Saved”. The Disc is very big. From the descriptions of the Hadith, it seems that it may be bigger than the Earth.

Everything is recorded in the Disc (Lawh-Mahfuz). So, it is a databank. In the Verses under discussion, it is called the “Record Clear”.

“Prophet said: At the beginning, there was only Allah; there was nothing except Him. His Arsh was over the water. He wrote the details of creation in the Lawh-Mahfuz, the place of remembrance, and created the Skies and Lands (Universe)” [Bukhari]

The above Hadith mentions the Disc (Lawh-Mahfuz) as the “Place of Remembrance”. We too use our computer CDs / Hard Discs as instruments to keep records.

## **2c. The Motherboard**

“Ha, Mim. By the Book that makes things clear. We have made it a Recitation (Qur'an) in Arabic that ye may be able to understand. And verily, it is in the Mother of the Book, in Our Presence, high, full of wisdom.”

[Al Quran 43: 1-4]

The above Verses talk about another part of the system. It is the 'Mother of the Book'. The 'Mother of the Book' gave birth to the Books, such as the Quran. It made the Quran in Arabic.

So, the 'Mother of the Book' is an advanced “Motherboard” having circuits and components.

## **2d. The Computer of Creations (CC)**

The Pen, the Disc (Lawh-Mahfuz), and the Motherboard in combination make a System. The System can be compared with a man-made computer. So, I address the “System” by the name of “Computer for the Creations”, or “CC” in short. It should be a huge computer existing in the Arsh.

The computer (CC) belongs to Allah who created genome, genome code and human brain. It predicted our fates. It monitors the materialization of the fates by the angels. So, it should be an unimaginably developed outstanding computer. I am comparing it with a man-made computer to have an idea only.

## **2d-I. Software**

The CC (Computer of Creations) was programmed:

“Prophet said: The first thing Allah created is my soul, and the first thing Allah created is the Pen, and the first thing Allah created is the Intellect”

[Hadith]

According to the above Hadith, the “Pen” and the “Intellect” were two of the things that Allah created at first. Probably, the created “Intellect” was the software (programs) of the CC.

The following Verses indicate that the CC was programmed:

“He Who taught the Pen”

[Al Quran 96: 4]

“He taught the Pen” means, “He programmed the CC that drives the Pen”.

So, the CC was programmed with necessary software and data. The following Hadith indicates that the CC can act on short commands.

“After creation, Allah wrote in the nearest book in the Arsh, “Surely My mercy prevails over My wrath.”

[Bukhari and Muslim]

In above Hadith, “*Surely My mercy prevails over My wrath*” may be a guidance given to the CC. Probably, it considers this guidance in the process of monitoring the living creatures.

So, the CC has systems and software, which make it an intelligent entity.

## **2d-II: Display System**

The CC has system to display information:

“One day the angels were listening to a talk of Aza’zil (now Iblis). Casually, they looked at the Arsh and saw—it was written there—the Curse of Allah is about to fall on a defiant one.”

[Hadith]

The angels looked at the Arsh and saw the statement. So, the CC has system to display information.

## **2d-III. File Inscriptions**

In the beginning of some Surahs, there are some special alphabets like Alif, Lam, Ra, Ta, Sin, Mim, etc. These alphabets do not construct any meaningful word, e.g.:

“Alif, Lam, Mim, Ra—these are the signs of the Book ” [Al Quran 13:1]

“Alif, Lam, Ra—these are signs of the Book of Wisdom .” [Al Quran 10:1]

It seems that these alphabets are file inscriptions—as we use file names to save our files in the computer.

However, the alphabets may have meanings, as our file-names often relate to the contents of the files. For example, a file related to the 'Construction of Building' may be named 'CoB'. Surah Qaf starts with the alphabet 'Qaf', and it deals with the tricky points of 'Qiyamah'.

## **2d-IV. Mathematical Order**

The automated writings of a computer should show a mathematical order. As the CC translated the Quran as an Arabic Recitation, the parameter of nineteen got effective.

It seems that the CC uses the mathematics of higher order; it is not merely a binary computer. It can think. It asks questions. It is a supremely developed computer.

## **2d-V. A Rational Computer**

The following Hadith indicates that the CC has emotions as well.

“Allah ordered the Pen to write “Muhammadur Rasulallah” after it had written “La ilaha illallah” at the top of Lawh-Mahfuz. The Pen did not want to write the name of a human being with the name of the Great Creator, so it delayed. Allah again ordered it to write. Out of fear, the Pen started shivering when its another mouth exposed, which wrote “Muhammadur Rasulallah” [Hadith]

The CC did not want to write the name of a human being with the name of the Great Creator. It indicates that the intelligence of the CC is not just a programming of true and false. It thinks and has emotions.

## **2e. CC in Holy Bible**

In Holy Bible, the “CC” is mentioned as the “Golden Altar before God”

“The sixth angel blew his trumpet. Then I heard a voice calling from the corners of the Golden Altar before

God. It said to the sixth angel who had just sounded the trumpet, "Release the four angels chained at the banks of the great river Euphrates"

–Revelation 9 (13-14), Holy Bible

The Golden Altar is positioned before God. Therefore, it is in the Arsh. The voice came out from the corners of the Golden Altar. So, it is the CC; it commands the angels on the bases of predetermined fates.

### **3. The Writing of the Fate**

It should be clear from above discussion that Allah created a computer before He created this universe. I call the computer CC (Computer for the Creations).

A Modern Engineer makes a 3D digital model of the construction, he is planning to make. He corrects and improves the model and then starts working on ground. It seems from the following Verses that Allah did the same. He planned the desired creation by making a Virtual Universe in the CC:

“Not strikes any disaster in the Earth and not in yourselves but in Book before (Us)—that We amplified; that is truly easy for God;” [Al Quran 57:22]

A Book is a File of the CC. Every event, written in the File, is amplified into virtual reality.

“Those before them did devise plots,  
but in all things the Master-Designing  
is Allah's. He knows the doings of  
every soul, and soon will the  
Unbelievers know who gets home in  
the end.” [Al Quran 13:42]

The 'details of creation', mentioned in the following Hadith, is the Master Design (Virtual Universe):

“Prophet said: “At the beginning,  
there was only Allah; there was  
nothing except Him. His Arsh was  
over the water. He wrote the 'details  
of creation' in the Lawh-Mahfuz, the  
place of remembrance, and created  
the Skies and Lands (Universe)””

[Bukhari]

In the process of making the Virtual Universe, Allah created and updated the programs of the CC. Thus, the CC and the Pen was taught.

“The One Who taught the Pen”

[Al Quran 96:4]

Allah saved the Master Design (Virtual Universe) in the Hard Disc (Lawh-Mahfuz) of the CC.

We are there in the Virtual Universe. Each human genome code, coded in 23 Pairs of DNA Double Helix, was produced in the CC from the parent-genome-codes sequentially from the beginning (from the given codes of Adam and Eve). Basing on the genome codes, the CC could produce the humans in the Virtual Universe. The virtual humans had virtual brains as well, to function independently. It is indicated in the following Verse:

“When thy Lord drew forth from the children of Adam, from their backs, their descendants (virtual descendants made from the genome codes), and made them testify over themselves, "Am I not your Lord? They said, "Yes we have testified..." [Al Quran 7:172]

A man's soul (nafs) is a combination of unknown force fields. So, his soul could be energized with his virtual physique, brought out from his genome code. Then, he could be put into a holographic Earth, projected from the Virtual Universe. The complete Virtual Universe could be a Holographic Universe as well.

Allah ran the Virtual Universe forward and backward and corrected and perfected the design. Thus, He became ready to initiate the creation.

We guided ourselves in the Holographic Earth according to our free wills and moved ahead by interacting each other in the nature and situations evolving sequentially. However, Allah controlled us

in some points of time to clear the ways ahead. On the real Earth of today, we are controlled in the same points by the angels. Allah has incorporated some events of test as well.

Thus, every event is already enacted in the Virtual Universe:

“...Even if ye had made a mutual appointment to meet, ye would certainly have failed in the appointment—but, that Allah might accomplish a matter already enacted...” [Al Quran 8:42]

“... He made you appear as contemptible in their eyes that Allah might accomplish a matter already enacted...” [Al Quran 8:44]

The events, happening on the Earth, are repetitions of the enacted events.

In the virtual life, we moved according our free wills. Allah directed us in some points of time for the adjustments mainly. In the earthly life, a human may choose a different course, which may topple the plan. So, monitoring is necessary. Allah decided to monitor by angels. It needed fates in written form. He ordered the CC to write down the fates.

“The first thing that was created by Allah was the Pen. Allah then ordered the Pen to write. The Pen asked, what

should it write? Allah ordered to write the fate of everybody. The Pen wrote all those would happen from the beginning to the end." [Tirmizi]

Thus, the CC extracted our fates from the Master Design (Virtual Universe). Now, each human has dedicated files in the CC and necessary number of angels to monitor him in the real life.

When we lived the virtual lives, we opted to be the vicegerents of Allah:

“We did indeed offer the Trust to the Skies and Lands and the Mountains, but they refused to undertake it being afraid thereof. But man undertook it; he was indeed unjust and foolish”

[Al Quran 33:72]

So, the tests became essential to decide who deserve which of the posts as a vicegerent of God.

In the virtual life, some resources may have been placed before a virtual human as a test. If he showed greed and adopted wrong path to achieve those, he failed in the test. In the afterlife, he would be destined to a universal galaxy (hell) as a vicegerent of God.

But, it does not look justified to judge a human on the basis of his virtual life. So, he is here on the Earth to confirm. Here he is placed in front of the real things on the same settings, and the angels remain with the notebooks to record.

However, his fate is fixed in the real life. And he is guided by the angels to follow the determined paths. But he has free thinking. If he repents, his sin is forgiven.

Only the fates of living creatures were written from the Master Design (Virtual Universe). The details of creations are unimaginably huge. The highly powerful CC says:

“And if all the trees on the Earth were pens and the ocean with seven oceans behind it to add to it, yet would not the words of Allah be exhausted—for Allah is Exalted in Power, Full of Wisdom” [Al Quran 31: 27]

The CC has no control on the material universe; it is not capable to do it.

"It is Allah Who sustains the 'Skies and Lands' (Universe) lest they cease, and if they should fail, there is none, not one, can sustain them thereafter. Verily, He is Most Forbearing, Oft-Forgiving." [Al Quran 35: 41]

For example, if an earthquake is supposed to happen, it will happen as demanded by the nature, fixed by Allah. The CC knew about the earthquake from the Master Design (Virtual Universe). What CC has planned in the event of the earthquake?

The CC has planned to send angels. The angels will monitor the activities of living creatures to ensure that the creatures who are supposed to die in the earthquake remain in the points of death and die as planned, and the creatures who are not supposed to die do not go into the place of death. The angels collect the souls of the dead as well. And there are many other jobs that are done by the angels according to the directions of the CC.

The CC could extract the fates of living creatures from the Master Design (Virtual Universe) and could translate it as orders for the angels. So, the CC is intelligent. If the CC is compared with the Earth, a laptop computer is like a dust. In spite of that the CC is a computer. It will punish the men in hell unwaveringly by robotic angels.

The CC and the angels are in charge of the hell fire. In the following Verses, ‘Over it is Nineteen’ means that ‘Over the objects of hell is CC’ that commands through nineteen Chief Angels.

“Soon will I cast him into hell-fire!  
And what will explain to thee what  
hell-fire is? Naught doth it permits to  
endure, and naught doth it leaves  
alone! Darkening and changing the  
color of man! Over it is Nineteen, and  
We have set none but angels as  
guardians of the fire.”

[Al Quran 74: 26-31]

Thus, the Empire of Angels is automated by the CC. If one wants to get rid of this computer (CC), one has to move to the Jannaat, where it supports as demanded.

### **3a. The Fate is Flexible in One Aspect**

One's earthly life is no more than a few hours in relation to the endless afterlife. Here, on the Earth, who gets what does not matter much. But, the believers of the true God will go to Jannaat forever, and the believers of false gods will be in the hell (Samawaat / this Universe) forever. Therefore, Faith is a serious issue.

So, the scope of accepting the True Faith is kept open for all the times one lives on the Earth. And only in this aspect the fate is flexible.

One's fate was determined fifty thousand years before the creation of Universe. It cannot be changed by anybody except Allah. Allah normally does not change the fate. One may pray again and again, "O God, make me rich...make me rich...and so on", but one would remain poor. But, if one gets determined to accept the True Faith, one's fate is changed immediately. It is said in the following Verses.

"The worshippers of false gods say: "If God had so willed, we should not have worshipped aught but Him—neither we nor our fathers—nor should we have prescribed prohibitions other than

His." So, did those who went before them.

But what is the mission of apostles but to preach the Clear Message? For, We assuredly sent among every People an apostle: Worship Allah and avoid *Taghut* (Power).

Then of the people were some whom God guided, and of them were some upon whom the straying was justified. So, travel through the Earth and see, what the end of those who denied was”

[Al Quran16: 35-36]

Above Verses mention the case where fate can be changed, rather Allah likes to change the fate. May be, a person had been an Unbeliever in the virtual life, but on the Earth, if he shows affinity towards the True Faith and wants to become a Believer by heart, he is transferred into an alternative fate as a Believer.

According to Hadith, when a person dies, an angel shows him two final destinations. If the person would ultimately go to the Jannaat, the angel says showing him the hell: ‘That is the place that was determined for you, but you will go to the Jannaat, as you have done well’. Vice versa, if the person would finally go to hell.

A human does not have freedom of action, but he has freedom of thought. Faith is a matter of thought. So, he can change his faith. A person may be

leading the life of an Unbeliever and heading to the hell. But as soon as he believes on one God and the Last Day, Allah (if He wills) opens an alternative fate for him, which leads him to the Jannaat. Allah is Just and Merciful.

On the Day of Final Judgment, each human will be shown his complete life history when he will understand how many times he was called to the Truth through preachers, books, situations and signs. The History of Islam is written in blood to keep the call alive.

The deeds are fixed; if a person is destined to do a sin, he will do it. But, if he repents, his sin is forgiven. The repentance too is a matter of thought.

In the above Verses, we find a part: “...*some whom God guided, and of them were some upon whom the straying was justified*”. Here “*some God guided*” does not mean that for others the path of accepting the True Faith was closed; they were given equal opportunities, but they did not come—that was how their straying were justified.

Why some were guided by Allah and some were not guided? Probably, the guided ones grew tendency to accept the True Faith. May be, they became soft hearted to the Prophet (pbuh) or to the True Faith. May be, they were thinking that they would accept the True Faith one day, but were not very serious about it. If Allah did not guide them, they would remain in the Wrong Faith, and the prediction would come true—the straying would be justified in their cases as well. But Allah guided them, because He is Merciful.

Others were equally called. They had equal opportunities to accept the True Faith. But nothing could soften their hearts. They kept on hating the True Faith and the Prophets of God. Many Prophets were killed. They gave no scope to guide them. So, the predictions about them were confirmed through their lives on the Earth.

Allah felt judging one on the basis of one's Virtual Life unjustified. So, humans are put into the Earth to justify the eternal destinations—the Earth is merely a testing ground.

### **3b. A Deciding Factor**

A human is a vicegerent of God by birth. But, on the Earth, he is under test. Now, he has no divine power.

But, he will be powerful in the Jannaat. His verbal orders will be materialized instantly.

The sinners will be deputed in the galaxies of this universe (Samawaat). They will have no divine power. They will be in punishment due to inherent nature of the Samawaat.

Mainly one's nature drives one to Jannaat or Hell.

"Jannaat and hell argued with each other. Hell said, 'arrogant and tyrant people are given to me.' Jannaat said, 'What happened to me that other than the weak, innocent and careless people nobody has entered inside me?' Allah said to Jannaat, 'You are my mercy;

with you I award mercy to anyone I like'. He said to the hell, 'Among my servants I punish anyone I wish, with you. You are my wrath. Both of you will be filled up with them.' About hell, it will not be filled-up unless Allah puts His leg into it. Then it will say, 'enough, enough, enough.' Then it will be filled up and its one part will come to another part. Allah will not do injustice to any of His creations. About the Jannaat, of course Allah will fill-up that with His servants."

[Bokhari and Muslim]

The nature of a human never changes. One's nature may remain dormant until one gets freedom, power and security.

“Prophet (pbuh) said: If somebody says that a hill has been moved, I may believe; but I will never believe, if somebody says that the character (nature) of a person has changed”

[Hadith]

Allah normally remains neutral, because it fulfills the demands of creations—the objects of both the universes (Samawaat and Jannaat) are getting Vicegerents.

## **4. Records**

The deeds of a person are recorded in two places: One is the “Record of Deeds” (Amal-Nama), and another is a file (Saving Book) of the Lawh-Mahfuz. The records are discussed below:

### **4a. Amal-Nama**

One’s good and bad deeds are recorded in Amal-Nama. Two angels are detailed for everyone to write.

“Behold, two appointed to learn, one  
sitting on the right and one on the left”  
[Al Quran 50:17]

After the death of a person, the angels deposit his or her Amal-Nama into *Illiyin* or *Sizzin* where it is preserved. The Amal-Nama will be used for the Judgment.

However, Amal-Nama is not a complete record of one’s life. It records the sin and the good deeds only. And many sins are not written: after doing a sin, if a person does a good deed or repents, the sin may not be written.

### **4b. Brain Data (Memory Data)**

The brain-data (memory-data) of a person is collected every night when he sleeps. It is said in the following Verse:

“It is He who dies you (*yatawaffakum*)  
by night and has knowledge of all that  
you have done by day. By day, does  
He raise you up again that a term  
appointed be fulfilled. In the end, unto  
Him will be your return. Then He will  
show you the truth of all that you did.”

[Al Quran 6:60]

A sleeping person is considered dead. An angel copies and collects the brain-data of a person when he sleeps. The data is like a 3D video record of the day (sleep to sleep). The angel collects the data and sends it to the Lawh-Mahfuz where it is preserved in his file. The data will be used to return his memory after his resurrection

“What! When we die and become dust  
that is a return far! We already know  
how much of them the earth takes  
away; with Us is a Book Saving”

[Al Quran 50: 3-4]

The “Book Saving”, mentioned in above Verse, is a Folder of the Lawh-Mahfuz. A human has a dedicated file in the Folder. The brain-data is preserved his file.

The brain-data will not be used for Judgment, and it will not be exposed. Allah is great; He is honored, and He protects one’s honor. Even, on the Day of Judgment, a person will be called by his Mother’s Name.

Allah prefers hiding one's sin. Mainly, the Amal-Nama will be used for Judgment. Many sins are not written in the Amal-Nama.

However, for some heinous sinners, the Book will be opened.

“And the Book will be placed; and thou will see the sinful in great terror because of what is therein. They will say, "Ah! Woe to us! What a Book is this! It leaves out nothing small or great but takes account thereof!" They will find all that they did placed before them. And not one will thy Lord treat with injustice.” [Al Quran 18:49]

Ironically, one's own brain, eyes and ears work as CCTV to hang one on the Day of Judgment.

## **5. Barzakh (Barrier)**

The Barzakh works as a barrier. It divides the Super Space into two parts: The Eastern Super Space and the Western Super Space. The Eastern Super Space is for the Samawaat (this Universe), and the Western Super Space is for the Jannaat (another Universe).

The Barzakh may be a space with different nature, which does not support the matter. But, light can pass. Prophet (pbuh) could observe the objects of the Jannaat from the Seventh Sky (Outermost Sky of the Universe).

There are special domains inside the Barzakh where matter and energies can survive. The Illiyin and the Sijjin are such domains.

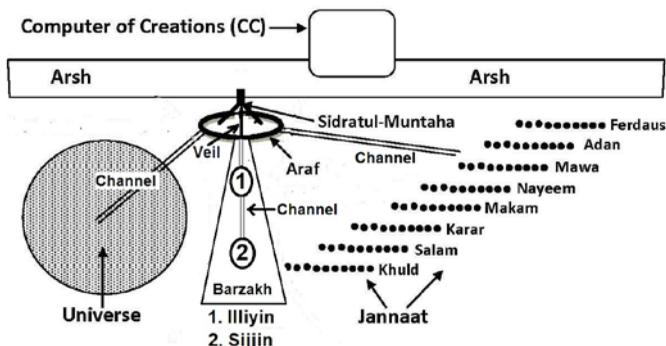


FIGURE 6.2: Barzakh, Illiyin (1), Sijjin (2)

The Illiyin and the Sijjin are holographic worlds where the nafs of a dead human is preserved after his death. A Server of the CC develops him as a virtual human by energizing his nafs with his genome code. He then lives a virtual life in a holographic world (in Illiyin or Sijjin) with other dead virtual humans, including his dead relatives. They are to remain there till the Day of Resurrection.

Illiyin and Sijjin are deliberately described in Chapter-83 with related Verses and Hadiths.

## 6. The Cybernetic System of the Universe (Samawaat)

Our fates are written in the Disc (Lawh-Mahfuz) of the CC. The CC monitors the materialization of fates

by the angels. There are innumerable angels working throughout the universes.

The CC manages the angels by a huge cybernetic system that covers the universes and the independent domains. The cybernetic system includes the connecting channels and servers at different stages.

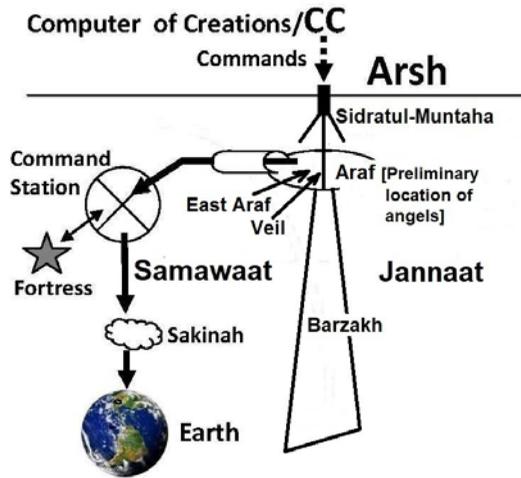


FIGURE 6.3: The Cybernetic System – the Part covering this universe (Samawaat)

The major components of the cybernetic system are discussed below under the following Headings:

- a. Arsh
- b. Araf
- c. Veil
- d. Sidratul-Muntaha

- e. CC (Computer for the Creations)
- f. Main Canals
- g. Axis of the Universe (Samawaat)
- h. Command Station
- i. The Fortress
- j. Sakinah (Indwelling)

## **6a. Arsh**

The Arsh exists beyond the universes (the Samawaat and the Jannaat) and the Barzakh. The Arsh is the biggest universe. The Headquarters of Allah is located in the Arsh. The CC is a device of the Headquarters.

“After traveling Seven Skies, I was raised to the extreme height. I reached a smooth plain land where the noise of Pen only was being heard.” [Bukhari]

In above Hadith, the “extreme height” means the Arsh. So, the CC is in the Arsh (the Pen is a component of the CC).

## **6b. Araf**

“Araf” means “Elevated Land”. It is at the top of the Barzakh and closely below the Arsh at the point of Sidratul-Muntaha.

The Araf is the Preliminary Sanctuary of the angels. All angels were created at a time. They were accommodated in the Araf. An angel is tasked by Sidratul-Muntaha and sent to his job-station.

The universe is so big that the angel, sent to his job-station, cannot return; the Dooms Day will arrive before he can return.

### **6c. Veil**

The Araf is divided by the Veil into two parts, the Eastern Araf and the Western Araf.

“Between them shall be a veil, and on the Araf will be men who would know everyone by his marks: they will call out to the Companions of the Garden, "peace on you": they will not have entered, but they will have an assurance (thereof).” [Al Quran 7:46]

The Eastern Araf is for the angels of the Samawaat (this Universe), and the Western Araf is for the angels of Jannaat:

“Lord of the two Easts (Eastern Araf and Samawaat) and Lord of the two Wests (Western Araf and Jannaat). Then which of the favors of your Lord will ye deny?” [Al Quran 55:17-18]

There is a house of assembly in the Eastern Araf called Baitul-Mamur. Prophet (pbuh) visited the house during the Night Journey (*Miraj*).

“Then I was taken to the Baitul-

Mamur. Every day 70,000 angels visit it and never returning to it again, another (group) coming after them.”  
[Bukhari]

## **6d. Sidratul-Muntaha**

During the Night Journey (Miraz), Prophet (pbuh) observed Sidratul-Muntaha from the Seventh Sky. It looked like a tree in the horizon. For this reason, it is called Sidratul-Muntaha.

The Sidratul-Muntaha is rooted in the Arsh and hanging over the Araf with two main branches. From the Araf, it looks like an up-side-down plant, hanging from the ceiling.

The eastern branch of Sidratul-Muntaha is extended over the Eastern Araf, and the western branch is extended over the Western Araf.

The Sidratul-Muntaha looks like a plant, but it is not a plant. It is based on a huge server computer. It is the communication hub of the Cybernetic System.

“Whatever comes down from the up (from the Arsh), comes to Sidratul-Muntaha. Whatever goes up from the down (Araf), goes to Sidratul-Muntaha” [Hadith]

The CC controls the Sidratul-Muntaha. If the CC is considered as the Head of the Cybernetic System, the Sidratul-Muntaha should be considered as the Heart.

The Sidratul-Muntaha provides passage to the creatures, information and objects. It has Check Posts to control their movements. If one moves up through the Sidratul-Muntaha, one reaches the Arsh. But, nobody is allowed to move without authority.

Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) was allowed to move up. He left accompanying Gabriel under the eastern branch of Sidratul-Muntaha and moved up alone to the Arsh. At the highest level of his journey and heard the noise of Pen (CC).

From the Arsh, Prophet (pbuh) moved down to the Jannaat through the western branch of Sidratul-Muntaha (first descent). While returning through the same path, he found Gabriel waiting where he was left:

“And indeed he saw him (Gabriel) in another descent (second descent) near the Sidratul-Muntaha, beyond which none may pass.” [Al Quran 53:13-14]

## **6e. CC (Computer for the Creations)**

The CC works as the Head the Cybernetic System. It is a standalone computer for the security reasons, most likely. The Scribe Angels of the Arsh read the information from the CC, and write it down in the root of the Sidratul-Muntaha that works as the Server.

“...For, it is indeed a Message of instruction. Therefore, let who-so will keep it in remembrance—in Books

(Lawh-Mahfuz) held in honor, exalted,  
kept pure and holy by the hands of  
Scribes (Scribe Angels).”

[Al Quran 80: 11-15]

From the root (Sever) of Sidratul-Muntaha, the information comes down to the hanging branches. The angels of the Araf (universal angels) receive the information from the branches and act accordingly.

When Prophet (pbuh) visited the Araf, he saw that thousands of angels were falling into the Sidratul-Muntaha. It looked like thousands of insects falling into a tree. They were falling to receive the information and orders.

## **6f. Main Canals**

During *Miraz*, when Prophet (pbuh) reached the Seventh Sky, he saw two channels, flowing from the Araf and falling into the Universe (Samawaat). Accompanying Gabriel told that there were another two channels, flowing into the Jannaat from the Western Araf. The middle part of the channels runs through Sidratul-Muntaha.

These channels are not the channels of water; these are channels through Super Space and spaces of the universes. The Hadith describes the channels as the “Rivers of Light” and the “River of Darkness”:

Hadith: “In the Seventh Sky, I saw rivers of light, such that the light that was coming from them made the eyes

blind. Rivers of Darkness were also there that were covered over with ice, and the sound of thunder crashing could be heard. I was busy looking at these rivers when Jibra'il (Gabriel) said to me, "O' Muhammad, be thankful to Allah for the graces and bounties that have been chosen for you." [Bihar al-Anwar, Vol. 18]

The channels connect the universes. These are known as "AS-Sirat" as well.

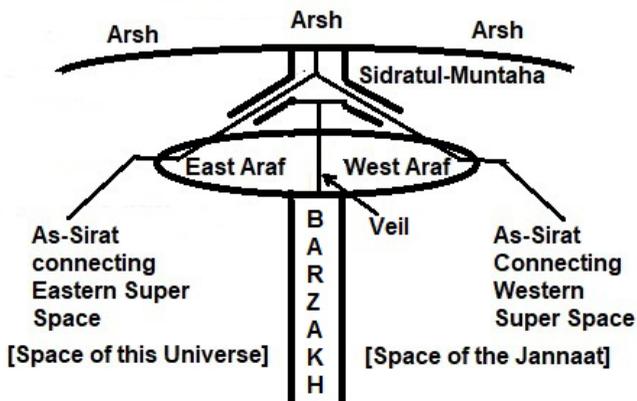


FIGURE 6.4: Channels (As-Sirat)

After receiving orders from Sidratul-Muntaha, the angels move to their destinations, in the Samawaat or in the Jannaat, through these channels.

“And by those (angels) who glide  
along, then press forward as in a race,  
then arrange to do (the jobs)”

[Al Quran 79: 3-5]

After entering the Universe (Samawaat), the pair of channels run through the Axis of the Universe (Samawaat) and gets divided into seven channels to connect the Skies.

“And We have made above you Seven  
Tracts, and We are never unmindful of  
creation” [Al Quran 23: 17]

The channels are further divided in subsequent stages to connect the galaxies, stars and planets.

None can move out from this Universe (Samawaat) without through these channels.

“O ye assembly of Jinns and men, if it  
be ye can pass beyond the zones of the  
Skies and Lands (this Universe), pass  
ye! Not without authority shall ye be  
able to pass!” [Al Quran 55:33]

Scientific community perceives the existence such channels. They call the openings of such channels Portals (X Points). One diving into a portal would be shifted to a huge distance in a short period of time.

## 6g. Axis of the Universe (Samawaat)

“And built over you Seven Skies”

[Al Quran 79:12]

A man in India has Seven Skies over his head. At the same time, a man in America has Seven Skies over his head. Therefore, we are in the Innermost (First) Sky.

The Skies are spherical waves of space, one inside another—like the peels of onions [It is deliberately discussed in Section-7 of Chapter-2].

If the skies are waves of space, it should be difficult to move from one sky to another, except through the channels.

Some scientists predict that the Big Bang was spinning. As the Universe expanded, the net angular momentum has dissipated among the galaxies.

If the Big Bang was spinning, the Universe has an axis, and it may be rotating now as well, relative to other universes in higher dimensional space (Super Space).

*“For the past few years, Professor Longo has worked primarily in astrophysics, in particular, analyzing data from the Sloan Digital Sky Survey (SDSS). This has led to strong evidence for a cosmic parity violation in the Universe, as indicated by a statistically significant excess of left-handed spiral galaxies toward the North Galactic Pole and an excess of right-handed in the opposite direction. This also suggests that our Universe has a preferred axis and a net angular momentum. Since angular*

*momentum is conserved this means the Universe must have been born spinning. We can't see outside of our Universe, so we'd have to assume it is spinning relative to other universes in a higher dimensional space. Presumably the Big Bang was spinning initially, and as it expanded, the net angular momentum was dissipated among the galaxies. Now we still see it through the preferred spin direction."*

– *"Detection of a Dipole in the Handedness of Spiral Galaxies with Red shifts  $z \sim 0.04$ , Michael J. Longo, Phys. Lett. B 699, 224-229 (2011).*

Moreover, according to the Quran, the Universe is rolling in the process of collapse. A Universe with rolling Skies should have an Axis.

It is likely that the channels coming down from the Araf enter the Universe through the Axis. Subsequently, the channels get divided into seven pairs of channels, and each pair move into a Sky directly.

A seven-sky-universe should be 10 to 14 billion light years in diameter. So, an angel coming down from the Sidratul-Muntaha should take 5 to 7 billion years to reach the Earth, if it moves at the speed of light. How the CC can interact with the earthly affairs? How the angels were coming to Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) frequently?

To answer, the angels monitor according to the preplanned fates. The angels that are coming today were released from Sidratul-Muntaha at a due time in the past. They were staged forwarded on a timescale through Command Stations, Fortresses and

Sakinah, discussed below. So, the distance does not matter.

## **6h. Command Station**

There are seven Command Stations in seven Skies. It is said in the following Verse:

“Allah is He Who created seven Skies and the Lands an equivalent (seven). Through the midst of them descends His command that ye may know that Allah has power over all things, and that comprehends all things in knowledge.” [Al Quran 65:12]

I call these Lands, Command Stations, because the Lands are meant to descend the commands of God. The Lands should be a planet-like astral object.

The Arch Angel of a Sky leads the Command Station. The Arch Angel of the First (Innermost) Sky is called Michael.

In the Quran, a “Command Station” is called “Lofty Station”:

“Also mention in the Book the case of Idris: He was a man of truth, a prophet. And We raised him to a Lofty Station.” [Al Quran 19: 56-57]

But, I call it “Command Station” to maintain the sense of its purpose.

During the Night Journey (Miraz), Prophet (pbuh) visited the Command Stations (Lofty Stations) step by step. He saw Adam in the Command Station of the First Sky, Jesus in the Second Sky, Moses in the Sixth Sky, Abraham in the Seventh Sky. He saw several other Prophets as well.

A Command Station receives, preserves, and passes on the data coming from the CC via Sidratul-Muntaha. So, a Command Station must be having Server (Computer) like systems.

The angels may carry the data and put it into the Servers. Or the data may be transferred through the channels and sub-channels independently.

The data may be transferred in the Quantum Teleportation technique as well. In quantum reality, in many cases, two distinct physical systems are characterized by a single state in such a way that if one characterizes the state of one part, must refer to the state of the other part. So, information can be transferred instantly. If one is writing in a Quantum Teleportation System of a Command Station, then one is also writing in its counter-part, incorporated in the Sidratul-Muntaha, hanging above the Araf, billions of light years away.

It is proved in 1982 through the experiment carried out by Alain Aspect and his team. The experiment provides strong evidence that even at great distances the atomic particles remain connected to one another—they are entangled. It shows that quantum event at one location can affect an event at another location without any obvious mechanism for communication between two locations.

It is likely that there are 19 Command Stations and Arch Angels:

- a. Seven in this Universe (one in each Sky).
- b. Eight in the Jannaat (one in each level).
- c. Two in the Araf (Angel Malek in the Eastern Araf and Angel Rizwan in the Western Araf).
- d. One commands the Angels of Arsh.
- e. One commands the Angels in Sidratul-Muntaha, Illiyin and Sijjin.

## **6i. The Fortress**

The angels, the ruhhs (command-data) and the nafses (souls of living creatures to be born) of one thousand years are sent from the Sidratul-Muntaha in one group.

“Yet they ask thee to hasten on the Punishment! But God will not fail in His Promise. Verily, a Day in the Sight of thy Lord is like a thousand years of your reckoning.” [Al Quran 22:47]

When the group comes down to the Command Station, the ruhhs are preserved in the Server, the nafses are accommodated in a special store, and the angels are accommodated in the nearby Fortresses.

The Fortresses are stars or star-like objects. The angels are created out of light. So, they remain energetic in the stars or star-like objects.

That He is the Lord of Sirius (a Star).  
And that it is He Who  
destroyed the ancient 'Ad'.  
And Thamud, nor gave them a  
lease of perpetual life.  
And before them, the people of  
Noah, for that they were most unjust  
and most insolent transgressors.  
And He destroyed the  
Overthrown Cities.

[Al Quran 53: 49–53]

The 'Sirius A' is the brightest star among the stars visible to the naked eye.

Above Verses are talking about several destroyed nations after mentioning that Allah is Lord of the Sirius. It otherwise means that the Sirius is a Fortress of the angels of destruction.

There are several Fortresses in each Sky. The Fortresses are led from the Command Station of the Sky.

CC, Sidratul-Muntaha, and Araf are located beyond the Samawaat (this Universe). Satan and his follower jinns cannot go there. But, the Command Stations and the Fortresses are in the Samawaat. The satan jinns can go to these objects. They gain hearing by stealth.

However, they are driven away by the angels as soon as possible.

“It is We who have set out Fortresses  
in the Skies and made them fair-

seeming to beholders, and We have guarded them from every satan accursed. But any that gains a hearing by stealth is pursued by a flaming fire, bright” [Al Quran 15: 16–18]

“And that we sometimes used to sit in some places in the sky to listen. So, whoever now listens finds a fiery asteroid waiting for him.”

[Al Quran 72:9]

The jinns are interested about immediate future mainly. They pass the information to the people enemy to Islam, practice black magic, foretell future, and so forth. The satan jinns whisper the information into their chests.

“Say: I seek refuge with the Lord of Mankind, the King of Mankind, the God of Mankind from the mischief of the Whisperer (Jinns), who withdraws, who whispers into the chests of Mankind- among Jinns and among men.” [Al Quran 114]

## **6j. Sakinah (Indwelling)**

A Sky spans millions of light years across. But, it has only one Command Station and several Fortresses in close proximity. So, the angels, ruhhs and nafses, which are needed in a thousand months, are

positioned near a job station in a group (they come to a Command Station in the groups of thousand years, but they are dispatched to the job stations in the groups of thousand months / 83 earthly years approximately).

The grouping (of thousand months) is done in the Command Station. The related angels are returned from the Fortresses and grouped with appropriate ruhhs and nafses. The group is put into a “Sakinah”. The Sakinah is then moved forward and harbored near the job station, such as the Planet Earth.

From the Sakinah, the angels, with ruhhs and nafses in cases, move to their job destinations day-by-day, individually or in packets.

A new Sakinah comes near the Earth in a Night of Power / Destiny (Lailatul-Qadr).

“The Night of Power (Lailatul-Qadr) is better than a thousand months. Therein come down the angels and the ruhhs by Allah’s permission for every work.”

[Al Quran 97: 3–4]

Sakinah means indwelling. It is an invisible domain of angels where Allah is close to direct them, if needed. It is like a cloud carrying the angels.

The whole System becomes clear if we discuss how the Quran was descended:

- The Quran was written and preserved in the Lawh-Mahfuz.

- The Verses of the Quran were sent to Sidratul-Muntaha that programmed the angels to deliver the Verses.
- The angels and the Verses in the form of ruhhs (electromagnetic-brain-data) were put into a group of thousand years. The group moved through the Channels and descended into the Command Station of the First (Innermost) Sky.
- The Command Station preserved the Verses in a Server, and the angels in a Fortress.
- In due time, the package of the Quran (angels and ruhhs) were put into a Sakinah, and the Sakinah was sent near the Earth.
- From the Sakinah, the angels with the Verses came to Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) day by day.

If a Sakinah is close to one, one feels weak and fall sleeping. It is a security measure of the Sakinah against the jinns trying to gain information. However, the characteristic was used to calm the Sahabah after the Battle of Ohud.

“A certain man (Sahabi) was reciting Surah Al-Qahf by his tethered horse. As he was reciting, a cloud engulfed him, which was encircling and descending, whose sight caused his horse to jump and move. When morning came, he went to Muhammad (pbuh) and informed him of what occurred. Muhammad (pbuh) replied

that it was the Sakinah that has descended with the Quran” [Muslim]

After performing the assigned task, an angel goes back to the Command Station directly and enters the feedback into a Server. The feedback goes to the CC via Sidratul-Muntaha. Then, the angel moves to a Retiring Fortress.

## **7. The Observer**

The minute-to-minute control is not possible by the CC due to the vastness of the Universe. But Allah personally comes to know a thing in no time and can do anything He may want to do then and there. Allah knows even before one performs an act. He is closer to one than one’s jugular vein. He knows, what one is thinking.

“It was We Who created man, and We know what dark suggestions his soul makes to him; for We are nearer to him than jugular vein”

[Al Quran 50:16]

But Allah does not interfere normally. His system comprising the CC and the angels does not fail. However, if an impromptu situation really arises and demands change, Allah does it.

When Jonah left prematurely, the people understood that their time was about to end. At the last moment, they repented and asked for forgiveness

to God, when the angels of destruction were in the vicinity. Allah forgave and lifted the punishment.

## **8. Ruhh (Soul)**

Which ruhhs come down with the angels? What “ruh” (soul) means here?

The soul is discussed in Chapter-1. A “ruh” (an elementary soul) is a designed force field, which controls the object. Thus, it works as a Command of God. We also can use some of these ruhhs. A couple of examples are given below:

If a Military Commander is passing orders to his Soldiers over a wireless set, the electro-magnetic waves, emitting from the wireless set, are ruhhs.

If an aircraft is operated by a computer, the computer sends electromagnetic command signals to the control units of the aircraft. In this case, the electromagnetic command signals are ruhhs.

Similarly, the CC produces command signals with electromagnetic forces, which are called ruhhs in the Verses.

The CC mainly produces two types of ruhhs depending on the jobs. The types are discussed below.

### **8a. Angel-programming Ruhh**

The angels cannot learn. An angel is programmed (designed) by Sidratul-Muntaha with this type of ruhhs to carry out his task.

However, the major angels are created with necessary knowledge and capabilities.

## **8b. Task performing Ruhh**

This type of ruhhs performs the task by itself. For example, if one is downloading the picture of a bird from a Server of the Internet, one is actually downloading series of electro-magnetic waves. At the end, the electro-magnetic waves form the picture of the bird in one's computer.

In this case, the 'up-loader computer' is the 'CC', the 'Server' is the 'Sidratul-Muntaha', the 'Internet' is the 'Channel', the 'electromagnetic waves' are the 'ruhhs', and the 'receiving computer' is the 'object where the action is taking place'.

By the system of Internet, a picture can come down. But Allah's system is much more sophisticated and powerful. The CC can send nafs, forces and energies through Sidratul-Muntaha, Channels and Servers, which can form a real bird independently, or by grasping matter from the surrounding nature. It is like the sending of a living creature through a 3D Printer. Probably, the camel of Saleh was sent in this way.

Therefore, some ruhhs are designed to perform the tasks by themselves.

## **8c. Human Nafs**

Allah had created human nafs (souls) before He created the Universe. They were then fed into the CC as players in the Master Design (Virtual / Holographic Universe). After the Design was confirmed and the

fates were written, the nafses were probably stored in a store related to the CC.

At an appropriate time, a human nafs is descended into the Command Station of the First (Innermost) Sky with a packet of thousand years. The Command Station may have specialized store for the nafses.

From the Command Station, the nafses are sent near the Earth by a Sakinah. When a female conceives, an angel comes down with a nafs and puts it into the zygote / embryo.

## **9. Angels**

The angels are created from the light.

An angel cannot learn new thing. The Sidratul-Muntaha infuses knowledge of his task into his brain. The Sidratul-Muntaha re-designs his structure as well, to make him suitable to perform his task.

A group of angels is summoned from the Araf (Preliminary Sanctuary) to the Sidratul-Muntaha. There are oval shaped leaves in Sidratul-Muntaha. The angels sit on those leaves. Then the angels are programmed and designed to perform their tasks. All angels for a particular task are programmed at a time and sent in one packet.

Therefore, the angels cannot deviate from following through the orders; they are sinless (minor angels are robotic). Prophet (pbuh) saw the programming during the Night Journey (*Miraj*):

“It is narrated on the authority of Anas b. Malik that the Messenger of Allah said: “Then I was taken to Sidratul-Muntaha whose leaves were like elephant’s ears, and its fruits were like big earthenware vessels. And when it was covered by the commands of Allah (ruhhs), it underwent such a change that none amongst the creation has the power to praise its beauty””

[Hadith]

“On top of each leaf, there was an angel who covered it with colors, which cannot be described. Whenever he covered it by Allah's order (ruhhs), it would change.” One version says: “It would turn into sapphire and chrysolite, the beauty of which is impossible for anyone to praise according to its merit. On it were the Moths of Gold”” [Hadith]

The “Moths of Gold” and the “Fruits looking like big earthenware Vessels” are the same thing, expressed differently in different Hadith. A thing like a “Moth of Gold” remains over an angel when he sits on a leaf. Most likely, this Moth of Gold is the programming device.

The commands / ruhhs are delivered into the Sidratul-Muntaha from the CC. The Sidratul-Muntaha produces desired electric pulses and other things

unknown to program the angels. The electric pulses are spurted through the 'Moths of Gold' into the angels sitting on the leaves. Therefore, when an angel is programmed, he (angel) sparkles with the light rays.

After programming and tasking, the angels are packed in a group that includes the Task Performing Ruhhs and the Nafses in cases. The group is sent down into a Command Station through the Channels flowing from the Araf.

“By those who tear out with violence (task performing ruhhs), by those who gently draw out (programmed angels), and by those who glide along (the vehicle carrying the group); then press forward as in a race; then arrange to do (the jobs)” [Al Quran 79: 1-5]

The necessary instructions too are sent down to the Command Station so that the Chief Angel of the Command Station can act.

From the Command Station, they are sent near the job station in the groups of one thousand months (83 years approximately) by the Sakinah.

It may be mentioned that the final release of angels, destined for a great destruction, remains in the hand of Allah, not in the hand of a Chief Angel. Thus, great destructions get delayed, even may not come at all (Allah is Merciful). Noah was living for 900 years. People were hearing about the ensuing Flood, but it was delaying and delaying.

The destruction of Nineveh was cancelled.

We are living in the verge of the end-time-destructions, related to the coming of Mahdi and Jesus Christ. The signs of their coming are appearing, but the events of destructions are not rolling down. There are several Books of Prophecy in Holy Bible. One may read those to know the signs.

Allah made the Master Plan; He can adjust.

## **10. Reporting back to the CC**

After performing the given task, an angel goes back to the Command Station and enters the feedback into a Server. The Server sends the report to the CC where it is preserved.

Then, the angel moves to a Retiring Fortress where he keeps on praying to Allah for the wellbeing of human he worked for—if he found the human doing good. He will continue praying for him till the Day of Doom.

The angels are involved in one's day-to-day life. If one commits a big sin, like murdering a man, the angels involved in one's day-to-day life get dismayed. They become scared of Allah and start disclaiming the liability of committing the crime by cursing the person. At the end of duty, they go back to the Retiring Fortress where they will keep on cursing the one till the Doomsday.

Every night, when a man sleeps, his brain-data is copied and collected by some angels. They send it to the CC.

“It is He who dies you (*yatawaffakum*) by night and has knowledge of all that you have done by day. By day, does He raise you up again that a term appointed be fulfilled. In the end, unto Him will be your return. Then He will show you the truth of all that you did.”  
[Al Quran 6:60]

The daily brain-data of a human is preserved in his file in the CC. It will be needed during his resurrection to return his memory directly into his brain.

## **11. Reporting to Allah**

Allah comes down into the First Sky every night. In the Command Station, the returning angels report to Allah, before sending the feedback to the CC.

Most likely, ‘Allah in form’ comes down by extending His Kursi:

“...Extends His Kursi (Thorne) into the Skies and Lands (this universe), and He feels no fatigue in guarding both of them (Samawaat and Jannaat); for He is the Most High, the Supreme.”  
[Al Quran 2:255]

Most likely, Allah appears in the Bitul Izzat (the House of Assembly in the Command Station of

the First Sky) and takes the reports of the returning angels.

Reporting to Allah is a formality to an angel. When Allah asks, the angels answer: 'You already know what they have done' (or words to that effect).

Allah says, 'Even then you say what they have done' (or words to that effect).

It means that Allah checks the collected brain-data and the reports to ensure that those are collected and fed into the Servers correctly.

## **12. Several Chief Angels**

We know about several Chief Angels. In the followings, I have talked about a few of them.

### **12a. Israfil**

Israfil is the greatest angel. He is responsible to blow the Trumpet (Soor).

### **12b. Azrail**

According to Hadith, Azrail is sitting in the Fourth Sky. There is a tree in front of him. The names of all humans are written in the leaves of that tree. When a leaf falls down, Azrail sees the name and collects his soul within forty days. It is likely that the tree is connected to the CC. The leaves fall according to the commands of the CC.

It is narrated in the Hadith that the body of Azrail is so big that if the water of all the oceans were

poured onto his head, not a single drop would reach his feet.

He does not leave his seat for collecting the souls. He has a dedicated hand for each human. Each hand has an eye. Azrail uses the hand to look at a person seventy times a day. It means that wherever the person goes, the dedicated hand of Azrail follows. The dedicated hand ceases after the collecting his soul.

After collecting the soul of every living being, only one hand will remain, with which he will collect his own soul.

### **12c. Gabriel**

Gabriel is messenger angel. He is a huge angel. He has many assistant angels looking like him but small in size. The small angels are produced as Gabriel breaths. A small angel too is called Gabriel. They have wings (of light) to move from one place to another.

### **12d. Michael**

Michael is responsible for the living creatures of the Innermost (First) Sky including the Earth. It is likely that he is the Chief Angel of the First Sky.

## 12e. Other Angels

There are numerous other angels that perform specific tasks. I have discussed how they are programmed and sent.

## 13. Conclusion

CC, Sidratul-Muntaha, Araf, Channels, Command Stations, Fortresses and Sakinahs make a huge Cybernetic System, monitoring and controlling the living creatures of the universes.

However, Allah always looks after the creatures:

“We descend not but by the command of thy Lord. To Him belongs what is before us, and what is behind us, and what is between; and thy Lord never does forget.” [Al Quran 19:64]

Allah is Merciful. But one that would deny His existence or attribute Partners to Him may be forsaken, and the System would mount on him, solely—over him would be “Nineteen”.

### **Section-10 of Chapter-6 [Verse 60-67]: Human Soul (Main Discussion)**

It is He who dies you (*yatawaffakum*) by night, and He knows what you committed by the day. Then He raises you up therein so that is fulfilled term specified. In the end, unto

Him will be your return. Then He will show you what you used to do.

**Remarks:**

A human is passing a physical life on the Earth. He has another physical life in his ultimate destination where he will be inserted through resurrection as an eternal being. In this respect, many remain in confusion. One of the causes of the confusion is that we believe having souls, but we are yet to discover it.

The basic idea of the soul is given in Section-1 of Chapter-1 where I have discussed that a ruh (elementary soul) is a designed force field, and a nafs (composite soul) is a combination of two or more force fields.

I have also discussed that Allah provided a huge nafs from His own body to create the Universe. The provided nafs is called Nafsin-Wahidatin (a Nafs Single) in the Quran.

The Nafsin-Wahidatin looks like the GUT Force (the Force of Grand Unified Theory) that produced the Big Bang / the Universe.

However, there are unknown Force Fields, which are not yet discovered. The unknown force fields originated from the same Nafsin-Wahidatin. So, the Nafsin-Wahidatin was greater than the GUT Force. It may be called GUT Force + (plus).

The unknown force fields were needed to create the nafses (composite souls) of the living creatures.

It is better if one reading this Section has read the "Basic Idea about Soul" from Section-1 of Chapter-1.

In this Section, I have discussed human souls. It is the main discussion of human souls. The discussion will progress in the following sequence:

1. Types of Human Souls
2. Human Ruhh
3. Ruhh and Deep Sleep
4. Ruhh and Hearing
5. Ruhh and Memory-Data
7. Nature of Nafs
8. Role of Nafs
9. The Resurrection and the Nafs
10. The Need of Guarding

## **1. Types of Human Souls**

Basically, humans are Vicegerents of Allah.

Behold, thy Lord said to the angels: "I will create a vicegerent on a land..."

[Al Quran 2: 30]

On the Earth, a human is undergoing test to confirm which of the lands he deserve to get as a vicegerent of God—is it should be an object of this Universe (hell), or is it should be an object of the Jannaat (paradise)?

A human is not only tested, his souls and memories are developed on the Earth for his eternal destination.

Each human has two souls:

- *Ruhh*
- *Nafs*

Both, *Ruhh* and *Nafs*, are translated as Soul, but they are different.

The *nafs* is a combination of unknown (not yet discovered) force fields. The force fields originated from the *Nafsin-Wahidatin*:

“He created you from a *Nafs* Single  
(*Nafsin-Wahidatin*)...”

[Al Quran 39:6]

The *nafs* is the main soul of a human. It spreads throughout his body with its center below the navel. It has several vital points. The vital points are called *Chakras* (*Latifa*).



FIGURE 6.5: Vital Points of *Nafs* (N) and *Ruhh* (R)

A *ruh* is an unknown elementary force field. Allah gives *ruh* directly from Himself:

"When I have proportioned him  
(Adam) and breathed into him of My

ruh, then fall down to him  
prostrating." [Al Quran 15:29]

A ruh is a superimposed soul, spreading in the chest and brain. The ruh too has a few vital points.

## 2. **Human Ruh**

A human ruh serves several purposes. The purposes and its activities are discussed under the following headings:

- a. Consciousness
- b. Ruh produces Mind / Qalb / Virtual Brain
- c. Qalb (Mind / Virtual Brain) and the Arsh of Allah
- d. How Qalb can be suitable Arsh of Allah?
- e. How a Qalb can be spoiled?

### 2a. **Consciousness**

When Allah created Adam, his body was living, but he was unconscious. An unconscious being can be considered dead (sleep is like death).

Adam had nafs, but the nafs could not make him conscious. So, the nafs too remained dead (unconscious) with the body.

Then Allah gave ruh directly from Himself. He breathed the ruh into Adam, and he became conscious and tried to get up:

"When I have proportioned him  
(Adam) and breathed into him of My

ruhh, then fall down to him  
prostrating." [Al Quran 15:29]

Like Adam, Allah gives ruhh to every human being, just after his birth, and he being conscious cries for the first time.

So, the ruhh makes a human conscious.

A human becomes unconscious when he sleeps. So, it seems that Allah seizes his ruhh when he sleeps, and He releases it when he awakes:

“It is God that dies (*yatawaffa*) the nafs at their death; and the one who die not, in their sleep. Then keeps the one whom He has decreed for them the death, and sends the others for a term specified. Verily, in that are signs for a people who reflect.” [Al Quran 39:42]

Above Verse says that God dies (kills) a nafs at its death. How a nafs can die?

To answer, when a ruhh is attached, the nafs becomes active (alive, in the divine language).

The ruhh and the nafs connect to each other through their vital points in the chest. Through these points the nafs sends the data of emotions into the ruhh. Emotion relates to consciousness. Everything is conscious. A subatomic particle, moving through the space as waves, becomes particle if it is observed. So, it is conscious and has emotion to take form as needed. Similarly, the ruhh and nafs, being the force fields, have emotions. The ruhh has two emotions

such as happiness and joy, and the nafs has many, such as fear, greed, anger, love, and so on.

Then the nafs can feed data of its emotions, such as fear, love, greed, etc., into the ruh, which trigger a thought in the mind with the assistance of brain and nervous system and can make a human conscious (living, in the divine language).

Thereby, the ruh makes the nafs active, and then the nafs makes the body active.

A human dies through two steps. In the first step, his ruh is seized by Allah. So, his mind gets dismantled and the nafs get inactive, as a result he becomes unconscious (dies, in the divine language). In the second step, his nafs is drawn out and collected by the angels, and he dies permanently.

In simple term, a man falls asleep (becomes unconscious) when his ruh is taken out by Allah; he finally dies when the nafs is taken out by the angels. The above Verse is telling the act of Allah only.

## **2b. Ruh produces Mind / Qalb / Virtual Brain**

The consciousness relates to the mind (qalb)—the ruh produces the mind.

### **Note:**

"Qalb" should be translated as "mind", not as heart.

*"The Mind is a set of cognitive facilities including consciousness, imagination, perception, thinking,*

*judgment, language and memory, which is housed in the brain (sometimes including the central nervous system). It is usually defined as the faculty of an entity's thought and consciousness. It holds the power of imagination, recognition, and appreciation, and is responsible for processing feeling and emotion, resulting in attitudes and actions."*

– *Wikipedia, the Free Encyclopedia*

The Quran points out the chest as the location of the mind:

“Do they not travel through the land so that their minds (qalbs) may thus learn wisdom and their ears may thus learn to hear? Truly, it is not their eyes that are blind, but their minds, which are in their chests.” [Al Quran 22:46]

According to the following Hadith, the qalb is a piece of flesh (muscle):

“Prophet (pbuh) said: There is a piece of flesh in the body of every child of Adam; when that is purified, the whole body becomes pure; and when that one goes wrong, the whole body goes wrong. Be informed that it is the qalb.” [Hadith]

Therefore, according to the above Verse and Hadith, the qalb (mind) is based on a muscle of the

chest. But, how one's thinking compartment (qalb / mind) can be in the chest, instead of being in the brain?

It is generally thought that the brain produces the mind through its activities. But the modern thinkers associate Central Nervous System (CNS) too, with the mind. Some scientists opine that the mind spreads throughout the body; it is not limited to the brain only.

The mind is greater than the brain. The experiments show that the mind acts independently in cases. A decision may be made in the mind before the brain is aware of the situation.

*“If minds are wholly dependent on brains, and brains on biochemistry, and biochemistry on the meaningless flux of the atoms, I cannot understand how the thought of those minds should have any more significance than the sound of wind in the tree.”*

– C. S. Lewis

Here comes the need of ruh. The ruh is a highly designed force field (elementary soul) of unknown kind. It is a super-imposed soul of a human, which spreads in the brain and chest. It works as an active platform of one's mind (qalb).

The brain, the nerves, the muscles, and the ruh jointly make the mind in the chest. The mind helps produce the mental-visions. It works as the virtual brain. Some of the visions get recorded in the brain; unimportant visions get erased.

The data comes to the ruh directly from eyes, ears, skin, and brain. The ruh concentrate on the data that satisfies it. It may think on the gentle breeze it

may be feeling, or it may think on the person he may be seeing, or it may think about a memory. It may also amplify the thought with the data of brain.

Other animals do not have ruhh. So, they do not have the mind (qalb) to produce thoughts and visions. A dog never thinks sitting in a corner that it has become the king of a jungle and commanding all other animals.

## **2c. Qalb (Mind / Virtual Brain) and the Arsh of Allah**

According to Hadith, qalb (mind / virtual brain) of a Believer (Mumin) is the “Arsh” of Allah.

“The qalb (mind) of a Believer is the Arsh of Allah” [Hadith]

The main Arsh in the High is the Headquarters of Allah where He has a Kursi to sit. The human minds (qalb) are His forward Headquarters that He controls by His fingers.

“The qalb (mind) of a Believer remains between two Fingers of Allah” [Hadith]

So, Allah can control a human’s thought and get a thing done by him.

Allah can control in any way He may want to, but the qalb is a way He has created to interface through humans to His creations.

However, Allah holds great honor and dignity. Allah may use the people that want Him. Others may be left at their own in the Jannaat and in the Samawaat.

"The Day whereon neither wealth nor sons will avail, but only he who brings to Allah a sound qalb"

[Al Quran 26: 88–89]

## **2d. How Qalb can be suitable Arsh of Allah?**

In this respect I want to propose two points:

Point 1: The brain helps to produce the thoughts in the qalb, so brain should be full of Faith, knowledge of Allah and the Quran.

Point 2: One should want to be accepted by Allah. The urge of acceptance should come from the mind, so one should love Allah. One who loves Allah, remembers Allah. When one calls Allah, does one wants that Allah should come and sit in a chair around one? No, one may want Allah connected to one's qalb. Once Allah likes one, He makes one's qalb pleasant to Him and develops the connection.

## **2e. How a Qalb can be spoiled?**

In this respect, I have discussed four points as under:

Point 1: A Pagan is possessed by a satan jinni. So, gradually his nafs gets deformed. He will be resurrected with devil-like-body, unsuitable for the Jannaat. The qalb is based in the body, so once the

body is deformed, the qalb too gets deformed. Allah may not like a deformed qalb as His Arsh. The matter will be clear in the discussion of nafs coming next.

Point 2: A qalb may be spoiled due to wrong knowledge and programming of brain. For example: a qalb full of negative emotions and wrong thoughts may not be liked Allah. However, it does not make one unfit for the Jannaat.

Point 3: A qalb of a sinful man may not be liked Allah

Point 4: One's qalb may not be used by Allah because of one's mental orientation. Allah holds great honor and dignity; He may use the people who want Him. Others may be left at their own. However, it does not make one unfit for the Jannaat.

### **3. Ruhh and Deep Sleep**

When Allah seizes one's ruh, one becomes unconscious and falls asleep. It is not known how Allah seizes a ruh, and what happens to it after it is seized. Allah may take out the ruh completely from a body, or He may only disconnect it from some vital points, or He may draw it out from a human body partially. It is thought by some Sufis that a developed ruh may extend to the Arsh during sleep and can observe the future event from Alam-e-Mesal (Virtual Universe) as dream.

Other animals do not have ruhs (they have nafs only). One can steal everything from a man's house while he is sleeping, but one cannot enter a lion's cave even if it is sleeping, even with stomach

full. Slight vibration will break its sleep, and it may attack. Other animals do not have a ruh—so, their sleep is not related to ruh—so, their sleep is not deep.

A short sleep is enough for a beast: A horse sleeps 2 hour in a 24-hour-day, and that two-hour-sleep too may be divided into many parts.

But, a human brain is massive and extremely active. It needs proper rest that can be achieved by long deep sleep only. So, the ruh related sleep is incorporated. To incorporate the ruh related sleep, special changes are made in a human physique by modifying his genome code. It is said in the following Verse:

“And created you from Pairs (DNA Double Helix), and we made your sleep rest” [Al Quran 78: 8-9]

In the following I will discuss a little to confirm that "Pair" means "DNA Double Helix" in the above Verse.

I will also discuss the design and activities of DNA Molecule (Pair). The discussion will also be required to understand the role of nafs in the resurrection of a human.

The Quran talks about the Pair in many Verses. I have discussed several Verses below:

### 3a. Noble Pair

“...And He scattered through it beasts of all kinds—We send down rain from the sky—all from Noble Pair (*Min kullay zawgin kareemin*)”

[Al Quran 31:10]

“Do they not look at the Earth, how many we produced in it—all from Noble Pair (*Min kullay zawgin kareemin*)?” [Al Quran 26:7]

The above Verses are normally translated in deviated forms where the word “*zawjin*” is translated as male-female-pair to make meaningful sentences of common understanding. But my translations are direct, word-to-word, in which “*zawjin*” (Pair) clearly point out “Double Helix DNA”.

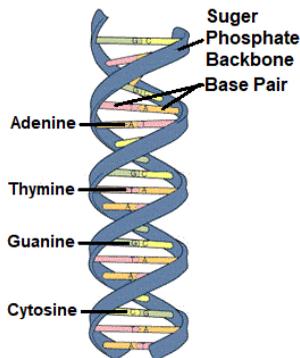


FIGURE 6.6: The Noble Pair (DNA Double Helix)

Actually, the “Pair” (*zawjin*) cannot be translated in these Verses as male-female couple, because the single-cell creatures, such as Amoeba or Bacteria, do not have male and female. They are reproduced by dividing into two equal halves through a process called Binary Fission. And the Verses are saying that **all living creatures** are created from the Noble Pair. So, the Verses mean "DNA Double Helix" by "Noble Pair".

All living creatures of the Earth, from single-cell amoeba to giant blue whale, are created from the double helix DNA Molecules.

Does one search for a ‘noble hen’ and a ‘noble rooster’ to produce the chickens? And human husband and wife need not to be nobles to produce the offspring.

In fact, every living creature, from bacteria to maple tree, is produced by a genuine “Noble Pair” (*zawgin kareem*) that is the “DNA Double Helix”.

The genome code is the program of life.

A DNA Molecule is a long linear polymer. Its structural arrangement looks like an immensely long ladder joined in the middle by weak hydrogen.

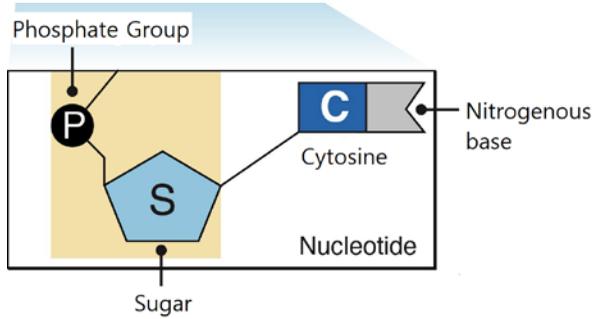


FIGURE 6.7: Nucleotide

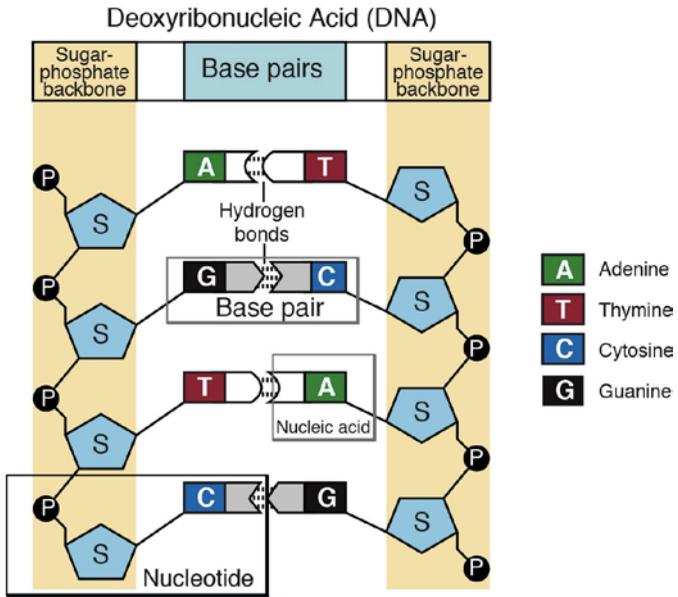


FIGURE 6.8: Double Helix Bondage

A human DNA Double Helix is about six feet long. It remains coiled in the nucleus of a cell. There are 46 DNA Double Helix in a human cell.

A DNA Double Helix Molecule contains many Genes. A gene is a region of a DNA Molecule that encodes function. A human DNA Molecule has about 23,000 genes. However, it accounts for 2 % of the DNA. The function of other 98 % is not clear.

The genes act as instructions to make proteins and enzymes. With only 20 types of amino acids, available in the cytoplasm, the DNA Double Helix can produce over 1000 types of proteins needed for a human body. It can produce over 2000 types of enzymes.

The DNA Double Helix molecules replicate and divide the nucleus. Ultimately the cell gets divided. It produces different kinds of cells. Over 250 types of cells make a human body. Every type of cell has specific programs needed to function.

The formation of a human body starts from a cell (zygote). DNA Double Helix contains body plan genes and switches to guide and control the formation. It does not make nerve cell in the hair, or hair cell in the nerve. Ultimately, a human child is born with more than 100 trillion cells perfectly organized. Can it be believed that the whole process of formation is guided by the code of DNA Double Helix Molecules that remain in the nucleus of the cell, not visible to the naked-eye?

These are highly complicated processes. So, in above Verses, the pair (DNA Double Helix) is called "Noble Pair" (*Zawgin Kareem*).

Allah created it personally. Its accidental creation is impossible.

### 3b. The Attractive Pair

In the Quran, the DNA Double Helix is called “Attractive Pair” (*zawgin baheej*) as well:

“And the earth; We have spread it out, and set thereon mountains standing firm, and grown therein every kind from Attractive Pair (*Zawgin Baheej*).” [Al Quran 50:7]

A single round of DNA replication precedes all cell divisions, regardless of organism.

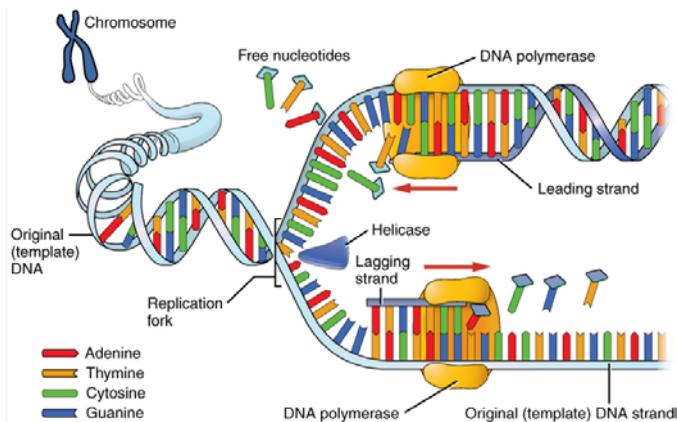


FIGURE 6.9: DNA Replication

The DNA replication is the process of producing two identical replicas from one original DNA Molecule.

A DNA Double Helix remains coiled in a chromatid. It unwinds and gets separated for replication. Each strand acts as a template for the next strand. Bases are matched to synthesize the new partner strand. A perfect match is produced with free nucleotides available in the cytoplasm. The old strand attracts the new strand to produce new DNA Double Helix.

After the DNA replication, the nucleus of a cell divides. Subsequently, the cell gets divided. It produces two identical cells.

In a DNA Double Helix, the nucleotides produce bondage with weak hydrogen (see figure). The weak hydrogen does not work like glue; it attracts. So, the strands can segregate and join as needed without causing any harm to the base pairs.

A DNA material attracts correct counter-part as well, during the fusion of producing the Zygote.

A DNA Double Helix releases Messenger RNA (mRNA) that attracts correct amino acid in correct sequence to produce correct protein in the synthesizer (ribosome).

There are many cases when they find out correct elements from cytoplasm to produce correct products.

A DNA Double Helix is the mother of all attractors.

So, a DNA Double Helix is rightly called “Attractive Pair” (*Zawgin Baheej*).

### 3c. Pair and Reproduction

The DNA Replication segregates chromosomes and forms two nuclei in the cell in the process of mitosis. Subsequently, the cell divides. It produces two identical cells.

In another process (meiosis), it produces reproductive cell with haploid chromosomes. A haploid chromosome is a coiled DNA Double Helix (Pair).

The haploid chromosomes of reproductive cells (sperm and ovum) undergo fusion and produce the code of a zygote that is destined to form a specific human with hereditary traits from parents and grandparents.

“The Creator of the Skies and Lands,  
He has made for you pairs (DNA  
Double Helix) from among yourselves,  
and pairs (DNA Double Helix) among  
cattle; by this means does He multiply  
you; there is nothing whatever like  
unto Him, and He is the One that hears  
and sees.” [Al Quran 42:11]

In above Verse, cattle are mentioned to clarify that the Verse is not talking about married couple (married pair); cattle do not marry.

The Pairs are created for us and from us, as the Verse says: *He has made for you pairs from among yourselves.*

And it is the means of reproduction, as the Verse says: *by this means does He multiply you.*

Therefore, in this Verse, the “Pairs” means Haploid Chromosomes that are available in a sperm. Each Haploid Chromosome contains one DNA Double Helix (Pair) with little changes in the code so that the offspring is like the parents but not exactly like the parents.

The Diploid Chromosomes are produced in the Zygote through fusion of sperm and ovum, which produces the specific code of the child with hereditary traits from the parents.

### 3d. Pairs and Ship

"That has created Pairs (DNA Double Helix) in all things and has made for you ships and cattle on which ye ride"  
[Al Quran 43:12]

Above Verse is talking about “cattle we ride” just after talking about the “Pairs”. It means that riding cattle are genetically programmed to be obedient. A zebra cannot be tamed, but a horse can be driven to death.

Above Verse is talking about ships too, “*ships and cattle on which ye ride*”. In old times, the ships used to be made from wood. The plants too are created from the same DNA Double Helix.

The DNA Double Helix of plants and animals are chemically and structurally same. It is the genome

codes that vary. One code makes a horse and another code makes a tree.

### 3e. Pairs for All

“Glory to God Who created all things that the earth produces as well as their own kind and things of which they have no knowledge from Pairs (DNA Double Helix)” [Al Quran 36:36]

According to above Verse, all living creatures are created from the Pairs. We find that all creatures from bacteria to maple tree and from amoeba to blue whale are created from the Double Helix DNA.

Is there any other kind of “Pair” in the world, with which all life forms can be created?

It is DNA Double Helix only.

So, in the Quran, “Pair” means “DNA Double Helix”.

However, viruses do not have double helix in their DNA. It also is clarified in the above Verse by the words, “*all things that the earth produces*”. The virus is not produced in the earth. It is produced in the living creatures (hosts) only. Moreover, a virus is a nonliving creature.

### 4. Ruhh and Hearing

“And among His Signs is the sleep that ye take by night and by day, and

seeking of His Bounty; verily in that  
are signs for those who hears”

[Al Quran 30:23]

The above Verse indicates that one’s hearing system is designed for one’s sound sleep. The brain needs electromagnetic waves for the processing of data and sense hearing. But, the ear does not receive electromagnetic waves; it receives sound waves and transforms the sound waves into electro-magnetic waves.

If the hearing system received electro-magnetic wave, one could not sleep due to colossal sounds produced by electromagnetic energy emission sources scattered all-around the Universe.

The ruh is may have a role to play in the transformation of sound waves into electro-magnetic waves. So, when the ruh is seized, one cannot hear and can sleep undisturbed.

An animal has no ruh. So, its sleep is different. The sleep of an animal breaks due to minor vibration / sound.

## **5. Ruh and Memory-Data**

Every night, the angels collect the memory-data of a person, after Allah collects his ruh during his sleep:

“It is He who dies you (*yatawaffakum*)  
by night, and He knows what you  
committed by the day. Then He raises  
you up therein so that is fulfilled term

specified. In the end, unto Him will be your return. Then He will show you the truth of all that you did.”

[Al Quran 6:60]

The 'data of deeds' (memory-data) are sent to the Lawh-Mahfuz for preservation. It will be required to return the memory of a resurrected person on the Day of Judgment.

He is the Irresistible from above over His worshippers; and He sends over you guarding (angels). At length, when comes to anyone of you the death—take him Our messengers (angels); and they never fail in their duty. Then are men returned unto Allah, their Protector, the Reality. Is not His the Command? And He is the Swiftest in taking account.

## **Human Soul (Main Discussion) Continued:**

### **Remarks:**

#### **6. Nafs**

Above Verses narrates that Allah persistently guards His worshippers by angels. Why Allah guards His worshippers? What is the difference between a guarded Believer and an unguarded Idolater? We find both suffer equally from diseases and disasters. What the angels guard?

In subsequent discussion it will be clear that the angels guard the “nafs” of a Believer.

According to the Quran, a nafs is detached from a body at the time of death only.

“O nafs in rest and satisfaction, come back thou to the Lord well pleased and well-pleasing unto Him. Enter thou then among My devotees! Yea, enter thou My Jannaat!”

[Al Quran 89: 27-30]

So, the nafs sustains a human body as a living entity.

The nafs is discussed under the following headings:

7. Nature of Nafs
8. Role of Nafs
9. The Resurrection and the Nafs
10. The Need of Guarding

## **7. Nature of Nafs**

The nafs is one's main soul. It possesses the basic urges, the urges of survival and reproduction. So, it is the center of greed (coming from the urges of survival and reproduction). The basic human nature is the nature of his nafs.

“By the Nafs, and the proportion and order given to it, and its enlightenment as to its wrong and its right; truly he succeeds that purifies it and fails that corrupts it!” [Al Quran 91: 7-10]

The above Verses say that a nafs is given proportion and order. Most probably, it is the proportion of unknown (not yet discovered) force fields that in combination form a nafs. Each of these force fields possesses one or more emotions by nature.

However, scientific understanding about the emotion is different:

*“Emotions are biological states associated with the nervous system brought on by neurophysiological changes variously associated with thoughts, feelings, behavioural responses, and a degree of pleasure or displeasure.”*

– Wikipedia, the Free Encyclopedia

The force fields of the nafs may produce the biological states of emotions by their actions in a human body.

Earlier in his Section, I have discussed that the sub-atomic particles, forces, and energies are conscious and they act in different patterns. So, they may possess emotions to act, as they always act.

Human emotions may be natural laws of the force fields that form the nafs (the force fields that form the human nafs are not yet discovered by the scientists).

Psychologist Robert Plutchik states that there are eight basic emotions: joy, sadness; trust, disgust; fear, anger; surprise, anticipation.

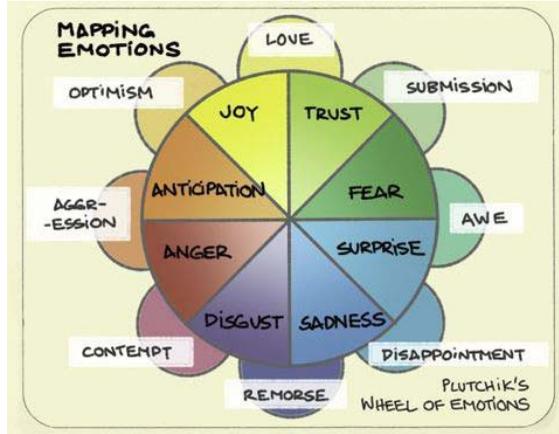


FIGURE 6.10: Plutchik's Wheel of Emotions

The joy and sadness are ruh related emotions. Only a human have ruh. So, only a human has these two emotions. For example, if a person having ten goats slaughters one, other goats do not become sad, because they do not have ruhhs. Other emotions, like fear, anger, aggression, etc., are possessed by the animals too, more or less, because they have nafs.

Above Verses talk about the enlightenment of the nafs as to its wrong and its right. The knowledge of wrong and right remains in the brain. The brain enlightens the nafs by electric pulses. But all nafs do not get enlightened equally:

- Wrong impulse related to uncontrolled negative emotions may resist a nafs from getting enlightened.
- The whisper of the satan jinni, which is produced from the anti-matter, may stain the nafs.

- The possession of satan jinni, created from the anti-matter, may darken a nafs extremely.
- There may be other reasons as well.

A nafs may be enlightened by the light of Allah. But, Allah would enlighten one that He likes.

Allah is present everywhere. He is closer to us than our jugular veins. We do not see Him, because He is beyond the veils. His light is not exposed in our known three-dimensional world. A bit was exposed in front of Moses, and the hill burnt. Even the Earth cannot sustain the pressure of His light, as Hazrat Rabeya Basri, a Muslim saint, narrated. The Light of Allah can be exposed inside a human body through his nafs. A human being is a “Home of Allah” which is highlighted in the following Verses:

“Allah is the light of the Skies and Lands. The parable of his light is as if there were a niche and within it a lamp. The lamp enclosed in glass; the glass as if it were a brilliant star. Lit from a blessed tree, an olive, neither of the east nor of the west. Whose oil is well-nigh luminous though fire scarce touched it. Light upon light! Allah does set forth parables for men, and Allah knows all things. In houses, which Allah has permitted to be raised to honor for the celebration in them of His name. In them is He glorified in the mornings and in the evenings.

They are such men whom neither business nor trade can drive from the remembrance neither of Allah, nor from regular prayer, nor from the practice of regular charity; their fear is for the day when hearts and eyes will be transformed” [Al Quran 24: 35–37]

According to above Verses, the light of Allah is present everywhere. His light may be exposed inside His beloved people. In above Verses, the glass is the parable of a human body, and the flame inside the glass is the parable of exposed light of Allah. The people with such illuminated nafs are raised high.

[Above Verses are deliberately discussed in Chapter-24].

## **8. Role of Nafs**

A nafs acts on body and brain directly. It influences the mind (qalb / virtual brain) through its vital point in the left chest. Its activities are discussed under the following Headings:

- a. Urges of Survival and Reproduction
- b. Nafs acting directly
- c. Nafs sensing anti-creatures, like jinns
- d. Nafs and the Third Eye
- e. Nafs and Whisper of Satan Jinni
- f. Nafs and Sexual Drive
- g. Nafs build Character
- h. Nafs and Self-restraint

## 8a. Urges of Survival and Reproduction

Fear is the primary emotion of a nafs. Fear relates to the urge of survival.

A brain assesses danger. So, the information of fear (electric pulses) comes to a nafs from the brain. The information spread through the nerves of the backbone. It spreads throughout the body at a fast speed.

The brain sends electric pulses of fear. But, if it were a matter of electric pulses and muscles only, the whole body would be affected, because every cell of our body is connected to a nerve. The brain sends pulses of fear everywhere, but it is vividly felt in the vital areas of the nafs.

The center of a nafs is below the navel. So, closely located body parts sense the fear vividly. Thus, extreme fear creates pain in lower backbone, sensation in lower stomach, shivering in legs, even urinating.

In turn, the urge of survival imprinted in the nafs inspires the brain to act. Human nafses are complex and diversified, so they act differently. Some attack, some fly away, some do nothing. But animal nafses are similar, so they act similarly.

Similarly, brain sends pulses of sadness and joy throughout a body, but the senses are felt in the chest, where ruh is located. Sadness and joy are ruh related senses. In extreme joy, the chest expands; and in extreme sadness, the chest tends to crunch.

A beast has a nafs only. So, it feels the nafs related emotions only. It feels fear in danger,

aggression, anger, pain in hurt, love and attraction to counterpart, hatred, disgust, pleasure in eating, comfort in good weather and dwelling, etc. It does not have a ruh, so it does not have the ruh related feelings such as sorrow and happiness. If one has slaughtered a sheep in front of other sheep, they are not unhappy.

[Only the dogs show the signs of happiness seeing its master. But, it is not happiness; it is the sign of love that is related to its nafs. Its sensational acts of receiving its master are acts of play that is seen among the puppies. A dog remains a puppy to its master throughout its life. Sometimes, pet beast brings hunted creature in the house in half dead condition, as it would bring it for its offspring.

Therefore, the waves of brain are translated and felt as fear, sorrow, joy, and so forth by nafs and ruh. And, the nafs and the ruh inspire the brain to act, according to their inherent natures.

Humans are highly developed creatures. A human brain helps by producing the hormones. For example, the brain produces a hormone that helps to withstand the fear by balancing the body and releasing extra energy. The formation of the hormone takes time. For example, when one is flying by an aircraft, the fear of flying is suppressed after about an hour. So, the hormone needs about an hour to form and suppress the fear.

### **8b. Nafs acting directly**

In cases, nafs can act without deliberate help of brain.

A brain needs some time to assess the danger, when a danger may be coming fast. So, a nafs is designed with some information and trained to act on minimum data of the nerves. It causes fixed reflex action by using the nodal points of the nervous system. Assessment of the brain follows, when the fear is felt according to the degree and necessary action is taken.

In such case, a nafs may not need light received by the eyes even. The nafs is a combination of unknown force fields. It may sense the emitted light of an object dangerously coming from the back and move the body instantly.

### **8c. Nafs sensing anti-creatures, like jinns**

Some force fields are interactive to the anti-matter, like gravity pulls both matter and anti-matter. A nafs is a combination of unknown force fields. Some of the force fields feel the presence of anti-creatures. So, a person may be scared in a haunted house even if he may not know that the house is haunted.

### **8d. Nafs and the Third Eye**

A nafs has an eye on the forehead—it is one of its vital points, which is not developed in the life on the Earth. The eye (vital point) will develop after death, and it will be compatible to the resurrected body. So, a resurrected human will see the angels and the anti-creatures, like the jinns.

If the third eye develops in the life on the Earth, one may see the jinns and other anti-creatures, which may be a scary affair.

In the Afterlife, the people destined to hell (galaxies of this universe) will be giants. Then, seeing the jinns and other anti-creatures will be an ordinary affair.

### **8e. Nafs and Whisper of Satan Jinni**

The nafs being a combination of unknown force fields is affected by the whisper of satan jinns. The whisper is created from the invisible anti-matter. A satan jinn whispers through the left ear. The whisper creates vibration and sensation in the nafs. The nafs has a vital point in the left chest. It passes the data of sensation in the ruh. The ruh creates vision in the virtual brain (qalb/mind).

The right hemisphere of brain may vitalize the thought. And, the left hemisphere of the brain may plan to act. If the drive of brain is not quenched by the knowledge of the brain or by the nature of the ruh or nafs, the sin may be committed.

### **8f. Nafs and Sexual Drive**

The nafs inspires the brain in question of reproduction as well. The center of the nafs is below the navel. So, it is powerful on the sexual arousal.

If a brain has religious knowledge, and it is habituated to act on the knowledge, it will enlighten the nafs correctly. An enlightened nafs will enhance

the fear of God and seize the illegal sexual arousal. But a person with corrupted teachings will not be scared, and he will commit the illegal sexual act.

### 8g. **Nafs build Character**

The general education seems to be a major factor that guides a human. But, the knowledge impacts his talking mainly, not his acts. For instance, a man of knowledge will always say that the telling of a lie is bad, whereas he may have the habit of telling lies.

It is not knowledge but character that guides a person. The nature of nafs aided by physical abilities produce the character of a person. The education may change the color of the character, but not its basic form.

“Prophet (pbuh) said: If somebody says that a hill has been moved, I may believe; but I will never believe, if somebody says that the character (nature) of a person has changed”

[Hadith]

The character cannot be changed, because the nafs cannot be changed. Allah has created a nafs with designed force fields (elementary souls / ruhhs) that are almost unchangeable. For example, to neutralize and change the Weak Nuclear Force Field, one needs a temperature of  $10^{15}$  degree K.

However, strong Faith on Allah and religious knowledge can make a difference. When we learn a

new thing, new nerve cells are produced in our brains. For example, if I learn, “There is no God but Allah”, it will create new nerve cells in my brain to store this information. If I use this ideology to decide my actions, it will store the data in different parts of the brain and will create nervous connections with many other parts. The more I will use the ideology, the stronger will be connections. A time will come when this ideology will be my primary deciding factor—it being the source of strongest electric pulses in my brain. Thereby, it may neutralize a plan of misdeed. Therefore, a pious man despite having a tyrant and arrogant nafs may remain good.

#### **8h. Nafs and Self-restraint**

A nafs has vital points on head, forehead, chest, palms, backbone, and feet, but its center is below the navel where it is most sensitive and powerful.

If a brain has planned a misdeed and driving the person in doing it, then the nafs is equally responsible, because it has excited the brain to plan the misdeed with its nature, urges and emotions.

As a human grows, the drive of nafs gradually increases toward good or bad. For example, if a person is fat, and he is not hungry, his brain has no technical reason to plan for eating. But still, the man may be eating, because he never controls his nafs, so it has become greedy.

So, the sawm (fasting) and self-restrain purify a nafs.

## 9. The Resurrection and the Nafs

The nafs is given in the mother's womb during or soon after the conception (fertilization). The nafs takes shape as the zygote forms and the baby grows.

When human body is like a tiny ball (microscopic) in the mother's womb, the nafs is like a tiny ball; when the human body is like a leech, the nafs is like a leech; when the human body is like a baby, the nafs is like a baby.

The nafs continue taking shape throughout one's earthly life. A human body is like a mold, and the nafs is like a cast in the mother's womb and on the Earth.

The nafs is a combination of unknown force fields (elementary souls / ruhhs). It takes shape and gets imprinted with the data of physical development. It becomes a program of formation. With this nafs and a set of DNA Molecules (46), a person can be re-created.

“What! When we die and become dust  
that is a return far! We already know  
how much of them the earth takes  
away; with Us is a record guarding”

[Al Quran 50: 3–4]

Above Verses talk about two things, with which a human will be recreated. One is “something that the earth does not take away” and another is “record guarding”.

What is the thing that the earth does not take away?

It is the DNA Double Helix Molecules. A DNA Molecule survives in nature for several hundred thousand years. A Set of DNA Double Helix (46) is enough to recreate a human. Some scientists think that one day they would be able to re-create dinosaurs with their DNA Double Helix still available in their fossilized eggs.

However, only DNA Molecules cannot reproduce a human; his nafs is necessary. If a zygote is put in a test tube in the most favorable condition, it multiplies and forms a lump of flesh; it does not form a perfect physique.

There is nothing special in a mother's womb. In the mother's womb, Allah helps to shape up a human physique, because the nafs is raw at that time, it cannot help DNA to shape up the body.

“He it is Who shapes you in the wombs as He pleases. There is no god but He, the Exalted in Might, the Wise.” [Al Quran3:6]

But the nafs of a created human is designed. It will assist DNA to form the body at the time of resurrection.

A human will be recreated with the same DNA he had on the Earth so that he cannot deny him to be the same person who committed the sins.

On the Day of Resurrection, a Set of DNA Double Helix Molecules (46) collected from the

remains of his body will be attached to his Nafs. It will form the cell, and will multiply it in the way it developed in the mother's womb. The body will develop by absorbing supplied matter in the surroundings. So, a human will resurrect like the growing of a plant on the earth, but in a high speed.

“It is He Who sends the winds like heralds of glad tidings going before His mercy, when they have carried the heavy-laden clouds. We drive them to a land that is dead, make rain to descend thereon, and produce every kind of harvest therewith. Thus, We shall raise up the dead so that you may remember.” [Al Quran 7:57]

Indeed, the cell of a plant and the cell of an animal are almost similar—if a plant can grow on the earth, why an animal cannot?

Every person will be resurrected with their figure prints intact:

Yes, We are able to put together in perfect order the very tips of his fingers.” [Al Qur'an, 75:4]



FIGURE 6.11: The Very Tip of the Finger

To resurrect a human with the same fingerprint, his Genome Code is necessary. A DNA molecule survives in the nature for hundreds of thousands of years. The Earth is our dwelling place and protecting storage:

“It is He Who hath produced you from a Nafs Single (GUT Force +); here is a place of dwelling and storage; We detail Our signs for people who understand.” [Al Quran 6:98]

Allah preserves at least a Set of one’s DNA Molecules (46).

The jobs of 98% DNA is unknown and thought as Junk DNA. It may so happen that it can resurrect the body by producing a cell from the suitable matter, supplied in the surroundings.

However, the brain of a resurrected human will suffer memory loss. A nafs or a ruh does not preserve the data of memory.

Therefore, if one is re-created with one’s Nafs and DNA, one should suffer memory loss. Nafs and DNA re-create a human with the brain of a newborn baby, as his/her brain was just before the first cry. So, the memory of each human is collected and preserved in the “Record Guarding”:

“What! When we die and become dust that is a return far! We already know

how much of them the earth takes  
away; With Us is a Record Guarding”  
[Al Quran 50: 3–4]

The “Record Guarding”, mentioned in above Verse, is not the “Amal-Nama”. It is another record, preserved in the Guarded Disc (Lawh-Mahfuz). The record includes complete brain-data that is collected every night when a person sleeps:

“It is He who dies you (*yatawaffakum*) by night, and He knows what you committed by the day. Then He raises you up therein so that is fulfilled term specified. In the end, unto Him will be your return. Then He will show you what you used to do.” [Al Quran 6:60]

“...and He knows what you committed by the day...” means that He collects the brain-data. It is like the video record of each day (sleep to sleep), which will be shown to the person on the Day of Judgment, as the Verse says: “*In the end, unto Him will be your return. Then He will show you what you used to do.*” However, Allah would not disclose the secrets of one person to another. He is Merciful and Honored; He protects one’s honor.

The angels collect the data and deposit it in the Server of the Command Station of the First Sky. From the Command Station, the data go to Lawh-Mahfuz via Sidratul-Muntaha and get preserved in one’s file.

Just after Resurrection, humans will lose their senses, when each human will be fed with the brain-data directly into his brain. It will be like the feeding of data into a hard disc of a computer. When a person will regain his sense, he will know himself; he will remember everything of his earthly life.

## 10. The Need of Guarding

Now we can deal with the Verses under discussion:

“He is the Irresistible from above over His worshippers; and He sends over you guarding (angels). At length, when comes to anyone of you the death—take him Our messengers (angels); and they never fail in their duty. Then are men returned unto Allah, their Protector, the Reality. Is not His the Command? And He is the Swiftest in taking account.” [Al Quran 6: 61–62]

The above Verses narrate that Allah persistently guards His worshipper by angels. The angels guard his nafs. The reasons of guarding the nafs are discussed below:

A human body is like a mold and his nafs is like a cast during his formation and development in the mother’s womb and on the Earth. The nafs gets designed and programmed with the process of shaping up of the human body. It preserves the

program of formation and becomes a drive to resurrect a body.

Till death, a nafs remains in the mode of development. A nafs develops and picks up the job of sustaining the body. Earthly pain and struggle develop the nafs. The more it is punished, the stronger it is. It is created to face the toughness of the Universe (Samawaat).

A nafs gets fixed and hardened at the time of death. In subsequent phase of virtual reality (in Illiyyin or Sijjin, discussed in Chapter-83), it grows bigger and stronger, but its design and program do not change, because its mold is dead and decomposed in the grave.

We know how much temperature is needed to dissolve electro-magnetic force field with strong nuclear force field; it is  $10^{28}$  degree Kelvin. One may achieve that temperature, if one can compact the whole universe into the state of Big Bang. A nafs too is a combination of force fields (these force fields are not yet discovered). So, once a nafs gets hardened at the time of death, it goes beyond the scope of change.

A nafs can be designed and programmed in a physical human body only, through the passage of time. It is as such by design—the force fields of a human nafs are conscious, and they have the affinity to take the shape of the body it is sustaining. And they being the force fields get imprinted with the information of development (Allah has power over all things).

“By the Nafs, and the proportion and order given to it, and its enlightenment as to its wrong and its right; truly he succeeds that purifies it and fails that corrupts it!” [Al Quran 91: 7-10]

How a nafs gets corrupted?

On the Earth, a nafs remains in the mode of change. Therefore, it is very important in which mold it is being molded. If it is molded in a human body, it gets programmed to shape up a human body during resurrection. But, if it is molded in a devil-human body, it gets programmed to shape up a devil-human body. A human with such nafs will resurrect in a devil-human shape.

The satan jinns possess the Pagans (idolaters) and get connected. A satan jinn being created from anti-matter cannot connect a human’s baryonic body directly. So, it connects itself through his nafs—the nafs works as a protector and connector.

The jinni exposes himself inside a human body from his (jinni’s) dimension of space and gets connected through the human’s nafs. Thus, the human gets possessed by the jinni.

Then the joined body may be called a devil-human body. If we could see anti-matter, we would see many humans merged with the satan jinns.

In course of time, the nafs gets designed to hold a human body (baryonic-matter-body) and a jinn body (anti-matter-body) together. The nafs becomes a program of forming a devil-human body.

During the resurrection, the nafs will form the body in devil-human shape with developed facilities to connect a body of anti-matter. The jinn will possess him at that time too.

The person will be a multi-dimensional being. The dimension of the jinns will be open to him. He will be able to interact with the other jinns as well.

After the resurrection, he will be hopeless of going to the Jannaat seeing his devil-human body. The Quran says:

“Even if the wrongdoers had all that there is on earth and as much more would they offer it for ransom from the pain of the Penalty on the Day of Judgment! But something will confront them from God, which they could never have counted upon—and will become apparent to them satan, what they earned, and will surround them what they used to mock!”

[Al Quran 39: 47–48]

“But those who have earned the satan will have a reward like the satan. Ignominy will cover their (faces); no defender will they have from God. Their faces will be covered, as it were with pieces from the depth of the darkness of night. They are companions of the Fire; they will abide therein!”[Al Quran 10:27]

“One day will He gather them all together: "O ye assembly of Jinns! Certainly, you have many of the mankind." Their friends among men will say: "Our Lord! Some of us were enjoyed by others, but we reached our term, which Thou did appoint for us." He will say: "The Fire be your dwelling-place; you will dwell therein forever, except as God wills." For thy Lord is full of wisdom and knowledge.” [Al Quran 6:128]

After death, the nafs of a human, destined to hell, is kept in the Sijjin. In the Sijjin, its design and program do not change, but it grows very big, extremely strong, and efficient, because a person destined to the hell has to be a tough giant. Allah is Merciful; He grows one in the direction one moves.

After death, the nafs of the people destined to Jannaat are kept in Illiyin. In Illiyin, some may have correction through punishments (it is known as the punishment of the grave).

By the Day of Resurrection, each nafs will become fully matured in one direction—either to hold a devil-human body in the violence of Samawaat (this universe), or to hold a handsome / beautiful human body in the peace of Jannaat (another universe / paradise).

On the Day of Resurrection, all souls (nafses) will be released. By then, a nafs will be so developed

that it will form its physical body with supplied matter and a Set of DNA Double Helix Molecules (46). Mother's womb will not be required at that time. That is the real birth of a human being, because after that birth he will never be able to die or sleep. He will never change. He will live forever. Woe to those who will resurrect with devil shaped body, recognizable by their marks only!

If the nafs of a person becomes powerful enough to help his resurrection, his material body cannot be destroyed. If he falls into a process of destruction, his nafs will continue regenerating his body-parts from the available cells.

After the Judgment, a person with devil-human body will be a forgotten vicegerent of God over a whole galaxy of this Universe (the galaxies are the objects of hell). The Universe (Samawaat) is basically created for the jinns. He will be able to interact with the jinns living in the anti-galaxies.

“Do ye then see what ye throw out (sperms that carry DNA material)? Is it ye who create it, or are We the Creators? We have decreed Death to be your common lot, and We are not to be frustrated from changing your forms and creating you in that ye know not.

And ye certainly know already the first form of creation; why then do ye not celebrate His praises?”

[Al Quran 56: 58-62]

What happens if one is pious, and Allah is riding on him in most of the times? Does he get the shape of Allah?

To answer, he does not take up the shape of Allah, because he is already in the shape of Allah. Allah creates a human in His (Allah's) own image. If Allah rides on a human, his nafs learns to bear the light of Allah. On the Earth, humans are weak and immature; they are in the process of development. So, Allah may immerse in a nafs very lightly; humans are not yet fit to bear Him. But, after the Resurrection, humans will be fully matured. So, on the Land of Final Judgment, many will be shining like the Sun due to their nafs being lighted by the light of Allah.

However, a faint glow is at times visible on the faces of pious Muslims. It is evident in the arrival terminal of an airport, because one whole-heartedly calls Allah in a flight. After the arrival, the frequency of remembrance reduces, and the light gradually reduces.

Say: "Who rescues you from the dark recesses of land and sea when you call upon Him in humility and silent terror: If He only delivers us from these, we shall truly show our gratitude." Say: "Allah rescues you from these and all distresses—and yet you worship false gods!"

Say: "He has power to send calamities on you from above and below, or to cover you with confusion in party strife giving you a taste of mutual vengeance each from the other." See how variously We explain the Verses that they may understand.

But your people reject this, though it is the truth. Say: "Not mine is the responsibility for arranging your affairs; for every message is a limit of time, and soon shall you know it."

**Section-11** of chapter-6 [Verse 68-70]: **Negative discussion about the Verses**

When you see men engaged in vain discourse about Our Verses, turn away from them unless they turn to a different theme. If satan ever makes you forget, then after recollection, sit not you in the company of those who do wrong. On their account no responsibility falls on the righteous but is to remind them that they may fear Allah.

Leave alone those who take their religion to be mere play and amusement and are deceived by the life of this world. But proclaim this that every soul delivers itself to ruin by its own acts; it will find for itself no protector or intercessor except Allah. If it offered every ransom, none will be accepted.

Such is those who deliver themselves to the ruin by their own acts. They will have for drink boiling water and for punishment one most grievous; for they persisted in rejecting Allah.

**Section-12** of Chapter-6 [Verse 71-73]: **Allah's Guidance is the Guidance**

Say: "Shall we indeed call on others besides Allah—the things that can do us neither good nor harm—and turn on our heels after receiving guidance from Allah like one whom the satans have made into a fool, wandering bewildered through

the earth; his friends calling, "come to us," guiding him to the Path."

Say: "Allah's guidance is the guidance, and we have been directed to submit ourselves to the Lord of the Universes, to establish regular prayers, and to fear Allah; for it is to Him that we shall be gathered together. It is He Who created the Skies and Lands in truth, and on the day He will say: "Be"—and it is! His word is the truth. His will be the dominion on the day the trumpet will be blown. All-Knower of the unseen and the seen; He is the wise, Well Acquainted."

### **Section-13 of Chapter-6 [Verse 74-94]: Home of Ummah and the Mother of Cities (Main Discussion)**

Lo! Abraham said to his father, Azar: "Do you take idols for gods? Verily, I see you and your people in manifest error."

Thus, did We show Abraham the Power and the Laws of the Skies and Lands that he be one of those who have Faith with certainty.

When the night covered him over, He saw a star. He said: "This is my Lord." But when it set, he said: "I love not those that set." When he saw the moon rising in splendor, he said: "This is my Lord." But when the moon set, he said: "Unless my Lord guides me, I shall surely be among those who go astray." When he saw the sun rising in splendor, he said: "This is my Lord; this is the greatest." But when the sun set, he said: "O my people! I am indeed free from your (guilt) of giving partners to Allah. For me, I have set my face firmly and truly towards Him Who created the Skies and Lands, and never shall I give partners to Allah."

His people disputed with him. He said: "You to dispute with me about Allah when He has guided me? I fear

not those whom you associate with Him in worship, unless my Lord wills. My Lord comprehends in His knowledge all things. Will you not be admonished? And how should I fear those whom you associate in worship with Allah when you fear not to give partners to Allah without any warrant having been given to you? Which of two parties have more right to security, if you but know? It is those who believe and confuse not their beliefs with wrong that are in security, for they are on guidance."

That was the reasoning about Us, which We gave to Abraham against his people.

We raise whom We will degree after degree. For your Lord is full of wisdom and knowledge.

### **Remarks:**

Abraham understood the presence of one God by seeing the creations. One does not have to be a scientist to understand that the sun, the moon, and the stars are under a unitary command. The creation is fine-tuned. A person searching Truth should follow Abraham and reject the Falsehood, as Abraham rejected and challenged the people worshipping idols.

Here Abraham is discussed because the Home of Ummah is related to him.

We gave him Isaac and Jacob—all We guided. And before him We guided Noah and among his progeny David, Solomon, Job, Joseph, Moses, and Aaron—thus, do We reward those who do good. And Zakariya and John, and Jesus and Elias—all in the ranks of the righteous.

And Ismail and Elisha and Jonas and Lot—and to all  
We gave favour above the nations.

And to their fathers, and progeny, and brethren—We  
chose them, and We guided them to a straight Way.

This is the Guidance of Allah. He gives that guidance  
to whom He pleases of His worshippers.

If they were to join other gods with Him, all that they  
did would be vain for them. These were the men to whom  
We gave the Book, and Authority, and Prophet-hood.

If these reject them, behold, We shall entrust their  
charge to a new people who reject them not.

They are those whom Allah had guided.

So, follow the guidance.

Say: "No reward for this do I ask of you. This is no  
less than a message for the nations." No just estimate of  
Allah do they make when they say: "Nothing does Allah send  
down to man."

Say: "Who then sent down the Book which Moses  
brought—a light and guidance to men? But you make it into  
sheets for show while you conceal much. Therein were you  
taught that which you knew not—neither you, nor your  
fathers."

Say: "Allah". Then leave them to plunge in vain  
discourse and trifling.

And this is a Book (Al Quran), which We have sent  
down, bringing blessings and confirming which came before  
it, that you may warn the Mother of Cities and all around her.  
Those who believe in the hereafter believe in this, and they  
are constant in guarding their Prayers.

## **Remarks:**

The last Paragraph of above Verses talks about the ‘Mother of Cities’ after describing Abraham’s activities in Babylon.

In Holy Bible, Babylon is considered as the first city of mankind. The city-life began from Babylon, and it should be considered as the Mother of the Cities.

The Verses point out the targeted people of the Quran as the people around the Mother of the Cities. It is said in the following Verse also:

“Thus, have We sent by inspiration to thee an Arabic Qur'an that thou may warn the Mother of Cities and all around her; and warn of the Day of Assembly, of which there is no doubt—some will be in the Jannaat, and some in the Blazing Fire.”

[Al Quran 42:7]

Babylon flourished in modern day Iraq. The people around Babylon were Arabs and Iranian people. The Quran targeted their territories as the Home of Ummah. It is called “Darussalam” / “Home of Peace”.

Therefore, the Home of Ummah extends from Morocco to Himalaya. It is the land of Arab and Iranian people. Islam was preached in this area by Sahabah, Tabieen and Tabe-Tabieen through the Way of Struggle and Warfare.

The People of Greater Iran became Muslims, and the Arabs of the Middle East and Africa became Muslims rapidly by the grace of Allah. Their territories form the main Muslim World of today.

However, the concept of home (Home of Ummah) falls in the strategy of preaching only. Islam was destined to be preached in the Home through the way of Furqan (struggle and warfare), and the Muttaqin were guided accordingly. They defeated the Taghuts, starting from the Emperors to the opposing Tribal Chiefs, and people accepted Islam safely and rapidly.

Historians even do not know when and how the people of Eastern Iran (now Afghanistan) became Muslims. The same happened throughout the whole Home of Ummah. As if they were waiting for Sahabah to arrive. Actually, Allah changes the heart. He established the Home of Ummah from Morocco to the Pamirs.

But, as a Religion, the Islam is for the whole World. It was destined to be preached beyond the Home by Sufis and Daees (Preachers) through the Way of Dawah (Invitation). In reality, we find that the Islam was preached among Turkic, Mongol, Indian, and Indonesian People by Sufis and Daees.

“If it had been thy Lord's will, they  
would all have believed,- all who are  
on Earth! wilt thou then compel  
mankind, against their will, to believe!

No soul can believe, except by the will of God, and He will place doubt on those who will not understand.”

[Al Quran 10:99-100]

The Preaching strategy beyond the Home of Ummah is discussed in the Introduction of Part-2.

## **1. Babylon, the Mother of Cities**

The Mesopotamian civilization is over 7000 years old. It is considered as the Cradle of Civilization. The Great Empires of ancient Mesopotamia were Sumer, Elam, Akkad, Mari, Babylon and Assyria. The Sumerian flourished about 3000 BCE. It is the earliest known civilization of the world.

Babylon is central to Mesopotamia. According to Holy Bible, it is the first city of mankind:

“Now the whole earth had one language and the same words. And as people migrated from the east, they found a plain in the land of Shinar and settled there. And they said to one another, “Come, let us make bricks and burn them thoroughly.” And they had brick for stone, and bitumen for mortar. Then they said, “Come, let us build ourselves a city and a tower with its top in the heavens, and let us make a name for ourselves, lest we be dispersed over the face of the whole

earth.” And the Lord came down to see the city and the tower, which the children of man had built...”

– Genesis 11:1-32, Holy Bible (ESV)

Therefore, Babylon can be called “Mother of the Cities”.

However, some may argue in favor of Makkah. Makkah is called Bakkah as well in the Quran and Holy Bible. The area is considered holy from the ancient times. Such place cannot be called Mother of Cities—cities are full of *Khabiss*.

Makkah was never a capital of an Emperor or a King. It was never a Center of Islamic Caliphate as well. Makkah can be considered as the Spiritual Center of the Islamic World.

Moreover, when Hagerah (Mother of Ismail) settled in Makkah, there was nobody to give her a pot of water. But when Abraham came out from Babylon, it was the Capital of Nimrod. So, as a city, Babylon is older than Makkah.

If it is asked to a historian, which city should be called “Mother of the Cities”, he will answer, “Babylon”. The Quran too does not mean something different than that of the common understanding.

So, “Mother of the Cities” is “Babylon”.

The remains of Babylon are located 64 km north of Kufa where Hazrat Ali moved the Headquarters of Islamic Caliphate.

## 2. The Extensions of Babylon

Many Emperors ruled from Babylon. It became the Capital of Alexander after Greeks captured the area.

### 2a. Seleucia

Alexander died in 323 BCE and his Empire was divided. His General Seleucus-1 founded Seleucid Empire that ruled Eastern Part of Alexander's Empire from 312 BCE to 63 BCE.

Seleucus-1 built a new city, Seleucia, and shifted his Capital from Babylon. Seleucia stood on the west bank of River Tigris.

Seleucia was close to Babylon. It was actually an extension of Babylon. After the Capital was shifted to Seleucia, Babylon's importance declined sharply, and it was eventually depopulated.

*“Seleucus founded a number of new cities during his reign, including Antioch (300 BC) and in particular Seleucia on the Tigris (305 BC), the new capital of the Seleucid Empire, a foundation that eventually depopulated Babylon.”*

– Wikipedia, The Free Encyclopedia.

At the time of Jesus Christ, the City of Babylon was standing, but nobody was living there for a couple of hundred years.

## **2b. Ctesiphon**

Ctesiphon was founded in 120s BCE as a site for Military Camp. It became capital of Parthian Empire in 58 BCE. The City was capital of Persian Empire for over 800 (eight hundred) years, until the Muslim conquest in 651 CE.

The ancient city is located 20 miles south-east of Baghdad on the eastern bank of Tigris. It was one of the greatest cities of the world and gradually merged with Seleucia on the opposite side of the River.

The city fell into decay and was depopulated by the end of the eighth century. Baghdad took its place.

## **2c. Kufa**

Kufa was founded in 639 CE by Hadrat Omar. It is located on the Bank of Euphrates 40 miles south of ancient Babylon. It was final seat of Rashidun Caliph.

Many Sahabah shifted in Kufa and used to call the city Home. Hazrat Omar settled some Jews as well, who were once evicted from Khaibar.

Caliph Omar who did not allow to construct a building in Madinah founded the City of Kufa. Most likely, he did it because of the instruction Prophet Muhammad (pbuh). Later Hadrat Ali shifted the Capital of Islamic Caliphate to Kufa, most likely, following the order of the Prophet (pbuh). And there was reason for which Sahabah used to call Kufa, Home. The area is central to the Islamic Ummah from

the time of Abraham and, most likely, it is the center of Darussalam (Home of Peace), mentioned in the Quran:

“But God doth call to the Home of Peace: He doth guide whom He pleaseth to a way that is straight.”

[Al Quran 10:25]

Kufa gradually became the center of Quranic Interpretation and Islamic Jurisprudence.

The Islamic Sufism too flourished in the surrounding area, including Baghdad.

**Note:**

During Caliph Omar nobody dared to construct a building in Madinah though they had money at that time. The buildings mushroomed when Hazrat Uthman became Caliph. He was a soft hearted man.

**2d. Baghdad**

Baghdad, a city about 55 miles north of Babylon, was center of Islamic Caliphate for about 500 years.

After the fall of the Umayyads, the Abbasids shifted the Capital to the Area of Babylon. They chose a site at the north of Sassanid Capital, Ctesiphon. The area was known as Baghdad. Baghdad is a Persian name. Some Iranians were living there.

Caliph Al-Mansur commissioned the construction of the City on 30 July 762. He named the city Madinat al-Salaam (City of Peace). This was the official name on coins, weights, and other official usage, although the common people continued to use the old name, Baghdad.

In 1258 AD, after about 500 years, Baghdad was destroyed by Halagu Khan, and the Caliphate ended [half a Day for Abbasids].

## 2e. General Area Babylon

One can draw a circle around Babylon, Ctesiphon, Seleucia, and Baghdad with a diameter of only about 40 miles.



FIGURE 6.12: General Area Babylon

Kufa is not falling in the circle but the City too is located 40 miles South of Ancient Babylon.

The Cities progressively superseded each other throughout history. These Cities are actually extensions of ancient Babylon, the Mother of Cities.

Islam had to return to Babylon with Force, because Abraham was evicted from there—that is how it seems Allah works.

Today in 2020, the evolution of Islam clearly indicates that the Quran means “Babylon” by “Mother of Cities” that includes surrounding areas such as Baghdad at the north, and Kufa at the south.

### **3. The Curse on Babylon**

Babylon is considered in Holy Bible as a Cursed City. Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) too foretold the death of Imam Hussain near a Cursed Place (Imam Hussain died in Karbala, 35 miles west of Babylon).

Islamic Caliphate did not move exactly into Babylon because the City was destined never to be built again, as it is said in the following Verse of Holy Bible:

“Behold, I will stir up the Medes  
against them, who will not regard  
silver; and as for gold, they will not  
delight in it. Also their bows will dash  
the young men to pieces, and they will  
have no pity on the fruit of the womb;  
their eye will not spare children. And  
Babylon, the glory of the kingdoms,  
the beauty of the Chaldeans’ pride,  
will be as when God overthrew Sodom

and Gomorrah. It will never be  
inhabited, nor will it be settled from  
generation to generation; nor will the  
Arabian pitch tents there, nor will the  
shepherds make their sheepfolds there”  
[Isaiah 13: 17-20]

Many Verses of Holy Bible paint Babylon negatively.

In and around 597 BCE, the Jewish Land was captured by Babylonian King Nebuchadnezzar. He destroyed the First Temple and forced the Jews to move to Babylon. The captivity ended in 538 BCE, after about 48 years. Persian Emperor Cyrus the Great captured Babylon and permitted them to return. Cyrus permitted them to rebuild the Temple. In Holy Bible, Cyrus the Great is called a Messiah.

“Cyrus is my anointed king.  
I take hold of his right hand.  
I give him the power to bring nations  
under his control.  
I help him strip kings of their power  
...” – Isaiah 45:1, Holy Bible

Prophet Isaiah and Jeremiah foresaw Babylonian Captivity. And Prophet Daniel suffered the exile. In the Books of Isaiah, Jeremiah and Daniel Babylon is painted negatively.

But that was a matter of the past. Jesus told about the coming light.

“She who is at Babylon, who is likewise chosen, sends you greetings, and so does Mark, my son. Greet one another with the kiss of love. Peace to all of you who are in Christ.”

– 1 Peter 5:13-14, Holy Bible (ESV)

In above Verse “*chosen*” means “Jews” and “*likewise chosen*” means “Muslims”

In the Verse, “*Peace to all of you who are in Christ*” means Peace on the followers of Islam. All Prophets including Moses, Jesus and Muhammad (pbuh) are in Islam.

However, the Books of Jesus too talk about Babylon negatively. But, in his Books, the city is called “Mystery Babylon the Great” or “Babylon the Great” or “Daughter of Babylon” or “the Great City”.

The same pseudonyms were used in the Old Testament too:

“O Daughter of Babylon, doomed to be destroyed, blessed shall he be who repays you with what you have done to us!” – Psalm 137:8, Holy Bible (ESV)

Holy Bible continued with the pseudonyms at the time of Jesus.

By these pseudonyms, the Books do not mean ancient Babylon or its extensions Seleucia, Ctesiphon, Kufa or Baghdad”.

What the Holy Bible means by Daughter of Babylon / Mystery Babylon the Great / the Great City is indicated in the following Verses:

“Then one of the seven angels who had the seven bowls came and said to me, “Come, I will show you the judgment of the Great Prostitute who is seated on many waters, with whom the kings of the earth have committed sexual immorality, and with the wine of whose sexual immorality the dwellers on earth have become drunk.”

And he carried me away in the Spirit into a wilderness, and I saw a woman sitting on a scarlet beast that was full of blasphemous names, and it had seven heads and ten horns. The woman was arrayed in purple and scarlet, and adorned with gold and jewels and pearls, holding in her hand a golden cup full of abominations and the impurities of her sexual immorality. And on her forehead was written a name of ‘Mystery Babylon the Great’, mother of prostitutes and of earth's abominations.”

– Revelation 17: 1-5, Holy Bible

The above Verses describe two visions of Prophet:

In the first vision, described in the first paragraph, the Prophet saw seven angels were

preparing to punish a Great Prostitute sitting in huge water body. According to the experts of Bible Prophecy, a “Woman” means a “Priestly System”. Then, the “Great Prostitute” should mean a “Corrupted School of Thought”. Their concepts lead people to pass gay law, support dating culture and free sex, and teach the theory of Biological Evolution to children who may take it as law.

In the Second vision, described in the Second Paragraph, Prophet saw a Woman who is the Mother of the Prostitute. The Mother (Priestly System) preached the concept of “All Forgiven”. Thus, she spoiled her daughters.

In the vision, the Woman (Mother of all Prostitutes) was arrayed in purple and scarlet, which indicates the Woman as Vatican, because Bishops and Cardinals wear Purple and Scarlet dresses.

Therefore, the 'Mother of all Prostitutes' is Vatican. It is the Mystery Babylon the Great.



FIGURE.6.13: Dress of Bishops and Cardinals

Therefore “Mystery Babylon the Great”, or “Babylon the Great”, or “The Great City” is “Vatican / Rome”. It is not the ancient Babylon of Iraq.

In Holy Bible, there are several Books of Prophecy. The Book of Revelation is the last. It is a Book of the New Testament. So, confusion about the time is less in the Revelation.

Jesus foresaw that the people living around ancient Babylon will leave Paganism and will accept Islam. He foresaw that they will rule from general area of Babylon (from Kufa and Baghdad). And he has sent good wishes for them through his Companion, as it is narrated in the following Verse:

“She who is at Babylon, who is likewise chosen, sends you greetings, and so does Mark, my son. Greet one another with the kiss of love. Peace to all of you who are in Christ.”

– 1 Peter 5:13-14, Holy Bible (ESV)

Peter was one of 12 Companions (Hawariyyun) of Jesus Christ. Above Verses are last lines of his First letter. In his time, nobody was living in Babylon. He must have heard from Jesus Christ that a Religious Babylon will rise in the general area of the ancient Babylon.

Fall of Kufa is also foretold in Holy Bible, as it fell with the martyrdom of Imam Husayn, his family and followers.

However, Abbasids, ruling from Baghdad, were not bad (but they were Sultan Caliphs).

#### **4. People around Mother of the Cities (Babylon)**

Who are peoples around Babylon (Mother of Cities)? They are Arabs and the People of Greater Iran. From ancient times, these races were interactive to Babylon. It was their center of gravity.

“Thus, have We sent by inspiration to thee an Arabic Qur'an that thou may warn the Mother of Cities and all around her, and warn (them) of the Day of Assembly, of which there is no doubt: some will be in the Jannaat, and some in the Blazing Fire.”

[Al Quran 42:7]

The Quran is in Arabic, but Iranian people do not speak Arabic. So, the next Verse is revealed:

“If Allah had so willed, He could have made them a single people, but He admits whom He will to His Mercy, and the wrong-doers will have no protector nor helper.” [Al Quran 42:8]

Many words are common in Persian and Arabic languages. One that starts learning Persian starts to understand Arabic.

So, the Home of Ummah (Home of Peace / Darussalam) is the lands of these races, which extends from Morocco to the Pamirs.

Who can be more wicked than one who invents a lie against Allah or says, “I have received inspiration,” when he has received none, or who says, “I can reveal the like of what Allah has revealed”? And if you could but see when the wicked are in agonies of death! The angels stretch forth their hands: ‘Yield up your souls. This day shall you receive your reward, a penalty of shame, for that you used to tell lies against Allah and scornfully to reject of His signs. And behold, you come to Us bare and alone, as We created you for the first time; you have left behind you all which We bestowed on you—we see not with you your intercessors whom you thought to be partners in your affairs. So now, all relations between you have been cut off, and all that you used to claim has vanished from you.’

#### **Section-14 of Chapter-6 [Verse 95-106]: Who is Allah**

It is Allah Who causes the seed-grain and the date-stone to split and sprout; He brings forth the living from the dead, and it is He Who brings forth the dead from the living—that is Allah; then how are you deluded away from the truth?

#### **Remarks:**

In above Verses, the “Food Cycle” is mentioned as the ‘Cycle of Life and Death’. Our foods, except salt and water, are products of the Food Cycle.

The basis of Food Cycle is the plants that capture and store the energy of the Sun. Only plants can store the energy of Sun.

Therefore, plants infuse energy in the Food Cycle and initiate the Food Cycle. So, the Verse starts

with the narration of plants: “It is Allah Who causes the seed-grain and the date-stone to split and sprout;”

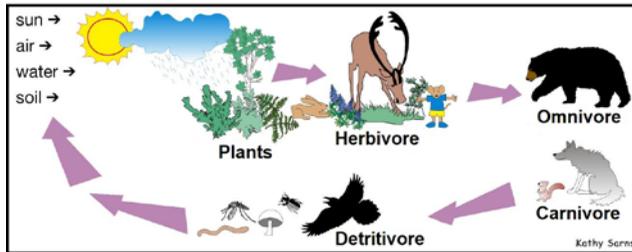


FIGURE 6.14: Food Cycle

The plants are eaten by herbivores and omnivores,- the herbivores and omnivores are eaten by carnivores,- after the omnivores and carnivores die, they are eaten by detritivores (worms and insects mainly),- the detritivores produce nutrients after they die; and the nutrients are absorbed by the plants. It is a cycle of life and death.

So, the Verse says: “He brings forth the living from the dead, and it is He Who brings forth the dead from the living.”

The Cycle must run for the survival of life on the Earth:

In the deserts, the roots of grass, and the seeds fallen in the sandy earth dry out completely in the long hot season, extending even about eight months. No water remains in their cells; all actions of protoplasm stop. In scientific term, they are dead. But, when humidity increases and a little rain falls, they turn alive just by absorbing the water.

In some ice-cold polar regions, the flies come suddenly for about a month, where there was no fly within hundreds of miles. For a long time, it was a mystery, as from where the flies were coming? Then it was found out that when cold increases, a few flies take shelter in the cracks and corners of the wooden ceiling, tables, cots, etc. In long nine to ten months, they completely dry out and become extremely fragile. Scientifically, they are dead. But when humidity and temperature increase for a couple of month, they turn alive just by absorbing moisture, reproduce, and some of them return to the long death sleep.

In some countries, when water recedes in the dry season, some fishes go into the wet soil. When the soil turn hard, the fishes dry out and be like the hard sticks; there remain no sign of life in them. But when water comes after about nine months, the fishes turn alive and reproduce to fill up the lake.

Some fishes lay eggs that survive in the dry earth for months together.

He it is that cleave the day-break; He makes the night for rest and tranquility, and the sun and moon for the reckoning. Such is the measuring of the All-Mighty, the All-Knowing.

**Remarks:**

Allah cleaves the day-break by rotating the Earth. The change of day and night, and the tranquility and rest of night create the sense of time. We reckon the days by the sun and the moon.

The size, mass, orbit and speed of the Moon are precisely designed. It is revolving around the earth constantly. Its appearance changes from thin to round and back in a perfect order. The common people are using it as a natural calendar from the age-old time. The Lunar Year is counted from the Migration (Hizrat) of Prophet Muhammad (pbuh).

However, people use the sun as well, for the reckoning. The Solar Year is counted from the birth of Jesus Christ.

The Jewish calendar is considered to be lunar calendar. But, it is adjusted in the cycles of 19 years, to match the solar calendar, by adding an additional month every three years or so. Thus, in some of the years, they have 13 months. It facilitates cultivation, harvesting and observation of festivals, but it has made their calendar baseless (neither lunar, nor solar) and has made the Biblical History doubtful in respect of time. The transposing is forbidden in the Quran:

“The number of months in the sight of God is twelve—so ordained by Him the day He created the Skies and Lands... Verily the transposing (the months) is an addition to Unbelief: the Unbelievers are led to wrong thereby: for they make it lawful one year and forbidden another year in order to adjust the number of months forbidden by God and make such forbidden ones lawful. The evil of their course seems

pleasing to them. But God guides not those who reject Faith.”

[Al Quran 9:36-37]

It is He Who sets the stars for you that you may guide yourselves with their help through the dark spaces of land and sea; We detail Our Signs for people who know.

### **Remarks:**

The Previous Verses talked about the reckoning of time by the Sun and the Moon. This Verse is talking about the direction finding at night by the stars. These are related. If one knows the exact date and time, one can find out the direction by using Star Chart, Ephemeris, Theodolite, and Clock. The sailors are using Sextants for thousands of years.

At the same time, Allah has set easily identifiable stars to guide the common people moving through featureless land at night. He has set the constellations as well, to find out the stars.

The people commonly use the Pole Star. If one extends the rotational axis of the Earth to the celestial sphere, the Pole Star (Polaris) will be just on the axis. The star is so far away that the whole orbit of the Earth around the Sun is a point in relation to its distance. So, the Pole Star is viewed in the North throughout the year.

The latitude of a point on the surface of the Earth is same as the altitude (angle of elevation) of the Pole Star, and from the North Pole it is straight on the head.

It is He Who has produced you from a Soul Single (*Nafsin-Wahidatin*) so a place of residing and a storage; We have explained in detail Our revelations for people who understand.

### **Remarks:**

The Universe is created from 'a Soul Single' (*Nafsin-Wahidatin*). It is discussed in Section-1 of Chapter-1.

The above Verse is talking about the Earth as a place of residing. But where is the storage?

Is it the grave?

There are detritivores in the grave to eat the dead body and turn it into nutrients? It does not look like the storage. Preserving a dead body is a difficult job:

*"Cryonics is a technique used to store a person's body at an extremely low temperature with the hope of one day reviving them. This technique is being performed today, but the technology behind it is still in its infancy.*

*It's currently illegal to perform cryonic suspension on someone who is still alive. Those who wish to be cryogenically frozen must first be pronounced legally dead – which means their heart has stopped beating. Though, if they're dead, how can they ever be revived?*

*According to companies who perform the procedure, 'legally dead' is not the same as 'totally dead.' Total death, they claim, is the point at which all brain function ceases. They claim that the*

*difference is based on the fact that some cellular brain function remains even after the heart has stopped beating. Cryonics preserves some of that cell function so that, at least theoretically, the person can be brought back to life at a later date.” - zidbits.com*



FIGURE 6.15: Cryonic Suspension

The process of Cryonic Suspension is not easy. If the body is not correctly cooled, all cells get destroyed. It is not just putting a body in the liquid nitrogen.

It is costly as well. It can cost up to \$200,000 to have a body preserved.

*“For the more frugal optimist, a mere \$60,000 will preserve your brain with an option known as neuro-suspension. They hope the technology in the future will allow them to clone or regenerate the rest of the body.” - zidbits.com*

Now think about the Creator of genome code. What He may do to preserve a dead human with a view to recreate him with his finger print intact?

The Verses of the Quran disclose several points that indicate the way of His preservation. The points are discussed below.

### **1. Favorable Pairs:**

The following Verse talks about favorable Pairs:

“He created you from a Nafs Single  
(*Nafsin-Wahidatin* / GUT Force +);  
then created favorable Pairs (DNA  
Double Helix) ...” [Al Quran 39:6]

In the Quran, “Pairs” means “DNA Double Helix”. It is discussed in Section-3 of Chapter-31 (Part-3) and in Section-10 of this Chapter.

Every living creature is created from the double helix DNA Molecule. The genome code is the program of life. It forms, maintains, and reproduces a creature, as guided by Allah.

When the angel of death collects the soul (nafs) of a person, he may collect the genome (a Set of 46 DNA Double Helix) too, and may put it in a store.

Alternatively, the genome may be left to remain in the earth. A DNA Molecule survives in the nature for hundreds of thousands of years. The genome code of each individual is unique, and Allah

knows precise location of everything. So, the earth itself may be the store.

The DNA Molecules are extremely smart molecules. They make a man old and finally kill him. So, the DNA Molecules may prepare for the death. They may make some arrangement so that their grouping is not lost, and they can be used for resurrecting the creature, such as they may make the wall of the nucleus strong before or soon after the death of the person—the way they make the cell-walls strong in cases of some single cell prokaryotic creatures to survive in a hostile environment.

When the nature of resurrection will evolve in the Universe and the nourishing substances will be supplied, all Sets of DNA Molecules (trillions) will start reviving. But those will form the lumps of flesh. Only the Sets of DNA Molecules that will be entangled to the nafs will form the perfect bodies.

The lumps of flesh will be rotten and produce pus and nutrients. It will be eaten by the resurrected animals and by the hell dwelling humans.

Any creature that has nafs will resurrect. However, other animals will not be taken to the Jannaat. They will find their places in the Samawaat (this Universe). They will be robust and adjusted to the nature of their abodes.

The genome code of each individual is there in the Master Design as well (discussed in Section-9 of this Chapter). But a human needs to be created from a Set of DNA Molecules (23 Pairs) he had on the Earth; otherwise he may deny being him to be the same person once the punishment is proclaimed.

## 2. Memory Data

A person may be created with a Set of DNA Double Helix (46) he had on the Earth, but he will not be the same man if his memory is not returned.

We do not have any device to read the brain data, so scientists suggest preserving the whole brain with a view to regenerate other parts of body when technology would develop.

*“Neuropreservation is a type of cryonic procedure where the brain is preserved with the intention of future resuscitation and regrowth of a healthy body around the brain”*

– Wikipedia, the Free Encyclopedia.

Allah can read the brain. He has invested many angels. They collect and preserve the memory data in the computer of God (CC). Each human has a file in the CC. The hard disc of the CC is called Lawh-Mahfuz.

“What! When we die and become dust  
that is a return far! We already know  
how much of them the earth takes  
away; With Us is a record guarding”

[Al Quran 50: 3–4]

The memory-data is collected every night when a person sleeps:

“It is He who dies you (*yatawaffakum*) by night, and He knows what you committed by the day. Then He raises you up therein so that is fulfilled term specified. In the end, unto Him will be your return. Then He will show you what you used to do.” [Al Quran 6:60]

The memory of a resurrected person will be returned from the record, directly into his brain, like the feeding of data into the hard disc of a computer.

In cases, the record may also be used as evidence for the Judgment.

### **3. Ruhh and Nafs**

Allah collects the nafs of a dead person and preserves it in Illiyin or Sijjin.

A human cannot be re-created without his nafs (soul). A zygote kept in the test-tube in the most favorable condition produces a lump of flesh. It cannot form a perfect human body.

There is nothing special in a mother’s womb. Allah helps the formation of a baby in a mother’s womb. In the process of the formation, the nafs of the baby gets programmed to resurrect him/her from the genome and suitable matter, if supplied.

“He created you from a Soul Single (GUT Force+); then created favorable Pairs (DNA Double Helix); and he sent down for you of the cattle eight

Pairs; He creates you in the wombs of  
your mothers—creation after  
creation—three tortures (on Allah).  
That Allah is your Lord; for Him is the  
dominion. There is no god but He.  
Then how are you turned away?”  
[Al Quran 39:6]

It is likely that a human body works as a better field of action for Allah. So, He helps the formation of a body in a womb, but not in a test-tube.

After the initial formation of a body, the nafs gets programmed. So, intimate help of Allah will not be required for resurrection. A nafs will form its physical body when it will be attached to a Set of DNA Double Helix (46) collected from the remains of his dead body, and the nourishing substances will be supplied. The nafs and DNAs will form the cell and develop the body in the sequence it developed in the mother's womb, but in a high speed.

Therefore, there are three stores to preserve a human.

- a. The Earth for the DNA Double Helix.
- b. The Lawh-Mahfuz for the memory-data.
- c. Illiyin or Sijjin for the nafs.

It is He Who sends down rain from the Skies. With it We produce vegetation of all kinds. From some, We produce green, out of which We produce grain, heaped up. Out of the date-palm and its sheaths clusters of dates hanging low and near. And gardens of grapes, and olives, and pomegranates—each similar yet different; look at their fruits when they begin

to bear and the ripeness thereof. Verily, in these things there are signs for people who believe.

Yet they join the Jinns as partners in worship with Allah, though He has created them, and they attribute falsely having no knowledge sons and daughters to Him—Praise and glory be to Him above what they attribute to Him!

To Him is due the primal origin of the Skies and Lands (Universe)—how can He have a son when He has no consort? He created all things, and He has full knowledge of all things.

### **Remarks:**

The Universe is expanding. Therefore, yesterday the Universe was smaller than today. In the day before yesterday, it was even smaller. In this way, the Universe was very small at the beginning.

The modern discoveries suggest that the Universe originated from a super-hot, super-dense Singularity (Big Bang). As the Universe expanded, it cooled, and radiation turned into matter.

The Universe has evolved from a small unitary state that could be a ‘simple point’ or a ‘tiny false vacuum under extreme inflation’ or a ‘Singularity / Big Bang’. Whatever was the case, it could not be divided.

The Universe is not divided now as well. The Universe is a unitary entity. So, its sustainer and evolver has to be one.

The Universe runs as a unit with inter-active laws, sustained by a single Sustainer and Evolver. There is no room for another Sustainer and Evolver.

If God had a wife, she would be an entity like God. But, the evolution of the universe proves that only one God is acting here. There is no indication of a second one like Him. He has no consort.

And, if there were a Baby-God, he could not exist inside the Father-God in unborn state. He would need a part of a universe, as his abode, from where the Father-God would have had to remove Himself. Ultimately, the universe would be divided.

*“To Him is due the primal origin of the Skies and Lands (Universe)—how can He have a son when He has no consort?”*

That is Allah, your Lord; there is no god but He, the Creator of all things—then worship you Him.

And He is on everything a Lawyer (wakilun). No vision can grasp Him, but His grasp is over all vision. He is above all comprehension yet is acquainted with all things.

### **Remarks:**

“*Wakil*” means “Lawyer”. A wakil disposes a matter as per laws.

All forces, subatomic particles, atoms, and molecules act according to their inherent characters and designs. Allah designed them on the Day of Law (Yawm-id-Deen). So, they act in fixed patterns that we call natural laws.

Allah is in the Arsh beyond the universe. He has extended the right hand of His nafs (soul) into this universe. The hand consists of force fields that sustain

the objects. The Sufis say that the whole universe is on His palm.

The force fields of the hand are designed at His will to act in fixed patterns that we view as natural laws. For example, the gravitational force field is a force field of His nafs, which is extended through His hands, sustaining the universes.

Sub-atomic particles, atoms, molecules, bits of free forces and energies, which originated from the Nafsin-Wahidatin (GUT Force+), are held in the hand. They act and move on His direction and program, expressed as destiny. He disposes the affairs.

The living creatures are also controlled by Him. The players of two Football Teams may look free, but the game is monitored by Allah and His angels. The fate of every game is decided. Even the best player of the world cannot give guarantee of his penalty kick. His muscles are controlled by electric pulses, coming from the brain. The electric pulses are held in the force fields that are constituents of the hands of His nafs. The will of Allah gets preference in the materialization of an act. Even a man does not think without His will.

The above Verses inform: *“And He is on everything a Wakilun. No vision can grasp Him, but His grasp is over all vision. He is above all comprehension yet is acquainted with all things.”*

"Now have come to you, from your Lord, proofs; if any will see, it will be for his own soul; if any will be blind, it will be to his own—I am not to watch over your doings."

Thus, We explain variously the Verses so that they may say, "You have taught diligently," and that We may make the matter clear to those who know.

Follow what you are taught by inspiration from your Lord—there is no god but He—and turn aside from those who join gods with Allah.

### **Section-15 of Chapter-6 [Verse 107-114]: Concluding Segment-2**

If it had been Allah's Plan, they would not have taken false gods—but We made you not one to watch over their doings, nor you are set over them to dispose of their affairs.

Revile not you those whom they call upon besides Allah, lest they out of spite revile Allah in their ignorance. Thus, have We made alluring to each people its own doings. In the end will they return to their Lord, and We shall then tell them the truth of all that they did.

They swear their strongest oaths by Allah that if a sign came to them, by it they would believe. Say: "Certainly signs are in the power of Allah." But what will make you realize that if signs came, they will not believe—We shall turn to their hearts and their eyes even as they refused to believe in this in the first instance; We shall leave them in their trespasses to wander in distraction.

Even if We did send unto them angels, and the dead did speak unto them, and We gathered together all things before their very eyes, they are not the ones to believe unless it is in Allah's Plan. But most of them ignore.

Likewise, did We make for every Messenger an enemy—evil ones among men and Jinns inspiring each other with flowery discourses by way of deception. If your Lord

had so planned, they would not have done it. So, leave them and their inventions alone. To such let the hearts of those incline who have no faith in the hereafter. Let them delight in it and let them earn from it what they may.

Say: "Shall I seek for judge other than Allah when He it is Who has sent unto you the Book explained in detail?" They know full well to whom We have given the Book that it has been sent down from your Lord in truth—never be then of those who doubt.

### **Segment-3**

#### **The people that counter the preaching of Islam; their ways and counter-measures**

#### **Section-16 of Chapter-6 [Verse 115-122]: A Check to the Wicked Leaders**

The word of your Lord does find its fulfillment in truth and in justice; none can change His words—for He is the one Who hears and knows all.

Were you to follow the common run of those on earth they will lead you away from the Way of Allah; they follow nothing but conjecture; they do nothing but lie. Your Lord knows best who strays from His way; He knows best who they are that receive His guidance.

So, eat of on which Allah's name has been pronounced, if you have faith in His Verses. Why should you not eat of on which Allah's name has been pronounced when He has explained to you in detail what is forbidden to you except under compulsion of necessity?

But many do mislead by their appetites, unchecked by knowledge. Thy Lord knows best those who transgress—

eschew all sin, open or secret; those who earn sin will get due recompense for their "earnings".

Eat of not on which Allah's name has not been pronounced—that would be impiety. But the satans ever inspire their friends to contend with you; if you were to obey them, you would indeed be Pagans.

Can he, who was dead, to whom We gave life and a Light whereby he can walk among men, be like him who is in the depths of darkness, from which he can never come out? Thus, to those without faith their own deeds seem pleasing.

### **Remarks:**

The above Verses are related to “Wicked Leader” discussed in the next Section. The “Wicked Leaders” includes un-Islamic political leaders (Taghuts); wrong religious leaders, cult leaders, and the leaders of their supporting organizations.

Some of them devise rituals and set wrongful prohibitions. These wrongful rituals and prohibitions help them to gain control over the people.

They occasionally feed masses on charity. The rule is tougher in their case. In day-to-day life, if one has gone to a hotel run by a Jew or a Christian who might not have uttered any name while slaughtering / killing the animal, it is halal according to Chapter-5.

“This day are (all) things good and pure made lawful unto you. The food of the People of the Book is lawful unto you and yours is lawful unto them. (Lawful unto you in marriage)

are (not only) chaste women who are believers, but chaste women among the People of the Book...”

[Al Quran 5:5]

But, if a Wicked Leader is feeding a mass of people, it has to be checked on whose name the animals are sacrificed. If the animals were not slaughtered in the name of Allah, it cannot be eaten, as the above Verses say: *Eat of not on which Allah's name has not been pronounced—that would be impiety*. Here, the meat is not declared haram, but eating such meat is declared as impiety.

Actually, the Verses are not about the slaughtering of animals. Any food, such as a piece of bread, provided by Wicked Leader who is countering Islam by his deeds and thoughts should not be eaten, because he has not provided the food in the name of Allah.

However, if a Wicked Leader feeds the people for a cause that is not anti-Islamic, such as his father might have died, and he has slaughtered the animals in the name of Allah for his salvation, then it is halal as said above: *Why should you not eat of on which Allah's name has been pronounced, when He has explained to you in detail what is forbidden to you except under compulsion of necessity?*

Here, the cause decides. For example, if an anti-Islamic person is feeding for his anti-Islamic cause, and the people under him have slaughtered the animals in the name of Allah, it is impious to eat, because it is not provided in the name of Allah.

For the distressed poor, the ritually impure (haram) foods are halal under compulsion of necessity. But the foods provided by the Wicked Leaders, national and international, are forbidden in all cases, as the above Verses say: *But many do mislead by their appetites, unchecked by knowledge. Thy Lord knows best those who transgress—eschew all sin, open or secret; those who earn sin will get due recompense for their "earnings"*. So, a Muslim refugee cannot take aid from a person or organization that is countering Islam.

### **Section-17 of Chapter-6 [Verse 123-135]: Wicked Leader and Possession by Satan Jinns**

Thus, have We placed leaders in every town its wicked men, to plot therein; but they only plot against their own souls, and they perceive it not. When there comes to them a sign, they say: "We shall not believe until we receive one like those received by Allah's apostles." Allah knows best where to carry out His mission. Soon will the wicked be overtaken by humiliation before Allah—and a severe punishment for all their plots.

Those whom Allah wills to guide, He opens their breast to Islam. Those whom He wills to leave straying, He makes their breast close and constricted, as if they had to climb up to the Skies. Thus, does Allah (heap) the penalty on those who refuse to believe.

This is the way of your Lord leading straight: We have detailed the signs for those who receive admonition; for them will be a home of peace in the presence of their Lord; He will be their Friend because they practiced.

One day He will gather them all together: "O you assembly of Jinns! Certainly, you have many of the mankind."

Their friends among men will say: "Our Lord! Some of us were enjoyed by others (jinns), and we reached our term, which You did appoint for us."

He will say: "The Fire be your dwelling-place; you will dwell therein forever, except as Allah wills." For your Lord is full of wisdom and knowledge.

Thus, do We make the wrongdoers turn to each other because of what they earn.

"O you assembly of Jinns and men, came there not unto you apostles from among you, setting forth unto you My signs and warning you of the meeting of this day of yours?"

They (Jinns) will say, "We have seen (them) adopt ourselves and deluded them (in) the life of the World, and they bear witness against themselves that they rejected faith."

### **Remarks:**

On the Earth, the Wicked Leaders get possessed by the satan jinns. Thus, a jinni can enjoy the life of a Wicked Leader, as the above Verses say: *"Their friends among men will say: "Our Lord! Some of us were enjoyed by others (jinns), and we reached our term, which You did appoint for us"."*

A satan jinni can enjoy foods, amenities, and women of the possessed human. Such possession occurs in case of idol worshippers. But the Verses say that the Wicked Leaders too, get possessed by the satan jinns. The satan jinns grow right on them because of the helps they provide.

The possession by a jinni cannot be sensed, because it does not create any abnormal feeling in the possessed human. The human behave normally.

He cannot see the jinni, mounting on him, because he cannot see anti-matter (the jinns are created from anti-matter).

So, the Wicked Leader remains unaware of himself.

The nafs (soul) of the Wicked Leader gradually gets deformed because of the possession by the jinni. At the time of death, his nafs gets fixed. He will resurrect with a robust devil-human body. His resurrected body will be more suitable as a ride of a jinni. He will be able to communicate with them.

So, the Verses say: *"...and they bear witness against themselves (physical changes) that they rejected faith."*

They will end up in the violent galaxies of this Universe (Samawaat). Basically, the Universe is the domain of the jinns. The original home of humans is Jannaat. So, the Verses say: *One day He will gather them all together: "O you assembly of Jinns! Certainly, you have many of the mankind."*

Each major galaxy of this universe will get a human, because humans are the vicegerents of God. However, the vicegerents, delegated in this universe (Samawaat), will be forgotten. They will be in pain.

“Such as took their religion to be mere amusement and play and were deceived by the life of the world, that day shall We forget them as they

forgot the meeting of this day of theirs,  
and as they were wont to reject Our  
Signs.” [Al Quran 7:51]

“Taste ye then; for ye forgot the  
Meeting of this Day of yours and We  
too will forget you; taste ye the Penalty  
of Eternity for your deeds!”

[Al Quran 32:14]

This is because your Lord would not destroy the towns for their wrongdoing—to all are degrees according to their deeds; for your Lord is not unmindful of anything that they do. Thy Lord is Self-Sufficient, full of Mercy. If it were His will, He could destroy you, and in your place appoint whom He wills as your successors, even as He raised you up from the posterity of other people.

All that has been promised unto you will come to pass; nor can you frustrate it.

Say: "O my people! Do whatever you can, I will do; soon will you know who it is whose end will be in the hereafter—certain it is that the wrong-doers will not prosper."

### **Remarks:**

Both the universes (Samawaat and Jannaat) are to be filled up. Many are needed for the Samawaat (this universe / hell). So, the towns led by Wicked Leaders will not be destroyed. They lead to the hell.

These are the towns that are full of bars, casinos, discotheques and the facilities for idols worshipping. In these towns, free sex and gay-culture

are accepted ways of life, and the freedom of humanity prevails. The satan jinns are mounted on many of them enjoying these facilities. Thus, many of them will be resurrected in devil-human shape and will find their homes in the objects of hell (galaxies of this Universe / Samawaat).

### **Section-18 of Chapter-6 [Verse 136-145]: Taboo, Wrongful Sacrifice, and Halal Food**

And they assign to Allah a share of the tilth and cattle, which He has created, and they say: "This is for Allah, according to their claim, and this is for our partners." But the share of their "partners" reaches not Allah, while the share of Allah reaches their "partners"! Evil is the way they judge! Even so in the eyes of most of the Pagans their "partners" made alluring the slaughter of their children in order to lead them to their own destruction and cause confusion in their religion. If Allah had willed, they would not have done so. But leave alone them and their inventions.

And they say that such and such cattle and crops are forbidden and none should eat of them except those whom we allow, and there are cattle forbidden to yoke or burden, and cattle on which the name of Allah is not pronounced—inventions against Allah's name. Soon will He requite them for their inventions.

They say: "What is in the wombs of such and such cattle is specially reserved for our men and forbidden to our women; but if it is dead, then all have share therein. For their attribution, He will soon punish them; for He is full of wisdom and knowledge.

Lost are those who killed their children foolishly without knowledge; and forbid food, which Allah has provided for them, inventing against Allah. They have indeed gone astray and heeded no guidance.

It is He Who produces gardens with trellises and without, and dates, and tilth with produce of all kinds, and olives, and pomegranates similar and different. Eat of their fruit in their season, but render the dues that are proper on the day that the harvest is gathered; but waste not by excess; for Allah loves not the wasters.

Of the cattle are some for burden and some for meat. Eat what Allah has provided for you and follow not the footsteps of Satan; for he is to you an avowed enemy.

Eight pairs (eight DNA Double Helix): of the sheep two (one DNA Double Helix from male, one DNA Double Helix from female), and of the goats two (one DNA Double Helix from male, one DNA Double Helix from female)—say, has He forbidden the two males, or the two females, or which the wombs of the two females enclose? Tell me with knowledge if you are truthful.

Of camels two (one DNA Double Helix from male, one DNA Double Helix from female), and of oxen two (one DNA Double Helix from male, one DNA Double Helix from female)—say, has He forbidden the two males, or the two females, or which the wombs of the two females enclose? Were you present when Allah ordered you such a thing? But who does more wrong than one who invents a lie against Allah to lead astray men without knowledge? For Allah guides not people who do wrong.

## Remarks:

The above Verses talk about “Pairs”. By “Pairs”, the Quran means “DNA Double Helix” in many Verses. It is discussed in Section-10 of this Chapter, and in Section-3 of Chapter-31 (Part-3).

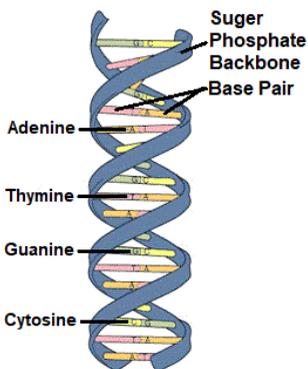


FIGURE 6.16: DNA Double Helix

The proteins are made by the same genes from the same amino acids. Then, why meat of some cattle should be forbidden for women?

Say: "I find not in the message received by me by inspiration any forbidden to be eaten by one who wishes to eat it, unless it be dead meat, or blood poured forth, or the flesh of swine—for it is an abomination—or what is impious, on which a name has been invoked other than Allah's. But if a person is forced by necessity, without willful disobedience, nor transgressing due limits, thy Lord is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful."

## **Segment-4**

### **Islam is the Religion of Abraham**

#### **Section-19 of Chapter-6 [Verse 146-147]: Difference of the Quran in respect of Halal Food**

For those who followed the Jewish Law, We forbade every with undivided hoof, and We forbade them that fat of the ox and the sheep, except what adheres to their backs or their entrails or is mixed up with a bone—this in recompense for their willful disobedience; for We are True. If they accuse you of falsehood, say: "Your Lord is full of mercy all-embracing, but from people in guilt never will His wrath be turned back".

#### **Remarks:**

For Jews, many animals were made haram. They can only eat the animals with divided hoof, and that chew the cud. Fat was made haram for them, except the fat mentioned in the Verses under discussion.

For Muslims, fat is made halal, and the restriction related to hoof and chewing cud is lifted. All animals are halal for Muslims, except swine.

The Jews can eat the fish with fins and scales only, which live in the river and sea. Muslims can eat all marine animals that they find good.

**Section-20** of Chapter-6 [Verse 148-149]: **Difference in the Idea of Determinism**

Those who give partners will say: "If Allah had wished, we should not have given partners to Him, nor would our fathers; nor should we have had any taboos." So, did their ancestors argue falsely, until they tasted of Our wrath. Say: "Have you any knowledge? If so, produce it before us—you follow nothing but conjecture; you do nothing but lie."

Say: "With Allah is the argument that reaches home; if it had been His will, He could indeed have guided you all."

**Remarks:**

Even after repeated prayers, Allah may not change one's fate relating to one's day-to-day life. But if one wants to be a Believer, Allah changes one's fate proactively. So, calling people to the Truth stands justified. It is discussed in Section-16 of Chapter-4.

**Section-21** of Chapter-6 [Verse 150-153]: **In basic matters the Quran is like the Holy Bible**

Say: "Bring forward your witnesses to prove that Allah did forbid so and so."

If they bring such witnesses, be not you among them. Nor follow you the vain desires of such as treat Our Verses as falsehoods and such as believe not in the hereafter; for they hold others as equal with their Guardian-Lord.

Say: "Come, I will rehearse what Allah has prohibited you from:

Join not anything as equal with Him.

Be good to your parents.

Kill not your children on a plea of want—We provide sustenance for you and for them.

Come not nigh to shameful deeds whether open or secret.

Take not life, which Allah has made sacred, except by way of justice and law.

Thus, does He command you that you may learn wisdom.”

And (Say): “Come not near to the orphan's property except to improve it until he attain the age of full strength. Give measure and weight with justice—no burden do We place on any soul but that which it can bear. Whenever you speak, speak justly even if a near relative is concerned. And fulfill the covenant of Allah.

Thus, does He command you that you may remember.”

“Verily, this is My way, leading straight—follow it; follow not paths; they will scatter you about from His path.”

“Thus, does He command you that you may be righteous.”

### **Section-22 of Chapter-6 [Verse 154-157]: The Quran is a clear and Independent Book.**

Moreover, We gave Moses the Book, completing to those who would do right, and explaining all things in detail, and a guide and a mercy that they might believe in the meeting with their Lord.

And this is a Book (Al Quran), which We have revealed as a blessing. So, follow it and fear so that you may receive mercy. Lest you should say: "The Book was sent

down to two peoples before us, and for our part, we remained unacquainted with all that they learned by assiduous study."

Or lest you should say: "If the Book had only been sent down to us, we should have followed its guidance better than they."

Now then has come unto you a clear (Book) from your Lord, and a guide, and a mercy (Al Quran)—then who could do more wrong than one who rejects Allah's Verses, and turns away from there?

In good time shall We requite those who turn away from Our Verses with a dreadful penalty for their turning away.

### **Remarks:**

The Quran is a complete and independent Book. Though the Quran is revealed in the Religion of Abraham, it does not depend on the other Books in case of guiding its followers. It is revealed in a different Branch, the Branch of Ishmael.

For a Muslim, the Quran is enough, but a Proper Christian has to follow the Torah as well.

### **Section-23 of Chapter-6 [Verse 158-164]: Those that divide the Religion**

Are they waiting to see if the angels come to them, or your Lord, or certain of the signs of your Lord! The day that certain of the signs of your Lord do come, no good will it do to a soul to believe in them then if it believed not before, nor earned righteousness through its Faith.

Say: "Wait ye, we too are waiting."

As for those who divide their religion and break up into sects, you have no part in them in the least. Their affair is with Allah. He will in the end tell them the truth of all that they did.

He that does good shall have ten times as much to his credit. He that does evil shall only be recompensed according to his evil. No wrong shall be done unto them.

**Remarks:**

The Verses forbid dividing the Religion of Abraham. The Religion of Abraham is Islam. Jews and Christians too are to follow Islam, and the Quran is the latest Book in the Religion of Abraham.

Say: "Verily, my Lord has guided me to a Way that is straight, a religion of right, the Path by Abraham, the true in Faith, and he joined not gods with Allah."

Say: "Truly, my prayer and my service of sacrifice, my life and my death are for Allah, the Cherisher of the Universes—no partner He has. This am I commanded, and I am the first of those who bow to His will."

Say: "Shall I seek for Cherisher other than Allah, when He is the Cherisher of all things? Every soul draws the recompense of its acts on none but itself; no bearer of burdens can bear the burden of another. Your goal in the end is towards Allah; He will tell you the truth of the things wherein you disputed."

**Section-24 of Chapter-6 [Verse 165]: Some people are given more just to Test.**

It is He Who has made you vicegerents of the Lands.

He has raised you in ranks, some above others, that He may try you in the gifts He has given you; for your Lord is quick in punishment, yet He is indeed Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful.

**Remarks:**

The lands are ultimate products of the Universe. There are many lands in this Universe; the lands are held in the galaxies. The Sun has eight lands (planets)—the Earth is the best. The Jannaat (another universe) too is full of lands, suitable for human habitation.

But how does it look if there is none to live in these lands! Allah has created many living creatures. Humans are on the top of those. Allah has selected them as His vicegerents on the lands. They are perfect land-living creatures. The lands are very important to them.

But who gets what? So, Allah has put all humans on the Testing Ground (the Earth). Life on the Earth is a test. He has raised some people above others so that He may try in the gifts He has given.

Finally, the rewarded ones will live in the lands of the Jannaat forever. And the punished ones will live in the lands of the Samawaat (this Universe / hell) forever. Then each will have an independent

domain—no human will ever be under another human.

## Chapter 7 [Al A'raf THE HEIGHTS]

**Aim of the Chapter:** The final call before declaring all out war against the Pagans (Idolaters)

### Introduction

Previous Chapter (Chapter-6) talked about the wicket leaders and the actions to be taken against them. This Chapter talks about the satan jinns and the actions to be taken to counter them.

The Chapter also talks about the People of Hud, Salih, Lut and Shuaib. Their towns flourished in Arabia. So, they are referred to the People of Makkah and Madinah. These two towns (Makkah and Madinah) would face the same fate, if they had rejected the Truth.

The Surah justifies the Path of Furqan (establishing Islam in the way of struggle and warfare) and declares the highest reward for Muttaqin.

### Structure of the Surah

The Surah can be divided in three Segments:

The First Segment advises Prophet (pbuh) to warn the people and instruct the Muslims to follow the Quran. The Segment describes the harm caused by satan jinns and narrates the punishment of afterlife. It talks about the rewards as well.

The Second Segment discusses the history of Divine Revelations in the progeny of Noah. It invites to accept the religion.

The Third Segment contains some instructions to Preach.

Following are the Segments and Sections:

## **Flowchart of the Tafsir**

### **Segment 1: Reward and Punishment**

Section 1 [Verse 1-3]: Warn and Follow

Section 2 [Verse 4-10]: Many were Punished.

Section 3 [Verse 11-25]: The Jinn (Main Discussion)

Section 4 [Verse 26-33]: The Ways to defeat Invisible Satan

Section 5 [Verse 34-41]: Moving out of the Hell

Section 6 [Verse 42-45]: Living in the Jannaat

Section 7 [Verse 46-49]: Men in the Araf

Section 8 [Verse 50-53]: Living in the Hell

Section 9 [Verse 54-58]: Rule of Allah

### **Segment 2: History of the Divine Revelations in the Progeny of Noah**

Section 10 [Verse 59-102]: Noah, Hud, Salih, Lut, Shuaib  
Failed

Section 11 [Verse 103-137]: Pharaoh and his Chiefs

Section 12 [Verse 138-147]: Moses gets the Torah

Section 13 [Verse 148-153]: People inventing cow-god

Section 14 [Verse 154-159]: Muhammad (pbuh) in Torah

Section 15 [Verse 160-161]: Twelve Tribes

Section 16 [Verse 162-168]: Punishment

Section 17 [Verse 169-171]: Bring Torah into Remembrance

### **Segment 3: Calling People to the Truth**

Section 18 [Verse 172-174]: The Affirmation

Section 19 [Verse 175-180]: Call- Guidance is in the Hand of Allah

Section 20 [Verse 181-186]: Punishment of Rejection

Section 21 [Verse 187-188]: I am but a Warner

Section 22 [Verse 189-200]: Turn away from the Ignorant

Section 23 [Verse 201-203]: Evil Thought

Section 24 [Verse 204-206]: Listen to the Quran and worship Allah

## **Tafsir of the Surah**

### **Segment 1**

#### **Reward and Punishment**

#### **Section-1 of Chapter-7 [Verse 1-3]: Warn and Follow**

Alif, Lam, Mim, Saad, Book sent down unto you, so let not your breast be narrow therefrom that you warn thereby. And a reminder unto the Believers: follow what has been sent down unto you from your Lord, and follow not any Awliya (friends, protectors, helpers and guides) besides Him. Little do you remember!

#### **Remarks:**

The Quran often censures humans, and there are tough orders to follow. But, one should never hesitate to warn with it, because these are Words of the

Creator of the universes—mankind is honored that He has sent them the Messages.

The Quran is tough to keep the humans on track (on the Straight Path). Allah is kind and sober, though He holds the absolute power; He says, “Be” and it is!

According to above Verses, a Mumin cannot accept anybody except Allah as his *wali* (a friend, protector, helper and guide). A Mumin follows the Quran. Thereby He takes Allah as his wali.

The Highest Islamic Leadership (Caliph) commands according to the Quran. The words of the *Bayah* (Oath) must be chosen carefully. If an order of the Islamic Leadership violets the instruction of the Quran, it cannot be followed.

## **Section-2 of Chapter-7 [Verse 4-10]: Many were Punished**

How many towns have We destroyed! Our punishment took them on a sudden by night, or while they were taking their midday nap. When Our punishment took them, no cry did they utter but this: "Indeed we did wrong!"

Then We shall question those to whom Our message was sent, and those by whom We sent it. And verily, We shall recount their whole story with knowledge; for We were never absent. The balance that day will be true; those whose scale will be heavy will prosper; those whose scale will be light will find their souls in perdition; for that they wrongfully treated Our Verses.

It is We Who have placed you with authority on earth and provided you therein with means for the fulfillment of your life—little thanks do you give!

### **Section-3 of Chapter-7 [Verse 11-25]: Jinn (Main Discussion)**

It is We Who created you and gave you shape; then We bade the angels bow down to Adam, and they bowed down—not so Iblis; He refused to be of those who bow down.

Said: “What prevented you from bowing down when I commanded you?”

He said: “I am better than he; You did create me from fire and him from clay.”

Said: “Get you down from this; it is not for you to be arrogant here; get out! for you are of the meanest.”

He said: “Give me respite till the day they are raised up.”

Said: “Be you among those who have respite.”

He said: “Because you have thrown me out of the way, lo! I will lie in wait for them on your Straight Way. Then will I assault them from before them and behind them, from their right and their left. Nor will you find in most of them gratitude.”

Said: “Get out from this, disgraced and expelled. If any of them follow you, hell will I fill with you all. O Adam! Dwell you and your wife in the Jannaat and enjoy as you wish, but approach not this tree, or you run into harm and transgression.”

Then began Satan to whisper suggestions to them bringing openly before their minds all their shame that was hidden from them; he said: "Your Lord only forbade you this tree let you should become angels or such beings as live forever." And he swore to them both that he was their sincere adviser. So, by deceit he brought about their fall.

When they tasted of the tree, their shame became manifest to them, and they began to sew together the leaves of the garden over their bodies. And their Lord called unto them: "Did I not forbid you that tree and tell you that Satan was an avowed enemy unto you?" They said, "Our Lord! We have wronged our own souls. If you forgive us not and bestow not upon us Thy Mercy, we shall certainly be lost."

Said: "Get you down with enmity between yourselves; on the Earth will be your dwelling place and your means of livelihood for a time;" He said, "Therein shall you live, and therein shall you die, and from it shall you be brought out."

### **Remarks:**

The Jannaat and the Samawaat are two separate universes. The Jannaat is peaceful and the Samawaat is violent by nature. Allah primarily put Adam and Eve in the Jannaat, which means that basically humans are created for the Jannaat.

The Samawaat (Skies / this Universe) is full of burning galaxies. The galaxies are objects of hell. Humans will consider this universe as hell, after the Judgment and Salvation. Each human (sinner) in the Samawaat will own a complete galaxy as a forgotten vicegerent of God. He will have many jinns and other anti-creatures in his galaxy, but not a single human.

“Allah created the ‘Skies and Lands’  
(this Universe) for just ends and in  
order that each soul may find the

recompense of what it has earned and none of them be wronged.”

[Al Quran 54:22]

“We created not the ‘Skies and Lands and all between them’ (this Universe) merely in sport. We created them not except for just ends. But most of them do not understand. Verily, the day of sorting out is the time appointed for all of them.” [Al Quran 44:38–40]

“...I will fill hell with jinns and men all together” [Al Quran 11:119]

“...I will fill hell with jinns and men all together” [Al Quran 32:13]

“...We made the satans (jinns) friends to those without faith.”

[Al Quran 7:27]

Adam and Eve were sent to this Universe (Samawaat) to suffer punishment. To put them in the Samawaat, the Earth had to be prepared through a long process and special protections from radiations and asteroids were arranged—the Earth is a special Planet.

The Jinns are an intelligent creature. Basically, they are creatures of the Samawaat (this Universe). The Samawaat is peaceful for them. They are sometimes called, “Sons of the Skies (Samawaat)”.

We need to know about the jinns because they are seriously acting against us to show us unfit to be the vicegerents of God. And they do not want us going back to the Jannaat.

In this Section, I will discuss the Jinns in details. The discussion will progress in the following sequence:

1. Two-in-One Universe
2. Jinns, a perfect Universal Creature
3. The Root of Rivalry
4. The Followers of Iblis (Chief Satan)
5. Ability of Provocation
6. Why Jinns follow Iblis to Provoke Humans
7. Conclusion
8. Summary

## **1. Two-in-One Universe**

The jinns live around us, but we cannot see them. It is commonly told that they are created from the fire. If they are created from the fire, we are supposed to feel their presence. But none could detect their existence.

We being Believers accept the idea of jinns. The idea of their existence may be a fairy tale for others, as they won't find any scientific evidence behind it. However, recent scientific ideas about matter and anti-matter indicate the possibility of their existence.

*“We now know that every particle has an anti-particle, with which it can annihilate (In case of the force carrying particles, the antiparticles are the same as the particles themselves). There could be*

*whole anti-world and anti-people made out of anti-particles. However, if you meet your anti-self, do not shake hands! You would both vanish in a great flash of light.”*

– *A Brief History of Time* by Stephen Hawking.

If the Hawking’s idea about anti-world and anti-people is scientific, then the idea of jinns is not unscientific.

The universe that possesses five times more dark matter than matter, should possess creatures made from dark matter (anti-matter is a kind of dark matter).

*“However, we know that the universe must also contain what is called dark matter, which we cannot observe directly- One piece of evidence for this dark matter comes from spiral galaxies. These are enormous pancake-shaped collections of stars and gas. We observe that they are rotating about their centers, but the rate of rotation is sufficiently high that they would fly apart if they contained only the stars and gas that we observe. There must be some unseen form of matter whose gravitational attraction is great enough to hold the galaxies together as they rotate.”*

– *Black Holes and Baby Universes* by Stephen Hawking.

*“Another piece of evidence for dark matter comes from clusters of galaxies. We observe that galaxies are not uniformly distributed throughout the space; they are gathered together in clusters that*

*range from a few galaxies to millions. Presumably, these clusters are formed because the galaxies attract each other into groups. However, we can measure the speeds at which individual galaxies are moving in these clusters. We find they are so high that the clusters would fly apart unless they were held together by gravitational attraction. The mass required is considerably greater than the masses of all the galaxies. This is the case even if we take the galaxies to have the masses required to hold themselves together as they rotate. It follows, therefore, that there must be extra dark matter present in clusters of galaxies outside the galaxies that we see.”*

– *Black Holes and Baby Universes* by Stephen Hawking.

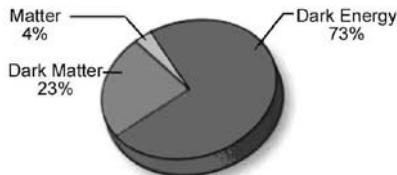


FIGURE 7.1: Percentage of Matter

The presence of dark matter is conceivable from its gravitational effect as well as the particles with which it may be made of, such as neutrinos, have measurable evidences of their existence. It is assessed that 23 percent mass of overall universe is dark matter. The Milky Way galaxy is believed to have roughly 8 times as much dark matter as ordinary matter. In most regions of the Universe dark matter

and visible matter are together, proportionately balanced with mutual gravitational attraction.

The anti-matter is a kind of dark matter. Electrons, protons, neutrons produce the atoms of matter. Similarly, anti-electrons, anti-protons, anti-neutrons produce the anti-atoms of anti-matter.

The encounter of subatomic particle and subatomic anti-particle causes both to annihilate producing photons and neutrinos. But such collision is not seen in the space normally. It is likely that they are protected by some kinds of fields.

The magnetic field of a black hole makes the falling of matter difficult into a black hole. Similarly, the force carrying subatomic particles are protected. The magnetic fields protect the electrons. The strong nuclear force fields protect the protons. And, there may be unknown force fields (not yet discovered) that protect the subatomic anti-particles.

Moreover, even if an anti-atom passes through an atom, the chances of particles and anti-particles colliding with each other remain slim, because subatomic particles and anti-particle are very small, and the space inside an atom / anti-atom is largely empty. For example, if another star system would pass through our solar system, hardly one planet would hit another planet, as the space of the solar system is largely empty.

Therefore, matter and anti-matter are invisible to each other. Every moment huge amount of dark matter is passing through our body, but we do not feel it.

The Quran says that jinns are created from the fire of hole (black hole).

“And the Jinn race We had created  
before from the fire of hole”

[Al Quran 15:27]

The Arabic word “samumi” means “hole” but it is normally translated as “scorching”, because when there is a small hole in the body it scorches. “Samumi” actually means “hole”.

In above Verse, the “hole” means the “black hole”. A black hole produces fire in the accretion disk by splitting the atoms through friction. According to Hawking’s idea, the particles gain the energy from gravitational field and join to the accretion disk. The anti-particles having opposite momentum fall down into the Black Hole. The Black Hole loses its energy then.

Therefore, a black hole is a depot of anti-matter.

So, the “fire of hole” means “anti-matter” in the above Verse.

So, the Jinns are created from anti-matter according to the above Verse.

The jinns are creatures of the anti-galaxy. If dark matter constitutes 80% of the Milky Way galaxy, then 80% of the galaxy is not visible to us. The invisible part makes the anti-galaxy.

The same gravitational force binds both galaxy and anti-galaxy. Thus, the visible objects of the galaxy and the invisible objects of the anti-galaxy

make two different dimensions with the black holes as the connectors.

The anti-galaxy houses many animals made from anti-matter. Holy Bible talks about an end time event when demons will be thrown into the abyss. Abyss means deep hole. It is a black hole. A black hole makes a gate of an anti-galaxy. If a jinni is thrown into a black hole, he returns to his dimension and needs a thousand year to come back.

The Universe (Samawaat) is a two-in-one-universe: one is for the creatures of matter (baryonic matter), and another is for the creatures of anti-matter. We are top creatures of matter, and the jinns are top creatures of anti-matter.

Probably so, Satan (Azazil) argued with God saying that he was created from the fire (fire of hole / anti-matter), and Adam was created from the earth (baryonic matter), why should he prostrate himself before Adam. It otherwise meant that a creature of matter cannot interact with a creature of anti-matter, why should he accept the leadership Adam?

Allah did not accept this argument, which means that inter-action will be possible one day.

Probably, a human has dormant system in his body and soul (nafs) to interact with a jinni. The system will be active among resurrected people destined to the hell (the galaxies of the re-created universe will be considered by humans as the objects of hell). If a resurrected human would not have the ability, Allah would not say the hell-dwellers to call the jinns, as has been narrated in the following Verse:

“One Day He will say, "Call on those whom you thought to be My partners," and they will call on them, but they will not listen to them. And We shall set a Crucible (*Mawbiqan*) between them, and the Sinful shall see the fire and apprehend that they have to fall therein—no means will they find to turn away from there.”

[Al Quran 18: 52-53]

A rotating magnetic field, associated with a spinning black hole, makes an Accretion Disk beyond the event horizon (an event horizon is a sphere surrounding a black hole where the value of escape velocity reaches to the value of the speed of light).

In above Verses, the Accretion Disc is called Crucible. The matter falling into a black hole swirls in the Crucible (rotating magnetic fields) in a tremendous speed and gets destroyed due to friction. It produces devastating heat.

A Crucible, surrounding a black hole, works as a barrier. So, it will be difficult for a jinni to come out through a black hole.

A sinner will see the devastating fire produced in the Crucible and will always be in tension that his dwelling object might fall into the intense gravitational spiral of the black hole and confront the crushing Crucible!

However, a time will come when a human will start gaining control and the jinns will be his intimate associates.

“If then they have patience, the Fire will be a home for them! And if they beg to be received into favor, into favor will they not be received. And We have destined for them intimate companions who made alluring to them what was before them and behind them, and the sentence among the previous generations of jinns and men who have passed away is proved against them; for they are utterly lost.”

[Al Quran 41: 24-25]

A human nafs (soul) is a combination of unknown Force fields. Some of the force fields may be interactive to the anti-matter, as the same gravitational force acts on both matter and anti-matter. A human developed to live in the Samawaat (this Universe) may have nafs (soul) aided vision (third eye vision) to see the jinns.

A resurrected hell-dweller will be able to interact with the Jinns.

## **2. Jinns, a perfect Universal Creature**

Allah initially settled Adam and Eve in the Jannaat. It means that He created them suitable for the Jannaat. Humans do not look like a creature meant for this fiery universe (Samawaat). It is obvious that the Earth has been made suitable for a creature like us through a long process of evolution—the Earth is a unique

planet with its oceans of water, layered atmosphere, powerful magnetic shield, and innumerable living creatures.

On the contrary, the jinns look like a creature of this Universe. In the Book of Enoch, the jinns are called “Sons of the Sky”. In the Quran and Holy Bible, the sky/skies mean this universe (Samawaat). So, the jinns are sons of this universe. This universe is their original home.

Allah is supremely intelligent Creator. If He has created the jinns for this universe, they must be extremely suitable for this universe. Their long life, food and mobility indicate that they are extremely suitable. They are perfect universal creatures. It is discussed as under:

## **2a. Long Life**

A jinni lives for thousands of years. A hundred-year-old jinni may be a child. So, they are created suitable for the nature of the anti-universe.

## **2b. Food**

It seems that the jinns are not worried for their food supply. They may even have the ability to absorb energy (anti-energy) from the nature directly—like the trees gain energy from the Sun. In addition, they may have a few kinds of foods, crude in nature, and amply available. Thus, they are not worried about their food and can persistently follow the humans to involve them in evil deeds.

In one occasion, Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) became happy on several jinns (good ones), and he prayed for their food. So, they got another two kinds, bones and hairs, which would produce their foods once they had picked those up. But bones and hairs are not their staple foods; they already had regular source of energy.

## **2c. Mobility**

They are capable to move from planet to planet, star to star, galaxy to galaxy without any space ship. Even, there are angels assigned to guard their access into the vital objects of the Skies (Samawaat / this Universe).

“It is We who have set out Fortresses in the Skies and made them fair-seeming to beholders. And We have guarded them from every satan (jinn) accursed. But any that gains a hearing by stealth is pursued by a flaming fire, bright” [Al Quran 15: 16–18]

The satan jinns sometimes sit in some places in the Sky to steal information. They steal information from the Fortresses. The Fortresses are astral objects where angels are accommodated. I have discussed the Fortresses in Section-9 of Chapter-6.

The angels are sent in groups to monitor the affairs of living creatures. A group covers a period of time (one thousand years / one thousand months). So, it is possible to know the future by hearing them

and/or by seeing their shapes—the angels have different shapes depending on their nature of job.

If a jinni can know the future from a Fortress, he informs it to some of the foretellers, or to the enemies of Truth. The jinni whispers information into a human's ear. The whisperings do not produce any sound, but it is sensed by the nafs (soul) of a human. The nafs transfers the sense into the qalb (mind / virtual brain) that in turn produces a faint thought. The brain vitalizes the thought. Adam was provoked in this way:

“Then began Satan to whisper suggestions to them, bringing openly before their minds all their shame that was hidden from them. He said, "Your Lord only forbade you this tree lest you should become angels or such beings as live forever" [Al Quran 7:20]

“But Satan whispered evil to him: he said, "O Adam! Shall I lead thee to the Tree of Eternity and to a kingdom?"  
[Al Quran 20:120]

Generally, the satan jinns instigate humans to do sinful deeds. But, if a person is doing a great evil deed, such as striving against the religion of God, preaching the creed and culture of sin, etc., they help him greatly with stolen information. However, the person does not understand it; he thinks that he being very intelligent man has predicted it. Foresight of near

future (aided by jinns in cases) helps him find his strategy. The satans help as well to unite the evil people.

“...We made the satans friends to those without faith” [Al Quran 7:27]

For example, Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) was hiding in a cave being pursued by the enemies. The pursuing enemies came near the cave, but they did not enter thinking that there was nobody inside. Now, if a satan jinni could know from the local Fortress that Prophet (pbuh) would be hiding in the cave, they would whisper it into the minds of pursuing people, and they would search the cave. Therefore, when Prophet (pbuh) took birth, the Command Stations and Fortresses of local sky was specially guarded.

“And we (jinns) reached the Sky, so we found it strongly guarded and filled with asteroids.” [Al Quran 72:2]

But, the jinns are intelligent creatures. By seeing the enhanced guarding, some of them understood that soon a Prophet would come, or a great punishment.

“And that we (jinns) sometimes used to sit in some places in the Sky to listen, so whoever now listens finds a fiery asteroid waiting for him. And we understand not whether ill is intended

to those on the Earth, or whether their Lord intends to guide them to right conduct” [Al Quran 72: 9-10]

And some of them are very intelligent. They ultimately found Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) and met him to accept Islam.

“And as for us, since we have listened to the Guidance, we have accepted it, and any who believes in his Lord has no fear either of a short (account), or of any injustice.

Amongst us are some that submit their wills (to God), and some that swerve from justice. Now those who submit their wills, they have sought out (the path) of right conduct”  
[Al Quran 72: 13-14]

### **3. Final Destination**

Through the jinns will face the Final Judgment, there is no mention of jinns going to Jannaat (another universe). Probably, the Jannaat is not suitable for them. They would be rewarded in this universe (Samawaat). The Universe is their original home. There may be better domains for them to live in, and there may be hostile domains for punishment.

However, their punishment would not be severe, because Allah has not selected them as His vicegerents, and they are not under test. Some of them

will be punished for their disobediences to God and for harming humans.

A disbelieving human, such as an idolater, will be resurrected with a devil-human body suitable to interact with a jinni. He will be a vicegerent of God over a whole galaxy, where the jinns too will live. But he will be a forgotten vicegerent; God would not accept his prayers:

“But those, who have earned the satan (jinn), will have a reward like the satan (jinn). Ignominy will cover their (faces); no defender will they have from God. Their faces will be covered, as it were with pieces from the depth of the darkness of night. They are companions of the Fire; they will abide therein!” [Al Quran 10:27]

Allah will forget the sinners:

“It will also be said: “This day We will forget you as ye forgot the meeting of this day of yours! And your abode is the fire, and no helpers have ye!”

[Al Quran 54:34]

They will suffer punishment due to the inherent nature of this universe. Allah sustains the Universe and its nature. The nature nurtures the jinns mainly; it is their domain. So “forget humans -

nurture jinns” would be the Motto of Allah in this universe. Allah does not forget in real sense.

However, Allah will make the humans robust to survive.

#### **4. The Root of Rivalry**

A long time back, the population of the jinn increased in this Universe to a great number. There were other kinds of intelligent anti-creatures as well, such as ifrit. In course of time, many of them became disobedient. Allah sent angels to destroy and suppress them. Some kinds were completely destroyed. Many jinns were killed. Iblis (Chief Satan) was a ten-year-old jinni at that time. The angels did not kill him out of pity and took him with them. He grew up and acquired knowledge. Because of his intelligence, knowledge, and prayers, he was appointed as a leader of the angels.

He used to be called Aza-zil. Probably, his duty was related to the flash of light (zil). We know from the Hadith that he was raised to the Arsh. Probably, he was the leader of angels working for Sidratul-Muntaha (the Sidratul-Muntaha is described in Section-9 of Chapter-6).

The Sidratul-Muntaha produces flashes of light while programming the angels. It is based on a huge Server (Computer). If Aza-zil was working for Sidratul-Muntaha, he has a very good knowledge on computer.

Before creating Adam, Allah declared that He was about to create His vicegerent on the land.

“Behold, thy Lord said to the angels: "I will create a vicegerent on a land..."

[Al Quran 2:30]

Allah ordered the angles to prostrate themselves before Adam:

“When I have fashioned him and breathed into him of My ruh (soul), fall ye down in obedience unto him.”

[Al Quran 15:29]

All angels fell down in obedience, but Azazil did not. He being a jinn became jealous of Adam—he was not one to recognize Adam as the Vicegerent of Allah and prostrate himself before him.

Because of his disobedience and arrogance, Allah cursed Azazil and named him Iblis.

Iblis (Chief Satan) was then determined to prove his point and take revenge. He was to prove that Adam was not suitable vicegerent of God, that Adam could be misled easily, that Adam could disobey God—that he (Iblis) was not wrong by not accepting Adam as the vicegerent of God. He asked for the scope of his tries. Allah granted him the scope. He gave him a life up to the Day of Judgment. Since then Iblis is enemy to human beings.

Iblis managed to enter the Jannaat and successfully provoked Adam and Eve to eat forbidden fruit. Allah threw them out of the Jannaat and descended on the Earth.

## **5. The Followers of Iblis (Chief Satan)**

Iblis (Chief Satan) was provoking Adam. He invests his followers for other humans. He has many followers from the jinns. A follower jinni too is called a satan. There is a dedicated jinni (satan) against each human being.

"After each human, there is a satan who is a bad jinni." [Hadith]

Iblis is the leader of all satan jinns. He has his throne in the ocean. At the end of the day, all of his followers (follower jinns) report to him.

It may be mentioned that all jinns are not followers of Iblis; there are many good and pious jinns as well.

## **6. Ability of Provocation**

The jinns are created from anti-matter. So, they cannot interact with humans directly. They have specific ways of provocation that entail Watching, Whispering and Mounting. The ways are discussed below:

### **6a. Watching**

In the Book of Enoch, the jinns are called "Watchers". It is said in the Quran too. The jinns can

see us from their dimension of space, where we do not see them.

“O ye Children of Adam! Let not Satan seduce you in the same manner as He got your parents out of the Jannaat stripping them of their raiment to expose their shame; for he and his tribe watch you from a position where you cannot see them. We made the satans friends to those without faith”

[Al Quran 7:27]

Most likely, the nature of their soul and physique, and/or the nature of the dimensions of space allow them to see us.

## **6b. Whispering**

“Say: I seek refuge with the Lord and Cherisher of Mankind, the King of Mankind, the God of Mankind from the mischief of the Whisperer, the one who withdraws, the one who whispers into the chest of Mankind from the jinns and men.” [Al Quran 114: 1-6]

How a jinni, created from anti-matter, can whisper into the chest of a human?

A human soul (nafs) is a combination of unknown force fields (elementary souls /ruhhs). One or more of these force fields are influenced by the

anti-matter (like the same gravitational force influences both matter and anti-matter). So, the whispers of anti-matter produce the waves in the nafs. The nafs transfer the sensing-waves into the ruh, through the vital points in the chest.

The ruh is a highly designed unknown force field that is given by Allah directly. The ruh is anchored in a muscle of the chest. The ruh works as the platform of the qalb (mind / virtual brain). It is discussed in Section-10 of Chapter-6.

The ruh receives the sensing-waves and produces the thought being aided by the brain through the nerves of the anchoring muscles.

The nerves and brain can act on the sensing-waves because these are the waves of the force fields, comprising the souls (ruh and nafs)

**Note:**

A human has a dormant system to see the anti-creatures. The nafs has a vital point in the forehead (third eye). It can receive the radiation of anti-particles, such as positron, in the way retina receives the photons.

The vital point can transfer the information (of anti-particles) to the pineal gland that has the ability to energize the brain accordingly. Then the brain produces the vision with the help of nerves and ruh. A man then sees with all three eyes together.

However, the third eye is kept dormant in the life on the Earth. It will be active

permanently after the resurrection when humans will see the jinns and angels as good as they see the baryonic creatures.

## **6c. Mounting**

“A man is like a horse whose back never remains vacant; either Allah is riding on him, or a satan.” [Hadith]

A satan cannot mount on a Mumin (believer of One God); he can whisper only. Allah guards the Mumins by angels, as it is said in the following verse:

“He is the Irresistible from above over His worshippers, and He sets guardians (angels) over you. At length, when death approaches one of you, Our angels take his soul (nafs), and they never fail in their duty.”

[Al Quran 6:61]

The satan jinns possess the idolaters. But, a jinni cannot possess a human directly, as he is created from anti-matter. He possesses through the human's nafs.

A jinni exposes himself inside a human body from his (jinni's) dimension of space and gets connected through the human's nafs.

But, the idolater does not understand that he is possessed. *“Say: I seek refuge with the Lord of the Space; from the mischief of created things; from the mischief of Darkness as it overspreads...”* [Al Quran 113:1-3]

In the mother’s womb and on the Earth, a nafs is like a cast and a body is like a mold. Here, the nafs remains in the mode of development. So, the nafs of a possessed idolater gradually takes up a devil-human shape. His dormant systems to interact with the anti-creatures gradually mature. Thus the program of creation, recorded by nafs, gets deformed.

A deformed nafs will resurrect the human in a devil-human shape. During the resurrection, a body will be like a cast and a nafs will be like a mold.

A satan jinn leaves an idolater at the time of his (idolater’s) death.

A nafs gets hardened soon after the death of a human.

The nafs of a dead idolater is kept in the Sijjin where it develops, but its design and program does not change. It becomes robust in size and power; it becomes efficient. The idolater will resurrect as a giant in a devil-human shape.

“Even if the wrongdoers had all that there is on earth and as much more would they offer it for ransom from the pain of the Penalty on the Day of Judgment! But something will confront them from God, which they could never have counted upon—and

will become apparent to them satan,  
what they earned, and will surround  
them what they used to mock!”

[Al Quran 39: 47–48]

“...They (Jinns) will say, "We have  
seen (them) adopt ourselves and  
deluded them (in) the life of the Earth,  
and they bear witness against  
themselves that they rejected faith.”

[Al Quran 6:130]

If a human resurrects in devil-human shape,  
his body will be evidence against him that he rejected  
the Faith. He will be left in the Samawaat (this  
universe) He will be a forgotten Vicegerent of God in  
a galaxy, full of violent objects.

“Do ye then see what ye throw out  
(sperm and ovum)? Is it ye who create  
it, or are We the Creators?

We have decreed Death to be  
your common lot, and We are not to be  
frustrated from changing your forms  
and creating you in that ye know not.

And ye certainly know already  
the first form of creation; why then do  
ye not celebrate His praises?”

[Al Quran 56: 58-62]

## Note:

Sometimes people suffering from mental disorder are identified as people possessed by jinns. Above discussion has nothing to do with the people having mental disorder. If a satan jinni is possessing a human, he (human) does not feel it and does not behave irregularly, except in case of grasping the Message of God. Then hearing he hears not, seeing he sees not, because mounted jinn is very powerful on him; he (the jinn) protects his gain by distracting his mind. The person feels agitated and leaves the place where True God is discussed; he feels happiness in places where false gods are discussed.

“As to those who reject Faith, it is the same to them whether thou warn them or do not warn them; they will not believe. God has set a seal on their hearts and on their hearing, and on their eyes is a veil; great is the penalty they (incur)” [Al Quran 2: 6-7]

However, in the extreme level of possession, a woman can be witched. If she is jealous of a person, the mounted jinn may harm the person by manipulating her (witched woman's) soul—her soul is then harmed further (a jinn cannot harm by himself, directly).

Jesus could cast out devil, but now nobody can. The best way for the witched woman is to accept Islam. A Muslim woman can never be witched (*He is*

*the Irresistible from above over His worshippers, and He sets guardians (angels) over you...and they never fail in their duty – Al Quran 6:61).*

A witched woman is never seen in a Muslim society, but there are many incidents of witch-hunting in the Pagan Societies.

## **7. Why the Jinns follow Iblis to Provoke Humans**

The physiquess made from anti-matter have some advantages, such as their souls are able to change their shapes. They live long. They can fly through the Skies. They may not need so many natural supports, such as air, water, food, etc., to survive.

But they have disadvantages as well. Their disadvantages are understood if we compare them with humans:

A human body is an instrument of enjoyment. On the contrary, the life of a jinni should be simple. We may consider the case of food. Humans have innumerable kinds of foods with different colors, aromas and tastes, but the jinns do not have that. Probably, they absorb energy (anti-energy) directly from the nature and may have a few kinds of foods, crude in nature.

Actually, in the nature, every kind of animal has only a few kinds of foods—lions eat meat, cows eat grass, some even live on one kind of plant only, for instance, the koalas eat eucalyptus leaves only, the pandas live on bamboo leaves only. But humans have many kinds of foods. Sometimes humans eat food merely for enjoyment.

Humans have beautiful houses, domestic animals, cars, boats, aircrafts, dresses, travel sites, etc., to enjoy. But the jinns, even being an intelligent creature, almost have nothing in comparison to humans. Moreover, they are not honored to other creatures like humans, because they are not vicegerents of God.

A human woman is beautiful and elegant.

Human brain is more intelligent and efficient.

Therefore, an immoral jinni would not leave the scope of possessing a human body. A satan jinni enjoys the charms of human life through the occupied person. But the human does not feel or understand that he is possessed by a jinni.

“Said: Go thy way; if any of them follow thee, verily Hell will be the recompense of you—an ample recompense. And arouse those whom thou can among them with thy voice; make assaults on them with thy cavalry and thy infantry; mutually share with them wealth and children; and make promises to them. But Satan promises them nothing but deceit”

[Al Quran 17: 63-64]

"O you assembly of Jinns! Much did you take of men." Their friends among men will say: "Our Lord! Some of us were enjoyed by others (jinns), but we

reached our term, which You did  
appoint for us...” [Al Quran 6:128]

Among the jinns, Iblis is very powerful, as he has many followers. A jinni has to accept his leadership at first, then he would allot a human to the jinni.

Think from the viewpoint of a jinni. He might have come out through a black hole and entered our dimension of the galaxy. Flying through the dark sky, full of burning objects, he might have come to the Chief Satan (Iblis) and got a Pagan (idolater) allotted to him. Still his universe is dark and crude. But as soon as he possesses the pagan, he enters the human world with blue sky, vast ocean, beautiful lands full of flowers and fauna. He shares the wealth and children of the pagan. The human body works as a means to open up the joyful human horizon to the jinn.

**Note:**

The Children are not genetically affected for the mounting of satan jinns on their fathers or mothers. All children are pure by birth.

**8. Conclusion**

**8a. Demand of the Universal Objects**

A galaxy is a huge creation; it would feel itself neglected if it does not get a vicegerent of Allah.

One may think that we are humans, so we feel us important. But it is not the case. If it were known that the Planet Saturn has an intelligent life form, NASA would leave no stone unturned to reach there. The same it is for Allah; He is more interested on objects where living creatures exist. And humans are highly developed intelligent living creatures—they think and talk. Allah created them in His own image.

The Universe is a huge creation. Some humans must live here:

“Assuredly the creation of the Skies and Lands (this Universe) is a greater than the creation of men; yet most men understand not” [Al Quran 40:57]

On the Day of Final Judgment, the hell (Samawaat / this Universe) will keep on asking for humans.

“The Day, We will ask hell, “Art thou filled to the full?” It will say, “Are there any more?” [Al Quran 50:30]

The following Hadith mentions the same.

Hadith: “After the Final Judgment, a group of people will be thrown into the hell (this Universe) and the hell will be asked: ‘Is she satisfied?’ The hell will say: ‘Are there any more?’ Then another group will be thrown in to the hell and the hell will be asked: ‘Is it

enough?’ The hell will say: ‘Are there any more?’ Then another group will be thrown into the hell and the hell will be asked: ‘Is it enough?’ The hell will say: ‘Are there any more?’ Then Allah will put His leg into the hell. Then the hell will be satisfied and say: ‘Enough, Enough, Enough.’ And its one part will be squeezed with another part”

[Tirmizi]

The Universe will be rolled up, the Resurrection of the Dead will occur, and the Final Judgment will be carried out on a specially created Land (Land of Judgment) in the Super Space. After the Judgment, humans will be moved into the Jannaat (another universe), but not all.

The Universe (Skies / Samawaat) will be un-rolling. The galaxies reviving in the un-rolling Skies (Samawaat) will grasp the humans left in the Land of Judgment or pushed into the unrolling Universe. The galaxies are the objects of hell.

To make a righteous distribution, we have been put into the Earth to be trained and tested. The persons failing in the earthly test will be left in this universe (Samawaat). The jinns too want them here; the Universe is their home. They do not want to lose the scope of venturing out of their dimensions.

Otherwise, the jinns are not created as the vicegerents of God, so some humans will have to be left in this Universe, though they will be forgotten vicegerents. A sinner will get a whole galaxy:

“Allah created the ‘Skies and Lands’ (this Universe) for just ends and in order that each soul may find the recompense of what it has earned and none of them be wronged.”

[Al Quran 54:22]

“We created not the ‘Skies and Lands and all between them’ (this Universe) merely in sport. We created them not except for just ends. But most of them do not understand. Verily, the day of sorting out is the time appointed for all of them.” [Al Quran 44:38–40]

“It will also be said: "This Day We will forget you as ye forgot the meeting of this Day of yours! And your abode is the Fire, and no helpers have ye!" [Al Quran 45:34]

The jinns will be allies in the hell, but not in real sense; they are disobedient creatures.

A sinner and some satan jinns will be together in a galaxy (the galaxies are the objects of hell). Together, they make an effective group to explore their home galaxy. But, to the jinns, the universal objects will not be as painful as it will be for the human. Rather than, the universe (hell) is natural living place of the jinns; for them, it may not be painful at all.

“...We made the satans friends to those without faith.” [Al Quran 7:27]

“...I will fill Hell with jinns and men all together” [Al Quran 11:119]

“...I will fill Hell with jinns and men all together” [Al Quran 32:13]

### **8b. A Foolish Endeavor**

The science would never develop in some subjects. Many make stories. There are stories in different books of religion as well. We should not believe everything. Only the Quran tells us what we should believe—the Quran is a proven Book from the Creator. The Faiths based on theoretical science and stories may be severely damaging.

In some modern meditations, initially a person, meditating, thinks that cosmic energy is falling into him. Subsequently, he thinks that he is joined with the cosmic energy, and everything is energy. Finally, he thinks him in a state of oneness and tries to apply his will-power on the material world. He is otherwise trying to be a God.

In reality, the creations of this universe (Samawaat) are sustained in the extended elementary souls (force fields / ruhhs) of Allah. He is immensely powerful, living and omnipresent; He hears and sees everything—it is His domain; a human cannot intrude. A person may be divinely connected to Allah,

but not to His creations as a mover by his will-power or verbal command. The creations of this universe are not free to obey, and humans are not developed to intrude and influence.

However, a human is a conscious being, and the inert entities of the Universe are conscious too. But, a human cannot influence or allowed to influence the inert entities as he may want to.

The Jannaat (another universe) is most probably sustained and evolved by Allah differently, and a human in the Jannaat would be developed to influence the creations of his region. Probably, so, the inert objects of the Jannaat will obey his command.

“God! There is no god but He, the Living, the Self-subsisting, Eternal. No slumber can seize Him nor sleep. His are all things in the Skies and Lands. Who is there can intercede in His presence except as He permits? He knows what before or after or behind them. Nor shall they compass aught of His knowledge except as He wills. Extends His Kursi into the Skies and the Lands, and He feels no fatigue in guarding and preserving both of them; for He is the Most High, the Supreme.”

[Al Quran 2:255]

So, whatever the meditating person may be thinking does not affect anything. The unusual things he may

be hearing, seeing and feeling are hallucinations created by his brain.

However, if one tries to connect God through meditation and prayers, then it is good.

But, there are pagan ways of meditation also; one is described below:

A nafs is the main soul of a human. It (nafs) spreads throughout one's body with its center below the navel. A nafs is a combination of unknown force fields. It is complex and has many vital points. Generally, these vital points are identified as *Chakras*.

In Satanic Meditation, in the name of balancing the *Chakras*, satan jinns are called repeatedly through deep meditation aided by music. One of the renowned Satanic Meditations is called "Kundalini". "Kundalini" means "Coiled Serpent" (in Holy Bible the Satan is called Serpent).

In Kundalini Meditation, the word they chant repeatedly is "*Kundalini Arohona*", which means "Serpent Mount".

“And yet among men there are such as dispute about God without knowledge and follow every satans obstinate in rebellion! It is decreed for him that he who befriends him, then indeed he will misguide him and guide him to punishment, the blaze.”

[Al Quran 22: 3-4]

Every human has a dedicated satan from the jinns, who is a disciple of the Old Serpent (Iblis / Chief

Satan). The satan can watch and whisper only, if the human is a Believer, but in case of a Pagan it mounts (possess).

The mounting has already happened in case of a Pagan; he does not need to shout for it—his kundanilini (coiled serpent / satan jinn) is already mounted. The satan jinn is his friend on the Earth and in the hell. He may be able to get some petty jobs done by the satan jinns. But, a satan jinni cannot act in human dimension; he (satan jinn) does the job by convincing other humans through the jinns. However, a human achieves nothing beyond his fate.

A person befriending a satan jinni will be in the hell forever.

The scope of forgiveness remains open in the whole earthly life. The pagan should leave the satan by turning to Allah, and by asking for shelter to Him.

“Say: I seek refuge with the Lord and Cherisher of Mankind, the King of Mankind, the God of Mankind from the mischief of the Whisperer who withdraws, who whispers into the chests of mankind; among jinns and among men. [Al Quran 114]

Finally, human mind has no station. Imagination of a serpent along the backbone and head may appear in one’s mind. It is sensation of spinal cord and brain, which make the central nervous system (CNS)—it is not Kundalini. Satan cannot mount on a Believer of one God.



FIGURE 7.2: Central Nervous System

### **8c. An Unknown Endeavor**

Meditation is not a prescribed way of worship in Islam. One cannot make connection with Allah without His will.

Why one should need meditation? A beautiful woman does not need to go to a man; rather than the man comes to her running. So, be beautiful by keeping the *qalb* and *nafs* uncorrupted, by gaining knowledge, by extreme *sawm* (self-restrain), by regular prayer (As-Salat), by extra prayer, by avoiding unnecessary enjoyment, by avoiding sins, and if there is a clear scope of struggling in the Path of Allah, then by struggling (Jihad). It is said in the Hadith that if a person is walking toward Allah, Allah is running towards him. So, He will run; not you—understand your value.

But do not be proud. Allah does not like proud people. And He has billions to choose. He is the Master of the Universes.

The Universe is seen expanding—the distant galaxies moved in tremendous speeds just to make our nights dark:

“What! Are you more difficult to create, or the sky? He has constructed it. He has raised its thickness and proportioned it. Its night does He endow with darkness, and its splendor does He bring out. And the land moreover has He extended. He draws out there from its moisture and its pasture. And the mountains He firmly fixed: For use and convenience to you and your cattle.” [Al Quran 79: 27–33]

According to the above Verses, the universe is expanded and darkened, and the continents are drifted for humans and their cattle.

Many stars exploded just to produce the elements needed for us.

To Allah, it would not matter whether the universe was dark or bright, cool or hot. To Him, a piece of iron and a piece of gold is equally priceless.

So, each galaxy wants a human because they know that human has some importance to Allah. But, why should one be fool enough to follow the jinns and live in this universe (hell) forever?

Let one be foremost—forgiveness from one’s Lord, and the Jannaat, the width of which is as the width of the 'Skies and Lands'.

## 9. Summary

There are two universes: the Jannaat (another Universe) and the Samawaat (this Universe). Basically, humans are creatures of the Jannaat, and the jinns are creatures of the Samawaat.

Each mighty creation (like a galaxy) has right to get a vicegerent of God. Therefore, after the Final Judgment, adequate number of humans will be left in this universe (Samawaat). Whoever follows jinns will be left in the universe of jinns.

### **Section-4 of Chapter-7 [Verse 26-33]: The Ways to defeat Invisible Satan**

O you Children of Adam, We have bestowed raiment upon you to cover your shame as well as to be an adornment to you. But the raiment of righteousness—that is the best. Such are among the Verses of Allah that they may receive admonition!

O you Children of Adam, let not Satan seduce you in the same manner as He got your parents out of the Jannaat—stripping them of their raiment to expose their shame; for he and his tribe watch you from a position where you cannot see them. We made the Satan *awliya* (friends, protectors, helpers and guides) to those without faith. When they do aught that is shameful, they say: "We found our fathers doing so and Allah has commanded it on us". Say: "Nay, Allah never commands what is shameful; do you say of Allah what you know not?"

Say: My Lord has commanded justice and that you should face Him only in every place of worship in prayers and invoke Him only making your religion sincere to Him—

as He created you in the beginning, so shall you return. Some He has guided; others deserved to be in error—surely, they took satans as *awliya* instead of Allah and thought that they were guided.

O Children of Adam! Take your adornment while praying and going round the Kabah, and eat and drink, but waste not by extravagance; for Allah loves not the wasters.

### **Remarks:**

Satan jinns are invisible. We cannot peak-up weapons and attack them—we are to guard ourselves. According to above Verses, three things are important in the process of the guarding; those are:

#### **1. Clothing**

The clothing of righteousness is the best. The satan jinns are watchers and whisperer; they possess the Pagans—they are to enjoy through the humans.

But, they are dismayed if a woman is in hijab and a man is in unattractive long dress and beard.

If a human is attracting illegal sexual partner with revealing dress, then the guard angels becomes less effective—they guard against satan jinns, but do not counter human endeavor. If a man has brought a prostitute in his room, then he has not brought a prostitute only, he has brought several satan jinns as well, with her. The guard angel of the person will not counter, because the person has allowed their coming.

## 2. Be careful in Sufi Endeavor

The third paragraph of above Verse needs special attention: “*Say: My Lord has commanded justice and that you should face Him only in every place of worship in prayers and invoke Him only making your religion sincere to Him—as He created you in the beginning, so shall you return. Some He has guided, others deserved to be in error—surely they took satans as Awliya instead of Allah and thought that they were guided.*”

A human can be mounted by Allah:

“A man is like a horse whose back never remains vacant, either Allah is riding on him, or a satan.” [Hadith]

A man may try to be a ride of Allah through sufi-endeavor of extreme self-restrain (sawm), sacrifices and extra prayers.

But the endeavor has deformed shapes. There are people who smoke opium and marijuana for the meditation of God. Some thinks humans as the instruments of enjoyment for God and resort to singing, dancing, and sexual activities to invoke God in them. But, by doing so they may be invoking satan jinns in them, or the satan jinns may be riding on them already; “...*others deserved to be in error—surely they took satans as awliya instead of Allah and thought that they were guided.*”

Allah wants people to remain away from these deformed paths, so it is said in above Verses: “...*and*

*that you should face Him only in every place of worship, in prayers, and invoke Him only making your religion sincere to Him...*”

On the Earth, humans are in the process of development. Here, one cannot merge with Allah in such deep level that one should become an instrument of enjoyment for Him. On the Earth, it is not possible to be a constant Home of Allah, because every human is to die [Idris and Jesus were lifted, Moses had a fake death and was lifted, Mansoor was burned to dust—once Allah is tied with someone, He is tied in real sense; it cannot be erased].

If one wants to be a Home of Allah in the afterlife, one is to mature properly and keep one's nafs unharmed. The Verses say: “...*As He created you in the beginning, so shall you return*”. Allah creates a human in a good form, suitable for Him. But his nafs may get deformed in earthly life due to the possession of satan jinni. Humans with deformed nafses will resurrect in deformed shapes. Allah would not like a deformed human as His home. They will be suitable to interact with the satan jinns and live in the Samawaat (hell) forever.

The main aim of Sufi endeavor is to clean the nafs; the rest lies in the Hand of Allah.

However, Sufi Endeavor is not necessary for going to Jannaat. One may follow the Straight Path of Islam revealed to Muhammad (pbuh), the Seal Prophets, and the Mercy of God. Islam completes in direct understanding of the Quran.

### 3. Extravagance

The fourth paragraph of above Verses tells us not to be extravagant. According to the Quran, the extravagant people are brothers of satan. It is because when one resorts to extravagance, one invites satan to join. A city of extravagance is a city of sin.

Therefore, one should not be extravagant when one is arranging a party, constructing a house, buying a car, buying cloths, and so on. Dazzling lifestyle invokes satan jinns.

Say: Who has forbidden the beautiful (resources) of Allah, which He has produced for His servants, and the things clean and pure for sustenance? Say: “They are in the life of this world for those who believe; purely for them on the Day of Judgment.” Thus, do We explain the signs in detail for those who understand.

#### **Remarks:**

Extravagance is forbidden, but one cannot forbid halal things—amounts should be proper.

Islam has prescribed ways of self-restraint, which are: fasting at day, praying at night, spending in charity, etc. One can fast throughout the year except for a few prescribed days.

Yet, some Sufis found out their ways of extreme self-restraint. They sacrificed everything in charity; thereby they had to be in extreme self-restraint (*sawm*).

Say: the things that my Lord has indeed forbidden are: shameful deeds, whether open or secret, sins and trespasses against truth or reason, assigning of partners to Allah for which He has given no authority, and saying things about Allah of which you have no knowledge.

**Remarks:**

Things that are forbidden in above Verse are related to the False Saints mainly. Some of them do shameful deeds, trespass against truth, assign partners to Allah, and say things about Allah of which they have no knowledge.

**Section-5 of Chapter-7 [Verse 34-41]: Moving out of the Hell**

To every people is a term appointed; when their term is reached, not an hour can they cause delay, nor can they advance.

O you Children of Adam, if there come to you messengers from among you, rehearsing My Verses unto you, those who are righteous and mend, on them shall be no fear, nor shall they grieve; but those who reject Our Verses and treat them with arrogance, they are companions of the Fire to dwell therein.

Who is more unjust than one who invents a lie against Allah or rejects His Verses? For such, their portion appointed must reach them from the Book (Lawh-Mahfuz) until when our messengers (angels) arrive and take their souls; they say: "Where are the things that you used to invoke besides Allah?"

They will reply: "They have left us in the lurch".

And they will bear witness against themselves that they had rejected Allah.

He will say: "Enter you in the company of the peoples who passed away before you—men and jinns—into the Fire." Every time a new people enter, it curses its sister people until they follow each other—all into the Fire.

### **Remarks**

The nafs of a pagan deforms, as it develops being possessed by a satan jinni. A deform nafs will produce a devil-human body at the time of resurrection. He will be sent to the hell. Thus, the Verses above say: *And they will bear witness against themselves that they had rejected Allah.*

The last of them will say to the first of them, "Our Lord, it is these that misled us, so give them a double penalty in the Fire."

He will say: "Doubled for all, but this you do not understand."

Then the first will say to the last, "See then, no advantage you have over us, so taste you of the penalty for all that you did!"

To those, who reject Our signs and treat them with arrogance, no opening will there be of the gates of Skies, nor will they enter the Jannaat until the camel can pass through the eye of the needle. Such is Our reward for those in sin. For them there is Hell as a couch and folds and folds of covering above. Such is Our requital of those who do wrong.

## **Remarks**

The sinners will live in the hell forever, as it is indicated in the last paragraph of above Verses: *“no opening will there be of the gates of Skies, nor will they enter the Jannaat until the camel can pass through the eye of the needle”*.

The Jannaat is located beyond this universe, and the objects of hell (the galaxies) are located in this universe (Samawaat). We have discussed the Jannaat and the Hell in Chapter-3.

So, the Salvation from this universe is necessary to get rid of the objects of hell. There are several types of Salvations discussed as under:

### **1. Regular Salvation**

After the Final Judgment, many will be moved to the Jannaat through As-Sirat (the Path connecting the universes). It may be called Regular Salvation.

### **2. Salvation through the Second Death**

After the Final Judgment, many will suffer the punishment of the fire for a period of time. Their nafses will be corrected through the punishments and they will die (Second Death).

Subsequently, they will be resurrected in proper shapes. The following Verse talks about the Second Death and the Resurrection:

“They will say: "Our Lord! Twice hast Thou made us without life, and twice hast Thou given us Life! Now have we recognized our sins; is there any way out?" [Al Quran: 40:11]

In above Verses, the people resurrected after the Second Death are asking for the salvation. The answer is not given in this Verse. Most likely, the people will be taken into the Jannaat. It may be called, the Salvation through the Second Death.

The Second Death is mentioned in the following Verses also:

“Said: "Would ye like to look down?"  
He looked down and saw him in the midst of the Fire. He said: "By God! thou was little short of bringing me to perdition! Had it not been for the grace of my Lord, I should certainly have been among those brought! Is it that we shall not die, except our first death, and that we shall not be punished?"  
Verily this is the supreme achievement!" [Al Quran 37:54-60]

The Second Death is mentioned in the Holy Bible as punishment. Most likely, the Verses mean that the punishment will be followed by the Second Death. Several Verses of Holy Bible are given below:

“Then death and Hades were thrown into the lake of fire. This is the second death, the lake of fire.”

[Revelation 20:14, Holy Bible]

“But for the cowardly and unbelieving and abominable and murderers and immoral persons and sorcerers and idolaters and all liars, their part will be in the lake that burns with fire and brimstone, which is the second death.”

[Revelation 21:8, Holy Bible]

“He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches. He who overcomes will not be hurt by the second death.”

[Revelation 2:11, Holy Bible]

According to the Hadith, a time will come when the people that would have slightest Faiths on one God will be rescued from the fire, and then the “Death” will be slaughtered in the Barzakh, separating the Jannaat and the Samawaat (this Universe). Thereafter people will never die, and the process of salvation will end.

So, for a period of time, there will be deaths after the Final Judgment too. Some people will die in the hell, and then they will be resurrected and taken to the Jannaat.

The idolaters will never die and will remain in the hell forever. It is said in the following Verse of Holy Bible:

“The rest of the humanity, all those who had not been killed by these plagues, did not turn away from what they themselves had made. They did not stop worshipping demons, nor the idols of gold, silver, bronze, stones, and wood, which cannot see, hear, or walk. Nor did they repent of their murders, their magic, their sexual immorality, or their stealing”

[Revelation 9 (20–21), Holy Bible]

### **3. Salvation by Transporters, like Burak and Raf Raf**

A Muslim Religious Scholar would not agree with the Idea of Salvation through the Second Death, because it is not discussed in the Hadith clearly and deliberately.

The Salvation through the Second Death is for the Christians mainly. Muslim sinners will have a different way of Salvation from the hell. Probably so, Prophet (pbuh) did not talk about the Salvation through Second Death deliberately.

A time will come when Muhammad (pbuh) will remember his sinful followers. He will take permission of Allah and will salvage his sinful followers who will have the sign of wudu.

Muhammad (pbuh) has means and ability to move through the Skies (Samawaat / this Universe), as he moved during the Night Journey (Miraz). He will salvage personally.

#### 4. Salvation through Black Hole

The idolaters will remain in hell for all the time that the ‘Skies and Lands’ (Universe) will endure, as it is said in the following Verse:

“They will dwell therein for all the time that the Skies and Lands endure, except as thy Lord willeth; for thy Lord is the accomplisher of what He planneth.” [Al Quran 11:107]

The gates of the Skies, through which one can go out of this universe, will not be opened for them, as the Verses under discussion say: *“To those who reject Our signs and treat them with arrogance, no opening will there be of the gates of Skies, nor will they enter the Jannaat until the camel can pass through the eye of the needle.”*

So, they cannot go to Jannaat through As-Sirat. But there may be a different path too.

A different path is pointed out in the Verses under discussion by: *“...until the camel can pass through the eye of the needle”*. It is a metaphor. It looks like the passing of a galaxy through its central super-massive black hole.

All galaxies hold super-massive black holes in their centers. A black hole sucks matter from the surrounding space. In course of time, it may devour all the matter of a galaxy. It may take billions of years. Once all the matter of a galaxy would be devoured by the central super-massive black hole, the person of that galaxy may be shifted to Jannaat through a different path:

Hawking flourished an idea of going out of this Universe through a black hole:

*“As a black hole gives off particles and radiation, it will lose mass. This will cause the black hole to get smaller and to send out particles more rapidly. Eventually, it will get down to zero mass and will disappear completely. What will happen then to the objects, including possible space ships that have fallen into the black hole? According to some recent work of mine, the answer is that they will go off into a little baby universe of their own. A small self-contained universe branches off from our region of the universe. This baby universe may join on again to our region of space-time. If it does, it would appear to us to be another black hole that and then evaporated. Particles that fell into one black hole would appear as particles by the other black hole, and vice versa.*

*This sounds like just what is required to allow space travel through black holes. You just steer your space ship into a suitable black hole. It had better be a pretty big one, though or the gravitational forces will tear you into spaghetti before you get inside. You would then hope to reappear out of some other hole, though you wouldn't be able to choose where.*

*However, there's a snag in this intergalactic transportation scheme. The baby universes that take the particle that fell into the hole occur in what is called imaginary time. In real time, an astronaut who fell into a black hole would come to a sticky end. He would be torn apart by the difference between the gravitational force on his head and his feet. Even the particles that made up his body would not survive. Their histories, in real time, would come to an end at a singularity. But the histories of the particles in imaginary time would continue. They would pass into the baby universe and would re-emerge as the particles emitted by another black hole. Thus, in a sense, the astronaut would be transported to another region of the universe. However, the particles that emerged would not look much like the astronaut. Nor might it be much consolation to him, as he ran into the singularity in real time, to know that his particles will survive in imaginary time. The motto for anyone who falls into a black hole must be: 'Think imaginary'*

*—Black holes and Baby Universes by Stephen Hawking.*

In the afterlife, the soul (nafs) of a human will be fully matured. On the Day of Judgment, when the soul will be entangled with a Set of DNA Molecules, it will form its physical body by absorbing the supplied nourishments in the surroundings—mother's womb will not be needed at that time. If the soul is so powerful, body can never be destroyed. Only the skin

of a person will burn in immense fire, and it will be in the process of repair.

“Those who reject our Signs, We shall soon cast into the Fire; as often as their skins are roasted through, We shall change them for fresh skins that they may taste the penalty. For God is Exalted in Power, Wise”

[Al Quran 4:56]

If such a person falls into a black hole, his body may come to an end. The particles of his body may not survive. But his soul and information (photons) will survive and may pass into a parallel universe—human soul (nafs) is a combination of unknown force fields; it can carry information.

If the parallel universe joins with the Jannaat, his body may be re-created. Allah may help the re-creation with the copy of his genome code available in the CC. He may also provide his memories from the same CC (the CC keeps the record of our genome codes and memories as well; it is discussed in Section-9 of Chapter-6).

However, in this case the sinner is not moving out of his galaxy, his galaxy is moving into a region of the Jannaat.

But, it is unlikely that a galaxy will move into the Jannaat, because there is Barzakh in-between. Hawking suggest that it would re-join the Samawaat. Then there is no benefit. Allah knows the best.

*“I’m sorry to disappoint prospective galactic tourists, but this scenario doesn’t work: if you jump into a black hole, you will get torn apart and crushed out of existence. However, there is a sense in which the particles that make up your body would carry on into another universe. I don’t know if it would be much consolation to someone being made into spaghetti in a black hole to know that his particles might survive.”*

– *Black holes and Baby Universes* by Stephen Hawking.

## **5. Natural Salvation**

Alternatively, “...until the camel can pass through the eye of the needle” may mean collapse of the whole universe into the state of Big Crunch.

After the Present Cycle (2nd Cycle), the Universe will collapse into the Big Crunch, as the following Verse says:

“On the day when We will roll up the Skies (Samawaat / this Universe) like the rolling up of the scroll for writings...” [Al Quran 21:104]

Then, after Resurrection, Final Judgment, and Salvation, the deserving people will be shifted to the Jannaat, and the Universe will be created again.

Thus, the 3rd Cycle of the Universe will begin, as the next part of the above Verse says:

“...as We originated the first creation,  
 We shall reproduce it—a promise on  
 Us; surely We will bring it about.”  
 [Al Quran 21:104]

The sinners will be left in the Universe (3rd Cycle). They will be scattered in the galaxies. The galaxies are the objects of hell.

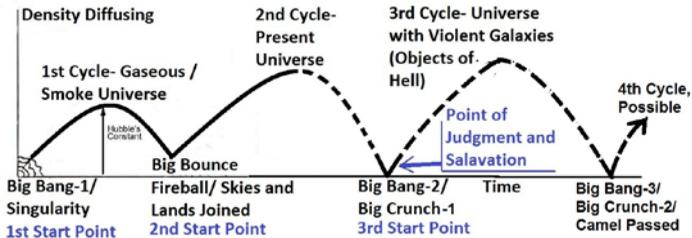


FIGURE 7.3: Big Crunch-2 / Camel Passed into the Eye of the Needle

After a long time (billions of years), the Universe will again collapse into a Big Crunch (Big Crunch-2) when the sinners may be salvaged. The Quran says:

“They will dwell therein for all the time that the Skies and Lands endure, except as thy Lord willeth; for thy Lord is the accomplisher of what He planneth.” [Al Quran 11:107]

Therefore, it is most likely that “...until the camel can pass through the eye of the needle” means

the collapse of the whole universe into the Big Crunch-2.

Probably, in the 4th Cycle, only the jinns will live in this universe.

### **Section-6 of Chapter-7 [Verse 42-45]: Living in the Jannaat**

But those who believe and work righteousness—no burden do We place on any soul but that which it can bear—they will be companions of the Jannaat; therein to dwell.

And We shall remove from their hearts any lurking sense of injury; beneath them will be rivers flowing, and they shall say: "Praise be to Allah Who has guided us to this; never could we have found guidance had it not been for the guidance of Allah; indeed it was the truth that the Messengers of our Lord brought unto us."

And they shall hear the cry: "Behold! The Jannaat before you; you have been made its inheritors for your deeds."

The Companions of the Jannaat will call out to the Companions of the Fire: "We have indeed found the promises of our Lord to us true. Have you also found your Lord's promises true?"

They shall say: "Yes."

Then a Crier shall proclaim between them: "The curse of Allah is on the wrongdoers—those who would hinder from the path of Allah and would seek in it something crooked—they were those who denied the Hereafter."

## Section-7 of Chapter-7 [Verse 46-49]: Men in the Araf

Between them shall be a Veil, and on the Araf will be men, who would know everyone by his marks. They will call out to the Companions of the Jannaat: "Peace on you." They will not have entered, but they will have an assurance.

When their eyes shall be turned towards the dwellers of the Fire, they will say, "Our Lord! Send us not to the company of the wrongdoers."

The men on the Araf will call to certain men whom they will know from their marks, saying: "Of what profit to you were your hoards and your arrogance—are they those, of whom you swore that Allah would never show them Mercy? (Lo! they are said:) enter you the Jannaat; no fear shall be on you, nor shall you grieve."

### Remarks:

The "Araf" (Elevated Land) is related to the Veil, as the Verses say: "*Between them shall be a Veil, and on the Araf will be men...*"

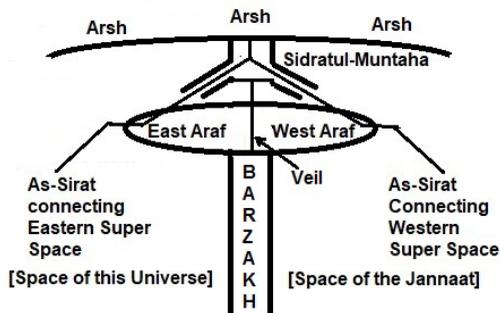


FIGURE 7.4: Likely Disposition

The Araf is a huge land. It is located at the top of the Barzakh. It is the primary domain of the angels. The Araf is divided by the Veil (Hijabun) into two parts: Eastern Araf and Western Araf.

The Veil cannot be crossed directly. The Parts of the Araf are connected by the Sidratul-Muntaha. The Sidratul-Muntaha connects the Arsh as well.

The Barzakh may be a space with different nature, through which nothing except light can pass. It separates the Samawaat (this Universe) and the Jannaat (another Universe) from one another.

As-Sirat is a channel, running through the Super Space and the spaces. It connects the universes.

The middle part of As-Sirat is running through Sidratul-Muntaha. The Sidratul-Muntaha checks the moves from one universe to another. Some people whose sin and good deeds will be equal will be rejected by Sidratul-Muntaha. They will fall on the Eastern Araf. They will be taken into the Jannaat later.

The Sidratul-Muntaha is a communication hub as well. It will provide the facility of multi-dimensional video conversation (most likely, based on the technique of teleportation and the holographic reception and projection) to the people fallen on the Eastern Araf. The above Verses talk about their interactions with the people heading to the hell.

These fallen people would be scared being checked by Sidratul-Muntaha. So, the resentment is visible in their talking: *"Of what profit to you were your hoards and your arrogance—are they those, of whom you swore that Allah would never show them*

*Mercy? (Lo! they are said:) enter you the Jannaat; no fear shall be on you, nor shall you grieve."*

[The CC, the Sidratul-Muntaha, and the related systems are deliberately discussed in Section-9 of Chapter-6]

### **Section-8 of Chapter-7 [Verse 50–53]: Living in the Hell**

The Companions of the Fire will call to the Companions of the Jannaat: "Pour down to us water or anything that Allah doth provide for your sustenance." They will say: "Both these things Allah has forbidden to those who rejected Him—such as took their religion to be mere amusement and play and were deceived by the life of the world."

That day shall We forget them as they forgot the meeting of this day of theirs and as they were used to reject Our Verses; for We had certainly sent unto them a Book based on knowledge, which We explained in detail—a guide and a mercy to all who believe.

Do they just wait for the final fulfillment of the event? On the day, the event is finally fulfilled those who disregarded it before, will say: "The messengers of our Lord did indeed bring true (tidings); we have no intercessors now to intercede on our behalf." Or, "Could we be sent back, then should we behave differently from our behavior in the past?"

In fact, they will have lost their souls, and the things they invented will leave them in the lurch.

## Remarks:

The above Verses depict paradise and hell as a garden and a gulf of fire divided by an elevated land where people of two domains can talk to each other directly.

But the Quran clearly informs that the Jannaat is a different universe altogether, and the Objects of Hell are in this universe (Samawaat). How people from one universe could talk to the people of another universe?

It is possible with the equipments using the technique of quantum teleportation. The people of the Jannaat will have to sit on special chairs to interact with the people of the Samawaat (hell). It means that there is system involved:

“Truly the Righteous surely in Naimin  
(a level of Jannaat).

On thrones they observe—get  
to know—at their faces the radiance of  
Naimi (the level of Jannaat).

Their thirst will be slaked with  
Pure Wine, sealed:”

[Al Quran 83: 22-25]

So, in the Jannaat, there are facilities to project light on the faces, by which they can see a distant event. The facility can be compared with the internet, but in higher form, because with this system they will be able to see and talk to the people living in another universe.

“But on this Day the Believers will laugh at the Unbelievers. On thrones they observe.

Will not the Unbelievers have been paid back for what they did?”

[Al Quran 83: 34-36]

It is said in the Hadith that now too, the maidens of Jannaat can see and hear us. If wife of a pious person is nagging too much, they say, ‘He is with you only for a few days’ or similar words. But they cannot interact. Probably, the full system of communication is not deployed. It would be deployed after the Final Judgment once the people of Jannaat will reach there. The communication system will be so advanced that due to intimate and vivid emergence of multidimensional pictures, the people of hell will ask for food and water from the people of Jannaat, but sending will not be possible.

The Quran primarily aims to build faith. Therefore, paradise and hell are described in such a way that a person having no knowledge about the vastness of the creation can draw a mental picture, at the same time a well-informed person can understand the reality.

### **Section-9 of Chapter-7 [Verse 54-58]: Rule of Allah**

Your Guardian-Lord is Allah Who created the Skies and Lands in six days; then He did *istawa* into the Arsh. He covers the night with the day, seeking it rapidly, and the sun and the moon and the stars controlled by His deed.

Unquestionably, for Him the creation and affairs; blessed be God, the Cherisher and Sustainer of the Universes!"

**Remarks:**

Allah created this universe (Samawaat) and made the Earth suitable for human living in six days [The Six-Day Model of Creation is deliberately discussed in Section-3 of Chapter-41].

Then, Allah did *istawa* into the Arsh.

Similarly, Allah did *istawa* into this universe beforehand:

“Moreover, He did *istawa* into the Sky (this universe), while it had been smoke. He said to it (smoke) and to the lands: "Come ye together, willingly or unwillingly." They said: "We do come, in willing obedience.""

[Al Quran 41:11]

‘Allah in form’ sits in the Kursi. He appears like a human. His nafs (soul) permeates His body in form. His nafs comprises many known and unknown force fields (elementary souls / ruhhs).

He had extended several ruhhs (elementary souls / force fields) as the hands of His nafs, and then infused the hands into the Universe and the Arsh. Thus, He did *istawa* in both of the creations.

He has infused the right hand of His nafs into this universe, and He has infused the left hand of His

nafs into the Arsh. The hands comprise several forces needed for sustaining and evolving the creations.

The gravitational force, which is exposing through the deposits of matter, is a force of His hand. So, as the above Verses say: *“He covers the night with the day, seeking it rapidly, and the sun and the moon and the stars controlled by His deed.”*

The forces, extended through the hands, are designed at His will to act in fixed patterns. So, we view their acts as natural laws.

[Allah, soul and istawa are broadly discussed in Chapter-1.]

Call on your Lord with humility and in private; for Allah loves not those who trespass beyond bounds.

Do no mischief on the earth after it has been set in order, but call on Him with fear and longing; for the Mercy of Allah is near to those who do good.

### **Remarks:**

Allah has established Himself in the universe and has set order in the creation. One should not be disheartened due to one's poverty and difficulties. One should call Allah with humility and remember Him in private.

Thus, one should not answer the call of a Taghut (Power) after Islam is established in the land, as the above Verses say: *“Do no mischief on the earth after it has been set in order...”*—His Mercy is near.

It is He Who sends the winds like heralds of glad tidings, going before His mercy, when they have carried the heavy-laden clouds; We drive them to a land that is dead, make rain to descend thereon, and produce every kind of harvest therewith—thus shall We raise up the dead so that you may remember.

From the land that is clean and good, by the will of its Cherisher, springs up produce after its kind; but from the land that is bad, springs up nothing but that which is niggardly. Thus do we explain the Signs by various (symbols) to those who are grateful.

### **Remarks:**

An Islamic Society is like a good land that produces good crops. On the land of Judgment, humans will grow like the plants. The people who lived in Islamic societies will grow in better form.

A tiny seed, containing a Set of DNA Double Helix, is poised to explode through genome expression to form a giant tree. Similarly, a human will grow on the land of resurrection from a Set of DNA Double Helix (46) he had on the Earth.

But, only a Set of DNA Double Helix cannot form a body perfectly. A zygote put in a test tube in the most favorable condition does not form a perfect body; mother's womb is necessary where Allah shape up a human.

As a human grow in the mother's womb, his nafs gets designed as a program of creation. He will be resurrected by his programmed nafs from a Set of his earthly DNA Molecules (46).

The nafs of an idolater gets deformed due the possession of satan jinns. A deformed nafs will form a deformed devil-human body. I have discussed in Section-10 of Chapter-6 how a satan jinn spoils a human's nafs and what is the role of a nafs in resurrection.

It is easier to remain religious in an Islamic Society because there is almost no bar, casino, prostitution, etc. The religious persons are guarded by the angels from the intrusions of the satan jinns. So, the nafses of religious persons remain good. The good nafses will produce good physiques during the resurrection.

The products will be visible on the Day of Judgment. So, the Verses say: *“From the land that is clean and good, by the will of its Cherisher, springs up produce after its kind; but from the land that is bad springs up nothing but that which is niggardly.”*

Therefore, Muslims should remain patient and maintain the societies under the Islamic Rule, even if they were undergoing hardship.

## **Segment-2**

### **History of the Divine Revelation in the Progeny of Noah**

In the following Verses, five prophets have been discussed. They were descendants of Noah. Many of Modern Arabs are from them.

The way of preaching Islam has been designed by Allah keeping their historically proven character in view.

## **Section-10 of Chapter-7 [Verse 59-102]: Noah, Hud, Salih, Lot, Shuaib Failed**

### **10a. Noah**

We sent Noah to his people. He said: "O my people! Worship Allah. You have no other god but Him. I fear for you the punishment of a dreadful day!

The leaders of his people said: "Ah! We see you evidently wandering."

He said: "O my people! No wandering is there in my (mind), on the contrary I am a Messenger from the Lord and Cherisher of the universes! I but fulfill towards you the duties of my Lord's mission; sincere are my advice to you, and I know from Allah something that you know not. Do you wonder that there has come to you a message from your Lord through a man of your own people to warn you so that you may fear Allah and that you may receive His Mercy?"

But they rejected him. And We saved him and those with him in the ship, but We drowned those who rejected Our Verses—they were indeed a blind people!

#### **Remarks:**

The People of Noah died, except a few Believers. Many nations sprung from them. They are fighters. If a nation has a history of ruling the world, they are, most likely, from the People of Noah. One will understand from the following discussion that all people, like Mongols, Russians, Turkic Peoples, Greeks, Romans, French, Germans, Britons and Spanish are from the people of Noah—one goes;

another comes. Thanks to God that He purified them to some extent by the flood.

However, only the Jews are pure by blood.

Allah has made the descendants of Abraham kings. One will hardly find a stable kingly dynasty without the blood of Abraham, which includes the People of the Quraysh Tribe as well.

### **Time of the Flood**

In biblical time-line, the flood happened about 3000 years before the birth of Christ (about 5000 years from today). However, the biblical time-line is not accurate.

According to the biblical time-line, Adam lived about 4000 years before the birth of Christ (about 6000 years from today) when ten-thousand-year-old cave paintings show the signature of human (so called modern human).

The Quran says that Adam was given a few domestic animals. The fossil finds show that the domestic cow appeared about ten thousand years ago. It confirms that Adam too was descended about ten thousand years ago.

Therefore, Noah, most likely, was living nine to seven thousand years ago.

[However, biblical time-line is reliable from the time of Moses.]

## The destroyed People

It is popularly believed that in the Flood of Noah, the whole Earth went under water. The Quran does not say it. People assume it, as Noah was told to carry pairs of every species, male and female, in the boat. But it might have been told for the protection of the local animals.

Some animals are specialized and necessary for a region. For example, the polar bear and seals are necessary for the food cycle of the polar region, and they have no alternatives.

If Allah submerges a large area, as big as a continent, which has specialized local animals, He is supposed to protect them so that the local wilderness can return to its previous state after the flood.

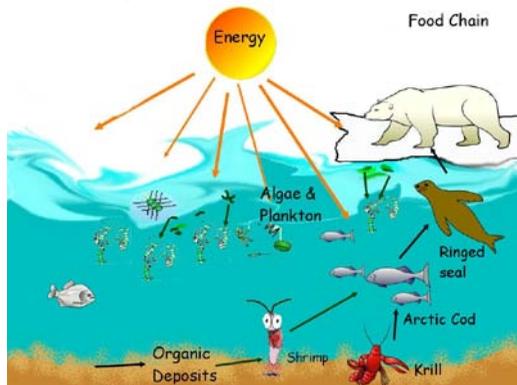


FIGURE 7.5: Polar Food Chain

The desert animals are also specialized, but the deserts are scattered throughout the world—migration is possible.

Therefore, the protection of species, a pair of male and female, by the boat indicates that the Polar Region was flooded.

Moreover, Noah was a Prophet of a people. Other peoples were not supposed to die for their sins. So, the People of Noah only was destroyed, not mankind.

## **The Flood**

The recent analysis shows that the people with blue eyes originated from the area of Black Sea.

Many Jews have blue eyes. And it is recorded that the Jews are from Noah.

So, Noah was from the region of Black Sea.

Several renowned geologists claim that the Black Sea was a sweet water lake about 8000 years ago. The water level of Mediterranean rose due to the melting of Polar Ice. So, the water created the Strait of Bosphorus and poured into the lake. It flooded the surrounding region of the lake and produced the Black Sea.

It is likely that the People of Noah were living around the lake and were drowned when Bosphorus opened. Section-3 of Chapter-36 indicates that a high tide was related to the flood.

However, only the water pouring through Bosphorus could not kill the people—it would give time to move out. It is likely that many fountains from the northern ice cap and massive rain from the skies aided the pouring of water. So, water rose rapidly, and the people were drowned.

“At length, behold, there came Our command, and the fountains of the earth gushed forth! We said: “Embark therein of each kind two, male and female, and your family, except those against whom the word has already gone forth, and the Believers.” But only a few believed with him.”

[Al Quran 11:40]

According to above Verse, the cause of flood was gushing fountains of the Earth (the rain is mentioned in another Verse). One of the fountains could be the forming Bosphorus. Others could originate from the icecap of the North Pole. Polar ice could rapidly melt and form the fountains.

The last glacial period ended at about 10500 BCE. In the glacial period a huge part of Russia and Europe were under the northern ice cap. Around 8000 years ago the ice cap was still big.



FIGURE 7.6: Europe in the last Glacial Period

At present, the height of polar ice in average is 7000 feet from the sea level. The height could be above 10000 feet at the time of Noah. Rapid melting could inundate Europe and Russia.

It is likely that the flood could not affect the higher belt of land shown in white in the map below and the lands beyond the higher belt, such as China, India, Africa, etc.

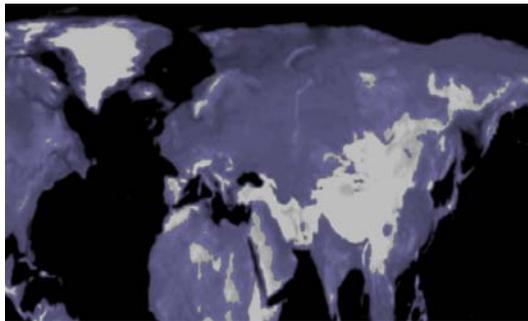


FIGURE 7.7: White showing the higher belt of land

Therefore, Europe, Russia and close Territories was flooded due to the Flood of Noah

### **Peoples from the People of Noah**

According to Holy Bible, eight persons only were in the boat: Noah, his three sons (Japheth, Ham, Shem) and their wives. It is said that Mongoloid People are descendants of Japheth, Negroid People are descendants of Ham, and others are descendants of Shem. The People of the Book who think that the

whole human race was killed except the people of the boat believe it.

The Quran says that there were a few Believers in the boat. They were people with blue eyes, as they were from the area of Black Sea. About 70% Europeans have blue eyes. So, Europeans are descendants of these Believers and Noah. Some of them moved deeper into Europe in course of time.

Many of the descendants of Noah moved into the Middle East and Central Asia. It is likely that the Turkic People including Mongols are from Japheth, thin skinned black African are from Ham, and many of the Middle East living in Yemen-Damascus-Belt and Nineveh-Babylon-Belt are from Sam.

Among these people, only Israelites have maintained their blood sincerely. One may read in Holy Bible how Abraham (being insisted by Sarah) brought the bride for Jacob (Rebekah) from the people of his race living in Iraq. So, the trend was set among the People of Israel. A Jew is recorded as a Jew if his father and mother both are Jews.

Therefore, the Jewish People are a pure specimen of the People of Noah.

“O ye that are sprung from those  
whom We carried with Noah! Verily  
he was a devotee most grateful. And  
We decreed for the Children of Israel  
in the Book, that twice would they  
do mischief on the earth and be  
elated with mighty arrogance!

[Al Quran 17:3-4]

## The Boat

The following Verse says that the Boat of Noah rested on the Mount Judi after the flood.

“Then the word went forth: "O earth!  
Swallow up thy water, and O sky!  
Withhold!" and the water abated, and  
the matter was ended. The Ark rested  
on the Mount Judi, and the word went  
forth: "Away with those who do  
wrong!"[Al Quran 11:44]

Recently a boat like structure is found on a mount in Turkey. Locals call the mount Cudi Dagh or Judi Dagh. Holy Bible suggests a nearby location, Mount Ararat, as the resting place of the boat.



FIGURE 7.8: The sign of a boat on the Judi Dagh

The buried ship is 170 meters long and 45 meters wide, which conforms almost exactly to 300

cubits by 50 cubits boat that God told Noah to build (according to Genesis 6 of Holy Bible).

But, the site is about 6500 feet higher than the sea level. There is not enough water in the Earth to sink the total landmass under 6500 feet high water. And the water did not come from outer space; it came from the fountains and the rain.

However, if the polar ice cap melted extremely rapidly, it could inundate Europe and Russia with the water of that height for a short period of time. But, Allah established the order on the Day of Law. He might not have done such abnormal thing (extremely rapid melting).

Therefore, the Boat of Noah definitely rested on the Mount Judi, as it is said in the Quran, but this boat like structure on Judi Dagh may not be the Boat of Noah; it may be a natural formation.

Or, it is the Boat of Noah, and the site rose higher after the flood due to Tectonic Activities.

## **10b. Hud**

To the Ad people, their brother Hud: He said, "O my people, worship Allah; you have no other god but Him; will you not fear?"

The leaders of the unbelievers among his people said, "Ah! We see you are an imbecile, and we think you are a liar"

He said, "O my people, I am no imbecile but a messenger from the Lord and Cherisher of the universes; I but fulfill towards you the duties of my Lord's mission; I am to you a sincere and trustworthy adviser. Do you wonder that

there has come to you a message from your Lord through a man of your own people, to warn you? Call in remembrance that He made you inheritors after the people of Noah and gave you a stature tall among the nations. Call in remembrance the benefits from Allah so that you may prosper."

They said: "You have come to us that we should worship Allah alone and forsake that which our fathers used to worship. So, bring us that wherewith you have threatened us, if you are of the truthful."

He said: "Punishment and wrath have already come upon you from your Lord. Dispute you with me over names which you have devised—you and your fathers—without authority from Allah? Then wait; I am among you, also waiting."

We saved him and those who adhered to him by Our mercy, and We cut off the roots of those who rejected Our Verses and did not believe.

### **Remarks:**

Hud was a Prophet among the People of Ad. According to the Biblical account, Ad was a son of Uz, who was a son of Aram, who was a son of Shem, who was a son of Noah. So, Ad was a fourth-generation descendant of Noah.

These descendants of Noah settled in Southern Arabia. Eventually, they built a Kingdom in the area bordering modern day Yemen and Oman.



FIGURE 7.9: Location of Ad

The people of Ad lived about five thousand years BCE. They were tall and well-built people renowned for their craftsmanship and for the construction of tall buildings. Their leaders were wicked people. They turned to Paganism though they were descendants of Noah. They invented three gods called Samd, Samud and Hara.

To isolate a people as a sovereign entity an old-time-leader would use religion—a people who were worshipping idols X, Y and Z would not join with people who were worshipping idols P, Q and R. They needed the idols to commit the people in the battles as well, because when question of life and death comes a human needs divine assurance. So, many kings had so-called protecting idols served by pet priests who would give the assurance of victory

and protection. Some kings even used to claim them as the descendants of gods.

Ads knew Allah, as they were descendants of Noah. They did not refuse to worship Him (Allah). They refused to worship Allah alone, which is a great sin.

After the final warning by Hud, they were destroyed, most probably by a draught followed by a strong storm (Cyclone / Hurricane).

Thus, the mighty smart Ads, living in the tall buildings, were swept away by the wind!

### **10c. Salih**

To the Thamud, their brother Salih: He said, "O my people, worship Allah; you have no other god but Him. Now has come unto you a clear (Sign) from your Lord: This she-camel of Allah is a Sign unto you. So, leave her to graze in Allah's earth and touch her not with harm, or you shall be seized with a grievous punishment. And remember, how He made you inheritors after the Ad people and gave you habitations in the land. You build for yourselves palaces and castles in the plains and carve out homes in the mountains. So, bring to remembrance the benefits from Allah, and refrain from evil and mischief on the earth."

The leaders of the arrogant party among his people said to those who were counted powerless, to such of them as believed, "Know you indeed that Salih is a Messenger from his Lord?" They said: "We do indeed believe in the revelation, which has been sent through him."

The Arrogant Party said: "For our part, we reject what you believe in." Then, they ham-strung the she-camel and

insolently defied the order of their Lord saying: "O Salih, bring about your threats, if you are a Messenger!"

So, the earthquake took them unaware, and they lay prostrate in their homes in the morning!

So, Salih left them saying: "O my people! I did indeed convey to you the message, for which my Lord sent me. I gave you good counsel, but you love not good counselors!"

### **Remarks:**

According to above Verses, Thamuds were made inheritors of the Ad.

After the people of Ad had been destroyed, Thamuds became the regional power of Southern Arabia. Gradually, they shifted their towns toward the North, along the Red Sea. Finally, when they were destroyed, they were in Mada'in Saleh at about 400 km northwest of Madinah and 500 km southeast of Petra.

However, all Thamuds did not die. There were Believers among the Poor People of Thamud. It is likely that the Poor were living around the town in indigent settlements. Probably so, their homes were not affected due to the earthquake. Only the people who were Disbelievers and had palaces in the plains and carved out homes in the mountains were affected by the earthquake and died (they lay prostrate in their homes in the morning).



FIGURE 7.10: Location of Thamuds

Over the times, the surviving Thamuds dispersed in surrounding areas. It is claimed that the Tribe of Thaqif (Sakif) is from them.

**Note:**

In these Verses, the Prophets are described in the sequence of their arrival: Noah – Hud – Salih.

Subsequent Verses talks about Lut and Shuaib that makes another sequence: Noah – Lut – Shuaib. Lut was nephew of Abraham. Shuaib was a descendant of Abraham, but not from the house of Israel or Ismael; he was a Midian.

If we put them in one sequence it would be: Noah – Lut (contemporary to Abraham) – Hud – Salih – Shuaib (contemporary to Moses).

We know that Moses came back from Egypt with the Jews in 13<sup>th</sup> Century BCE. So, destruction of Thamud (Salih's People) occurred before 13<sup>th</sup> Century BCE.

So, the present structures of Madain Salih did not face the destruction, because these structures were built around the time of Jesus Christ. Probably, some of the Thamuds that had survived continued living in the same locality and built the structures at later times.

Salih in broken heart left the area after the Earthquake, but not the surviving Thamuds: *So Salih left them, saying: "O my people! I did indeed convey to you the message, for which my Lord sent me. I gave you good counsel, but you love not good counselors!"*

## **10d. Lut**

We also Lut: He said to his people, "Do you commit lewdness such as no people in creation committed before you? For you practise your lusts on men in preference to women—you are indeed a people transgressing beyond bounds."

And his people gave no answer but this: they said, "Drive them out of your city; these are indeed men who want to be clean and pure!"

But we saved him and his family, except his wife. She was of those who lagged behind. And we rained down on them a shower. Then see what the end of those who indulged in sin and crime was!

## Remarks:

Lut was son of Haran and nephew of Abraham. He migrated with Abraham to Canaan at around 2100 years before the birth of Christ. He was commissioned as a prophet to the city of Sodom.

He called people to leave homosexuality. But people did not accept him. So, they were destroyed most likely by severe earthquake and volcanic eruption causing the showering of brimstones (sulfur based burning stone).

It is likely that Sodom was in Jordan River Valley close to the Dead Sea.



FIGURE 7.11: General Area of Sodom

## 10e. Shuaib

To the Madyan (Midian) people We sent Shuaib, one of their own brethren.

He said: "O my people, worship Allah—you have no other god but Him; now has come unto you a clear (Sign) from your Lord. Give just measure and weight, nor withhold from the people the things that are their due and do no mischief on the earth after it has been set in order—that will be best for you, if you have Faith. And squat not on every road breathing threats hindering from the path of Allah those who believe in Him and seeking in it something crooked, but remember how you were little, and He gave you increase; and hold in your mind's eye what was the end of those who did mischief. And if there is a party among you who believes in the message with which I have been sent, and a party that does not believe, hold yourselves in patience until Allah does decide between us; for He is the best to decide."

The leaders, the arrogant party among his people, said: "O Shu'aib! We shall certainly drive you out of our city, and those who believe with you, or else you shall have to return to our ways and religion."

He said: "What! Even though we do detest? We should indeed invent a lie against Allah if we returned to your ways after Allah has rescued us from there, nor could we by any manner of means return thereto unless it be as in the will and plan of Allah, our Lord. Our Lord can reach out to the utmost recesses of things by His knowledge. In Allah is our trust.

Our Lord! You decide between us and our people in truth; for You are the best to decide."

### **Remarks:**

In above Verses, the word, “*Our Lord can reach out to the utmost recesses of things by His knowledge*” does not mean that Allah cannot reach a thing by Himself. He sees everything, hears everything and is acquainted with everything. I have discussed Him in Chapter-1.

The Verse is linked to the previous Verses where it is said: “*...nor could we by any manner of means return thereto unless it be as in the will and plan of Allah, our Lord*”.

So the part, “*Our Lord can reach out to the utmost recesses of things by His knowledge.*” means that Allah knows the future.

The leaders, the unbelievers among his people, said: "If you follow Shu'aib, be sure then you are ruined!"

But the earthquake took them unaware, and they lay prostrate in their homes before the morning! The men who rejected Shu'aib became as if they had never been in the homes where they had flourished. The men who rejected Shu'aib it was they who were ruined!

So, Shu'aib left them saying: "O my people! I did indeed convey to you the messages for which I was sent by my Lord. I gave you good counsel, but how shall I lament over a people who refuse to believe!"

### **Remarks:**

Shuaib was a Prophet among the People of Madyan (Midian) who were living in the east of the Gulf of

Aqaba. They were descendants of Abraham, as it is said in the following Verse:

“Hath not the story reached them of those before them—the People of Noah, and Ad, and Thamud; the People of Abraham, the men of Midian, and the cities overthrown? To them came their apostles with clear signs. It is not God Who wrongs them, but they wrong their own souls”

[Al Quran 9:70]

It is said in Holy Bible as well:

"...again, Abraham took a wife and her name was Keturah. And she bare him Zimran, and Jokshan, and Medan, and Midian, and Ishbak, and Shuah."

– Genesis 25: 1-2, Holy Bible

Midians were descendants of these brothers. Shuaib was a Midian Prophet.

There is controversy about the time of Shuaib. According to Jewish account, Shu'aib was a fourth-generation descendant of Abraham: Shuaib, son of Mikil, son of Isaachar, son of Midian, son of Abraham. The fourth-generation appears within 100 (25X4) years, or within 300 (75X4) years at the best. So, according to their record, Shuaib lived at least 1800 before the birth of Christ when Midians were destroyed.

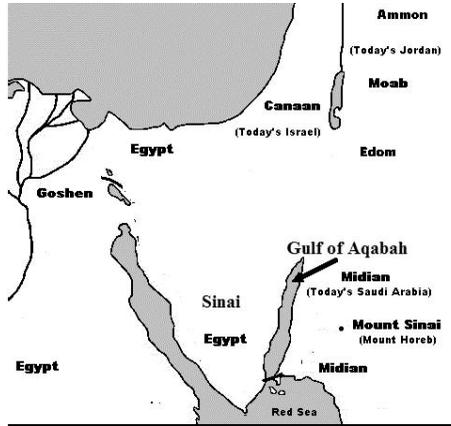


FIGURE 7.12: Gulf of Aqaba and Midian

But, the following Verse of the Quran says that Moses lived among the People of Midian for some time. And we know that Moses died in 1273 BC.

“...Then thou didst slay a man, but We saved thee from trouble, and We tried thee in various ways. Then didst thou tarry a number of years with the people of Midian. Then didst thou come hither as ordained, O Moses!”

[Al Quran 20:40]

The Jewish account in this respect seems wrong (Jewish records before Moses are not very reliable). The sons of Abraham and Kethurah could

not make a dominating people until six to seven hundred years had passed.

So, the Midians were living in 13<sup>th</sup> Century BCE when Moses fled from Egypt for the first time. Shuaib gave him shelter. Moses served him for 8 / 10 years, and he (Shuaib) gave him his daughter in marriage and a hard of sheep.

Shuaib was calling people to the Truth when Moses was looking after his cattle. Probably, Shuaib disposed of his family immediately before the earthquake. Probably so, Moses left Midian with his wife and his part of property.

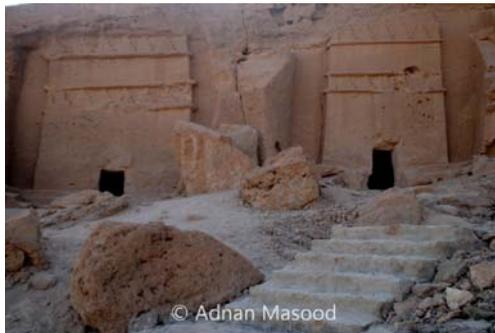


FIGURE 7.13: Midian

The Verses in the following Section (Section 11) says that Moses was sent to Pharaoh after the prophets mentioned in above Verses completed their missions. It means that when Moses was moving to the sacred valley of Tuwa (where he saw the Fire), the People of Midian were being destroyed or about to be destroyed.

From the valley of Tuwa Moses was sent to Egypt.

After the People of Midian had been destroyed by the earthquake, lamenting Shuaib moved to the People of the Wood. Later, the People of Wood too were destroyed.

Shuaib is a central figure in the Druze population. They claim him as their ancestor. The tomb of Prophet Shuaib has been a site of annual pilgrimage for many Druze for centuries.

In Druze tradition, it is believed that towards the end of his life, Shuaib took refuge near the Sea of Galilee where he died in old age.

### **10f. Consequences of rejecting a Prophet**

Whenever We sent a prophet to a town, We took up its people in suffering and adversity in order that they might learn humility. Then We changed their suffering into prosperity, until they grew and multiplied and began to say, "Our fathers were touched by suffering and affluence," behold, We called them to account of a sudden while they realized not.

If the people of the towns had but believed and feared Allah, We should indeed have opened out to them blessings from the sky and land. But they rejected, and We brought them to book for their misdeeds.

Did the people of the towns feel secure against the coming of Our wrath by night, while they were asleep? Or else, did they feel secure against its coming in broad daylight, while they played about? Did they then feel secure against the plan of Allah? But no one can feel secure from the plan of

Allah, except those to ruin! To those who inherit the earth in succession, to its possessors is it not a guiding that if We so willed We could punish them for their sins and seal up their hearts so that they could not hear?

Such were the towns whose story We relate unto you. There came indeed to them their messengers with clear (signs). But they would not believe what they had rejected before. Thus, does Allah seal up the hearts of those who reject faith. Most of them We found not men to their covenant, but most of them We found rebellious and disobedient.

### **Section-11 of Chapter-7 [Verse 103-137]: Pharaoh and his Chiefs**

Then after them We sent Moses with Our Signs to Pharaoh and his Chiefs, but they wrongfully rejected them. So, see what the end of those was who made mischief:

Moses said: "O Pharaoh! I am a Messenger from the Lord of the universes; proper it is for me that I say nothing concerning Allah but the truth. Now have I come unto you from your Lord with a clear (sign), so let the Children of Israel depart along with me."

Said: "If indeed you have come with a Sign, show it forth—if you tell the truth."

Then threw his rod, and behold it was a serpent manifest! And he drew out his hand, and behold it was white to all beholders!

The Chiefs of the People of Pharaoh said, "This is indeed a sorcerer well-versed. His plan is to get you out of your land."

(Pharaoh Said,) "Then what is it you counsel?"

They said: "Keep him and his brother in suspense and send to the cities men to collect and bring up to you all sorcerers well-versed."

So, there came the sorcerers to Pharaoh. They said: "Of course we shall have a reward if we win!"

He said: "Yea, and moreover you will be of the nearest."

They said: "O Moses! Will you throw, or shall we have the throw?"

Moses said: "Throw you."

So, when they threw they bewitched the eyes of the people and struck terror into them; for they showed a great magic.

We put it into Moses' mind by inspiration: "Throw your rod." And behold! It swallows up straight away all the falsehoods, which they fake!

Thus, truth was confirmed, and all that they did was made of no effect. So, they were defeated there and returned disgraced.

But the sorcerers fell down prostrate in adoration, saying, "We believe in the Lord of the universes, the Lord of Moses and Aaron."

Pharaoh said: "Believe you in Him before I give you permission? Surely this is a trick, which you have planned in the city to drive out its people, but soon shall you know. Be sure I will cut off your hands and your feet on opposite sides, and I will cause you all to die on the cross."

They said: "Verily, we are returning to our Lord. But you take vengeance on us simply because we believed in the signs of our Lord when they reached us! Our Lord! Pour out on us patience and constancy and take our souls unto you as Muslims!

The Chiefs of Pharaoh's people said: "Will you leave Moses and his people to spread mischief in the land and to abandon you and your gods?"

He said: "Their male children will we slay; their females will we save alive; and we have indeed irresistible power over them."

Said Moses to his people: "Pray for help from Allah, and in patience and constancy; for the earth is Allah's; He gives it as a heritage to such of His servants as He pleases, and the end is for the Righteous."

They said: "We have had trouble both before and after you came to us."

He said: "It may be that your Lord will destroy your enemy and make you inheritors in the earth so that He may see how you act?"

We punished the people of Pharaoh with years of droughts and shortness of crops that they might receive admonition. But when good came, they said, "This is due to us"; when gripped by calamity, they ascribed it to evil omens connected with Moses and those with him. Behold! In truth the omens of evil are theirs in Allah's sight, but most of them do not understand!

They said: "Whatever be the signs you bring to work therewith your sorcery on us, we shall never believe in you.

So, We sent on them Wholesale Death, Locusts, Lice, Frogs, and Blood—signs openly self-explained. But they were steeped in arrogance—a people given to sin.

Every time the penalty fell on them, they said, "O Moses! On our behalf, call on your Lord in virtue of his promise to you. If you will remove the penalty from us, we shall truly believe in you, and we shall send away the Children of Israel with you." But every time We removed the

penalty from them to a fixed term, which they had to fulfill, behold, they broke their word!

So, We exacted retribution from them. We drowned them in the sea because they rejected Our Signs and failed to take warning from them. And We made a people considered weak inheritors of the lands in both East and West, lands whereon We sent down Our blessings.

The fair promise of your Lord was fulfilled for the Children of Israel because they had patience and constancy. And We leveled to the ground the great works and fine buildings, which Pharaoh and his people erected.

### **Remarks:**

People understood that Moses was true seeing the signs of Prolong Draught, Whole-sale Death, Locusts, Lice, Frog, and Blood. But they were not a people to leave (or unable leave) their blind loyalty to their Chiefs (the Taghuts) and King (the Taghut).

The Sorcerers accepted the Truth seeing the first sign, the sign of snake. Pharaoh killed the sorcerers by cutting off their hands and legs from opposite sides and hanging them in the cross. It demonstrated the punishment of leaving him (Pharaoh). Probably so, the signs of Moses could not bring out the desired result among the People of Pharaoh.

Above Verses say that Jews were made inheritors of the land, East and West. It was the East and the West of River Jordan. After the death of Moses, they captured Canaan. Subsequently, they made a kingdom and extended into the East.

## **Section-12 of Chapter-7 [Verse 138-147]: Moses gets the Torah**

We took the Children of Israel across the sea. They came upon a people devoted entirely to some idols they had.

They said, "O Moses! Fashion for us a god like unto the gods they have."

He said, "Surely you are a people without knowledge. Verily, these people will be destroyed for that which they are engaged in, and all that they are doing is in vain." He said, "Shall I seek for you a god other than Allah, while He has given you superiority over the Universes?" And remember, We rescued you from Pharaoh's people who afflicted you with the worst of penalties, who slew your male children and saved alive your females—in that was a momentous trial from your Lord.

We appointed for Moses thirty nights and completed with ten—thus was completed the term with his Lord, forty nights. And Moses had charged his brother Aaron: "Act for me among my people. Do right and follow not the way of those who do mischief."

When Moses came to the place appointed by Us and his Lord addressed him, He said: "O my Lord! Show (Thyself) to me that I may look upon you."

Allah said: "By no means can you see Me, but look upon the mount, if it stands still in its place, then shall you see Me."

So, when his Lord appeared to the mountain, He made it collapsed to dust. And Moses fell down unconscious. When he recovered his senses, he said, "Glory be to You! To You I turn in repentance, and I am the first to believe."

Said, "O Moses, I have chosen you above men by My Messages and by My Speaking, so hold that which I have given you and be of the grateful." And We wrote for him on the tablets the lesson to be drawn from all things and the explanation for all things, "Take and hold these with firmness and enjoin your people to hold fast by the best in the precepts; soon shall I show you the homes of the wicked."

Those who behave arrogantly on the earth in defiance of right, them will I turn away from My Verses—even if they see all the signs, they will not believe in them; and if they see the way of right conduct, they will not adopt it as the way; but if they see the way of error, that is the way they will adopt; for they have rejected our signs and failed to take warning from them.

Those who reject Our Verses and the meeting in the Hereafter vain are their deeds. Can they expect to be rewarded except what they used to do?

### **Section-13 of Chapter-7 [Verse 148-153]: People inventing cow-god**

The people of Moses made in his absence out of their ornaments the image of calf. It seemed to low. Did they not see that it could neither speak to them, nor show them the way? They took it for worship and they did wrong. When they repented and saw that they had erred, they said: "If our Lord have not mercy upon us and forgive us, we shall indeed be of those who perish."

When Moses came back to his people, angry and grieved, he said, "Evil it is that you have done in my place in my absence; did you make haste to bring on the judgment of your Lord?" He put down the tablets, seized his brother by

his head, and dragged him to him. Aaron said, "Son of my mother! The people did indeed reckon me as naught and went near to slaying me! Make not the enemies rejoice over my misfortune, nor count you me among the people of sin."

Moses prayed, "O my Lord! Forgive me and my brother; admit us to Your mercy; for You are the Most Merciful of those who show mercy!"

Those who took the calf will indeed be overwhelmed with wrath from their Lord and with shame in this life, thus do We recompense those who invent. But those who do wrong but repent thereafter and believe; verily your Lord is thereafter Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful.

#### **Section-14 of Chapter-7 [Verse 154-159]: Muhammad (pbuh) in Torah**

When the anger of Moses was appeased, he took up the tablets—in the writing thereon was Guidance and Mercy for such as fear their Lord.

And Moses chose seventy of his people for Our place of meeting. When they were seized with violent quaking, he prayed: "O my Lord! If it had been Your will, You could have destroyed long before both them and me. Would You destroy us for the deeds of the foolish ones among us? This is no more than Your trial; by it You cause whom You will to stray, and You lead whom You will into the right path. You are our Protector. So, forgive us and give us Your mercy; for You are the best of those who forgive. And ordain for us that which is good in this life and in the hereafter; for we have turned unto You."

He said, "With My punishment, I visit whom I will, but My mercy extend to all things—that I shall ordain for

those who do right and practise regular charity, and those who believe in Our Verses, those who follow the Messenger, the unlettered Prophet—whom they find written with them in the Torah and the Gospel—for he commands them what is just and forbids them what is evil; he allows them as lawful what is good and prohibits them from what is bad; he releases them from their heavy burdens and from the yokes that are upon them; so it is those who believe in him, honor him, help him, and follow the light which is sent down with him—it is they who will prosper."

Say (O Moses): "O men! I am sent unto you all as the Messenger of God to Whom belong the dominion of the Skies and Lands; there is no god but He; it is He that gives both life and death. So, believe in God and His Messenger, the unlettered Prophet who believe in God and His words; follow him that you may be guided."

Of the people of Moses there is a section who guide and do justice in the light of truth.

### **Section-15 of Chapter-7 [Verse 160-161]: Twelve Tribes**

We divided them into twelve tribes or nations. We directed Moses by inspiration, when his people asked him for water—strike the rock with your staff. Out of it, there gushed forth twelve springs. Each group knew its own place for water. We gave them the shade of clouds and sent down to them manna and quails—eat of the good things We have provided for you. To Us they did no harm, but they harmed their own souls.

And remember, it was said to them: "Dwell in this town and eat therein as you wish, but say the word of humility, and enter the gate in a posture of humility—We

shall forgive you your faults; We shall increase those who do good."

### **Section-16 of Chapter-7 [Verse 162-168]: Punishment**

But the transgressors among them changed the word from that which had been given them, so we sent on them a plague from sky; for that they repeatedly transgressed.

Ask them concerning the town standing close by the sea. Behold! They transgressed in the matter of the Sabbath; for on the day of their Sabbath, their fish did come to them openly holding up their heads; but on the day they had no Sabbath, they came not. Thus, did We make a trial of them; for they were given to transgression.

When some of them said: "Why do you preach to a people whom God will destroy or visit with a terrible punishment?" Said the preachers, "To discharge our duty to your Lord, and perchance they may fear Him."

When they disregarded the warnings that had been given them, We rescued those who forbade evil, but We visited the wrong-doers with a grievous punishment, because they were given to transgression.

When in their insolence they transgressed prohibitions, We said to them: "Be you apes, despised and rejected."

Behold! Your Lord did declare that He would send against them—till the Day of Qiyamah—those who would afflict them with grievous penalty; your Lord is quick in retribution, but He is also Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful.

We broke them up into Sections on this Earth. There are among them some that are the righteous, and some that

are the opposite. We have tried them with both prosperity and adversity, in order that they might turn.

**Remarks:**

Allah declared many rewards for the Jews, which would reach them if they followed the Torah. The rewards were so great that anybody was likely be jealous of them, such as they were given superiority over the universes, as Moses was once saying to his people: *"He said, "Shall I seek for you a god other than Allah, while He has given you superiority over the Universes?" [Al Quran 7:140]*

However, Allah declared punishments as well. The list of punishments too is big. The followings are among those:

(15) And it shall be, if you will not heed the voice of your Elohim, to take heed to do all His commandments and His statutes which I am commanding you today, even all these curses shall come on you and overtake you: (16) You shall be cursed in the city, and you shall be cursed in the field... (25) YAHWEH shall cause you to be stricken before your enemies. You shall go out one way against them, and shall flee seven ways before them. And you shall be a trembling to all the kingdoms of the earth... (36)YAHWEH shall cause you and

your king whom you shall raise up over you, to go to a nation, which you have not known, you and your fathers. And you shall serve other gods there, wood and stone... (64) And YAHWEH shall scatter you among all people, from one end of the earth even to the other, and you shall serve other gods there, wood and stone, which you have not known, nor your fathers... (65) And among these nations you shall find no ease, nor shall the sole of your foot have rest. But YAHWEH shall give you there a trembling heart and failing of eyes, and sorrow of mind... (66) And your life shall be in doubt before you, and you shall fear day and night, and shall have no assurance of your life... (67) In the morning you shall say, Oh that it were evening! And in the evening you shall say, Oh that it were morning! For the fear of your heart with which you fear, and for the sight of your eyes which you shall see.

– Deuteronomy (Torah) 28: 15–68,  
Hebraic Roots Bible

The punishments are coming down to them one by one:

In and around 722 BCE, Neo-Assyrian Emperor captured the Kingdom of Israel and deported

10 Tribes in the East of Persia. They are now known as the Lost Tribes of Israel.

After Jesus Christ, the Roman Emperor destroyed the Second Temple and evicted Jews from Jerusalem through great atrocities:

*“Hadrian's army eventually put down the rebellion in 135. According to Cassius Dio, overall war operations in the land of Judea left some 580,000 Jews killed, and 50 fortified towns and 985 villages razed to the ground. The most famous battle took place in Beitar a fortified city 10 kilometres southwest of Jerusalem. The city only fell after a lengthy siege of three and a half years, at which time Hadrian prohibited the Jews from burying their dead. They were eventually afforded burial when Antoninus Pius succeeded Hadrian as Roman Emperor. According to the Babylonian Talmud after the war Hadrian continued the persecution of Jews.” – Wikipedia*

Thereby, they broke up into Sections and scattered throughout the Earth. It destroyed their religious schools and greatly affected their religious culture.

The Verses under discussion says: *“Behold! Your Lord did declare that He would send against them—till the Day of Qiyamah—those who would afflict them with grievous penalty; your Lord is quick in retribution, but He is also Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful.”*

We know what happened to them in Germany during the Second World War. And now, they are fighting in the North, in the East, and in the South.

Continue fighting—*till the Day of Qiyamah*. Did Moses not tell you to follow Muhammad (pbuh)?

They are waiting for a Messiah—so wait.

The Messiah will come with an utter destruction.

### **Section-17 of Chapter-7 [Verse 169-171]: Bring Torah into Remembrance**

After them succeeded a generation; they inherited the Book, but they chose the vanities of this world, saying: "(Everything) will be forgiven us." If similar vanities came their way, they would seize them. Was not the covenant of the Book taken from them that they would not ascribe to God anything but the truth? And they study what is in the Book. But best for the righteous is the home in the Hereafter. Will you not understand?

As to those who hold fast by the Book and establish regular prayer—never shall We suffer the reward of the righteous to perish.

When We raised the Mount over them, as if it had been a canopy, and they thought it was going to fall on them: "Hold firmly to what We have given you and bring to remembrance what is therein; perchance you may fear God."

#### **Remarks:**

In Pagan Rome, the Christianity was secretly spreading. However, they suffered from sporadic persecution for centuries. When Roman Emperor Constantine the Great (306 CE – 337 CE) adopted Christianity, the persecution ended. Constantine tore

down the Temple of Jupiter (that was established by Hadrian on the Temple Mount).

In 361 CE, Roman Emperor Julian allowed Jews to return and rebuild their Temple on the Temple Mount.

Jewish Communities began to reappear in Jerusalem and surrounding areas. But, as they lived in foreign countries in smaller groups for about 200 years, their religious knowledge, culture and practice suffered; they chose the vanities of this world saying, “*(Everything) will be forgiven us*”.

In 363 CE, Jews began excavation on the Temple Mount. But explosions of underground gases ended the Jewish effort: Fearful balls of fire, breaking out near the foundation, continued their attacks, till the workmen, after repeated scorching, could approach no more, and gave up the attempt.

In the above Verses, the Quran reminds them the story, how they were commanded to hold the Torah. And it clearly says to follow the Last Prophet, Muhammad (pbuh).

In 637 CE Caliph Omar captured Jerusalem. By 691 CE, the Quraysh Caliphs built Al Aqsa Mosque and the Dome of Rock. It was prophesized in Holy Bible. Holy Bible is a Book of many Prophecies:

“This Message thou shall give him  
from the Lord God of Host: Here is  
one takes his name from the Branch—  
where his feet have trodden, spring  
there shall be—he it is shall rebuild the

Lord's Temple. Builder of the Lord's  
Temple to what honors he shall  
come—a priest shall be on his throne”  
- Zacharias, Chapter-6: 12–13, Holy  
Bible (SHEED & WARD, INC, NEW  
YORK, 1956)]

In above Verses, the “Branch” means the  
“Branch of Ismail”. It is marked by the words:  
“*where his feet have trodden, spring there shall be.*”  
The Zam-Zam sprung from the toddling feet of  
Ismail.

The descendants of Ismail are known as the  
“Tribe of Quraysh”.

“*A priest shall be on his Throne*” means “a  
Caliph”—a Caliph is a priest as well as a Ruler.

Therefore, according to the Prophecy, the  
Caliphs from the Tribe of Quraysh would rebuild the  
Temple.

In reality, they built Al Aqsa Mosque and the  
Dome of Rock and no explosion occurred.

### **Segment 3**

#### **Calling People to the Truth**

#### **Section-18 of Chapter-7 [Verse 172-174]: The Affirmation**

When your Lord drew forth from the Children of Adam—  
from their backs—their descendants, and made them testify  
concerning themselves: “Am I not your Lord?” They said:  
“Yea! We do testify!”

Lest you should say on the Day of Judgment: “Of this we were never mindful.”

Or lest you should say: “Our fathers before us may have taken false gods, but we are descendants after them; will You then destroy us because of the deeds of men who were futile?”

Thus, do We explain the signs in detail; and perchance they may turn.

### **Remarks:**

Humans were brought out from the backs of their parents. Allah could say that the souls (nafses) of everybody were assembled, but He has not said it, because a soul does not make a complete man, and it does not have a material brain to remember, think and answer.

So, something more was done. To understand it, we are to think, what the words means by: “...*your Lord drew forth from the Children of Adam—from their backs—their descendants, and made them testify...*”

In Section-9 of Chapter-6, we have discussed that before Allah began the creation of the Universe, He had made a Master Design in His computer (CC), which was a dynamic virtual universe.

The genome code of each human was produced by the CC from the genome codes of his father and mother, sequentially from Adam and Eve.

From the genome codes, the CC could produce our virtual physiques, including the virtual

brains, to operate in the Master Design (Virtual Universe).

So, each human was produced in the virtual universe from the backs of their parents.

Our souls (nafses) are combination of unknown force fields. The CC, most likely, energized our nafses with our virtual physiques and put us on a holographic land, as holographic humans, where we testified.

We cannot remember the event, as soul cannot carry forward the memory (a soul being a combined force field can have some information imprinted, but it does not work as memory we use). Thus, it has been reminded in above Verses so that we do not say on the Day of Judgment that we didn't know.

### **Section-19 of Chapter-7 [Verse 175-180]: Call – Guidance is in the Hand of Allah**

Relate to them the story of the man to whom We sent Our Verses, but he passed them by, so Satan followed him up, and he went astray. If it had been Our will, We should have elevated him therewith, but he inclined to the earth, and followed his own vain desires. His similitude is that of a dog; if you attack him, he lolls out his tongue, or if you leave him alone, he (still) lolls out his tongue. That is the similitude of those who reject Our Verses. So, relate the story; perchance they may reflect. Evil as an example are people who reject Our Verses and wrong their own souls.

Whom God does guide, he is on the right path; whom He rejects from His guidance, such are the persons who perish.

Many are the jinns and men we have made for Hell. They have hearts wherewith they understand not, eyes wherewith they see not, and ears wherewith they hear not. They are like cattle—nay more misguided—for they are heedless.

The most beautiful names belong to God, so call on Him by them. But shun such men as use profanity in his names; for what they do they will soon be requited.

### **Section-20 of Chapter-7 [Verse 181–186]: Punishment of Rejection**

Of those We have created are people who direct with truth and dispense justice therewith.

Those who reject Our Verses, We shall gradually visit with punishment in ways they perceive not. Respite will I grant unto them, for My scheme is strong. Do they not reflect, there is no madness in their companion? He is but a Perspicuous Warner.

Do they see in the dominion of the Skies and Lands and all that God has created that it may well be that their terms is nigh drawing to an end? In what message after this will they then believe?

To such as God rejects from His guidance, there can be no guide; He will leave them in their trespasses wandering in distraction.

### **Section-21 of Chapter-7 [Verse 187–188]: I am but a Warner**

They ask you about the Hour—when will be its appointed time? Say: "The knowledge thereof is with my Lord; none

but He can reveal as to when it will occur. Heavy were its burden through the Skies and Lands. Only, all of a sudden will it come to you." They ask you as if you were eager in search thereof: Say, "The knowledge thereof is with God, but most men know not."

Say: "I have no power over any good or harm to myself except as God wills. If I had knowledge of the unseen, I should have multiplied all good and no evil should have touched me. I am but a Warner, and a bringer of glad tidings to those who have faith."

### **Section-22 of Chapter-7 [Verse 189–200]: Turn away from the Ignorant**

It is He Who created you from a single person and made his mate of like nature in order that he might dwell with her. When they are united, she bears a light burden and carries it about. When she grows heavy, they both pray to God their Lord, "If You give us a goodly child, we vow, we shall be grateful." But when He gives them a goodly child, they ascribe to others a share in the gift they have received, but God is exalted, high above the partners they ascribe to Him.

Do they indeed ascribe to Him as partners things that can create nothing, but are themselves created? No aid can they give them, nor can they aid themselves!

If you call them to guidance, they will not obey. For you, it is the same whether you call them, or you hold your peace!

Verily, those whom you call upon besides God are servants like unto you: Call upon them and let them listen to your prayer, if you are truthful!

Have they feet to walk with? Or hands to lay hold with? Or eyes to see with? Or ears to hear with? Say, "Call your god—partners, scheme against me, and give me no respite! Verily, my Protector is Allah Who revealed the Book, and He protects the righteous. But those you call upon besides Him are unable to help you and indeed to help themselves. If you call them to guidance, they hear not. You will see them looking at you, but they see not."

Show forgiveness; command what is right; and turn away from the ignorant.

### **Section-23 of Chapter-7 [Verse 201-203]: Evil Thought**

If a suggestion from Satan assails your (mind), seek refuge with God; for He hears and knows. Those who fear God, when a thought of evil from Satan assaults them bring God to remembrance, and they then see!

But their brethren plunge them deeper into error, and never relax.

If you bring them not a miracle, they say, "Why have you not brought it?" Say, "I but follow what is revealed to me from my Lord; this is lights from your Lord and guidance and mercy for any who have faith."

### **Section-24 of Chapter-7 [Verse 204-206]: Listen to the Quran and worship Allah**

When the Qur'an is read, listen to it with attention and hold your peace that you may receive mercy. And bring your Lord to remembrance in your soul with humility, and in reverence, without loudness in words in the mornings and evenings; and be not you of those who are un-heedful.

Those who are near to your Lord disdain not to do Him worship. They celebrate His praises and bow down before Him.

## Chapter 8 [Al Anfal THE SPOILS OF WAR]

**Aim of the Chapter:** To provide the General Instructions of War

### Introduction

The next Surah (Chapter-9) declares all out war against the Pagans. Before declaring the war, important policies and guidelines of war have been given in this Surah.

A group of Verses may have been revealed depending on the need of time, but it is important to us where the Verses have been put in the Quran.

### Flowchart of the Tafsir

Section 1 [Verse: 1-4]: Spoils of War

Section 2 [Verse: 5-14]: Helps of Allah in the Battle of Badr

Section 3 [Verse: 15-17]: Never turn Back

Section 4 [Verse: 18-19]: Verily Allah is with the Believers

Section 5 [Verse: 20-28]: Listen, Obey, and Never Oppress  
when you are Victorious

Section 6 [Verse: 29]: Promise of *the Furqan*

Section 7 [Verse: 30-38]: Allah has Plans

Section 8 [Verse: 39-44]: Fight them on

Section 9 [Verse: 45-48]: Way to Success

Section 10 [Verse: 49-54]: Hypocrite Propaganda

Section 11 [Verse: 55-59]: Covenant

Section 12 [Verse: 60-63]: Develop Force

Section 13 [Verse: 64-66]: Force Ratio

Section 14 [Verse: 67-71]: Terror and Prisoner of War

Section 15 [Verse: 72-75]: Security of Believers

## Tafsir of the Surah

### Section-1 of Chapter-8 [Verse 1-4]: Spoils of War

They ask you concerning spoils of war (booty). Say: Spoils are at the disposal of Allah and the Messenger. So, fear Allah and keep straight the relations between yourselves. Obey Allah and His Messenger, if you do believe.

Only the Believers who when Allah is mentioned feel a tremor in their minds, and when they hear His Verses rehearsed find their faith strengthened and put their trust in their Lord, who establish regular prayers and spend out of the gifts We have given them for sustenance—those, they are the Believers in truth, to them ranks with their Lord, and forgiveness, and generous sustenance.

### Remarks

Subsequently, in this Surah, the policy of dividing the booty (5:1) is given. But, in the above Verses, the booties are declared at the disposal Prophet (pbuh) / Highest Islamic Leadership. So, no dispute should be raised on the judgments of his distribution.

The Verses of Second Paragraph are talking about the Believers that will have higher ranks and generous sustenance from their Lord. The Verses do not change the general policy of Allah that is: *“Those who believe, and those who follow the Jewish (scriptures), and the Christians and the Sabians—any who believe in one God and the Last Day, and work righteousness, shall have their reward with their*

*Lord; on them shall be no fear, nor shall they grieve.”*  
*[Al Quran 2:62]*

## **Section-2 of Chapter-8 [Verse 5-14]: Helps of Allah in the Battle of Badr**

Just as your Lord ordered you out of your house in truth, even though a party among the Believers disliked it, disputing with you concerning the truth after it was made manifest, as if they were being driven to death and they saw it. Behold! Allah promised you one of the two parties that it should be yours. You wished that the one unarmed should be yours, but Allah willed to justify the Truth according to His words and to cut off the roots of the Unbelievers that He might justify truth and prove falsehood false, distasteful though it be to those in guilt.

Remember, you implored the assistance of your Lord and He answered you: "I will assist you with a thousand of the angels, ranks on ranks." Allah made it but a message of hope and an assurance to your hearts; there is no help except from Allah, and Allah is Exalted in Power, Wise.

Remember, He covered you with a sort of drowsiness to give you calm as from Himself, and he caused rain to descend on you from the sky to clean you therewith, to remove from you the stain of Satan, to strengthen your hearts, and to plant your feet firmly therewith.

Remember your Lord inspired the angels: I am with you; give firmness to the believers. I will instill terror into the hearts of the unbelievers. Smite you above their necks and smite all their finger-tips off them."

This is because, they contended against Allah and His Messenger. If any contend against Allah and His Messenger,

Allah is strict in punishment. This is, so test it, and surely for the disbelievers is the torment of the fire.

**Remarks:**

The above Verses discuss the nature of Allah's help.  
In short:

- a. Eventually the plan of Allah gets materialized. He is always in control.
- b. He helps by the angels.
- c. He calm and strengthen the Muslims so as to keep them firm in the battle field.
- d. He instills terror into the hearts of the unbelievers.

**Section-3 of Chapter-8 [Verse15-17]: Never turn Back**

O you who believe, when you meet the unbelievers in a battlefield, never turn your backs to them. If any do turn his back to them on such a day, unless it be in a stratagem of war or to retreat to a troop, he draws on himself the wrath of Allah, and his abode is Hell, an evil refuge!

It is not you who slew them, it was Allah; when you threw, it was not your act, but Allah's.

In order that He might test the believers by a gracious trial from Himself; for Allah is He Who hears and knows.

**Remarks:**

A Muslim is not allowed to fly away from a battlefield. In above Verses, Allah declares: *It is not you who slew them, it was Allah; when you threw, it*

*was not your act but Allah's.* How can a Muslim give up when Allah is so intensely close to him!

The Verses allow to recoil for tactical gain; the Verses also allow to withdraw to a troop, poised to fight or fighting the same war.

#### **Section-4 of Chapter-8 [Verse 18-19]: Verily Allah is with the Believers**

That, and surely, Allah makes feeble the plans and stratagem of the unbelievers.

If you ask for a judgment, now the judgment has come to you.

And if you cease, it will be better for you; and if you return, so shall we return, and your forces will be of no avail to you however numerous they be—and verily Allah is with those who believe!

#### **Remarks:**

The Aim of a battle is not to annihilate the opposing party completely. Allah keeps watch on them. He makes their plan and stratagem feeble. Muslims fight again if the enemy returns for a fight.

#### **Section-5 of Chapter-8 [Verse 20-28]: Listen, Obey, and Never Oppress when you are Victorious**

O you who believe, obey Allah and His Messenger and turn not away from him when you hear. Nor be like those who say, "We hear", but listen not. Verily, the worst of beasts in the sight of Allah are the deaf and the dumb; those who

understand not—if Allah had found in them any good, He would indeed have made them listen; if He had made them listen, they would but have turned back and declined.

O you who believe, give your response to Allah and His Messenger when he calls you to that which will give you life; and know that Allah comes in between a man and his heart, and that it is He to Whom you shall be gathered.

And fear tumult or oppression, which affects not in particular those of you who do wrong—and know that Allah is strict in punishment.

### **Remarks:**

The Muslims must not oppress the civilians and produce tumult when they are victorious.

The Surah subsequently says (in Section-14) to establish terror. It was to be established in the battle field through the soldiers that were fighting or were captured, not by oppressing unarmed people of the captured land.

Muslims had many battles to fight in future. They were destined to capture a great part of the World. Allah knew the future. So, Allah wanted terror to be established in the initial battles. Actually, it saves lives in subsequent battles and helps to gain control over the captured territories. It is a positive war strategy for the Forces that are poised to fight subsequent battles over a long period of time.

The modern Armies call the tactic “Shock and Awe”. In the Iraq War (2003), the US Army shocked people in the initial days by massive bombing in Baghdad and inflicted Awe (Terror).

It should be carefully planned by well educated, well trained, and wise planners. Otherwise a Force may fall in the condition of ISIS who tried to establish terror by killing unarmed military cadets of Iraq, by posting the videos of execution, and by burning the fighter pilot of Jordan alive. These acts outraged the general people.

But, the US Army did not earn bad name, because their bombing did not kill the civilians indiscriminately. They used precision guided bombs and carefully selected the targets. They broadcasted their activities regularly and freely to the people; there were embedded Reporters with the advancing soldiers.

Call to mind, when you were small, despised through the land, and afraid that men might despoil and kidnap you. But He provided a safe asylum for you, strengthened you with His aid, and gave you good things for sustenance that you might be grateful.

O you that believe, betray not the trust of Allah and the Messenger, nor misappropriate knowingly things entrusted to you. And know you that your possessions and your progeny are but a trial, and that it is Allah with Whom lies your highest reward.

**Section-6 of Chapter-8 [Verse 29]: Promise of *the Furqan***

O you who believe! If you obey and fear Allah, He will endow you with *Furqan*, remove from you evil you, and forgive you—for Allah is the Lord of grace unbounded.

## Remarks:

In above Verse, "Furqan" means "War Book". A Part of the Quran is War Book (Furqan). The Part is identified in the following Verse:

"It is He Who sent down to thee the Book (the Quran) in Truth confirming that was before it, and He sent down the Torah, and the Gospel.

From (here/Chapter-3) before 'Guidance for Mankind' (that starts at Chapter-10), sent down the "Furqan" as well. [Al Quran 3:3]

So, according to the above Verse, the Furqan starts at Chapter-3 and ends at Chapter-9.

"Furqan" is commonly defined as: "Criterion by which to discern true from false". The definition is not correct:

"Firqin" means "Parts";

"Farraqu" means "Divide";

So, "Furqan" should mean "something that divides". A sword can be called Furqan.

In the following Verse, the "Day of the Battle of Badr" is called the "Day of Furqan":

"...if you do believe in Allah and what We sent down to Our servant on the Day of Furqan, on the day of the

meeting of the two forces; for Allah  
has power over all things.”

[Al Quran 8:41]

In the above Verse, the “Day of Furqan” means “*the day of the meeting of the two forces*”. So, “Furqan” means “Battle” when two forces meet to fight with each other.

Therefore, if a Book is called Furqan, it should be understood as a “War Book”.

This Surah was revealed after the Battle of Badr, fought in the 2<sup>nd</sup> Hijri, when the Sahabah were told in the Verses under discussion that they would be given Furqan if they obeyed and feared Allah.

They were to be obedient—it means that they were to be a disciplined force.

But a disciplined Force too may cause tumult and oppression if they do not fear Allah. So, they were called to be “God Fearing” people.

Therefore, the prerequisites of getting the Furqan were: to be obedient, and to be God-fearing.

The Furqan was given step by step. After the conquest of Makkah, in 8<sup>th</sup> Hijri, they got Surah Tawbah (Chapter-9) that completed the Furqan.

Surah Tawbah shaped up the next Phase of Islamic Revolution. In this Surah, Allah declared all-out war against the Pagans, directly:

“But when the forbidden months are past, then fight and slay the Pagans wherever you find them, and seize them, beleaguer them, and lie in wait

for them in every stratagem; but if they repent and perform “As-Salat” and give “Zakat”, then open the way for them; for Allah is Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful”

[Al Quran 9:5 (Surah Tawbah)]

Above Verse gives the executive order to fight and sets the policy about Pagans that they should be killed wherever they are found. And if some of them are arrested, they should be taken to a safe place and motivated to accept Islam. If they accept Islam (perform As Salat and Pay Zakat), they are to be released.

But, in most of Arab Lands, the pagans were under the protection of the People of the Book (Christian Kings, and Rulers under Roman Byzantine Empire). So, the ruling about the People of the Book too is given in the same Surah:

“Fight those (Pagans) who believe not in God, nor the Last Day, nor hold that forbidden which has been forbidden by God and His Apostle, nor acknowledge the religion of Truth; (Fight the opposing fighters) from those who were given the Book (Jews / Christians)—until they pay Jizya willingly while they are subdued.”

[Al Quran 9:29 (Surah Tawbah)]

So, Pagans had to be fought till they accepted Islam, and the People of the Book had to be fought till they were subdued and started paying jizya willingly. The People of the Book could keep their religion.

Therefore, the “Furqan” is a “Book of Jihad leading to the physical fighting”. The giving of Furqan starts at Chapter-3 and ends at Chapter-9. It authorizes Al Muttaqin to resort to offensive war for Preaching Islam. It is given with the “Rules of Engagement”.

Soon Prophet (pbuh) departed. But his followers continued. They were ordered by the Prophet (pbuh) to capture as far as a camel could go. Within three generations, the Home of Ummah (Darussalam), spanning from Morocco to the Pamirs, was established, and Islam was accepted by the population throughout the land.

The people of a captured territory could easily understand that those saintly fighters were fighting for the cause of Allah only, and accepted Islam willfully.

### **Section-7 of Chapter-8 [Verse 30-38]: Allah has Plans**

Remember how the unbelievers plotted against you to keep you in bonds, or slay you, or get you out—they plot and plan, and Allah too plans, but the best of planners is Allah.

When Our signs are rehearsed to them, they say, "We have heard this; if we wished, we could say like these: these are nothing but tales of the ancients."

Remember how they said, "O Allah, if this is indeed the truth from You, rain down on us a shower of stones from the sky or send us a grievous penalty." But Allah was not

going to send them a penalty while you were among them, nor was He going to send it while they could ask for pardon.

But what plea they have that Allah should not punish them when they keep out from the sacred mosque, and they are not its guardians. No men can be its guardians except the Guards (Muttaqin), but most of them do not understand. Their prayer at the House is nothing but whistling and clapping of hands: "Taste you the penalty because you blasphemed."

The Unbelievers spend their wealth to hinder from the path of Allah, and so will they continue to spend, but in the end, it will become an anguish for them. Then they will be overcome, and the unbelievers will be gathered together to Hell.

In order that Allah may separate the impure from the pure, put the impure one on another, heap them together, and cast them into Hell. They will be the ones to have lost.

Say to the Unbelievers: if they desist, their past would be forgiven, but if they return (to hostility), then the precedent of the former peoples has already taken place.

### **Remarks:**

In such human affairs, Allah acts through the people in His side. He plans and helps them in the execution of their plan. The nature of His help is discussed, in Section-2 of this Chapter.

Allah normally does not destroy the oppositions by divine disasters.

He separates the impure from the pure by assessing their activities. He will put the impure in the hell (galaxies of this universe) and the pure in the

Jannaat. Thus, the universes will be filled up after the Judgment.

### **Section-8 of Chapter-8 [Verse 39-44]: Fight them on**

And fight them on until there is no more tumult or oppression, and there prevail justice and faith in Allah, altogether and everywhere. But if they cease, verily Allah does see all that they do. If they refuse, be sure that Allah is your Protector, the best to protect and the best to help.

And know that out of all the booty that you may acquire a fifth share is assigned to Allah and to the Messenger, and to near relatives, orphans, the needy, and the wayfarer if you do believe in Allah and what We sent down to Our servant on the Day of Furqan, on the day of the meeting of the two forces; for Allah has power over all things.

Remember, you were on the hither side of the valley, and they on the farther side, and the caravan on lower ground than you. Even if you had made a mutual appointment to meet, you would certainly have failed in the appointment—but that Allah might accomplish a matter already enacted; that those who died might die after a Clear Sign; and those who lived might live after a Clear Sign; and verily, Allah is He Who hears and knows.

Remember, in your dream, Allah showed them to you as few; if He had shown them to you as many, you would surely have been discouraged and you would surely have disputed in decision, but Allah saved; for He knows well the hearts.

And remember, when you met, He showed them to you as few in your eyes, and He made you appear as

contemptible in their eyes that Allah might accomplish a matter already enacted; for to Allah do all questions go back.

**Remarks:**

The above Verses mention the Battle of Badr as “*already enacted*” because the same battle was fought in the “Virtual World” as well. Our lives on the Earth are the repetitions of the virtual lives. The Virtual World (Master Design) is discussed in Section-9 of Chapter-6.

**Section-9 of Chapter-8 [Verse 45-48]: Way to Success**

O you who believe, when you meet a force be firm and call Allah in remembrance much that you may prosper. And obey Allah and His Messenger, and fall into no disputes lest you lose heart and your power depart, and be patient and persevering, for Allah is with those who patiently persevere.

And be not like those who started from their homes insolently, and to be seen of men, and to hinder from the path of Allah; for Allah compasses round about all that they do.

Remember Satan made their acts seem alluring to them and said: "No one among men can overcome you this day while I am near to you". But when the two forces came in sight of each other, he turned on his heels and said: "Lo! I am clear of you. Lo! I see what you see not. Lo! I fear Allah; for Allah is Strict in Punishment."

**Remarks:**

Remembrance of Allah (Zikr), Patience, and Perseverance are necessary in a battle.

There should coherence among the Muslims, and no dispute. A Muslim should not hesitate to follow the orders. He should be firm during the battle.

One's insolent conduct should not affect the Command.

### **Section-10 of Chapter-8 [Verse 49-54]: Hypocrite Propaganda**

Lo! The hypocrites' say, and those in whose hearts is a disease, "these people—their religion has misled them;" but if any trust in Allah, behold, Allah is Exalted in might, Wise.

If you could see, when the angels take the souls of the unbelievers! They smite their faces and their backs, "Taste the penalty of the blazing Fire because of which your hands sent forth; for Allah is never unjust to His servants."

Similar to the behavior of the People of Pharaoh and those before them: they rejected the Verses of Allah, so Allah punished them for their sins; for Allah is Strong and Strict in punishment.

That is because Allah would not change a favor, which He had bestowed upon a people, until they change what is within them; and indeed, Allah is Hearing and Knowing.

Similar to the behavior of the People of Pharaoh and those before them: they belied the Verses of their Lord, so We destroyed them for their sins, and We drowned the People of Pharaoh for they were all oppressor wrong-doers.

### **Remarks:**

The Muslims fighting for the cause of Allah should have firm faith on the Way of Islam.

In the initial days, a struggle may be facing turmoil, and it may look hopeless, but Allah is with His people; He ultimately steer them to the success.

### **Section-11 of Chapter-8 [Verse 55-59]: Covenant**

For the worst of beasts in the sight of Allah are those who reject Him—they will not believe. They are those with whom you did make a covenant, but they break their covenant every time, and they have not the fear. If you gain the mastery over them in war, punish them severely in order to disperse those who are behind them.

If you fear treachery from any group, throw back (their covenant) to them on equal terms; for Allah loves not the treacherous. And let not those who disbelieve think that they can outstrip. Verily, they will never be able to save themselves.

### **Remarks:**

The treacherous people do not add to strength. They should be expelled from the Forces.

If Muslims fear treachery from any group, they may throw back the covenant. Here clear proof is not required; if Muslims “fear treachery”, they can reject a covenant and move ahead along with their plan.

## **Section-12 of Chapter-8 [Verse 60-63]: Develop Force**

Against them make ready your strength to the utmost of your power, including steeds of war, to strike terror into the enemies of God, and your enemies, and others besides whom you may not know but whom Allah does know. Whatever you shall spend in the cause of Allah shall be repaid unto you, and you shall not be treated unjustly.

But if the enemy inclines towards peace, you also incline towards peace, and trust in Allah; for He is One that hears and knows.

Should they intend to deceive you, verily Allah suffice you. He it is that has strengthened you with His aid and with the Believers, and He has put affection between their hearts—not, if you had spent all that is in the Earth, could you have produced that affection, but Allah has done it; for He is Exalted in might, Wise.

### **Remarks:**

In the time of peace, Muslims should develop their Forces.

If enemy incline towards peace, Muslims too should incline towards peace. Muslims should not attack being afraid of deception. Allah foils the plans and preparations of the enemy. He has power on everyone's mind.

### **Section-13 of Chapter-8 [Verse 64-66]: Force Ratio**

O Prophet, sufficient unto you is Allah, and unto those who follow you among the Believers. O Prophet, rouse the Believers to the fight. If there are twenty amongst you patient and persevering, they will vanquish two hundred; if a hundred, they will vanquish a thousand of the Unbelievers; for these are a people without understanding.

For the present, Allah has lightened your (task), for He knows that there is a weak spot in you. But, if there are a hundred of you patient and persevering, they will vanquish two hundred; and if a thousand, they will vanquish two thousand with the leave of Allah; for Allah is with those who patiently persevere.

#### **Remarks:**

In above Verses, the prescribed Force Ratio of Enemy to Believer is 2:1, but with increased patience and perseverance it can be developed to 10:1.

Therefore, an offensive may resume if the Force Ratio is minimum 10:1. And a Muslim commander has no reason to give up if the Force Ratio is 2:1 or over.

However, Muslims can withdraw to gain tactical advantage or to join another force of their own.

The Force Ratio relates to similarly equipped Forces. If the enemy is using Force Multipliers, it is to be taken into consideration. Today, a troop of soldier is committed to a battle field with Armored, Artillery, and Anti-Tank back-ups. They have different types of

weapon in balanced proportion, communication instruments, night vision devices, good maps and GPSs. They have highly trained Commanders, and they fight in the framework of well-developed plans. They are specially trained before they are committed to a battle fields. Their area is watched by drones, satellites, and surveillance RADARs to save them from being surprised.

So, if a People have not followed the instruction of previous Section—*Against them make ready your strength to the utmost of your power*—they should not get involved in the War of Furqan.

The Furqan relates to the war for preaching Islam among Pagans (Idolaters), and it keeps the Muslim Societies supportive to the Islamic Leadership. The Furqan is not for national defense.

A basic Army and organized people are enough for the defense of a country. Fight tooth and nail when you are attacked. It too is a kind of Jihad, but not a Jihad of Furqan. The permission of such defensive Jihad is given in Chapter-2, and the Furqan start at Chapter-3.

The main point of above discussion is that the Force Ratio must be considered while planning an offensive war of the Furqan, and today's Force Ratio does not depend on manpower only.

And follow the conscience of Prophet (pbuh) as visible in the Battle of Ditch and in the Capture of Makkah. If a leader does not value your life, don't value him as a leader. However, understand the decisive moment of "do or die" as well.

## **Section-14 of Chapter-8 [Verse 67-71]: Terror and Prisoner of War**

It is not fitting for a Prophet that he should have prisoners of war until he had made a great slaughter in the land. You look for the temporal goods of this world, but Allah looks to the hereafter; and Allah is Exalted in Might, Wise. Had it not been for a previous ordainment from Allah, a severe penalty would have reached you for the (ransom) that you took. But enjoy what you took in war, lawful and good, but fear Allah; for Allah is Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful.

### **Remarks:**

Allah wanted terror to be established through the Battle of Badr, as the Verses say: *It is not fitting for a Prophet that he should have prisoners of war until he had made a great slaughter in the land.*

In the Battle of Badr, many Pagans became prisoners on the verge of being killed. Later they got released by paying ransom. Many of them might have had managed the ransom from the Leaders of Makkah who drove them into the next battle.

As the terror was not established in the Battle of Badr, many Pagans were encouraged to come for the Battle of Uhud when Allah revealed the following Verse:

“Soon shall We cast terror into the hearts of the Unbelievers, for that they joined companions with God, for which He had sent no authority; their abode will be the Fire, and evil is the home of the wrong-doers!”

[Al Quran 3:151]

It is helpful to establish terror if the war involves fighting subsequent battles. If the terror is established in the initial battles, winning subsequent battles become easier. The opposing Forces get scared and psychologically weak. The booty seeking men do not come or fly away.

For example, a Pagan Tribe would be interested to join a war against Muslims, because they knew the Muslims as small and weak people. But the same Tribe would not join a Force going against Roman or Persian Emperor.

Terror helps in consolidation as well. People of captured territories obey the incoming Ruler easily, without being pressurized / oppressed.

And in the old times, the Command of Central Power used to be weak in distant territories. It was not like today when there are electronic communications, newspapers, roads and railway. So, terror was needed to maintain order.

However, negative use of terror is sinful and useless. Mongol Army of Genghis Khan is a dark part of the history, and they have no sign of their rule, but the Islam is established.

So, some Muslim Ruler used limited terror for short initial periods of their rules to maintain peace and unity, and that was the order of the time; people understood it, and they welcomed Islam.

The Muslims under Prophet Muhammad (pbuh) had many battles to fight in future. They were destined to capture a great part of the World. Allah knew the future. So, Allah wanted terror to be established in the initial days, from the Battle of Badr.

But, the terror was not established in the Battle of Badr. It was established later by Khalid ibne al-Walid:

Hadith: “Ibn Omar reported that the Apostle of Allah sent Khalid-b-Walid to Banu Jizimah and invited them to Islam, but they were not good enough to say: ‘We accepted Islam.’ They began to say: ‘We are Sabeans; we are Sabeans.’ Then Khalid began to put them to death and make them captives. He allotted one captive to every one of us till one day Khalid passed order to put to every captive under us to death. I said: ‘By Allah, I shall not kill my captive, and none of my companions will kill his captive till we approach the Prophet and mention it to him.’ He (Prophet, pbuh) raised up his hands and said: ‘O Allah, I am innocent to Thee of what Khalid did – twice.’”

[Bukhari]

The death of some saved the lives of many, as many later Tribes gave up without fighting and accepted Islam clearly. By the time a Muslim Force was reaching a Pagan Tribe, the Tribe had already converted to Islam.

Later, the establishment of terror was not required, as the following Verses allowed Muslims to take prisoners.

“But when the forbidden months are past, then fight and slay the Pagans wherever ye find them, and seize them, beleaguer them, and lie in wait for them in every stratagem (of war); but if they repent and establish regular prayers and practise regular charity, then open the way for them; for God is Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful.

If one amongst the Pagans asks thee for asylum, grant it to him so that he may hear the word of God, and then escort him to where he can be secure. That is because they are men without knowledge.”

[Al Quran 9: 5–6]

However, the Quran has not cancelled any Verse. The Highest Islamic Leadership may adopt the policy of establishing terror in the initial times if he plans to fight successive battles over a long period of

time to vanquish paganism (idol worshipping) from a land.

After the death of Prophet Muhammad (pbuh), several Tribes revolted against Madinah and many would subsequently follow if Khalid ibne al-Walid was not there. Within about two years (during Hadrat Abu Bakr) he consolidated Arabian Peninsula and the Force moved against Roman Byzantine Empire.

Prophet (pbuh) was very compassionate to Arabs. He dug a huge ditch through extreme hardship to avoid casualties. He prepared for the Battle of Makkah with extreme care and captured without bloodshed. To him each Muttaqi was counted as well as other Arabs. He was ordered in Chapter-4 to fight and kill the hypocrites, but he did not do it [the Quran is a Book of Guidance, not a Book of Orders, so the Highest Islamic Leadership can delay or avoid a Jihad]. The Quran says:

“Now hath come unto you an Apostle  
from amongst yourselves: it grieves  
him that ye should perish; ardently  
anxious is he over you; to the  
Believers is he most kind and  
merciful.” [Al Quran 9:128]

Thus, in Chapter-9 Allah ordered mentioning the time to start the war against the Pagans (idol worshippers):

“But when the forbidden months are past, then fight and slay the Pagans ...” [Al Quran 9:5]

The above Verse is not guidance; it is an order, because it is given with time.

But it does not mean that Prophet (pbuh) was a weak Commander. He dealt with the Jews severely and unwaveringly and did what he was supposed to do for the eternal safety of the Islam. Makkah and Madinah had to be freed from all viable adversaries and their counter-thoughts forever.

In modern time, the terror is established by massive 'use of force' in the initial days of war. It is called 'Shock and Awe'.

*“Shock and Awe is a tactic based on the use of overwhelming power and spectacular displays of force to paralyze the enemy's perception of the battlefield and destroy their will to fight.”*

*– Wikipedia, the Free Encyclopedia*

To conclude:

The terror is to be established through the acts of battle field—it must not be established by planting or throwing bombs in the populated areas where it is not sure who will be killed.

If a Muslim is doing the Jihad of Furqan, he must not plant mines and booby traps, he must not fire missiles or Arty shells, he must not throw bombs, he must not use chemical or biological or nuclear weapon in a populated area.

He must fight under the direction of the Highest Islamic Leadership; the Jihad of Furqan is his responsibility.

O Prophet, say to those who are captives in your hands, "If Allah finds any good in your hearts, He will give you something better than what has been taken from you, and He will forgive you; for Allah is Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful." But if they have treacherous designs against you, they have already been in treason against Allah, and so has He given (you) power over them; and Allah is He Who has knowledge and wisdom.

### **Section-15 of Chapter-8 [Verse 72-75]: Security of Believers**

Those who believed and adopted exile and fought for the Faith with their property and their persons in the cause of Allah as well as those who gave asylum and aid—these are friends and protectors one of another.

As to those who believed but came not into exile, you owe no duty of protection to them until they come into exile; but if they seek your aid in religion, it is your duty to help them, except against a people with whom you have a treaty of mutual alliance. And Allah sees all that you do.

The Unbelievers are protectors one of another. Unless you do this, there would be tumult and oppression on earth, and great mischief.

Those who believe and adopt exile and fight for the Faith in the cause of Allah as well as those who give asylum and aid—these are in very truth the Believers; for them is the forgiveness of sins and a provision most generous.

And those who accept Faith subsequently and adopt exile and fight for the Faith in your company they are of you. But kindred by blood have prior rights against each other in the Book of Allah. Verily, Allah is well-acquainted with all things.

## Chapter 9 [Al Tawbah THE REPENTANCE]

**Aim of the Chapter:** To declare all out War against the Pagans and to direct subsequent Mobilizations.

### Introduction

Surah Tawbah is the ultimate Surah of the “Furqan”.

The Furqan is a Book within a Book. It starts at Chapter-3 and ends in this Chapter (Chapter-9):

“It is He Who sent down to thee the Book in Truth (the Quran) confirming what went before it; and He sent down the Torah (to Moses), and the Gospel (to Jesus).

From (here / Chapter-3) before the “Guidance for Mankind” (that starts at Chapter-10) sent down the “Furqan” as well, then those who reject Faith in the Verses of God will suffer the severest penalty; and God is Exalted in Might, Lord of Retribution.”

[Al Quran 3: 3-4]

The Surah (Chapter-9) was revealed after the conquest of Makkah. The Surah shaped up subsequent Phase of Islamic Revolution. In this Surah, Allah declared all-out war against the Pagans (Idol Worshipers):

“But when the forbidden months are past, then fight and slay the Pagans wherever you find them, and seize them, beleaguer them, and lie in wait for them in every stratagem; but if they

repent and perform As-Salat and give Zakat,  
then open the way for them; for Allah is Oft-  
forgiving, Most Merciful”

[Al Quran 9:5 (Surah Tawbah)]

The Furqan is a Book of War that inspires, authorizes and guides the struggle leading to the physical fighting. Islam would not spread so rapidly without the “Furqan”.

However, Preaching Islam in the way of Furqan is not applicable beyond the Home of Ummah extending from Morocco to the Pamirs (the Home is discussed in Section-7 of this Chapter).

Beyond the Home, the Islam is supposed to be preached by Sufis / Daees. The matter is discussed in the ‘Introduction of Part-2’ (Guidance for Mankind).

It is worth mentioning that a war for the expansion of Islam can be planned and executed by the Highest Islamic Leadership only.

### **Structure of the Surah**

The Surah is divided in 5 Segments:

In the First Segment, the Surah declares all-out offensive against the Pagans (Idolaters).

In the Second Segment, it frees Kabah and handover the mission of preaching Islam to the new generation.

The Third Segment gives out the Rules of Engagement.

The Forth Segment inspires and instructs to join the war and aid the war expeditions.

The Fifth Segment concludes and highlights the importance of Religious Studies.

The Segments and Sections are given as under:

## **Flowchart of the Tafsir**

### **Segment 1: The Declaration of War**

Section 1 [Verse 1-16]: Obligations Dissolved—Fight and Slay the Pagans

### **Segment 2: Islam entering a New Phase**

Section 2 [Verse 17-18]: Visiting and Maintaining the Kabah

Section 3 [Verse 19]: The Service to Kabah is put in Correct Perspective

Section 4 [Verse 20-22]: The Sahabah at the Highest Rank – the Judgment Declared

Section 5 [Verse 23-27]: Furqan for the following Muttaqin

Section 6 [Verse 28]: The Kabah is forbidden to Pagans

### **Segment 3: The Rules of Engagement**

Section 7 [Verse: 29]: Destroy Pagans and Neutralize People of the Book

Section 8 [Verse: 30-37]: Fighting to subdue People of the Book is justified

### **Segment 4: Instructing New Generation in respect of War Expedition**

Section 9 [Verse: 38-46]: Clinging heavily to the Earth

Section 10 [Verse: 47-52]: People weak in Faith do not add to Force

- Section 11 [Verse: 53-57]: Rejected Contributions  
Section 12 [Verse 58-60]: Security against Slandering  
Islamic Leadership  
Section 13 [Verse: 61-63]: Security against Demeaning  
Islamic Leadership  
Section 14 [Verse: 64-74]: Counter Propaganda  
Section 15 [Verse 75-80]: Security of Believers giving  
Charity for War Expedition  
Section 16 [Verse: 81-96]: Punishment of Evading War  
Expedition  
Section 17 [Verse: 97-106]: Caution in respect of Desert  
Arabs  
Section 18 [Verse: 107-110]: The Importance of Unity  
Section 19 [Verse: 111-112]: Believers Sold-Out

### **Segment 5: Conclusion**

- Section 20 [Verse: 113-114]: Praying for Pagans is Forbidden  
Section 21 [Verse: 115-118]: The Forgiven Three  
Section 22 [Verse: 119-121]: Record and Promise of Reward  
Section 23 [Verse: 122-123]: Importance of Religious  
Studies  
Section 24 [Verse: 124-127]: The Surah  
Section 25 [Verse: 128-129]: Arab Apostle (pbuh)

# **Tafsir of the Surah**

## **Segment1**

### **The Declaration of War**

#### **Section-1 of Chapter-9 [Verse1-16]: Obligations Dissolved—Fight and Slay the Pagans**

Freedom from obligations from Allah and His Messenger to those of Pagans with whom you made a treaty—go you then for four months backwards and forwards throughout the land but know you that you cannot frustrate Allah, but that Allah will cover with shame those who reject Him.

And a declaration from Allah and His Apostle to the people on the Day of the Great Pilgrimage that Allah and His Apostle dissolve obligations with the Pagans. If then, you repent, it was best for you; but if you turn away, know you that you cannot frustrate Allah. And proclaim a grievous penalty to those who reject Faith.

Not dissolved with those Pagans with whom you have entered into alliance and who have not subsequently failed you in aught, nor aided any one against you. So, fulfill your engagements with them to the end of their term; for Allah loves the righteous.

But when the forbidden months are past, then fight and slay the Pagans wherever you find them, and seize them, beleague them, and lie in wait for them in every stratagem; but if they repent and perform “As-Salat” and give “Zakat”, then open the way for them; for Allah is Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful.

If one among the Pagans asks you for asylum, grant it to him so that he may hear the word of Allah, and then escort

him to where he can be secure. That is because they are men without knowledge.

**Remarks:**

After the capture of Makkah, the Verses were revealed: “...when the forbidden months are past, fight and slay the Pagans wherever you find them, and seize them, beleaguer them, and lie in wait for them in every stratagem...”

At the time of Prophet Muhammad (pbuh), every tribe of Arabia was a terrible fighting force. The people were extremely tough, physically and mentally, due to the harsh nature of the land. They were led by strong Tribal Leaderships. Each Tribal Chief was a Ferocious Taghut (Power). And there were Kings and Emperors over them. A man under a Taghut could not accept Islam. So, fighting to remove the Taghuts was necessary, and it began after this Verse.

Surah Tawbah shaped up the Final Phase of Islamic Revolution. The rate of conversion was rising as the Taghuts were being neutralized. Prophet (pbuh) departed, but his followers continued till the final objective was achieved. They established the Home of Ummah extending from Morocco to the Pamirs (Darussalam) and the people in general accepted Islam.

In reality, a few Pagans were killed on this order. They accepted Islam quickly.

Muhammad (pbuh) was the Last Prophet; he could not fail. He preached with utmost sincerity, and

in the end, had to pick up the arms to remove the Taghuts so that the people could accept Islam in safety.

Moses went to Egypt with 9 clear signs, but the result was zero. The Christianity was preached in Arabia by highly trained Preachers for about 500 years, but the result was disheartening. But, Allah is very compassionate on Arabians and Iranians. Finally He adopted the Way of Furqan to press the teaching home. The Way was needed for the land due to the nature its people, and its social and political structures.

How can there be a league before Allah and His Apostle with the Pagans, except those with whom you made a treaty near the Sacred Mosque! As long as these stand true to you, stand you true to them; for Allah does love the righteous.

How! Seeing that if they get an advantage over you, they respect not in you the ties, either of kinship or of covenant? With their mouths they entice you, but their hearts are averse from you; and most of them are rebellious and wicked. The Verses of Allah they have sold for a miserable price, and they have hindered from His way; evil indeed are the deeds they have done.

With regards to a Believer, they respect not the ties either of kinship or of covenant! It is they who have transgressed all bounds. But, if they repent and perform As-Salat and give Zakat, they are your brethren in Faith. We do explain the Verses in detail for those who understand.

But, if they violate their oaths after their covenant and taunt you for your faith, fight you the leaders of disbelief, for

their oaths are nothing to them, that thus they may be restrained.

Will you not fight people who violated their oaths, plotted to expel the Apostle, while they did attack you first? Do you fear them? Nay, it is Allah Whom you should more justly fear, if you believe!

Fight them, and Allah will punish them by your hands, cover them with shame, help you over them, heal the breasts of Believers, and calm the resentment of their minds; for Allah will turn to whom He will, and Allah is All-Knowing, All-Wise.

### **Remarks:**

Allah heals the minds of the Believers that fight, as it is said in above Verses: *“Allah will...heal the breasts of Believers, and calm the resentment of their hearts.”*

There would always remain a question before attacking a tribe that should they be given more time to accept Islam? Once a Pagan died in the battlefield, there would remain a question in the mind, was the Message passed to him properly, etc. This kind of heart burning may demobilize a troop if the number of soft hearted people is more among them. It is something like “Gulf War Syndrome”. Some of US Soldiers returning from Afghan War, Gulf War, and Iraq War were seen suffering from uncommon psychic and physical problems; many of them committed suicide. These types of mental problems do not happen to the people returning from prolong Jihad, because Allah heals the breasts of the Believers and calm the resentment of their minds.

Or think you that you shall be forsaken while Allah did not make evident those among you who strive with might and main and take none for friends and protectors except Allah, His Apostle, and the Believers? And Allah is well-acquainted with that you do.

## **Segment 2** **Islam entering a New Phase**

### **Section-2 of Chapter-9 [Verse 17-18]: Visiting and Maintaining the Kabah**

It is not for such as join gods with Allah to visit or maintain the mosques of Allah while they witness against their own souls to infidelity. The works of such bear no fruit; in Fire shall they dwell. The mosques of Allah shall be visited and maintained by such as believe in Allah and the Last Day, perform As-Salat and give Zakat, and fear none except Allah. It is they who are expected to be on true guidance.

#### **Remarks:**

There were 360 idols in the Kabah. Those were broken and removed. The responsibility of maintaining the Kabah was taken over, and the Pagans were forbidden to visit. Thus, the Pagans of Arabia lost their spiritual center.

In the history of Islam, the capture of Makkah marks the beginning of a new phase. The people began to convert in masses and Islam was firmly

established in Arabian Peninsula. The Kabah became the Spiritual Center of Muslims.

### **Section-3 of Chapter-9 [Verse 19]: The Service to Kabah is put in Correct Perspective**

Do you make the giving of drink to pilgrims or the maintenance of the Sacred Mosque equal to those who believe in Allah and the Last Day and strive hard and fight in the cause of Allah? They are not comparable in the sight of Allah, and Allah guides not those who do wrong.

### **Section-4 of Chapter-9 [Verse 20-22]: The Sahabah at the Highest Rank – the Judgment Declared**

Those who believe and suffer exile and strove hard and fought in Allah's cause with their wealth and their lives have the highest rank in the sight of Allah. They are the successful. Their Lord does give them glad tidings of a Mercy from Himself, of His good pleasure, and of Jannaat; for them wherein are delights that endure. They will dwell therein forever. Verily in Allah's presence is a reward, the greatest.

### **Remarks**

The Sahabah who got the Highest Rank and the tidings of Jannaat is mentioned in above Verses. They have three criteria:

- a. They Believed
- b. Suffered Exile (before the capture of Makkah)
- c. And strove hard and fought in Allah's cause with their wealth and their lives.

Mainly, the Muhajirs fall in this group.

The Ansars are given the good news of Jannaat in subsequent Verses, but the Verses do not mention that they have the Highest Rank.

It was almost like the giving of retirement, as the decision of Allah was pronounced. After the revelation of these Verses, Prophet (pbuh) too was seen trying to uplift the new generation. Often, he selected very young Sahabah to lead the battles. During his illness before death, he assembled a Force against Roman Empire at the outskirts of Madinah under a very Young Leader and appointed Hazrat Ali (32) as the Protector of Madinah. However, the Force did not move due to his death.

### **Section-5 of Chapter-9 [Verse 23-27]: Furqan for the following Muttaqin**

O you who believe, take not as Awliya your fathers and your brothers if they love infidelity above Faith—if any of you do so, they do wrong. Say, if it be that your fathers, your sons, your brothers, your mates, or your kindred, the wealth that you have gained, the commerce in which you fear a decline, or the dwellings in which you delight are dearer to you than Allah, or His Apostle, or the striving in His cause, then wait until Allah brings about His decision; and Allah guides not the rebellious.

Assuredly, Allah did help you in many battlefields and on the day of Hunain. Behold, your great numbers elated you, but they availed you naught—the land, for all that it is wide, did constrain you, and you turned back in retreat. But Allah did pour His calm on the Apostle and on the Believers

and sent down forces, which you saw not. He punished the Unbelievers. Thus, does He reward those without Faith.

Again, Allah will after this turn to whom He will; for Allah is Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful.

### **Remarks**

Above Verses call the Muttaqin to follow the Guidance of Allah persistently and give assurance of God's help.

In 8 AH, after the conquest of Makkah, the Battle of Hunain was fought against the Tribe of Hawazin and its Section, Thaqif, in a valley on the road leading to Taif. Muslims were 12,000 and the opposition was 20,000 in strength.

They were hiding in the higher locations and surprisingly attacked with the arrows. The Muslims were off-balance due to the sudden onslaught of showering arrows and started falling back. But Prophet (pbuh) stood fast unwaveringly. Shortly, Muslims returned being called by Prophet (pbuh) and by the help of Allah achieved a decisive victory.

The Battle of Hunain was the first battle of the New Phase. General Muslims fought the battle, where the help of Allah was vivid. It is widely said that when Prophet (pbuh) fell alone, he picked up a handful of sand and threw it towards the enemy—their eyes were thick with dust; they could no more throw the arrows or fight with sword and started retreating in utter confusion.

After Prophet (pbuh) departed, Muslims soon defeated Persian Empire and Roman Byzantine

Empire, the Super Powers of the Times. Arabs are tough and courageous people, no doubt in it. But how the Forces of general Arabs could defeat well-trained and well-organized Armies of Roman and Persian Empire?

They succeeded due to the help of Allah. The help is promised through this Surah. The First Paragraph of above Verses narrates how the People of Furqan should be. The Second Paragraph describes how the help will be. The Third Paragraph promises for the help of Allah in future.

Most likely, the War Book includes a group of dedicated angels given to aid the Leader of Al Muttaqin (the Highest Islamic Leadership), as the above Verses say: *But Allah did pour His calm on the Apostle and on the Believers and sent down forces, which you saw not.* The Force of Angels was used in the Battle of Hunain—it is still available for the Muttaqin.

In 1980, U.S. Delta Force secretly moved into the First Desert Base in Iran with eight Helicopters and transport aircraft to rescue the hostages of US Embassy in the next night. Three helicopters went out of action: one had cracked rotor blade, one encountered hydraulic problem, and one went out of action due to the desert storm. They cancelled the Mission and were withdrawing when the desert storm came again and a transport aircraft collided with a helicopter. Both were destroyed and several were killed. Imam Khomeini described the sand storms as the acts of these Angels.

And there are many unknown enemy moves that are foiled in the last 40 years (2019) and the Leadership of IRGC (Islamic Revolutionary Guard Corps / can also be de-abbreviated as Islamic Jihadi Muttaqin Corps) is surviving in Iran.

Afghan Mujahedeen too got the help in many occasions while they were fighting against USSR. There are books written on this matter.

But why Taliban were not helped in 2001 in the war against USA? It was because they were enforcing Hadith that Prophet (pbuh) wanted to be burned [Hadith is deliberately discussed in Section-2 of Chapter-31]. They compelled people to keep beard, banned the Music, stopped cultural activities instead of guiding it, compelled women to wear niqab (veil on face), restricted the movement of women and stopped their education, dismantled the Houses of Sufis, and most importantly they failed to contact and obey the Central Islamic Leadership rising in Iran (because many of them thought themselves Sunni). Thus, they restricted and disturbed the life of Muslims without any authority from the Quran. The Divine Forces of Furqan is not likely to help such people in such activities.

Only, the orders and instructions, which are clearly given in the Quran, can be enforced among the people. Now, the Taliban are Okay (2021), as they have corrected themselves.

Finally, Taliban cannot be blamed fully. They are taught by Madrasahs that teach Hadith and Sunnah mainly. The half-hearted curriculum of those Madrasahs was devised in British India.

Finally, the dedicated angels are given for the men that are fighting a 'Battle of Furqan' (offensive Jihad to establish Islam). And a Battle of Furqan must be fought with the permission of the Highest Islamic Leadership. So, the Force of the angels may not be available to the men who do not have his permission.

### **Section-6 of Chapter-9 [Verse 28]: The Kabah is forbidden to Pagans**

O you who believe! Truly the Pagans are unclean, so let them not after this year of theirs approach the Sacred Mosque. And if you fear poverty, soon will Allah enrich you, if He wills, out of His bounty; for Allah is All-knowing, All-wise.

### **Segment 3 The Rules of Engagement**

### **Section-7 of Chapter-9 [Verse 29]: Destroy Pagans and Neutralize People of the Book**

Fight those who believe not in Allah, nor the Last Day, nor hold that forbidden which has been forbidden by Allah and His Apostle, nor acknowledge the religion of Truth (-fight the Pagans); from those who were given the Book, until they pay Jizya willingly while they are subdued (-fight the Jews and Christians).

#### **Remarks:**

According to the Previous Verses, the Muttaqin were to fight the Pagans until they performed As-Salat and

paid Zakat. It meant that the Muttaqin were to fight the Pagans until they became Muslims.

But, the Pagans of the Middle East and Africa were under the protection of Roman Byzantine Empire and her allies. So, in the above Verse, the policy to fight against the People of the Book was given, which is: “...*from those who were given the Book—until they pay Jizya willingly while they are subdued.*”

The Verse did not mean that all the Christians of the world were to be brought under subjugation; it meant the Christians who were countering the preaching of Islam in the Home of Ummah extending from Morocco to the Pamirs.

### **The Home of Ummah**

What is the Home of Ummah?

“And this is a Book, which We have sent down bringing blessings and confirming which came before it, that thou may warn the Mother of Cities and all around her. Those who believe in the Hereafter believe in this, and they are constant in guarding their Prayers” [Al Quran 6:92]

So, to identify the 'Home of Ummah', we are to know the 'Mother of Cities' and the 'People around Her'.

Babylon is considered as the Mother of Cities. It is the birthplace of Abraham. It was a city of Mesopotamia, located in the Middle East (Iraq).

The ruins of Mesopotamia show that the civilization is over 7000 years old. It is the oldest civilization of mankind and is called the Cradle of Civilization.

According to Holy Bible too, Babylon is the first city of mankind. The city life began in Babylon.

Therefore, Babylon can be identified as the Mother of Cities.

Who are the 'People around Babylon'?

They are Arabs and Iranian People. These races were interactive to Babylon from the ancient times. It was their center of gravity.

“Thus, have We sent by inspiration to thee an Arabic Quran that thou may warn the Mother of Cities and all around her. And warn of the Day of Assembly, of which there is no doubt—some will be in the Jannaat and some in the Blazing Fire.

If Allah had so willed, He could have made them (Arabs and Iranians) a single people, but He admits whom He will to His Mercy; and the Wrong-doers will have neither protector nor helper”

[Al Quran 42:7-8]

Therefore, 'Mother of Cities' is 'Babylon' and the 'People around Her' are 'Arabs and Iranian People'. Their lands form the Home of Ummah, which extends from Morocco to the Pamirs.

Today, there should be no doubt about it, as entire population of this area has become Muslims. It is the main land of the Muslim World of today. All Pagans of the area had to accept Islam; Christians and Jews were subdued and had to pay Jizya. It was done by Prophet (pbuh) and his immediate followers (up to 3<sup>rd</sup> generation) according to the guidance of the Furqan.

But, the Prophet (pbuh) had no world map; how he could identify the extent of this Home? So, he gave a simple order: 'Do not go, where the camels do not go' (or words to that effect). It meant that do not carry out a military expedition beyond the 'camel going area'. It looks like a Bedouin idea—not to go where the camels do not go. But today we understand the intelligence of this order. Look into the map—Islam is spread in the 'camel going area' mainly.

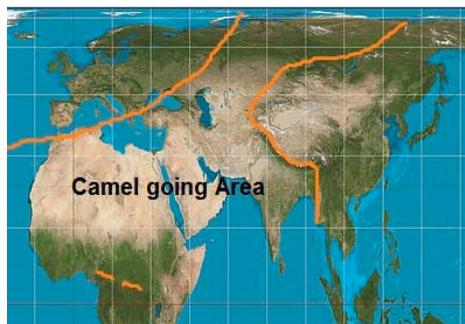


FIGURE 9.1: The Spread of Islam

The camels cannot go to China crossing Altai – Tien Shan – Pamir – Himalayan mountain belt. The camels cannot go to Europe due to the obstructions of Gibraltar and Bosphorus – Black Sea –Volga and Don River Systems – Ural Mountains – and the Polar Icecap.

However, the whole camel going area is not the Home of Ummah. It is the area of Arabs and Iranian people. The area extends from Morocco to the Pamirs.

Prophet (pbuh) viewed Constantinople as the furthest extent of Islamic Territory toward Europe and inspired to capture it, because it was the Seat of Roman Byzantine Emperor ruling the Middle East. Otherwise, it is in the Christian Territory—camel cannot go there.

Prophet said, ‘A king after the name of a Prophet will capture Constantinople’ (or words to that effect). Ottoman Emperor Sultan Muhammad II captured it in 1453 AD.

This is the reason why Caliph Omar did not allow building a Navy. Once Governor of Damascus (Muawiyah) wrote a letter asking permission to build a Navy, Caliph Omar became furious and shouted out saying: ‘By the name of Allah, Muhammad was a true Prophet (pbuh), I will never allow building a Navy’. It is obvious that building of a Navy would mean taking the military expedition beyond the camel going area.

Muawiyah built the so called First Islamic Navy after the death of Hadrat Omar and spoiled energy by fighting against the Europeans.

However, in today's scenario, making a defensive Navy is desirable. A blue water Navy should not be made.

Muslims captured the whole Home of Ummah where Arabians and Iranians were living. Thus, the Mission of the Furqan was complete.

The capturing of land to preach Islam beyond the Home of Ummah is forbidden in light of the following Verses:

“If it had been thy Lord's will, they would all have believed—all who are on earth! Will thou then compel mankind, against their will, to believe!

No soul can believe, except by the will of God, and He will place doubt on those who will not understand.

[Al Quran 10:99-100]

However, later Muslims captured the lands beyond the Home of Ummah, but that did not pay any benefit in respect of preaching Islam. Spain was under the Muslim Rulers for about eight hundred years but hardly any converted to Islam. Turks ruled parts of Europe for hundreds of years. But Muslims we find in those areas are People of Turkish origin.

The area of the Home of Ummah (Morocco to the Pamirs) had to be captured. The area is full of steppes and deserts. The cattle herding was the basic livelihood of the people. They needed to move to graze the cattle, because the grass does remain in an

area throughout a year, and a grazed area needs time to grow the grass again. But the movement would not be possible if they were not organized into Tribes. There would not be any security in the moves and halts, and the locals would not allow them to enter their area with the cattle.

Such a group of people, organized under the strong Tribal Leadership, could not accept Islam until the Tribal Chief had accepted it, and the Tribal Chief would not accept Islam until the King had accepted it. So, these areas were to be captured so that the Taghuts (Tribal Chiefs / Kings / Emperors) were neutralized and the people could accept Islam freely.

The people of other parts of the world live in loosely bound societies. The lands are resourceful to make its people independent. If other people capture their land, they view them as invaders and reject them. “Dawah” by Muslim Saints and Preachers is the way of preaching Islam in these lands. People of Indonesia and Malaysia became Muslims without being captured. The matter is discussed in the Introduction of Part-2 (Guidance to Mankind).

It is worth mentioning that the camel going area is the Home of Ummah in relation to the ‘Strategy of Preaching’ only. As a religion, the Islam is for the whole mankind, which is clearly mentioned in Chapter-10.

Like Muslims, Christians too have a Home. One may read in Holy Bible, how Pope Paul was driven into Europe.

“They travelled through the region of Phrygia and Galatia because the Holy Spirit did not let them preach the message in the province of Asia. When they reached the border of Mysia, they tried to go into the province of Bithynia, but the spirit of Jesus did not allow them...That night Paul had a vision in which he saw a Macedonian standing and begging him: Come over Macedonia and help us...”

– Acts 16 (6-10), Holy Bible

So, Europe is the primary home of Christianity.

Moses too was allotted with a Home, but Jews were not ready to fight for the Land.

### **Scope of taking Jizya**

In this Section, the orders for fighting Pagans, subduing Christians, and taking Jizya are given in the same Verse. So, these are related to each other: Pagans were to be fought, so the Christians (Byzantine Emperor and allied Kings) protecting the Pagans were to be subdued, so the Jizya was to be taken from the local Christians with a view to make them feel themselves subdued, which would keep them submissive.

Therefore, when there is no Pagan in the Home of Ummah (Arabian and Iranian Lands), the local Christians should not be subdued, and the Jizya should not be taken.

In other words, now there is no Pagan in the Home of Ummah, so there is no scope of fighting the Pagans, so there is no need of subduing Christians, so Jizya should not be taken from the People of the Book.

Even if there were a fight with the Pagans, and a small neutral Christian community was living in a corner, subduing them and taking Jizya from them would not be justified in light of this Chapter.

However, we cannot cancel it; according to the Hadith, it will be cancelled by Jesus Christ, coming soon.

Moreover, Muslims pay Zakat; if Jews and Christians do not pay Jizya, the Muslims and they will not remain in the equal footing—price will be less in their shops. So, if Zakat is collected centrally, money at the equal rate should be collected from them too, as Jizya.

This is the only Verse in the Quran that talks about Jizya. It allows taking Jizya from People of the Book only. So, Jizya cannot be taken from the Pagans living in the Home of Ummah. They should be motivated to accept Islam. If they do not accept, they should be fought. If they surrender, they should be kept arrested in secured place and motivated till the time they accept Islam. Regarding Pagans, motivation and sword go hand in hand.

However, this is about the policy; in reality, there is no Pagan at present in the Home of Ummah (from Morocco to Himalaya). Prophet (pbuh) and Sahabah did not leave their job undone.

But do not think that the Jihad is finished. The Jihad is necessary to maintain Islam in the Home of Ummah. But the Jihad is likely to be low intensity political Jihad, as IRGC is doing in Iran (2020). And the Jihad must be done according to the order of the Highest Islamic Leadership.

### **Section-8 [Verse: 30-37]: Fighting to subdue People of the Book is justified**

The Jews call Uzair, a son of Allah; and the Christians call Christ, the son of Allah. That is a saying from their mouth; they but imitate what the unbelievers of old used to say. Allah's curse be on them. How they are deluded away from the Truth!

They take their priests and their anchorites to be their lords in derogation of Allah and Christ the son of Mary, yet they were commanded to worship but One God—there is no god but He; praise and glory to Him from having the partners they associate.

Fain would they extinguish the light of Allah with their mouths, but Allah will not allow but that His light should be perfected, even though the Unbelievers may detest (it). It is He Who has sent His Apostle with guidance and the Religion of Truth to proclaim it over all religion, even though the Pagans may detest (it).

O you who believe, there are indeed many among the priests and anchorites who in Falsehood devour the substance of men and hinder from the Way of Allah. And there are those who bury gold and silver and spend it not in the Way of Allah. Announce unto them a most grievous penalty. On the Day when heat will be produced out of that in the fire of Hell,

and with it will be branded their foreheads, their flanks, and their backs—this is that which you buried for yourselves; taste ye then that you buried!

The number of months in the sight of Allah is twelve—so ordained by Him the day He created the Skies and Lands; of them four are sacred—that is the straight usage. So wrong not yourselves therein and fight the Pagans all together as they fight you all together. But know that Allah is with those who restrain themselves.

Verily, the transposing is an addition to unbelief—the Unbelievers are led to wrong thereby for they make it lawful one year and forbidden another year in order to adjust the number of months forbidden by Allah and make such forbidden ones lawful. The evil of their course seems pleasing to them. But Allah guides not those who reject Faith.

### **Remarks:**

A believer of Allah should not fight against another believer of Allah. But, the People of the Book are greatly deviated. They say Uzair and Isa as the sons of God; they take their priests and their anchorites to be their lords. So, they can be fought if they are opposing Islam.

From the time of Alexander (356-323 BCE), Arabs remained subdued due to European aggressions. After Greeks, Romans came. Almost all the countries along the coast of Mediterranean Sea remained under Europeans for hundreds of years. So, it was likely that the common Arabs would grow hatred on them. In Prophet's (pbuh) time, Romans had their forward capital in Damascus. Prophet (pbuh)



compared with the Hereafter. Unless you go forth, He will punish you with a grievous penalty, and put others in your place; but Him you would not harm in the least for Allah has power over all things.

If you help not, certainly, Allah did indeed help him when the Unbelievers drove him out; he had no more than one companion; they two were in the cave, and he said to his companion, "Have no fear, for Allah is with us". Then Allah sent down His peace upon him and strengthened him with forces, which you saw not, and humbled to the depths the word of the Unbelievers. But the word of Allah is exalted to the heights; for Allah is Exalted in Might, Wise.

Go you forth lightly or heavily and strive and struggle with your goods and your persons in the cause of Allah. That is best for you, if you knew.

If there had been immediate gain and the journey easy, they would without doubt have followed you, but the distance was long on them. They would indeed swear by Allah: if we only could, we should certainly have come out with you. They destroy their own souls. And Allah does know that they are certainly lying.

May Allah forgive you—why did you grant them leave until you saw those who told the truth in a clear light, and you had known the liars? Those who believe in Allah and the Last Day ask you for no exemption from fighting with their properties and their lives. And Allah knows well those who do their duty. Only those ask you for exemption who believe not in Allah and the Last Day, and whose hearts are in doubt so that they are tossed in their doubts to and fro. If they had intended to come out, they would certainly have made some preparation therefore; but Allah was averse to

their being sent forth, so He made them lag behind and they were told: Sit you among those who sit (women).

### **Section-10 [Verse 47-52]: People weak in Faith do not add to Force**

If they had come out with you, they would not have added to your (strength), but only disorder, hurrying to and fro in your midst, and sowing sedition among you; and there would have been some among you who would have listened to them. But Allah knows well those who do wrong. Indeed, they had plotted sedition before and upset matters for you until the Truth arrived, and the Decree of Allah became manifest much to their disgust.

Among them is a man who says: "Grant me exemption and draw me not into trial." Have they not fallen into trial already? And indeed, Hell surrounds the Unbelievers.

If good befalls you, it grieves them; but if a misfortune befalls you, they say, "We took indeed our precautions beforehand", and they turn away rejoicing. Say, "Nothing will happen to us except what Allah has decreed for us; He is our protector"; and on Allah let the Believers put their trust.

Say, "Can you expect for us other than one of two glorious things? But we can expect for you either that Allah will send his punishment from Himself, or by our hands. So, wait; we too will wait with you."

## **Section-11 of Chapter-9 [Verse 53-57]: Rejected Contributions**

Say: "Spend willingly or unwillingly; not from you will it be accepted, for you are indeed a people rebellious and wicked." The only reasons why their contributions are not accepted are that they reject Allah and His Apostle, that they come to prayer without earnestness, and that they offer contributions unwillingly.

Let not their wealth nor their sons dazzle you. In reality, Allah's plan is to punish them with these things in this life, and that their souls may perish in their denial of Allah.

They swear by Allah that they are indeed of you, but they are not of you, but they are afraid. If they could find a place to flee to, or caves, or a place of concealment, they would turn straightaway thereto with an obstinate rush.

## **Section-12 of Chapter-9 [Verse 58-60]: Security against Slandering Islamic Leadership**

And among them are men who slander you in the matter of the alms (sadaqah)—if they are given part thereof, they are pleased, but if not, behold, they are indignant! If only they had been content with what Allah and His Apostle gave them and had said, "Sufficient unto us is Allah; Allah and His Apostle will soon give us of His bounty; to Allah do we turn our hopes!"

Alms are for the poor, and the needy, and those who collect them, for those whose hearts have been (recently) reconciled (to Truth), and in bondage, and for those in debt in the cause of Allah, and for the wayfarer—ordained by Allah; and Allah is full of knowledge and wisdom.

### **Section-13 of Chapter-9 [Verse: 61-63]: Security against demeaning Islamic Leadership**

Among them are men who annoy the Prophet and say, "He is (lending his) ear (to every news)." Say, "He listens to what is best for you; he believes in Allah, has faith in the Believers, and is a Mercy to those of you who believe." But those who annoy the Apostle will have a grievous penalty.

To you they swear by Allah in order to please you (Muslims), but it is more fitting that they should please Allah and His Apostle if they are Believers. Know they not that for those who oppose Allah and His Apostle is the Fire of Hell, wherein they shall dwell; that is the disgrace supreme.

### **Section-14 of Chapter-9 [Verse 64-74]: Counter Propaganda**

The Hypocrites are afraid lest a Surah should be sent down about them, showing them what is in their hearts. Say, "Mock you, but verily Allah will bring to light all that you fear".

If you do question them, they declare, "We were only talking idly and in play." Say, "Was it at Allah, and His Verses, and His Apostle that you were mocking? Make you no excuses; you have rejected Faith after you had accepted it. If We pardon some of you, We will punish others among you—for that they are in sin."

The hypocrite men and the hypocrite women—some of them are of others; they enjoin evil and forbid what is just, and they close their hands. They have forgotten Allah, so He has forgotten them. Verily, the hypocrites are rebellious and perverse. Allah has promised the hypocrites men and women

and the rejecters of Faith the fire of hell. Therein shall they dwell. Sufficient is it for them. For them is the curse of Allah, and an enduring punishment.

As in the case of those before you, they were mightier than you in power and more flourishing in wealth and children. They had their enjoyment of their portion, and you have of yours, as did those before you; and you indulge in idle talk, as they did. They, their works are fruitless in this world and in the Hereafter, and they will lose.

Has not the story reached them of those before them—the People of Noah, and Ad, and Thamud; the People of Abraham, the men of Midian; and the cities overthrown? To them came their apostles with clear signs. It is not Allah Who wrongs them, but they wrong their own souls.

The Believers, men and women, are protectors one of another. They enjoin what is just and forbid what is evil. They perform As-Salat and give Zakat and obey Allah and His Apostle. On them will Allah pour His mercy; for Allah is Exalted in power, Wise.

Allah has promised to Believers, men and women, Jannaat, under which rivers flow, to dwell therein forever, and beautiful mansions in Jannaati-Adnin. But the greatest bliss is the good pleasure of Allah; that is the supreme felicity.

O Prophet! Strive hard against the Unbelievers and the Hypocrites and be firm against them. Their abode is Hell, an evil refuge indeed. They swear by Allah that they said nothing, but indeed they uttered blasphemy, and they did it after accepting Islam; and they meditated a plot, which they were unable to carry out—this revenge of theirs was only return for the bounty with which Allah and His Apostle had enriched them! If they repent, it will be best for them, but if

they turn back, Allah will punish them with a grievous penalty in this life and in the Hereafter. They shall have none on earth to protect or help them.

### **Section-15 of Chapter-9 [Verse 75-80]: Security of Believers giving Charity for War Expedition**

Among them are men who made a covenant with Allah that if He bestowed on them of His bounty, they would give in charity and be truly among those who are righteous. But when He did bestow of His bounty, they became covetous and turned back, averse. So, He has put as a consequence hypocrisy into their hearts till the Day whereon they shall meet Him, because they broke their covenant with Allah, and because they lied. Know they not that Allah do know their secret, and their secret counsels, and that Allah knows well all things unseen?

Those who defame such of the believers who give charity voluntarily, and such who could not find to give charity except what is available to them—so they mock at them. Allah will throw back their mockery on them, and they shall have a grievous penalty. Whether you ask for their forgiveness, or not—if you ask seventy times for their forgiveness, Allah will not forgive them, because they have rejected Allah and His Apostle; and Allah guides not those who are perversely rebellious.

### **Section-16 of Chapter-9 [Verse 81-96]: Punishment of Evading War Expedition**

Those who were left behind (in the Expedition of Tabuk) rejoiced in their inaction behind the back of the Apostle of

Allah; they hated to strive and fight with their properties and their lives in the cause of Allah; thy said, "Go not forth in the heat." Say, "The fire of Hell is fiercer in heat." If only they could understand! Let them laugh a little; much will they weep—a recompense for what they do.

If then, Allah bring you back to any of them, and they ask your permission to come out, say, "Never shall you come out with me, nor fight an enemy with me, for you preferred to sit inactive on the first occasion. Then sit you with those who lag behind."

Nor do you ever pray for any of them that dies, nor stand at his grave, for they rejected Allah and His Apostle and died in a state of perverse rebellion.

Nor let their wealth, nor do their sons dazzle you; Allah's plan is to punish them with these things in this world, and that their souls may perish in their denial of Allah.

When a Surah comes down enjoining them to believe in Allah and to strive and fight along with His Apostle, those with wealth and influence among them ask you for exemption and say, "Leave us, we would be with those who sit." They prefer to be with who remain behind; their hearts are sealed, and so they understand not.

But the Apostle, and those who believe with him strive and fight with their wealth and their lives; for them are good things, and it is they who will prosper. Allah has prepared for them Jannaat, under which rivers flow, to dwell therein—that is the supreme felicity.

And there were among the desert Arabs men who made excuses and came to claim exemption and those who were false to Allah and His Apostle sat inactive. Soon a grievous penalty will seize the Unbelievers among them.

There is no blame on those who are infirm, or ill, or who find no resources to spend; if they are sincere to Allah and His Apostle, no ground can there be against such as do right; and Allah is Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful.

Nor on those who came to you to be provided with mounts, and when you said, "I can find no mounts for you," they turned back; their eyes streaming with tears of grief that they had no resources wherewith to provide the expenses.

The ground is against such as claim exemption while they are rich. They prefer to stay with the (people) who remain behind; Allah has sealed their hearts, so they know not. They will present their excuses to you when you return to them. Say you, "Present no excuses; we shall not believe you; Allah has already informed us of the true state of matters concerning you. It is your actions that Allah and His Apostle will observe. In the end, will you be brought back to Him Who knows what is hidden and what is open; then He will show you the truth of all that you did."

They will swear to you by Allah, when you return to them, that you may leave them alone. So, leave them alone, for they are an abomination, and Hell is their dwelling place—a fitting recompense for what they did. They will swear unto you that you may be pleased with them, but if you are pleased with them—Allah is not pleased with those who disobey.

### **Section-17 of Chapter-9 [Verse 97-106]: Caution in respect of Desert Arabs**

The Arabs of the desert are the worst in disbelief and hypocrisy and most fitted to be in ignorance of the command,

which Allah has sent down to His Apostle; but Allah is All-knowing, All-Wise.

Some of the desert Arabs look upon what they spend as a fine and watch for calamities for you; on them be the calamity of evil. And Allah is He that hears and knows.

But some of the desert Arabs believe in Allah and the Last Day and look upon what they spend in Allah's cause as means of nearness to Allah, and a cause of receiving the Messenger's invocation. Indeed, these are a means of nearness for them; soon will Allah admit them to His Mercy. Indeed, Allah is Oft-forgiving, Most Merciful.

And the foremost to embrace Islam of the Muhajirun (Makkans who forsook their homes) and the Ansars (those of Madinah who helped and gave them shelter) and those who followed them in good deeds—well pleased is Allah with them, as are they with Him. For them He has prepared Jannaat under which rivers flow, to dwell therein forever; that is the supreme felicity.

Certain of the desert Arabs round about you are hypocrites as well as among the Madinah folk; they are obstinate in hypocrisy; you know them not; We know them; twice shall We punish them and in addition shall they be sent to a grievous penalty. Others have acknowledged their wrongdoings; they have mixed an act that was good with another that was evil. Perhaps, Allah will turn unto them; for Allah is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful.

Of their goods, take Sadaqah (alms) so that you might purify and sanctify them and pray on their behalf. Verily, your prayers are a source of security for them; and Allah is one Who hears and knows.

Know they not that Allah does accept repentance from His votaries and receives their gifts of charity, and that Allah is verily He, the Oft-Returning, Most Merciful?

And say, "Work; soon will Allah observe your work, and His Apostle, and the Believers. Soon will you be brought back to the Knower of what is hidden and what is open. Then will He show you the truth of all that you did."

There are others held in suspense for the command of Allah whether He will punish them or turn in mercy to them; and Allah is All-Knowing, Wise.

### **Section-18 of Chapter-9 [Verse 107-110]: The Importance of Unity**

And as for those, who put up a mosque by way of mischief and infidelity to disunite the Believers and in preparation for one who warred against Allah and His Apostle aforesaid, they will indeed swear that their intention is nothing but good; but Allah does declare that they are certainly liars.

Never stand you forth therein. There is a mosque whose foundation was laid from the first day on piety; it is more worthy of the standing forth therein. In it are men who love to be purified; and Allah loves those who make themselves pure.

Which then is best: he that lays his foundation on piety to Allah and His good pleasure, or he that lays his foundation on an undermined sand-cliff, ready to crumble to pieces? And it does crumble to pieces with him into the fire of Hell. And Allah guides not people that do wrong.

The building, which they build, will never cease to be a cause of hypocrisy and doubt in their hearts, unless their hearts are cut to pieces; and Allah is All-Knowing, Wise.

## **Section-19 of Chapter-9 [Verse 111-112]: Believers Sold-Out**

Allah has purchased of the believers their lives and their properties for that theirs shall be Jannaat—they fight in His cause and slay and are slain—a promise binding on Him in truth through the Torah, the Gospel, and the Qur'an; and who is more faithful to his covenant than Allah?

Then rejoice in the bargain, which you have concluded; that is the achievement supreme. Those that turn in repentance, that serve Him and praise Him, that wander in devotion to the cause of Allah, that bow down and prostrate themselves in prayer, that enjoin good and forbid evil and observe the limit set by Allah—so proclaim the glad tidings to the Believers.

### **Segment 5 Conclusion**

## **Section-20 of Chapter-9 [Verse 113-114]: Praying for a Pagan is Forbidden**

It is not fitting for the Prophet and those who believe that they should pray for forgiveness for Pagans even though they be of kin, after it is clear to them that they are companions of the Fire.

And Abraham prayed for his father's forgiveness only because of a promise he had made to him. But when it became clear to him that he was an enemy to Allah, he dissociated himself from him, for Abraham was most tender-hearted, forbearing.

### **Section-21 of Chapter-9 [Verse 115-118]: The Forgiven Three**

And Allah will not mislead a people after He has guided them...in order that He may make clear to them what to fear; for Allah has knowledge of all things. Unto Allah belongs the dominion of the Skies and Lands. He gives life and He takes it. Except for Him you have no protector, no helper.

Allah turned with favour to the Prophet, the Muhajirs, and the Ansars who followed him in a time of distress; after that the hearts of a part of them had nearly swerved, but He turned to them; for He is unto them Most Kind, Most Merciful.

To the three who were left behind: until when straitened for them the Earth, though it was vast, and straitened for them their own souls, and they were certain that (there is) no refuge from Allah, except to Him, then He turned to them that they might repent; for Allah is Oft-Returning, Most Merciful.

### **Section-22 of Chapter-9 [Verse 119-121]: Record and Promise of Reward**

O you who believe, fear Allah and be with those who are true. It was not fitting for the people of Madinah and the Bedouin Arabs of the neighborhood to refuse to follow Allah's Apostle, nor to prefer their own lives to his, because nothing could they suffer or do, but was reckoned to their credit as a deed of righteousness—whether they suffered thirst, or fatigue, or hunger in the cause of Allah; nor they take any step to raise the anger of disbelievers, nor inflict any

injury upon the enemy but is written to their credit as a deed of righteousness. Surely, Allah wastes not the reward of those who do good, nor could they spend anything, small or great, nor cut across a valley but the deed is inscribed to their credit that Allah may reward them the best (of) what they used (to) do.

### **Section-23 of Chapter-9 [Verse 122-123]: Importance of Religious Studies**

Nor should the Believers all go forth together. If a contingent from every expedition remained behind, they could devote themselves to the studies in religion and admonish the people when they return to them that thus they to guard themselves.

#### **Remarks:**

In above Verses religious studies have been given great importance. When nobody was to stay behind, some that could devote themselves in religious studies and admonish the people after their return could be left back.

O you who believe, fight the unbelievers who gird you about, and let them find firmness in you; and know that Allah is with those who fear Him.

### **Section-24 of Chapter-9 [Verse 124-127]: The Surah**

Whenever there comes down a Surah, some of them say, "Which of you has had His faith increased by it?"

Yea, those who believe their faith are increased, and they do rejoice. But those, in whose hearts are a disease, it will add doubt to their doubt; and they will die in a state of unbelief.

See they not that they are tried every year once or twice? Yet they turn not in repentance, and they take no heed.

Whenever there comes down a Surah, they look at each other, "Does anyone see you?" Then they turn aside. Allah has turned their hearts, for they are a people that understand not.

### **Remarks:**

This is a Surah where there is almost nothing about traditional religion; it is all about war. It adds doubt to the diseased hearts. Actually, all Surahs add doubts to their doubts, as they do not approach the Verses with positive attitudes to understand and follow.

### **Section-25 of Chapter-9 [Verse 128-129]: Arab Apostle (pbuh)**

Now has come unto you an Apostle from among yourselves; it grieves him that you should perish—ardently anxious is he over you; to the Believers he is most kind and merciful.

But if they turn away, say: "Allah suffice me; there is no god but He. On Him is my trust, He, the Lord of the Arsh!"